LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

FOUNDED ON COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR

Revised and Enlarged

BY

JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH

ASSISTED BY

GEORGE L. KITTREDGE

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON

GINN AND COMPANY

1900
Entered at Stationers' Hall

Copyright, 1888, by
J. B. GREENOUGH AND J. H. ALLEN

All rights reserved
PREFACE TO REVISED EDITION.

The Publishers have again taken advantage of the opportunity offered by the necessary recasting of the plates of this book to cause such improvements to be made in it as the advance of grammatical knowledge and the experience of the schoolroom have shown to be advisable. The revising editors have endeavored to simplify and make plain the statement of principles, so far as could be done without sacrificing scientific correctness; but no concession has been made to the prevalent mechanical method of treating the science of language. Many additional explanations and suggestions have been made in the text and foot-notes, for the benefit of teachers and advanced scholars. The number and range of examples have been very considerably increased; and it is hoped that scholars will find no grammatical usage in their ordinary reading that is not provided for in the statements laid down.

The treatment of the formation of words has been much extended; and new light, it is hoped, has been shed upon this difficult and ever-advancing branch of the science. In cases where comparative philology is concerned, the editors have endeavored to set down the sure results of the so-called "New Grammar," but have been conservative about accepting doctrines which, though likely to be true, cannot yet be regarded as fully proved, and are certainly not universally accepted. In conformity with the modern practice all naturally long vowels, known to be such, including those whose natural quantity is concealed by position, have been marked throughout; but many suspected to be long have been left unmarked, where the evidence did not seem sufficiently convincing.

Some new doctrines will be found in regard to the order of words, which, though not generally accepted, will, the editors are persuaded, meet with more general approval, the better they are applied and understood. This subject has only just begun to receive the consideration it deserves.

No changes of any account have been made in the numbering of sections.

In conclusion, the editors hope that they have made still more plain some of the devious ways of Latin grammar, and feel that if their new efforts meet with anything like the same favor that has been shown to the book heretofore, they shall be amply rewarded.
The editors have taken advantage of the re-casting of the plates to make some improvements in the present edition, which have grown upon their hands, until in fact a thorough revision of the book has been made.

The principal changes are the following: 1. The matter of each part has been cast in chapters, with sub-divisions by numbered paragraphs. 2. A considerable expansion has been given to several portions, especially to those on Phonetic Changes and the Formation of Words; inflectional forms have been more carefully exhibited, and sections have been added on the Syntax of Pronouns and Particles. 3. Strictly philological matter, not intended for class use, has been put in the form of marginal notes. 4. The several topics of the Syntax are introduced by brief prefatory notes, suggesting what we consider to be the true theory of the constructions; these are not designed for class use, and are not included in the numbered sections. 5. Some important additions and illustrations have been given in the Prosody. The substance of the book remains as before. The form of expression, however, has been carefully revised; and a few sections have been transferred to a different connection.

The proof-sheets have been submitted to several experienced teachers, who have generously aided us by their criticism, and have contributed many valuable practical suggestions. The editors have pleasure in acknowledging, also, their special indebtedness to Professor Caskie Harrison, of the University of the South, Sewanee, Tenn., whose correspondence has made a very full running commentary extending over the greater portion of the book, including all the Syntax, with copious discussion of numerous incidental topics. His notes have been of the greatest service to them; have sometimes modified their views and constantly supplemented them; have urged important points upon their attention, and have not seldom suggested valuable improvements through the very antagonism of opposing doctrine. Material less easy to specify in detail, but not less valuable or welcome, has been received from Professor M. W. Humphreys, of Nashville, from the principals of the academies at Andover, Exeter, and Quincy, and from others, to whom cordial thanks are due for the interest they have testified in the work.

Cambridge, September 25, 1877.
NOTE.

For the convenience of those who may wish to follow up more minutely the study of the subjects treated in this book, a list of important works is given below.

Allen, F. D.: *Remnants of Early Latin.*
American *Journal of Philology,* Vols. I. to VIII. and continued.


Brambach: *Lateinische Orthographie.* 1868.


--- Greek Grammar. See "Müller's Handbuch."


The greatest work on Latin alone, treating the language in reference to its own individual development, particularly as to the sounds (Lautlehre). Must be used with caution.


Treats of Latin only by comparison, but is one of the most valuable works on the general subject.


Notes giving in connection with the Greek Grammar the simplest view of the doctrine of forms.

--- Das Griechische Verbum.

Delbrück: *Das Conjunctiv und Optativ, im Sanskrit und Griechischen.* Halle: 1871.


--- Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis im Indischen, etc. Berlin: 1867.

Origin of the various Ablative constructions.
Note.


A Dictionary of Roots and Words supposed to have existed in the Indo-European tongue, with the corresponding words and derivatives in the various languages. It can be used without a knowledge of German. No such book, however, is safe to use without careful study of the laws of consonant and vowel changes.


HALL, W. G.: Cum Constructions. [Cornell Studies.]

—— The Sequence of Tenses.


MARX: Hilfsbüchlein für die Aussprache, etc. Berlin: 1883.


Storehouse of all Latin forms, 1200 pages, containing the result of late textual criticism. The standard work.


Behind the times, but a convenient synopsis of the doctrine of forms.


Some errors have been pointed out in the “North American Review,” January, 1872.


Antiquated, but indispensable.


Suggestive, but to be used with caution.

WESTPHAL: Metrik der Griechen. 2d ed. 1867. 2 vols.

The great authority on the metrical systems of the ancients, with full literary and musical illustration. A convenient summary, with some modifications, will be found in SCHMIDT’s Rhythmik und Metrik, now translated by Prof. J. W. WHITE, and published by the publishers of this book.

WHEELER, B. I.: Analogy and its Scope in Language. [Cornell Studies.]


The best grammar of the Sanskrit, without some knowledge of which language it is difficult to pursue the study of comparative grammar to advantage.

ZEITSCHRIFT für vergleichende Sprachforschung. Edited by Dr. A. KUHN. Vol. I., etc. Berlin: 1851 and subsequent years.

Indispensable to correct theories of individual investigators.
## CONTENTS

### PART I.—ETYMOLOGY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I.</th>
<th>Letters and Sounds</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alphabet; Classification, Phonetic Variations</td>
<td>1–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronunciation; Quantity and Accent</td>
<td>10–12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter II.</th>
<th>Words and their Forms</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inflection; Root and Stem</td>
<td>13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Parts of Speech</td>
<td>15, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gender, Number, and Case</td>
<td>16–18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter III.</th>
<th>Declension of Nouns</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General Rules of Declension</td>
<td>19, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First Declension</td>
<td>20–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second Declension</td>
<td>22–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Declension:</td>
<td>Mute Stems</td>
<td>25–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liquid Stems</td>
<td>27–29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vowel Stems</td>
<td>29–32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Irregular Nouns</td>
<td>32–33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greek Forms</td>
<td>33–34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rules of Gender</td>
<td>34–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lists of Nouns</td>
<td>36–38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fourth Declension</td>
<td>39, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fifth Declension</td>
<td>40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Defective and Variable Nouns</td>
<td>42–46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proper Names</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter IV.</th>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First and Second Declensions</td>
<td>47–49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third Declension</td>
<td>49–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>55–58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>59–62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>63-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative</td>
<td>63-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite</td>
<td>68-71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Correlatives (Pronouns and Adverbs)</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>73-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inflection</td>
<td>73, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Signification: Voice, Mood, Tense</td>
<td>74-78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Personal Endings</td>
<td>78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forms: Verb-Endings</td>
<td>79-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Verb Sum</td>
<td>81-83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Three Stems</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regular Verb: The Four Conjugations</td>
<td>84, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Formation of the Three Stems</td>
<td>86-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Synopsis of the Verb</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Special Forms</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First Conjugation</td>
<td>92, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Periphrastic Conjugations</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second Conjugation</td>
<td>96-98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third Conjugation</td>
<td>98-103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fourth Conjugation</td>
<td>104-106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deponent Verbs</td>
<td>106-108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Irregular Verbs</td>
<td>109-114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Defective Verbs</td>
<td>114-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impersonal Verbs</td>
<td>117, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note on the Origin and History of Verb-Forms</td>
<td>119-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Particles</td>
<td>122-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>122-127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>127-133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td>133-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interjections</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>Formation of Words</td>
<td>140-162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roots and Stems</td>
<td>140, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suffixes: Primary; Significant Endings</td>
<td>141-143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Derivation of Nouns and Adjectives</td>
<td>143-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Derivation of Verbs</td>
<td>156-160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compound Words</td>
<td>160-162</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART II.—SYNTAX.

Introductory Note ........................................... 163, 164

CHAPTER I.—The Sentence .................................... 165-204
Definitions: Subject and Predicate; Modification ........ 165-170
Agreement: the Four Concords .................................. 170
Nouns: Apposition; Predicate Agreement ....................... 170-172
Adjectives: Rules of Agreement ................................ 172
  Special Uses .............................................. 174-177
Pronouns: Personal and Demonstrative .......................... 178-181
  Reflexive .................................................. 181-184
  Possessive ............................................... 184-186
  Relative .................................................. 186-191
  Indefinite ............................................... 191, 192
  Alius and Alter .......................................... 193, 194
Verbs: Subject, Incomplete Sentences ........................... 194-196
Particles: Adverbs, Conjunctions, Negatives ................... 199-201
Questions ................................................................ 201-204

CHAPTER II.—Construction of Cases ......................... 205-273
Introductory Note ........................................... 205
Genitive: With Nouns ........................................... 206-211
  Possessive .................................................. 207
  Material, Quality ......................................... 208
  Partitive ................................................... 209, 210
  Objective .................................................... 211
With Adjectives ................................................... 211-213
With Verbs ................................................................ 213-217
  Remembering and Forgetting .................................. 213, 214
  Accusing, etc. ............................................... 214
  Feeling ....................................................... 214
  Interest and Réfert; other Verbs, 216, 217
Peculiar Genitives: Exclamatory, etc. ........................... 218
Dative: Indirect Object with Transitives ....................... 219-221
Indirect Object with Intransitives ............................... 221-225
With Compounds ................................................. 225-227
Of Possession; of Agency ......................................... 227-229
Of Purpose or End; Dative with Adjectives .................... 229-233
Of Reference; Ethical .......................................... 233, 234
Contents.

ACCUSATIVE: Direct Object ........................................ 235–237
Cognate Accusative; Two Accusatives .......................... 238–242
Idiomatic and Special Uses ...................................... 242–244

VOCATIVE ................................................................. 244

ABLATIVE: its Several Uses .................................... 244, 245
1. Of Separation and Privation .................................... 245–247
   Source, Material, Cause ....................................... 247–250
   Of Agent; of Comparison ..................................... 251–253
2. Of Manner, Means, Instrument, Accompaniment, ............ 253–256
   Of Difference, Quality, Price, Specification ............... 256–259
3. Locative: Special Uses .......................................... 260
   Ablative Absolute .............................................. 260–262

TIME AND PLACE ........................................................ 263–279

USE OF PREPOSITIONS ............................................... 270–273

Chapter III.—Syntax of the Verb .............................. 274–305

Note on the Moods .................................................. 274

Moods: Indicative .................................................... 275, 276

   Subjunctive: General Use ..................................... 276
      Hortatory ....................................................... 277, 278
      Optative ....................................................... 279
      Deliberative .................................................. 280

   Imperative ........................................................ 280–283
   Infinitive .......................................................... 283

Tenses: Introductory Note ....................................... 291

Tenses of Continued Action ...................................... 291

   Present ............................................................ 291–294
   Imperfect .......................................................... 294–296
   Future ............................................................... 296

Tenses of Completed Action ..................................... 296

   Perfect ............................................................ 296–298
   Pluperfect .......................................................... 298
   Future Perfect .................................................... 298
   Epistolary Tenses ................................................ 299

Tenses of the Subjunctive ....................................... 299

   Sequence of Tenses ............................................. 300–304
   Tenses of the Infinitive ....................................... 304

Participles: ............................................................ 306–314

   Distinctions of Tense .......................................... 307
   Adjective Use ..................................................... 308
   Predicate Use ..................................................... 309
Contents.

Future Participle .................................................. 312
Gerundive .............................................................. 313
Gerund and Gerundive .............................................. 314
Supines ................................................................. 318

Chapter IV. — Conditional Sentences ..................... 320-339

Introductory Note .................................................. 320
Protasis and Apodosis ............................................. 321
Classification of Forms .......................................... 322
Simple Conditions ................................................ 324
Future Conditions ................................................ 325
Conditions Contrary to Fact ..................................... 327
General Conditions ................................................. 329
Condition Disguised ............................................... 330
Condition Omitted ................................................ 332
Potential Subjunctive .............................................. 332
Subjunctive of Modesty .......................................... 332
Verbs of Necessity ................................................ 333
Complex Conditions ................................................ 333
Particles of Comparison ......................................... 334
Concessive Clauses ................................................ 335
Proviso ................................................................. 336
Use of Si and its Compounds .................................... 337

Chapter V. — Dependent Constructions .................. 339-368

Relative Clauses: Introductory Note ....................... 339

Conditional Relative Clauses .................................. 339
Clauses of Purpose ................................................ 340
Clauses of Result .................................................. 343
Clauses of Characteristic ....................................... 346
Causal Clauses ...................................................... 348
Relations of Time .................................................. 349
Postquam, etc. ....................................................... 350
Cum Temporal ....................................................... 352
Cum Causal .......................................................... 353
Antequam, Priusquam ............................................. 354
Dum, Dō nec, and Quoad ......................................... 354

Substantive Clauses: Introductory Note ................. 355

(Infinitive Clauses) ............................................... 356
Clauses of Purpose ............................................... 359
Contents.

Clauses of Result ................................................................. 362
(Clauses with Quod) ............................................................. 366
Indirect Questions ............................................................... 367

INDIRECT DISCOURSE: Introductory Note .................................... 369
Formal Indirect Discourse .................................................... 370
Subordinate Clauses ............................................................. 372
Tenses in Indirect Discourse .................................................. 373
Conditions, Questions, Commands .......................................... 374
Informal Indirect Discourse .................................................. 379
Integral Clauses ................................................................. 380

IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX ................................................. 381

CHAPTER VI. — Arrangement .................................................... 386-393
General Rule ................................................................. 386
Special Rules ................................................................. 392
Structure of the Period ......................................................... 392

PART III. — PROSODY.

CHAPTER I. — Quantity ......................................................... 394-401
Introductory Note ............................................................... 394
General Rules of Quantity .................................................... 394
Quantity of Final Syllables .................................................... 396
Quantity of Penultimates ....................................................... 398-401

CHAPTER II. — Rhythm ............................................................ 402-406
Measures of Rhythm: Feet ..................................................... 402-405
The Musical Accent ............................................................. 406

CHAPTER III. — Versification ................................................... 407-424
The Verse ........................................................................ 407
Dactylic Verse: Hexameter ..................................................... 408
Elegiac Stanza; Other Dactylic Verses ..................................... 410, 411
Iambic Verse: Trimeter ......................................................... 411
Other Iambic Measures ......................................................... 413
Trochaic Verse ................................................................. 413
Mixed Measures ............................................................... 414
Logaeedic Verse ................................................................. 415, 416
Metres of Horace ............................................................... 417-421
Index to Metres of Horace ..................................................... 420
Contents.

Other Lyric Poets .......................... 421
Miscellaneous .............................. 422
Early Prosody .............................. 423, 424

Miscellaneous: Reckoning of Time ........ 425
Measures of Value .......................... 427
Abbreviations .............................. 428
Glossary of Terms ......................... 429-432

Appendix: Latin and Kindred Tongues .... 433-438
Principal Roman Writers .................... 438, 439

Index of Verbs ............................. 440-448

Index of Words and Subjects .............. 449 ff.
LATIN GRAMMAR.

Latin Grammar is usually discussed under three heads: 1. Etymology; 2. Syntax; 3. Prosody. Etymology treats of the form of separate words, as either written or spoken; Syntax of their function when joined together as parts of the sentence; Prosody of their arrangement in metrical composition.

PART FIRST.—ETYMOLOGY.

Chapter I.—Letters and Sounds.

Alphabet.

The Latin Alphabet, as the language is usually written, is the same as the English (which, in fact, was borrowed from it), except that it has no w.

Properly, it consists, however, of only twenty-three letters: a (called ah), b (be [bay]), c (ke), d (de), e (eh), f (ef), g (ge), h (ha), i (ee), k (ka) [see § 6], l (el), m (em), n (en), o (o), p (pe), q (koo), r (er), s (ess), t (te), u, v (oo), x (ix), y (u Graeca?), z (zeta). Of these, y and z were added in Cicero’s time to express the corresponding sounds (ι, ζ) in borrowed Greek words (cf. Cic. N. D. ii. 93).

i and u (v) have a twofold value, which is often in modern writing indicated by a double form: i, j; u, v. See § 4.

Classification of the Letters.

1. The letters are divided, with reference to their sounds, into Vowels (litterae vocālēs) and Consonants (litterae consonantēs). Two vowels united so as to express one sound are called a Diphthong.
Etymology: Letters and Sounds. [§§ 1, 2.]

a. The VOWELS are a, e, i, o, u, y. The rest of the letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are ae (æ), au, ei, eu, oe (œ), ui, and in Early Latin ai, oi, and ou.

Note.—All the divisions of the letters apply really to the sounds which the letters represent; but as the sounds in Latin very nearly correspond to the letters, no real confusion need arise if both are spoken of without distinction.

b. Vowels are Open (a, o), Medial (e, u), or Close (i), according to the position of the organs in pronouncing them.

Note.—The vowel a, as in father, is the most open (i.e. the organs are least constrained in pronouncing it). Starting from this sound, and narrowing the mouth sidewise, at the same time raising the middle of the tongue, we come through several gradations not always recognized, but no doubt always more or less existent in speech, to the sound of e (as in eh?) and i (ee, as i in machine). This sound, if enunciated rapidly with a following vowel, passes into the sound of English y (consonant). If, on the other hand, the mouth is narrowed up and down, and at the same time the back of the tongue is raised, we come in the same manner to o and u (oo in foot). If, starting with o, we contract in the first manner, we come through a common German sound (o) to e. If, starting from u, we do the same, we come to French u, German û, Greek u, and Latin y. And this sound, in turn, approaches i.

These processes may be represented in a vowel scale as above.

2. CONSONANTS.—a. p, b, c (k), q, g, t, d, as also ch and th, are called Mutes (Explosives, Momentary sounds).

These are produced by an entire stoppage of the breath and a subsequent explosion. They are classified as follows:—

1. p, c (k), q, t, s, are called Surds (tenués).

These are without vocal tone.

2. b, g, d, z, are called Sonants (mediae).

These are accompanied by a slight vocal tone.

3. ch and th are called Aspirates.

In these a breath follows the explosion. They are found chiefly in words borrowed from the Greek. ph, which also was borrowed from the Greek, probably was never sounded as an aspirate in Latin.

b. m and n are called Nasals.

These are pronounced with the same position of the organs as b and d, except that the nasal passage is opened instead of closed. A third nasal, n adulterinum (like n in ink), corresponding in the same way to g, existed in the language, but had no separate sign.
§§ 3–5.]

Classification of the Letters.

3. From the organs of speech chiefly used in the utterance of the mutes and nasals they are divided into Labials (pronounced with the lips), Palatals (with the palate), and Linguals (with the tongue).

Their relations are seen in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Labial.</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>wanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palatal.</td>
<td>c (k), q</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>ch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingual.</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>th</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Other useful special classes of sounds are distinguished as:

Liquids: l, m, n, r.
Fricatives (Spirants): f, ph, th (not aspirate, as in thin), h, s, z.
Sibilants: s, z.
Double Consonants: x (cs), z (ds).
Semi-vowels: i, v (see § 4).

b. h is merely a breathing.

4. SEMI-VOWELS. — i and v (u) before a vowel in the same syllable are consonants and have the sound of English consonant y and w respectively. (Cf. i and u in pinion, issuing, rapidly pronounced.) They are sometimes called Semi-Vowels.

NOTE 1. — The Latin alphabet had no separate signs for the semi-vowels; but used i for both vowel and consonant i, and v or u (without distinction) for both vowel and consonant v (u). The character j was unknown in classical times, and u was but a graphic variation of v. In mediaeval Latin j and v came to be used to indicate the consonant sounds of i and v (u), and this usage is often followed by modern editors in writing small letters. In writing capitals, however, the forms J and U are avoided. Thus iuuenis, iuvenis, or juvenis, — but IVVENIS.

In this book vowel and consonant i are both represented by the same character, i; but v is used for the consonant, u for the vowel sound of v (u). Thus iustus, vir, iuvenis.

NOTE 2. — The English sounds of j and v did not exist in Latin in classical times, though consonant v (u) began no doubt to approach English v in many persons’ speech.

NOTE 3. — In the combinations qu, gu, and sometimes su, u forms a compound sound with the preceding consonant, and is reckoned neither as a vowel nor a consonant. Thusqua, anguis, cōnsuētus. (Cf. English quill, anguish, suave.)

5. The Romans distinguished Long vowels from Short in sound, but had no regular characters to express the difference. At various times attempts were made to mark this distinction, but none came into general use.
In modern times short vowels are marked thus: ā, ē; and long, thus: ā, ē; those that may be pronounced either long or short, thus: ā, ē. In this book all simple vowels not marked are supposed to be short. But final o and i are marked according to their prevailing length or shortness, though they sometimes vary from this quantity in poetry.

**NOTE.**—Vowels and consonants are not separated by any sharp line from each other, but form a continuous scale from the most open vowel (a) to the mutes, for which the mouth is entirely closed. The general tendency of phonetic changes in language has been from the two extremes towards the middle.

### Early Forms.

6. The character c (surd palatal) originally stood for the sonant palatal (g). (Hence, a, e, c, but Alpha, Beta, Gamma.) This force it always retained in the abbreviations C. (for Gāius), and Cn. (Gnaeus).

**NOTE.**—In prehistoric times these two sounds were confounded, and c was used for both. The character k (surd palatal) was thus supplanted, except in a few words and abbreviations: as, Kal. (Kalendae), Karthāgō.

About 300 B.C. G was invented to distinguish the sonant again, but was put in the place in the alphabet once occupied by z, which at that time had dropped out of use. When z was afterwards restored (in Greek words), it was put at the end of the alphabet.

7. Till after the age of Augustus the use of u (vowel) after u (v) was avoided. This was done either by preserving o, when but for this tendency it would have become u, as in voltus (but cultus), servōs (but dominus), suōs (but meus), quom (but tum), reliquōs (but relictus); or in case of quu, by writing cu, as in čur (for quōr), ecus (for equos, later equus), cum (for quom, very late quum), relicus (for reliquos, later reliquus). Compare c for qu in cotidiē, written for quotidiē.

### Phonetic Variations.

8. Variations of sound are of two classes:—

1. Inherited differences of form in the same root (see § 22).

**NOTE.**—These variations of form in words connected with each other by derivation occur in other languages akin to Latin with great regularity and marked significance. They lost their importance in Latin, but have left traces throughout the language, so that its structure cannot be explained without taking them into account.

2. Unconscious alterations of sounds developed in course of time in the language itself.

**NOTE.**—Such alterations arise in every language after long use from careless articulation and an unconscious tendency to secure an easier utterance; and they depend very much upon accent. This process is often called phonetic decay or euphonic change.
9. Inherited differences appear in variations of vowels, and less commonly in liquids connected with vowels.

   a. Vowels vary between long and short of the same kind: as, emō, I buy, ēmī, I bought; legō, I read, lēgī, I read; tegō, I cover, tēgula, a tile; sonō, I sound, persōna, a mask (as sounded through); regō, I rule, rēx, a king; dux, a leader, dūcō, I lead.

   b. Vowels vary in quality: as, pendant, I weigh, pondus, weight; tegō, I cover, toga, a robe; fidus, faithful, foedus, a treaty. (Cf. fall, fell; bind, band, bound.)

   c. Vowels vary between a short vowel of one quality and a long vowel or diphthong of another: miser, wretched, maestus, sad; dare, to give, dōnum, gift; agō, I lead, ēgī, I led.

   d. Liquids are transposed with vowels, sometimes with change of the vowel: as, sperno, I spurn, spērvi, I spurned; sternō, I strew, strāvī, I strewed; gignō, I beget, (g)nātus, a son; fulgeō, I shine, flagrō, I burn.

10. Unconscious changes occur in both vowels and consonants.

   a. Vowels and diphthongs are weakened, usually in the directions marked on the vowel-scale (see page 2): as, factus, made, cōnfectus, made up; lubet (old) it pleases, libet (later); āgmen, a march, āgminis, of a march; capiō, I take, incipiō, I begin; legō, I pick, colligō, I gather; caedō, I cut, cecidī, I have cut; salīō, I leap, exsultō, I leap up and down (for joy); pellō, I drive, pulsus, driven; servos, a slave (early), servus, a slave (later); optumus, optimus (see § 12. d); eboris, of ivory, eburneus, made of ivory; vortō (early), I turn, vertō (later), I turn.

   Note.—When vowels seem to be changed contrary to the direction of the vowel-scale, either both are changed in different degrees from some common vowel higher up the scale, or the change is due to some special cause: as, iēns, euntis (for iones,1 ionesō); volentem, but voluntās (for volunt-); simillis, simul (for simolis, etc.); auceps, aucupis.

   b. Two vowels coming together are very often contracted: as, cōgō for co-agō; obit for obiit; nil for nihil (see § 347. c); dē-beō for de-hibeō (de-habeō, see a, above); rursus, re-versus (re-vorsus, see c below); amārat (for amāverat); cūncus (for coiunctus); sürgō (for sub-regō).

1 Form not found
c. Vowels are often entirely lost between two consonants (*syncope*): as, audäctër for audäcteri; iūrigium for iūrigium; disciplīna for disciplūnā; caldus (popular), calidus (literary); or at the end of a word: as, dic for dīce; satin for satisne; hōrunc for hōrunce.

d. Vowels are rarely inserted between two consonants in the effort to pronounce a difficult combination of sounds (cf. eīllum for eīlum); as, Herculēs for Hercleis, drachuma for drachma, ager for agr(o) (see § 38).

Note.—In many cases in which a vowel is sometimes found it is impossible to tell whether it is original or developed: as, saeculum and saeclum.

e. Vowels found long in the earlier language are sometimes shortened later: as, fidēl (later fideī), amat (later amat: § 375. g^5).

11. a. Consonants are unconsciously substituted one for another in accordance with regular tendencies of the language. Thus:—

1. r for s between two vowels or before m or n: as, eram (root ES), generis (for *genesis, from genus*), maereō (cf. maestus), dirimō (dis-emō), diribeō (dis-habeō), veternus (vetus-nus), carmen (†casmen, cf. Casmēna). (Compare Eng. *was, were*.)

2. s for d or t, making an easier combination: as, cāsus (for cad-tus), cēsum (cēd-tum), mānsus (man-tus), passus (pad-tus and pat-tus), equester (equet-ter).

b. Consonants are omitted: as, exāmen (exāgmen), caementum (caed-mentum), sēmēstris (sea-mēstris), lūna (luc-na), dēnī (†dec-ni), hōc (abl. for höd-ce), autumnus (auctumnus, root AUG), fulmen (fulg-men), pērgō (per-regō), līs (stlīs), cōr (†cord), lāc (lact-), pēs (†peds).

1. Especially h: as, praebēō (prae-habeō), vēmēns (for vehe-mēns).

2. And consonant i and u: as, cōniciō (con-iaciō), prōrsus (prō-vorsus).

3. Also s at the end of a word after a short vowel.

Note.—This is limited to early Latin and colloquial usage: plēnu(s) fidēl, quālist (quālis est).

c. Consonants are unconsciously inserted in passing from one sound to another: as, sümō, I take, súmpsī, I took, sūmptus, taken (for süm-sī, süm-tus); hiemps, winter, hiemis, of winter. Cf. Thompson (*Tom’s son*).

Note.—These are called Parasitic sounds.

d. Consonants are transposed: misceō, mixtus (for misc-tus).
e. Consonants and vowels are unconsciously changed (dissimilation) to avoid a repetition of the same sound in two successive syllables: parśla (for palślia, from Palēs), merđiēs (for medī-diēs), pietās (for ἔπιταις, as in cāritās).

Note.—In some cases this principle prevents changes which would take place according to other tendencies of speech.

f. A consonant is changed by the influence of a neighboring sound,—
1. Into the same sound as the neighbor (complete assimilation): as, cēsī (cēd-sī), summus (sup-mus), sella (sed-la), puella (puer-u-la), pressī (prem-sī), occidō (ob-cadō), mītissimus (for mītius-timus).

2. Into a sound of the same organ or the same quality (or both) as the neighbor (partial assimilation) (see table of mutes, § 3): as, con- terō (com-terō, labial to lingual), scriptus (scrib-tus, sonant to surdi), sēgmentum (tsegmentum, surd to sonant), imperō (in-perō, lingual to labial).

Note.—Sometimes the first consonant governs (regressive assimilation), sometimes the second (progressive assimilation).

3. These changes affect especially the final consonant of the preposition in Compounds: as, accēdō (ad-cēdō), afficiō (ad-faciō), occurrō (ob-currō), corrūō (com-ruō), efferō (ec-ferō), suppōnō (sub-pōnō).

Note.—The rules for this assimilation may be given as follows: ad is assimilated before c, g, p, t; less regularly before l, r, s, and rarely before m; while before f, n, q, the form ad is to be preferred. ab is not assimilated, but may take the form a, an, or abs. In com (con, co), m is retained before b, p, m; is assimilated before l, n, r; is changed to n before c, d, f, g, j, q, s, v; sometimes becomes n before p; is sometimes assimilated (otherwise n) before l and r; com loses the final m in cōnectō, cōnveō, cōnitor, cōnubium. in usually changes n to m before b, m, p; before l the better orthography retains n. ob and sub are assimilated before c, f, g, p, and sometimes before m; sub also before r; and, in early Latin, b of these prepositions sometimes becomes p before s or t. The inseparable amb loses b before a consonant, and m is sometimes assimilated. circum often loses m before t. s of dis before a vowel becomes r, and before a consonant is lost or assimilated. The d of red and sēd is generally lost before a consonant. In most of these cases the later editions prefer the unaltered forms throughout; but the changes given above have good authority. Others, which are corruptions of the middle ages (as assum for adsum), had better be avoided. Lexicons vary in the spelling of these combinations.

12. Variations of Spelling occur in manuscripts and inscriptions, and especially in modern editions. In the following lists the better forms are put first; objectionable forms in parenthesis.
Etymology: Letters and Sounds. §§ 12, 13.

NOTE.—These variations are generally mere mistakes in spelling. Many of them are due to the practice of writing from dictation, by which most MS. copies of the classics were made. A single reader dictated to several copyists, whose spelling was often corrupt. The tendency of the best editions is to restore, as normal, the forms of the late Republic or early Empire (the time of Cicero or Augustus),—so far as these may be determined from inscriptions, etc.,—but to preserve, in each author, any peculiarities that mark the spelling of his time. The choice among forms appears often to be arbitrary, for inscriptions of the same period sometimes differ considerably.

a. The letters and sounds of ci and ti are interchanged before a vowel: nütiō (nünciō), contiō (condiō), diō (ditiō), condiciō (conditiō), suspiciō (suspītiō), tribūnicius (tribūnitiō).

NOTE.—This substitution began very early (in a few words) while the c still had the sound of k. But generally it belongs to a later period of the language, and is due to the disturbing influence of consonant i; nātiō (natyo) became nacho, or nasio, or nasho. It is this disturbance that has produced the modern sibilant sound of c, as well as that of ti: as, nation (through the French) from nātiō; species, from speciēs.

b. Several words are written sometimes with and sometimes without an initial h: as, harēna or (arēna), erus or (herus), umerus or (humerus), ūmor or (hāmor).

c. In later Latin, ē, ae, and oe became alike in sound (like a in fate), and hence they are often confounded in writing: as, faenus (fēnus, foenus).

d. Other words variously spelled are: adulēscēns, adulēscēns; ahēneus, aēneus; ānulus, annulus; artus, (arctus); autumnus, (auctumnus); caelum (coelum); cum, quom, (quum); epistula, epistola; exsul, exul; fēcundus (foecundus); fēmina, (foemina); littera, littera; lubet, libet; lubīdō, libīdō; mīlia, millia; nequī- quam, nequicquam, nequidquam; paulus, paullus; quicquam, quidquam; umquam, unquam; vertō, vortō; volnus, vulnus; proelium, (praelium); voltus, vultus; servos, servus. Also the gerundive-form -endus or -undus, and the superlative -imus or -umus.

e. At the end of a few words ā was anciently written t: set for sed, aput for apud.

f. Some variations in spelling mark the changes in §§ 10 and 11.

Combinations.

13. Two words are often united in writing, and sometimes in sound. Thus,—
a. Conjunctions or other particles and pronouns are sometimes connected: as in etenim, ūnusquisque, iamdūdum, iamdiū, sīquis, sīquidem; also a few short phrases, as, quārē, quamobrem, rēspūblica, iūsiūrandum, paterfamilīās.

b. The verb est, īs, is sometimes joined with the preceding word, especially in the old poets, when the two would be united by elision: as, homōst, perīculumst, ausust, quālist (quālis est) (like thou'rt, I've).

c. Similar contractions are found in vīn’ (vīsne), scīn’ (scīsne), sīs (sī vīs), sōdēs (sī audēs), sūltis (sī vultis). So in English, don’t, won’t (wol not).

Syllables.

14. In Latin every word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. In the division of words into syllables a single consonant between two vowels is to be written and pronounced with the latter.

NOTE.—This rule applies also to v and consonant 1.

b. This rule is sometimes extended to double consonants, or any combination of consonants which can be used to begin a word: as, ho-spes, māgnus, dī-xit.

c. In compounds, the parts should be separated: as, ab-est, ob-lātus.

d. A syllable preceded by a vowel in the same word is called pure, as pi-us; a syllable preceded by a consonant, impure, as cōn-stat.

e. Any syllable ending with a vowel or diphthong is called open; all others are called close. Thus in pa-ter the first syllable is open, the second close.

Kindred Forms.

15. In English words derived from the Latin, the original letters are retained (as ambition from ambitiō). But in native English words which are cognate with the Latin (see Appendix), the original sounds are rarely represented by the same letters in the two languages, but usually by closely related letters which regularly correspond.

1 Many words, however, coming through the French follow French changes: as, fashion, façon (factiō); chivalry, cheval (caballus); chimney, cheminée (caminus).
**Etymology: Letters and Sounds.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LATIN</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c, k, qu</td>
<td>H, WH: qui, who; cōs, hone; carpō, harvest; calō (kalendar), hail; cord-, heart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>K, CH: genus, kin; genū, knee; gūstō, choose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>TH: tū, thou; trēs, three; tenuis, thin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOR D (rarely): stāre, stand; torreō, dry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>T: duō, two; dēns, tooth; sedeō, sit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>F: pater, father; pullus, foal; paucī, few.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f (for bh)</td>
<td>B: ferō (φερω), bear; frāter (φράτηρ), brother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f (for dh)</td>
<td>D: forēs (θυρά), doors; fera (θήρ), deer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>G: vehō, wagon; haedus, goat; hostis, guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i cons., v</td>
<td>y, w: iugum, wagon; haedus, goat; hostis, guest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes a consonant lost in the Latin appears in the English word. Thus, (s)niv-, snow; (h)änser, goose; (s)nervo-, snare.

**Sounds of the Letters.**

Note.—The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. Among us, it usually follows one of two ways, which may be called the Roman (or Phonetic) and the English method.

**16. By the Roman (or Phonetic) method, every letter has always the same sound.**

Note.—A long vowel in our enunciation almost necessarily acquires a slightly different quality from a short one, as in boot and foot, machine and holiest. See also bs below.

**Vowels:**
- ā as in father;
- ō as in machine;
- õ as in holy;
- ū as oo in boot;
- y between u and i (German ü).

**Diphthongs:**
- ae like ay; oe like oy; au like ow in now.
- ei as in eight; eu as ch'oo; ui as oo'ee.

**Consonants,** as in English, except that:
- bs is like þs; ch like k; ph like f.
- n before s or f was combined with the preceding vowel somewhat as French nasal n, making the vowel long.
- z as dz in adze.
- th as in rathole, later as in thin.
NOTE 1.—In the ancient pronunciation, ph was distinguished from f by being sounded with the lips only, instead of lip and teeth.

NOTE 2.—In many words (as aëtes, tenus), i and u sometimes had the consonant sound, though usually in such words reckoned as vowels.

NOTE 3.—The diphthong ae was anciently sounded as above, but early in the time of the Empire acquired from popular or provincial use the long sound of e.

NOTE 4.—When two consonants come together (as in condō, postea), or a consonant is doubled (as in annus, ullus, mittō), care should be taken to pronounce both letters distinctly. It was doubtless this distinct pronunciation of consonants that made a syllable with a short vowel long by Position (§ 18. d).

17. By the English method, the letters have the same sounds as in English; but—

a. Final a is pronounced as in America; but in the monosyllables a, dā, qua, stā, sometimes as in pay; e in open syllables as in me, in close as in men; i in open syllables as in Hi! in close as in pin; o in open syllables as in tone, in close as in not; u as in pull or as in hull, without any definite rules, as ullus (like gull us), but fullō (like full oh); y like i.

NOTE.—In this method of pronunciation, syllables are often treated as open or close according to the position of the accent: as, 1'-ter (open), it-i'neris (close).

b. The diphthongs ae, oe, are pronounced like e; au like aw; eu like ev; ei and ui like i in kite; es and (in plural words) òs at the end of a word as in disease, morose.

c. The consonants c and g are made soft (like s and j) before e, i, y, ae, oe, eu; ch is always hard, as in chasm, chemist.

NOTE.—The English method should be retained in Roman names in English, as Julius Cæsar; and in familiar quotations, as e pluribus unum; viva voce; vice versa; a fortiori; veni, vidi, vici, etc.

Quantity and Accent.

18. Vowels are long or short (as affecting their pronunciation) only by nature. Syllables (as affecting accent and metrical value) are long or short, according to their vowel, but are also made long by Position through the obstruction of consonants. The length or shortness in both cases is called Quantity (cf. § 347).

NOTE.—Some of the rules of Quantity affect length by nature only, some length by position only, and some both.

a. A vowel before another vowel or h is short: as in via, nihil.

b. A diphthong is long: as in aëdēs, foēdus. So, also, a vowel derived from a diphthong: as, excūdō (ex-claudō).

c. A vowel formed by contraction is long: as, nil (nihil).
d. A syllable in which a vowel is followed by two consonants (except a mute with l or r), or a double consonant (x, z), is long by Position; as in pingō, saxum, Mezentius. Before nf and ns, gn and gm, and i consonant the vowel itself becomes long by nature: as in Īnderō, praesēns, māgnus, āgmen, hīius.

e. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a mute with l or r is common; i.e. it may be long in verse: as in alacris, latebrae.

f. A vowel before nd, nt is regularly short by nature: as, amat, amāndus from amāre.

NOTE.—A vowel is lengthened before l cons. because another l (vowel) is developed as a vanish; thus à(ῶ)yó becomes àiō.

19. In Latin the accent in words of more than one syllable is on the Penult or Antepenult.

DEd1Nt1ON: The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

a. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable: Rōma, ve’hō, ipse.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long: as, amī’cus, praesen’tis; if it is short or common, on the Antepenult: as, do’minus, a’lacris, la’tebrae, conti’nūo, praetes’ritum, dissocia’bilis.

NOTE.—In words of more than four syllables a secondary accent usually arises at a convenient distance from the main accent: as, nāvīgā’tiō’nibus, pecū’liā’tia.

c. When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enditic, whether long or short: as, dē’a’que, āmārē’ve, tīb’i’ne, itā’que (and...so), as distinguished from itā’que (therefore). So (according to some) eur’inde, ec’quando, etc.

d. EXCEPTIONs: 1. Certain apparent compounds of faciō retain the accent of the simple verb: as, bene’fā’cit, caele’fā’cit (see § 169. a) (These were not true compounds, but phrases.)

2. In the second declension the genitive and vocative of nouns in -īus, and the genitive of those in -īum retain the accent of the nominative: as, Cornē’li, Ver’gi’li, in’ge’ni (see § 40. c).

3. Certain words which have lost a final vowel retain the accent of the complete words: as, illī’c for illī’ce, prōdū’c for prōdū’ce, sati’n for sati’sne.

NOTE.—The ancients recognized three accents, acute (‘), grave (‘), and circumflex (‘). Accent no doubt originally consisted in a change of pitch,—elevation, depression, or both combined,—and not merely in a more forcible utterance (ictus). But in Latin this pitch accent had been supplanted by a stress accent in historical times.
Chapter II.—Words and their Forms.

Inflection.

20. Inflection is a change made in the form of a word, to show its grammatical relations.

a. Inflectional changes sometimes take place in the body of a word, or at the beginning, but oftener in its termination: as, *vōx*, a voice; *vōcis*, of a voice; *vocō*, I call; *vocat*, he calls; *vocāvit*, he has called; *tangit*, he touches; *tēgit*, he touched.

b. Terminations of inflection had originally independent meanings which are now obscured. They correspond nearly to the use of prepositions, auxiliaries, and personal pronouns in English; thus, in *vocat*, the termination is equivalent to *he* or *she*; in *vōcis*, to the preposition of or the like; and in *vocet* the change of vowel signifies a change of mood.

c. Inflectional changes in the body of a verb usually denote relations of tense or mood, and correspond to the use of auxiliary verbs in English: as, *frangit*, he breaks or is breaking; *frēgit*, he broke or has broken; *mordet*, he bites; *momordit*, he bit.\(^1\)

Root and Stem.

21. The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called the Stem.\(^2\)

The Stem contains the idea of the word without relations; but, except in the first part of a compound, it cannot be used without some termination to express them. Thus the stem *vōc*- denotes *voice*; with *-s* added it becomes *vōx*, a voice or the voice, as the subject or agent of an action; with *-is* it becomes *vōcis*, and signifies of a voice. The stem is in many forms so united with the termination that a comparison with other forms is necessary to determine it.

---

1 The only proper inflections of verbs are those of the personal endings; and the changes here referred to are strictly changes of Stem, but have become a part of the system of inflections.

2 The name Stem is sometimes incorrectly given to that part of a word—as *serv-* in *servus*—which is unchanged in inflection. This may be called the base.
22. A Root is the simplest form attainable by analysis of a word into its component parts. Such a form contains the main idea of the word in a very general sense, and is common also to other words either in the same or kindred languages.1

Thus the root of the stem vōc- is voc, which does not mean to call, or I call, or calling, but merely expresses vaguely the idea of calling, and cannot be used as a part of speech without terminations. With ā-it becomes vocā-, the stem of vocāre (to call); with āvi- it is the stem of vocāvit (he called); with āto- it becomes the stem of vocātus (called); with ātiōn- it becomes the stem of vocātiōnis (of a calling). With its vowel lengthened it becomes the stem of vōx (a voice; that by which we call). This stem, again, with -ālis added, means belonging to a voice; with -āla, a little voice.

NOTE.—In inflected languages, words are built up from Roots, which at a very early time were used alone to express ideas, as is now done in Chinese. Roots are modified into Stems, which, by inflection, become Words. The process by which roots are modified, in the various forms of derivatives and compounds, is called Stem-building. The whole of this process is originally one of composition, by which significant endings are added one after another to forms capable of pronounciation and conveying a meaning.

Roots had long ceased to be recognized as such before the Latin existed as a separate language. Consequently the forms which we assume as Latin roots never really existed in Latin, but are the representatives of forms used earlier.

23. The Stem is sometimes the same as the root: as in duc-is, of a leader, fer-t, he bears; but it is more frequently formed from the root—

1. By changing or lengthening its vowel: as in scob-s, sawdust (scab, shave); rēg-is, of a king (reg, direct); vōc-is, of a voice (voc, call).

2. By the addition of a simple suffix (originally another root): as in fug-a, flight (fug+a); fugi-s, you fly (fug+ya); pangō, I fasten (pag+na).

3. By two or more of these methods: as in dūc-it, he leads (duc+a), tollō, I raise (tul+ya).

4. By derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language. (See Chap. VIII.)

24. Inflectional terminations are variously modified by combination with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, leading to the various forms of Declension and Conjugation (see § 32).

1 For example, the root sta is found in the Sanskrit tisthāmi, Greek ἱστημι, Latin sistere and stāre, German stehen, and English stand. (See Chap. VIII.)
The Parts of Speech.

25. Words are divided into nine Parts of Speech: Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

a. A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or idea: as, Caesar; Rōma, Rome; domus, a house; virtūs, virtue. Names of persons and places are Proper Nouns; other nouns are called Common.

b. An Adjective is a word that attributes a quality: as, bonus, good; fortis, brave, strong.

Note.—Etymologically, there is no difference between a noun and an adjective, both being formed alike. So, too, all names originally attribute quality, and any name can still be used to attribute a quality. Thus, King William distinguishes this William from other Williams, by the attribute of royalty expressed in the name King.

c. A Pronoun is a word used to distinguish a person, place, thing, or idea without either naming or describing it: as, is, he; quī, who; nōs, we.

d. A Verb is a word which asserts something: as, sum, I am; amat, he loves.

Note.—In all modern speech the verb is usually the only word that asserts anything, and a verb is therefore supposed to be necessary to complete an assertion. Strictly, however, any adjective or noun may, by attributing a quality or giving a name, make a complete assertion. In the infancy of language there could have been no other means of asserting, as the verb is of comparatively late development.

e. A Participle is a word that attributes a quality like an adjective, but being derived from a verb, retains in some degree the power of the verb to assert: as, Caesar cōnāul créātus, Caesar having been elected consul; Caesar Pompēium metuēns, Caesar fearing Pompey.

f. An Adverb is a word used to express the time, place, or manner of an assertion or attribute: as, splendidē mendāx, gloriously false; hodiē nātus, born to-day.

Note.—These same functions are often performed by cases (see §§ 148, 149) of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, and by phrases or sentences. In fact, all adverbs were originally cases or phrases, but have become specialized by use.
g. A Preposition is a word which shows the relation between a noun and some other word or words in the same sentence: per agrōs it, he goes over the fields; ut plūribus unum, one out of many.

NOTE.—Prepositions are specialized adverbs (cf. § 152). The relations expressed by prepositions were earlier expressed by cases.

h. A Conjunction is a word which connects words, phrases, or sentences without affecting their relations: as, et, and; sed, but.

NOTE.—Some adverbs also connect words, etc., like conjunctions. These are called Adverbial Conjunctions or Conjunctive Adverbs: as, ubi, where; dōnec, until.

i. Interjections are mere exclamations. They are not strictly to be classed as Parts of Speech: heus, halloo! ē, oh!

NOTE.—They sometimes express an emotion which affects some other things mentioned, and so have a connection like other words: as, vae victīs, woe to the conquered! (alas for the conquered!)

26. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles have inflections of declension, to denote gender, number, and case. Verbs have inflections of conjugation, to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

NOTE.—Adjectives are often said to have inflections of comparison to indicate degree. These inflections are, however, properly stem-formations made by derivation (cf. § 89).

27. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called Particles: these are Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

NOTE.—The term Particle is sometimes limited to such words as num, -ne, an (interrogative), nōn, nē (negative); sī (conditional), etc., which are used simply to indicate the form or construction of a sentence.

Gender.

28. The genders distinguished in Latin are three: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

a. The gender of Latin nouns is either natural or grammatical. Natural gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, puer, boy; puella, girl; dōnum, gift.

NOTE.—Many nouns have both a masculine and feminine form to distinguish sex: as, cervus, cerva, stag, aoe; cliēns, clienta, client; victor, victrīx, conqueror.

Many designations of persons (as nauta, sailor), usually though not necessarily male, are always treated as masculine.
b. Grammatical gender ¹ is a formal distinction as to sex where no actual sex exists in the object. It is shown by the form of the adjective joined with the noun: as, lapis māgnus (m.), a great stone; manus mea (f.), my hand.

Note.—A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as, mancipium tuum, your slave.

Names of classes or bodies of persons may be of any gender: as, exercitus (m.), aclēs (f.), and āgmen (n.), army; operaē (f. pl.), workmen; cōplae (f. pl.), troops.

Many pet names of girls (as Paępniurn, Glycērum) are neuter.

**General Rules of Gender.**

29. 1. Names of Male beings, Rivers, Winds, Months, and Mountains, are masculine.

2. Names of Female beings, Cities, Countries, Plants, Trees, and Gems, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are feminine.

Note.—The gender of most of the above may be recognized by their terminations, according to the rules given under the several declensions.

a. A few names of Rivers ending in -a (as Allia), with the Greek names Lēthē and Styx, are feminine; others are variable or uncertain.

Some names of Mountains take the gender of their termination: as, Alpēs (f.), the Alps; Sōracte (n.).

Names of Months are properly adjectives, the masculine noun mēnis, month, being understood: as, Iānuārius, January.

b. Some names of Towns and Countries are masculine: as, Sulmō, Gabii (plur.); or neuter, as Tarentum, Illyricum.

A few names of Plants and Gems follow the gender of their termination: as, centaurēum (n.), centaury; acanthus (m.), bear's-foot; opalus (m.), opal.

¹ What we call grammatical gender is in most cases the product of the imagination in a rude age, when language was in the course of growth. Thus a River was seen, or a Wind was felt, as a living creature, violent and strong, and so is masculine; and the fable of Atlas shows how similar living attributes were ascribed to Mountains, which, in the northern fables, are the bones of giants. Again, the Earth, or a country or city, seems the mother of its progeny; the Tree shelters and ripens its fruit, as a brooding bird her nest of eggs; and, to this day, a Ship is always referred to by a feminine pronoun.

Again, in the East and South, the Sun, from its fierce heat and splendor, is masculine, and its paler attendant, the Moon, feminine; while, among Northern nations, the Sun (perhaps for its comforting warmth) is feminine, and the Moon (the appointer of works and days), masculine. The rules of grammatical gender only repeat and extend these early workings of the fancy.
c. Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely for their form, are neuter: as, fās, right; nihil, nothing; gummī, gum; scīre tuum, your knowledge (to know); triste valē, a sad farewell; hōc ipsum diū, this very "long."

30. Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of Common Gender: as, exsul, exile; bōs, ox or cow.

a. If a noun signifying a thing without life may be either masculine or feminine,—as, diēs, day; finis, end,—it is sometimes said to be of Doubtful Gender.

b. Several names of animals have a grammatical gender, independent of sex. These are called Epicene. Thus lepus, hare, is always masculine, and vulpēs, fox, is always feminine. To denote a male fox we may say, vulpēs mascula; a female hare, lepus fēmina.

Number and Case.

31. Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles are declined in two Numbers, singular and plural; and in six Cases, nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, ablative.

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

b. The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or by the Objective with the preposition of.

c. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object (§ 177). It may usually be translated by the Objective with the preposition to or for; but sometimes by the Objective without a preposition.

d. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb (§ 177). It is used also with many of the Latin Prepositions.

e. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

f. The Ablative may usually be translated by the Objective with from, by, with, in, or at. It is also often used with prepositions.

g. All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, may be used as object-cases; and are sometimes called Oblique Cases (cāsūs oblīquī).

NOTE.—A more convenient arrangement of the cases is the following (see n., p. 205):

Direct Cases: Nominative, Vocative, Accusative.

Indirect Cases: Genitive, Dative, Ablative.

h. In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the Locative), denoting the place where.

i. Still another case, the Instrumental, appears in a few adverbs (§ 148).

NOTE.—As the proper inflectional terminations early became fused with the stem in many cases, Latin words are inflected practically by adding case-endings to a part of the noun called the base, which is invariable (see § 21, note 2). But the base and case-endings do not exactly correspond to the proper stem and termination.
CHAPTER III.—Declension of Nouns.

32. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, distinguished by the case-ending of the Genitive Singular, and by the final letter (characteristic) of the Stem.¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl.</th>
<th>Gen. Sing.</th>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>ae</td>
<td>ä (anciently å)</td>
<td>ü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>i or a Consonant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>üs (uis)</td>
<td>ü</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>eĩ</td>
<td>ë</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The Stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant-stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel-stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.

b. The Nominative of most masculine and feminine nouns (except in the first declension) is formed from the stem by adding ś.²

Note.—But many, however, end in o, or in the liquids, l, n, r,—the original ś (sometimes with one or more letters of the stem) having been lost by phonetic decay (§ 11). In some (as in servus, st. servo-) the stem-vowel is modified before the final ś; or, as in ager, imber, st. agro-, imbrī, a vowel has intruded itself into the stem.

33. The following are general Rules of Declension:—

a. The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns in us of the second declension.³

¹ Declension is produced by adding terminations originally significant to different forms of stems, vowel or consonant. The various phonetic corruptions in the language have given rise to the several declensions; but it is probable that originally there was only one, with perhaps a few variations. The original terminations (answering to prepositions) can no longer be determined with certainty, except in a few cases. Most of the case-endings, as given in Latin, contain also the final letter of the stem.

Adjectives are, in general, declined like nouns, and are etymologically to be classed with them. But they have several peculiarities of inflection, and will be more conveniently treated in a group by themselves (see Chap. IV.).

² The ś of the nominative is the remnant of an old demonstrative sa, which is found (with modifications) in the Sanskrit personal pronoun, in the Greek article, and in the English she.

³ In the first and second declensions the vocative ends in the weakened stem-vowel. Most of the words likely to be used in address are of these declensions; and, in practice, comparatively few other words have a vocative. It is given in the paradigms for the sake of symmetry, but may well be omitted in declining.
6. In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in ̀a.

7. The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in ̀m; the Accusative plural in ̀s.

8. In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the Dative singular ends in ̀t.

9. The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

10. The Case-endings of the several declensions are the following, rare forms being given in parenthesis, Greek forms in italics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl. I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. ̀a, ̀e, ̀as, ̀es</td>
<td>us, um, or, os, on, eus (or modified stem)</td>
<td>us, ò</td>
<td>ès</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. ae (̀aī) ̀es</td>
<td>̀is (ius) ̀è, ̀ì, ̀ei</td>
<td>̀is, yos, ̀ös</td>
<td>̀üs (uis)</td>
<td>ò (ò, rare)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. ae (aī) ̀ò (̀i) ̀ei, ̀èò</td>
<td>̀ì</td>
<td>̀ùf (ù)</td>
<td>ò (ò)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. am, àn, ̀èn</td>
<td>um, on, ea</td>
<td>em (im) in, ̀yn, ̀Ì um, ò</td>
<td>em</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. ̀a, ̀è, ̀à</td>
<td>̀è (̀i) ̀er, ̀ea</td>
<td>(as nom.) ̀ì, ̀y</td>
<td>̀ùs, ò</td>
<td>ès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ̀a, ò</td>
<td>ò, òò</td>
<td>ø (ȗ)</td>
<td>̀û, ̀ò</td>
<td>è</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. ae</td>
<td>̀i, ò</td>
<td>ò (ò), ̀a, òa, ̀ès</td>
<td>̀ùs, ùa</td>
<td>ès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. àrum (òùm) ̀òrum (òùm, ̀òòm) ̀òn</td>
<td>um, ̀ium, ̀òèōn</td>
<td>̀ùm</td>
<td>̀ùm, örum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.A. ̀is (òûbs) ̀òûbs (òóbs)</td>
<td>̀is (òûbs)</td>
<td>̀is (òûbs), ̀a, ̀ia, òs</td>
<td>̀ùs, ùa</td>
<td>ès</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIRST DECLENSION.**

34. The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in ̀a, and except in Greek nouns the nominative is like the stem.

Latin nouns of the First Declension are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. stella, a (or the) star.</td>
<td>stellea, stars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. stellae, of a star.</td>
<td>stellàrum, of stars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. stellea, to (or for) a star.</td>
<td>stellías, to (or for) stars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. stellam, a star.</td>
<td>stellàs, stars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. stella, thou star!</td>
<td>stellea, ye stars!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. stelòa, with, from, etc., a star.</td>
<td>stellías, with, from, etc., stars.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — The ̀a- of the stem was originally long.
First Decision: Greek Nouns.

35. Gender.—Nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: Nouns masculine from their signification: as, nauta, sailor. So a few family or personal names: as, Mūrēna, Scaevola.¹ Also, Hadria, the Adriatic.

36. Case-Forms.—a. The Genitive singular anciently ended in -āĩ, which is occasionally found: as, aulāĩ. The same ending occurs in the dative, but only as a diphthong.

b. An old genitive in -ās is preserved in the word familiās, used in the combinations pater (māter, filius, filia) familiās, father, etc., of a family (plur. patrēs familiās or familiārum).

c. The Locative form (§ 31. h) for the singular ends in -ae; for the plural in ēs: as, Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnēs, at Athens.

d. The Genitive plural is sometimes found in -ūm instead of -ārum, especially in compounds with cōla and gēna, signifying dwelling and descent: as, caelicolūm, celestials; Trōiugenūm, sons of Troy; Aeneadūm, sons of Æneas; so amphora and drachma.

e. The Dative and Ablative plural of dea, goddess, filia, daughter, end in an older form -ābus. So rarely with lībērta, freed-woman; mūla, she-mule; equa, mare. But, except when the two sexes (as in formulas, documents, etc.) are mentioned together, the form in -ēs is preferred in all but dea and filia.

f. The original ending of the Ablative -d is retained in early Latin: as, praedād, booty.

Greek Nouns.

37. Many nouns of the first declension borrowed from the Greek are entirely Latinized, but many retain traces of their Greek forms in various degrees.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. aula</th>
<th>Ælectrā (ā)</th>
<th>epitomē</th>
<th>músicā (ē)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. aulae</td>
<td>Ælectrae</td>
<td>epitomēs</td>
<td>músicae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. aulæ</td>
<td>Ælectrae</td>
<td>epitomae</td>
<td>músicam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. aulam</td>
<td>Ælectram (ān)</td>
<td>epitomēn</td>
<td>músicα (ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. aula</td>
<td>Ælectra</td>
<td>epitomē</td>
<td>músicā (ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. aulā</td>
<td>Ælectrā</td>
<td>epitomē</td>
<td>músicā (ē)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ A feminine adjective, used as a noun, meaning little left hand, but from being a name of a man it becomes masculine. Original genders are often thus changed by the use of a noun in another sense.
Etymology: Declension of Nouns.  §§ 37, 38.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Andromachē (a)</th>
<th>Aenēās</th>
<th>Leōnidās</th>
<th>Persēs (a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Andromachēs (ae)</td>
<td>Aenēae</td>
<td>Leōnidae</td>
<td>Persae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Andromachae</td>
<td>Aenēae</td>
<td>Leōnidae</td>
<td>Persae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Andromachēn (am)</td>
<td>Aenēān (am)</td>
<td>Leōnidam</td>
<td>Persēn (am)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>Andromachē (a)</td>
<td>Aenēā (ā)</td>
<td>Leōnidā (ā)</td>
<td>Persa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Andromachē (ā)</td>
<td>Aenēā</td>
<td>Leōnida</td>
<td>Persē (ā)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Anchīsēs</th>
<th>Aeneadēs (ā)</th>
<th>comētēs (a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Anchīsae</td>
<td>Aeneadae</td>
<td>comētæ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Anchīsae</td>
<td>Aeneadae</td>
<td>comētæ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Anchīsēn (am)</td>
<td>Aeneadēn</td>
<td>comētēn (am)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>Anchīsē (ā, ā)</td>
<td>Aeneadē (ā)</td>
<td>comētā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Anchīsē (ā)</td>
<td>Aeneadē (ā)</td>
<td>comētā (ē)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also Scipiadam, from Scipiādēs, in Horace.

a. Many Greek nouns vary between the first, the second, and the third declensions: as, Boōtæ (gen. of Boōtēs, -is), Thūcŷidās (acc. plur. of Thūcŷidēs, -is).  See § 43.  a and § 63.

b. Greek forms are found only in the singular; the plural is regular: as, comētæ, -ārum, etc.  There are (besides proper names) about thirty-five of these words, several being names of plants, or names of arts: as, cramē, cabbage; música, music.  Most have also regular Latin forms: as, comēta, but the nominative sometimes has the a long.

SECOND DECLENSION.

38. The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in ō¹ (as of vir, virō--; servos (-us), servō--; dominus, dominō-).  The nominative is formed from the stem by adding s in masculines and feminines, m in neuters, the vowel ō being weakened to ū (see §§ 7 and 10).

In most nouns whose stem ends in rō- the s is not added, but o is lost, and e intrudes before r, if not already present (cf. chamber from chambre): as, ager, stem agrō-, Greek ἄγρος.  Exceptions are hesperus, icterus, iūniperus, mōrus, numerus, taurus, umerus, uterus, vírus, and many Greek nouns.

¹ This is the original masculine ō-stem corresponding to the ō-stem of the first declension: but the a had already approached o before the separation of the languages (see Appendix).
Latin nouns of the Second Declension are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>slave (M.)</th>
<th>boy (M.)</th>
<th>field (M.)</th>
<th>man (M.)</th>
<th>war (N.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>servus (os)</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
<td>vir</td>
<td>bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>servi</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
<td>bellī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>bellō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>servum (om)</td>
<td>puerum</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>virum</td>
<td>bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>serve</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
<td>vir</td>
<td>bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>bellō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th>servī</th>
<th>puerī</th>
<th>agrī</th>
<th>virī</th>
<th>bella</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>servōrum</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
<td>bellōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>servōs</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>servī</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
<td>bella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>bellīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The earlier forms for nominative and accusative were -os, -on, and these were always retained after u and v up to the end of the Republic. The terminations s and m are sometimes omitted in inscriptions: as, Cornēlio for Cornēllos, Cornēliom.

39. Gender.—Nouns ending in us (os), er, ir, are Masculine; those ending in um (on) are Neuter. But —

a. Names of towns in us (os) are Feminine: as, Corinthus. Also many names of plants and gems, with the following: alvos, belly; carbasus, linen (plural carbasā, sails, n.); colus, distaff; humus, ground; vannus, winnowing-shovel. Many Greek nouns retain their original gender: as, arctus (F.), the Polar Bear; methodus (F.), method.

b. The following in us are Neuter; their accusative, as of all neutrals, is the same as the nominative: pelagus (nom. acc. plur. pelagē), sea; vīrus, poison; vulgus (rarely m.), the crowd; so cētē, sea-monsters (nominative plural without nominative singular).

40. Case-Forms.—a. The Locative form of this declension ends for the singular in ī: as, humī, on the ground; Corinthī, at Corinth; for the plural, in īs: as, Philippīs, at Philippī.

b. The genitive of nouns in ius or ium ended, until the Augustan Age, in a single ī: as, filī, of a son; but the accent of the nominative is retained: as, ingēnī, of genius.1 The same contraction occurs in the genitive singular and the dative and ablative plural of nouns in -ius and -ēius: as, Grāīs, for the Greeks; Pompēī, of Pompey.

1 The genitive in ī occurs twice in Virgil, and constantly in Ovid, but was unknown to Cicero. The first ī was probably retained in sound as y.
c. Proper names in -ius lose e in the vocative, retaining the accent of the nominative: as, Vergili; also, filius, son; genius, divine guardian: as, audi, nifi fili, hear, my son.

d. Greek names in -ius have the vocative -e. Adjectives in -ius form the vocative in -ie, and some of these are occasionally used as nouns: as, Lacedaemonie, oh Spartan.

e. The genitive plural often has um or (after v) om (cf. § 7) for orum, especially in the poets: as, deum, superum, divum, of the Gods, virum, of men. Also in compounds of vir, and in many words of money, measure, and weight: as, s?virum, of the Seviri, nummum, of coins, iugerum, of acres.

f. Deus, god, has vocative deus; plural: nominative and vocative dei or di (for dii); genitive deorum, deum; dative and ablative deis or dis (for diis). For the genitive plur. divum or divom (from divus, divine) is often used.

g. The original ending of the ablative -d is found in early Latin: as, Gnaivod (later, Gnaeo), Cneius.

41. The following stems in ero-, in which e belongs to the stem, retain the e throughout: —

adulter, adulterer; gener, son-in-law; puer, boy;
socer, father-in-law; vesper, evening.

Also, compounds in fer and ger (stem fero-, gerot): as, lucifer, morning star; armiger, squire.

a. Some of these have an old nominative in -erus: as, socerus. So vocative puere, a boy, as from puerus (regularly puer).

b. Vir, man, has the genitive viri; the adjective satur, sated, has satti; vesper, evening, has abl. vespere (loc. vesperi, in the evening).

c. Liberi (a name of Bacchus) has genitive Liber; so, too, the adjective liber, free, of which liberi, children, is the plural (§ 82. b).

d. Iber and Celtiber, barbaric names not properly belonging to this declension, retain e throughout.

e. Mulciber, Vulcan, has -beri and -bri in the genitive.

42. The following not having e in the stem insert it in the nominative and vocative singular. (Cf. § 10. d.)

ager, field, st. agro; coluber, snake; magister, master;
aper, boar; conger, sea-eel; minister, servant;
arbiter, judge; culter, knife; oleaster, wild-olive;
auster, south wind; faber, smith; onager (-grus), wild-ass;
cancer, crab; fiber, beaver; scomber (-brus), mackerel.
caper, goat; liber, book;

[N.B. — For the corresponding forms of Adjectives, see Chap. IV.]
43. Greek nouns—including many names in -eus—are declined as follows in the Singular, the Plural being regular:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Nom.} & : \text{mythos} & \text{parēlion} & \text{Dēlos} & \text{Athōs} (\bar{o}) & \text{Orpheus (M.)} \\
\text{Gen.} & : \text{mýthī} & \text{parēlī} & \text{Dēlī} & \text{Athō (ī)} & \text{Orpheī (eos)} \\
\text{Dat.} & : \text{mýthō} & \text{parēliō} & \text{Dēlō} & \text{Athō} & \text{Orpheī} \\
\text{Acc.} & : \text{mýthon} & \text{parēlion} & \text{Dēlon (um)} & \text{Athōn (um)} & \text{Orphea} \\
\text{Voc.} & : \text{mýthe} & \text{parēlion} & \text{Dēle} & \text{Athōs} & \text{Orpheu} \\
\text{Abl.} & : \text{mýthō} & \text{parēliō} & \text{Dēlō} & \text{Athō} & \text{Orpheō} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{a.} Many names in -ēs belonging to the third declension have also a genitive in -i: as, Thūcydīdēs, Thūcydīdī (compare §§ 37.\textit{a} and 63).

\textit{b.} Several names in -er have also a nominative in -us: as, Teucer or Teucrus. The name Panthūs has the vocative Panthū (§ 63.\textit{i}).

\textit{c.} The genitive plural of certain titles of books takes the Greek termination -ōn: as, Geōrgeticōn, of the Georgics.

\textit{d.} The termination -oe (for Greek -oi) is sometimes found in the nominative plural: as, Adelphoe, the Adelphi (a play of Terence).

**Third Declension.**

Nouns of the Third Declension are best classed according to their stems, as ending (1) in a Vowel (i), (2) in a Liquid (l, n, r), (3) in a Mute.

A few whose stems end in u, formerly long (grūs, sūs), were treated as consonant-stems.

\textbf{1. Mute-Stems.}

44. Masculine and Feminine nouns, whose stem ends in a Mute, form the nominative by adding -s. If the mute is a lingual (t, d), it is suppressed before -s; if it is a palatal (c, g), it unites with -s, forming -x: as, --

\begin{itemize}
\item op-is, ops, help; custōd-is, custōs, guardian; rēg-is, rēx, king.\footnote{In these the genitive is given first to show the stem as it occurs in practice.}
\end{itemize}

Neuters have for the nominative the simple stem (with some modifications, see § 45).

\begin{itemize}
\item capit-is, caput, head; poēmat-is, poēma, poem.
\end{itemize}
45. The vowel before the final consonant of the stem is often modified: —

a. LABIALS. — Stems in *-p* have e before p in the nominative: 1 as, adip-is, adeps. Most stems in *-p* are compounds of the root *cap* (in capiō, take): as, particip-is, particeps, sharer. In these the stem sometimes has the form *cup-*: as, aucup-is, auceps, fowler.

b. LINGUALS. — Stems in *-t* (m. or f.) have e (short) in the nominative: as, hospit-is, hospes. The neuter capit-is has caput. Neuter stems ending in two consonants, and those ending in *-t* (Greek nouns), drop the final lingual: as, cord-is, cor; poēmat-is, poēma.

c. PALATALS. — Stems in *-c* (short i) have the nominative in -ex, with a few exceptions (§ 67. e), and are chiefly masculine: as, apic-is, apex; indic-is, index. Those in *-c* (long i) retain i, and are feminine: as, cornic-is, cornix. 2

46. Nouns of this class are declined as follows: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>help (F.)</th>
<th>king (M.)</th>
<th>guide (C.)</th>
<th>soldier (M.)</th>
<th>head (N.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>op-</td>
<td>réc-</td>
<td>duc-</td>
<td>milit-</td>
<td>capit-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>[ops] 4</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>opis</td>
<td>régis</td>
<td>ducis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>capititis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>opī</td>
<td>rēgi</td>
<td>ducī</td>
<td>militū</td>
<td>capītū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>opem</td>
<td>régem</td>
<td>ducem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>ops</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>ope</td>
<td>rége</td>
<td>duce</td>
<td>milite</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.** wealth

| Nom.  | opēs      | régēs     | ducēs      | militēs       | capita    |
| Gen.  | opum      | régum     | ducum      | militum       | capitum   |
| DAT.  | opībus    | régibus   | ducibus    | militibus     | capītibus |
| ACC.  | opēs      | régēs     | ducēs      | militēs       | capita    |
| VOC.  | opēs      | régēs     | ducēs      | militēs       | capita    |
| ABL.  | opībus    | régibus   | ducibus    | militibus     | capitibus |

1 In these cases e is a less weakened form of the root (§ 10. a). A few whose root-vowel is i follow the analogy of the others: as, indic-is, index.

2 In nix, nivis, the nominative retains a palatal lost in the other cases (original stem *snig-*, compare § 15, and nixit, § 146. a). Supellex (-ectill) is partly a lingual-, partly an 1-stem. Of apparent 8-stems in Latin, ës (assiss) is an 1-stem; and the original stem of *os* (ossis) is *osti* (cf. ὅστοι and Sanskrit asthi). Original 8-stems have either (1) passed into r-stems (changed from 8 (§ 11. a, 1)) in most of the cases, as honor, -ōris, corpus, -ōris (see liquid stems); or (2) have broken down into 1-stems, as móile (cf. molestus), nūbēs ( Sanskrit nabhas), sōde (cf. ἱδωρ), vīs (plur. vīrōs), etc., but váš keeps its proper form in the nominative.

3 Common gender, see § 30.

4 The singular (meaning help) is not used in the nominative, except as the name of a divinity. The dative singular occurs but once.
§ 47. In like manner are declined—

princeps, -ipis (C.), chief; ariēs, -etis (M.), ram;
lapis, -idis (M.), stone; iūdēx, -icis (M.), judge;
custōs, -ōdis (C.), guard; cornīx, -icis (F.), raven;
comes, -itis (C.), companion; poēma, -atis (N.), poem (§ 47. b).

a. Many apparent mute-stems,1 having the genitive plural in -ium, are to be classed with i-stems (§ 54).

b. Greek neuters (as poēma), with nominative singular in -a, frequently end in the dative and ablative plural in -is, and in the genitive plural rarely in -ōrum.

c. A few nouns apparent i-stems belong here: canis, or canēs, gen.
canis (stem orig. can-), dog.

2. Liquid-Stems.

§ 48. In nouns whose stem ends in a Liquid (l, n, r), the nominative is the same as the stem, except when modified as follows:—

a. Stems in ēn- (M. and F.) drop n in the nominative: as in leōn-īs, leō, lion; legiōn-īs, legiō, legion.

b. Stems in dīn- or gīn- (mostly feminine) drop n and keep an original ō in the nominative: as, virgīn-īs, virgō, maiden. Also a few others:2 as, homīn-īs, homō, man; turbin-īs, turbō, whirlpool; Apollīn-īs, Apollō; carnīs, carō, flesh (see § 61); Anīēn-īs, Anīō.

Most other stems in ēn- have e and retain n: as, cornīcin-īs, cornīcen (M.), horn-blower; carmin-īs, carmin-īs, carmen (N.), song.3

c. Stems in tr- have -ter in the nominative: as, patrīs, pater, father; mātrīs, māter, mother.4

d. Many neuter stems in er- and or- (originally s-stems) have -us in the nominative: as, operīs, opus, work; corporīs, corpus, body.

Some stems in er- have -is: as, cinerīs, cinis, ashes.

A few masculine and feminine stems have the nominative in -s as well as -r: as, honōr-īs, honōs (or honor); arbōr-īs, arbōs (or arbor), tree.5

Note.—For some irregular nominatives of this kind, see § 50.

1 That is, as would appear from the nominative.
2 All these had originally ō in the stem.
3 These differences are inherited from the parent speech, and depend upon different modifications of the same original vowel (§ 10).
4 These, no doubt, had originally ter- in the stem, but this had become weakened to tr- in some of the cases even in the parent speech. In Latin only the nom., and voc. sing., show the e. But cf. Mārsptīris and Mārsptīritis (Mā(r)s-pīter).
5 See Note 2, page 26.
e. Stems in ll., rr- (N.) lose one of their liquids in the nominative: as, farr-is, far, *grain*; fell-is, fel, *gall*.

49. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Consul (M.)</th>
<th>Lion (M.)</th>
<th>Maiden (F.)</th>
<th>Name (N.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Consul</td>
<td>Leōn-</td>
<td>Virgin-</td>
<td>Nomin-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Consulis</td>
<td>Leōnis</td>
<td>Virginis</td>
<td>Nominis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Consulī</td>
<td>Leōni</td>
<td>Virginī</td>
<td>Nominī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Consulem</td>
<td>Leōnem</td>
<td>Virginem</td>
<td>Nomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>Consul</td>
<td>Leō</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Nomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Consule</td>
<td>Leōne</td>
<td>Virgine</td>
<td>Nomine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plural     | Consules    | Leōnes    | Virginēs    | Nōmina    |
| Gen.       | Consulum    | Leōnum    | Virginum    | Nōminum   |
| Dat.       | Consulibus  | Leōnibus  | Virginibus  | Nōminibus |
| Acc.       | Consules    | Leōnes    | Virginēs    | Nōmina    |
| Voc.       | Consules    | Leōnes    | Virginēs    | Nōmina    |
| Abl.       | Consulibus  | Leōnibus  | Virginibus  | Nōminibus |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Song.</th>
<th>Body (N.)</th>
<th>Race (N.)</th>
<th>Ivory (N.)</th>
<th>Plain (N.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

St. corpor-, orig. corpor- - gener- orig. gene- ebor-"aequor-

| Nom.       | Corpus      | Genus      | Ebur        | Aequir    |
| Gen.       | Corporis    | Generis    | Eboris      | Aequiris  |
| Dat.       | Corporī     | Generī     | Eborī       | Aequirī   |
| Acc.       | Corpus      | Genus      | Ebur        | Aequor    |
| Voc.       | Corpus      | Genus      | Ebur        | Aequore   |
| Abl.       | Corporē     | Genere     | Ebore       | Aequore   |

| Plural     | Corpora     | Genera     | Ebara       | Aequora   |
| Gen.       | Corporum    | Generum    | Eborum      | Aequorum  |
| Dat.       | Corporibus  | Generibus  | Eboribus    | Aequiribus|
| Acc.       | Corpora     | Genera     | Ebara       | Aequora   |
| Voc.       | Corpora     | Genera     | Ebara       | Aequora   |
| Abl.       | Corporibus  | Generibus  | Eboribus    | Aequiribus|

50. In like manner are declined:

- pater, patris (M.), father;
- furfur, -uris (M.), bran;
- opus, -eris (N.), work;

| Arbor (-ōs), -oris (F.), tree. |
| Honor (-ōs), -ōris (M.), honor. |
| Piagnus, -eris or -oris, pledge. |

1 A foreign word forced into the analogy of the r- (s-) stems.
The following apparently liquid stems have the genitive plural in -ium, and are to be classed with the i-stems: imber, linter, üter, venter; fur, glis, lär, mãš, müš, [tṛēn]; also vīrēs (pl. from vīs: see § 61).

3. Vowel-Stems.

51. Vowel-stems of the Third Declension end in i- (as turris, stem turri-; mare, stem mari-). The nominative, except in neuters, is formed by adding -s to the stem.

a. Thirty-five nouns change i to e in the nominative, and many others vary between i and e: as, cīvēs or cīvis, citizenship; canēs or canis.

b. The nominative of a few stems in bri- and tri- does not add -s, but loses i, inserting e before r. These are imber, linter, üter, venter (§ 54, and cf. ager).

c. The nominative of neuters is the same as the stem, with the change of i to e (as in mare). But when i was preceded by al or ar, the e was lost, as in animal (§ 53.c).

52. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>tower (F.)</th>
<th>cloud (F.)</th>
<th>seat (N.)</th>
<th>animal (N.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>turfri</td>
<td>nubii</td>
<td>sedilli</td>
<td>animiiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>nubēs</td>
<td>sedile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>nubis</td>
<td>sedilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>sitī</td>
<td>turri</td>
<td>nubic</td>
<td>sedilli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>sitim</td>
<td>turrem (im)</td>
<td>nūbem</td>
<td>sedile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>nubēs</td>
<td>sedile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>sitī</td>
<td>turre (ī)</td>
<td>nube</td>
<td>sedili</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 These are acinaces, aedēs, alcēs, caedēs, cautēs, clādēs, compāgēs, contāgēs, famēs, fēlēs, fidēs (pl.), indolēs, lābēs, luēs, mēlēs, mōlēs, nūbēs, palumbēs, prōlēs, prōpāgēs, pūbēs, sēdēs, saepēs, sordēs, strāgēs, struēs, subolēs, tābēs, torquēs, tudēs, vātēs, vehōs, veprēs, verrēs, vulpēs (aedēs has also nom. aedēs).

2 Except in augurāle, collāre, fōcāle, mare, nāvāle, penetrāle, scūtāle, tībiāle; alveāre, capillāre, cochliāre.
53. Nouns of this class include:—

a. Nouns of the third declension in -ēs or -īs (mostly feminine) or -e (neuter) having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (parisyllabic).

b. Those in -er, except pater, māter, frāter, accipiter.

c. Neuters in -al, -ar (originally neuters of adjectives in -ālis, -āris) which have lost a final -e.¹

54. Many nouns with apparently consonant-stems were originally i-stems.² These are—

1. Monosyllables with stem apparently ending in two consonants: as, urbs, mōns (gen. montis), nox (gen. noctis), arx; together with imber, linter, üter, venter (§ 51. b).

2. Stems in tāt- (as civītas, -ātis),³ or in d or t preceded by a consonant (including participles used as nouns); also the monosyllables dōs, [†faux], fūr, glīs, līs, mās, mūs, nīx, [†rēn], strīx, vīs, scrobs (cf. § 50).

3. Nouns denoting birth or abode, having stems in āt-, īt-, originally adjectives: as, Arpīnās, -ātis (§ 164. c.), with penātēs and optimātēs (§ 76. 2).

They are thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing. city (F.)</th>
<th>night (F.)</th>
<th>age (F.)</th>
<th>mouse (M.)</th>
<th>shower (M.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STEM urbi-</td>
<td>nocti-</td>
<td>aetāti-</td>
<td>müri-</td>
<td>imбри-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM. urbs</td>
<td>nox</td>
<td>aetās</td>
<td>mūs</td>
<td>imber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN. urbis</td>
<td>noctīs</td>
<td>aetātīs</td>
<td>mūris</td>
<td>imbris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT. urbī</td>
<td>noctī</td>
<td>aetātī</td>
<td>müřī</td>
<td>imbrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC. urbem</td>
<td>noctem</td>
<td>aetātem</td>
<td>mürem</td>
<td>imbre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC. urbs</td>
<td>nox</td>
<td>aetās</td>
<td>mūs</td>
<td>imber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL. urbe</td>
<td>nocte</td>
<td>aetāte</td>
<td>müre</td>
<td>imbre (I)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ These are animal, bacchānāl, bidental, capital, cervīcal, cubītal, lupercał, minūtāl, puteāl, quadrantāl, toral, tribūnāl, vectīgal; calcar, cochlīar, exemplār, lacūnar, laqueār, lūcar, lūminar, lūpānar, palēar, pulvinar, torcular; with the plurals dentālā, frontālā, genuālīa, rāmālīa, spōnsālīa; altārīa, plantārīa, speculārīa, tālārīa; also many names of festivals as Sāturnālīa.

² The 1-declension was confused even to the Romans themselves, nor was it stable at all periods of the language, early Latin having 1-forms which afterwards disappeared. There was a tendency in nouns to lose the 1-forms, in adjectives to gain them. The nominative plural (-īs) was most thoroughly lost, next the accusative form (-im), next the ablative (-ī); while the genitive and accusative plural (-īum, -īs) were retained in almost all.

³ These, however, more commonly have the genitive plural in -um.
§§ Plur.  
Nom. urbēs  noctēs  aetātēs  mūrēs  imbrēs  
Gen. urbium  noctium  aetātum (ium)  mūrium  imbrium  
Dat. urbibus  noctibus  aetātibus  mūribus  imbribus  
Acc. urbīs (ēs)  noctīs (ēs)  aetātīs (ēs)  mūrīs (ēs)  imbrīs (ēs)  
Voc. urbēs  noctēs  aetātēs  mūrēs  imbrēs  
Abl. urbibus  noctibus  aetātibus  mūribus  imbribus  

Note.—The declension of these nouns in the singular differs in no respect from that of consonant-stems, and in the plural in no respect from that of vowel-stems.  

55. Vowel-stems show the i of the stem in the following forms:—  

a. They all have the genitive plural in -ium (but some monosyllables lack it entirely). For a few exceptions, see § 59.  
b. All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in -ia.  
c. The accusative plural (m. or f.) is regularly -is.  
d. The accusative singular (m. or f.) of a few ends in -im (§ 56).  
e. The ablative singular of all neuters, and of many masculines and feminines, ends in -i (see § 57).  

56. The regular case-ending of the accusative singular of i-stems (m. or f.) would be -im: as, sitis, sitim (cf. stella, -am; servos, -om); but in most nouns this is changed to -em (following the consonant declension).  
a. The accusative in -im is found exclusively—  
1. In Greek nouns and names of rivers.  
2. In būris, cucumis, rāvis, sitis, tussis, vīs.  
3. In adverbs in -tim (being accusative of nouns in -tis), as partim; and in amussim.  
b. The accusative in -im is found sometimes in febris, puppis, restis, turris, secūris, sēmentis, and rarely in many other words.  

57. The regular form of the ablative singular of i-stems would be -i: as, sitis, siti; but in most nouns this is changed to -e.  
a. The ablative in -i is found exclusively—  
1. In nouns having the accusative in -im (§ 56); also secūris.  
2. In the following adjectives used as nouns: aequālis, annālis, aquālis, cōnsulāris, gentīlis, molāris, prīmipilāris, tribūlis.  
3. In neuters (whose nominative ends in -e, -al, -ar): except baccar, iubar, and sometimes (in verse) mare, rēte.
b. The ablative in -i is found sometimes —
   1. In avis, clāvis, febris, fīnis, ūgnis,1 imber, nāvis, ovis, pelvis, puppis, sēmentis, strigilis, turris.
   2. In the following adjectives used as nouns: affīnis, bipennis, canālis, familiāris, nātālis, ūrālis, sapiēns, trīdēns, trīrēmis, vōcālis.

c. The ablative of famēs is always famē (§ 78. 1. e). The defective māne has sometimes locative mānī (§ 77. 2. e) used as ablative.

d. Most names of towns in -e, — as Praeneste, Tergeste, — and Sōracte, a mountain, have the ablative in -e. Caere has Caerētē.

e. For canis, see § 47. c.

58. The regular Nominative plural of i-stems would be -is, but this is very rarely found in nouns. The regular Accusative -is is common, but not exclusively used in any word. An old form for both cases is -ēis (diphthong).

59. The following have -um (not -ium) in the Genitive plural: canis, iuvenis (originally consonant-stems); ambāgēs, mare (once only, otherwise wanting), volucris; also (sometimes) apis, caedēs, clādēs, mēnsis, sēdēs, struēs, subolēs, vātēs, and (very rarely) patrials in -ās, -ātis; -īs, -ītis; as, Arpīnās, Arpīnātum; Samnīs, Samnītum.

4. Irregular Nouns.

60. In many nouns the stem is irregularly modified in the nominative or other cases. Thus —

a. The vowel-stems grū-, sū-, add -s in the nominative, and are inflected like mute-stems: grūs has also a nominative gruis; sūs has both suibus and subus in the dative and ablative plural.

b. In the stem bov- (bou-) the diphthong ou becomes ō in the nominative (bōs, bōvis). In nāv- (nau-) an i is added (nāvis, -is). In Iōv- (= Zeus) the diphthong (ou) becomes ū in Iū-piter (for -pater), gen. Iōvis, etc.

c. In iter, itineris (N.), iecur, iecineris (N.), supellex, supellectilis (F.), the nominative has been formed from a shorter stem, in senex, senis from a longer; so that these words show a combination of two distinct forms. The shorter form is found in the genitive iecor-īs.

d. Of the many original s-stems, only vās, vāsis (N.) (pl. vāsa, -ōrum) (see p. 26, foot-note 2), retains its proper form in the nominative (see § 48. d).

1 Always in the formula aquā et ignī interdici (§ 243. a).
61. Some peculiar forms are thus declined:—


N., V. bōs senex carō os vīs sūs

GEN. bōvis senis carnis ossis vīs (rare) suis

DAT. bovi senī carī ossī vī (rare) sui

ACC. bovem senem carnem os vīm suem

ABL. bove sene carne osse vī sue

Plur. cattle strength

N., A., V. bovēs senēs carēs ossa vīrēs suēs

GEN. boum senum carnium ossium vīrium suum

D., ABL. bōbus senibus carnibus ossibus vīribus sūbus (sūbus)

5. Case Forms.

62. The Locative form for nouns of the third declension ends in the singular in -i or -e: as, rūrī, in the country; Carthāginī or Carthāgine, at Carthage; in the plural in -ibus: as, Trallibus, at Tralles.

Note.—The Locative singular in -e appears to have been first used in poetry.

a. An old ablative is found ending in -d: as, conventiōnīd, dictātōred (cf. praedād, § 36. f; Gnaivōd, § 40. g; magistrātūd, § 70. h).

6. Greek Forms.

63. Many nouns originally Greek—mostly proper names—retain Greek forms of inflection.

a. Stems in īn- (ī long): delphīnus, ī (M.), has also the form delphīn, -inis; Salamīs, īs (F.), has acc. Salamīna.

b. Most stems in īd- (nom. -īs) often have also the forms of i-stems: as, tigrīs, -īdis (-īdos) or -īs; acc. -īdem (-īda) or -īm (-īn); abl. -īde or -ī. But many, including most feminine proper names, have acc. -īdem (-īda), abl. -īde,—not -īm or -ī. (These stems are irregular also in Greek.)

c. Stems in on- sometimes retain -n in the nominative: as, Agamēmnōn (or Agamemnō), -ūnis, accusative -ūna.

d. Stems in ont- form the nom. in -ōn: as, horizōn, Xenophōn; but a few are occasionally Latinized into ōn- (nom. -ō): as, Dracō, -ōnis.

e. Stems in ant-, ent-, have the nom. in -ās, -ās: as adamās, -antis; Simōs, -entis. So a few in ūnt- (contracted from oēnt-) have -ūs: as, Trapezūs, -ūntis. Occasionally the Latin form of nominative is also found: as, Atlāns, elephāns, as well as Atlās, elephās.
f. Many Greek nouns (especially in the poets) have gen. -ος, acc. -α; plur. nom. -ες, acc. -ας: as, ἀερ, aether, crātēr, hērōs (-ος), lampas (-άδις or -άδος), lynx (-ις or -ός), nāis (-ίδος), Orpheus (-eos: see § 43).

g. A few in -νος have acc. -υν, voc. -υ, abl. -υε: as, chelys, -υν, -υ; Capys, -νος, -υ, -υν, -υ, -υς.

h. Several feminine names in -ος have gen. sing. -ος, all the other cases ending in -ο; they may also have regular forms: as, Διδό, gen. Didōnis or Didōs; dat. Didōνι or Didō, etc.

i. Several Greek forms are irregularly retained in the vocative: as, Panthūs, voc. Panthū; Orpheus, Orpheu; Atlās, Atlā; Daphnis, Daphnī; Periclēs, Periclē (cf. § 43).

64. Some of these forms are seen in the following examples:—


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>herōs</td>
<td>lampas</td>
<td>lampadī</td>
<td>lampada</td>
<td>lampade</td>
<td>lampadēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>herōis</td>
<td>lampados</td>
<td>baseōs</td>
<td>basin</td>
<td>basī</td>
<td>basēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>herōi</td>
<td>lampadī</td>
<td>basī</td>
<td>tigrī</td>
<td>naidī</td>
<td>tigrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>herōa</td>
<td>lampada</td>
<td>basin</td>
<td>tigrin (ida)</td>
<td>naida</td>
<td>naide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>herōe</td>
<td>lampade</td>
<td>basī</td>
<td>tigrī (ide)</td>
<td>naides</td>
<td>naidē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.

| N., V. | herōes | lampadēs | basēs | tigrēs | naidēs |
| Gen.   | herōum | lampadum | basium (eōn) | tigrium | naidum |
| D., A.1 | herōibus | lampadibus | basibus | tigribus | naidibus |
| Acc.   | herōās | lampadās | basīs (εīs) | tigrēs (idās) | naidās |

Proper Names.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atlās</td>
<td>Atlantis</td>
<td>Didō</td>
<td>Didōnem (ō)</td>
<td>Didō</td>
<td>Atlante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simoīs</td>
<td>Simoentīs</td>
<td>Simoentă</td>
<td>Simoīs</td>
<td>Simoente</td>
<td>Didōnē (ō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capys</td>
<td>Capyś</td>
<td>Capyn</td>
<td>Capy</td>
<td>Capye</td>
<td>Didōnē (ō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daphnis</td>
<td>Daphnīdīs</td>
<td>Daphnīdī</td>
<td>Daphnī</td>
<td>Daphnī</td>
<td>Daphnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The regular Latin forms can be used for most of the above.


65. The following are general Rules for the Gender of nouns of the third declension, classified according to the termination of the nominative.

1 Dative, hērōisin (once only).
Third Declension.

§ 65, 66.

a. Masculine endings are -ē, -ōr, -ōs, -ēr, -ēs (gen. -īdis, -ītis).

b. Feminine endings are -ās (gen. -ātis), -ēs (gen. -īs), -īs, -yś, -x, -a (following a consonant); also, -ūdō, -gōō, (gen. -ūnis), -ūō (abstract and collective), and -ūs (gen. -ūdis, -ūtis).

c. Neuter endings are -a, -e, -i, -y; -c, -l, -t; -men (gen. -mīnis); -ar, -ur, -ūs (gen. -ēris, -ōris).

66. The following are general Rules for the Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to their stems.

a. Vowel-Stems.—Stems in i-, having -a in the nominative, are Feminine, except those mentioned below (§ 67. a). Those having -ē in the nominative and those in -al and -ar (which have dropped the -e) are neuter.

b. Liquid-Stems.—Stems in l- are Masculine, except sīl, fel, mel, and sometimes sāl (n.).

Those in min- are Neuter, except homō, nēmō, flāmen (m.). Others in in- are masculine, except pollen, unguen (n.). Those in ēn- are masculine. Those in dīn-, gin-, iōn-, abstract and collective nouns, are feminine. Others in ōn-, with cardō, margō, ōrdō, ūniō, sēniō, quaterniō, are masculine.

Those in r- preceded by a short vowel are Neuter, except about 30 given below (§ 67. b). Those in r- preceded by a long vowel are masculine, except soror, uxor, glōs, tellūs (f.); crūs, iūs, pūs, rūs, tūs (thūs) (n.), in which the long vowel is due to contraction.

c. Labial Stems (no neuters).—Stems in b- and m- are Feminine, except chalyba. Stems in p- are chiefly masculine (exceptions below, § 67. c).

d. Lingual Stems.—Stems in ād-, ēd-, id-, ūd-, aud-, nd-, are Feminine, except dromas, vas (vadis), pēs, quadrupēs, obse, praesēs, lapēs (m.). Those in āt-, ēt-, are feminine, except patrials (as Arpīnās), and the masc. plur. penātēs and optimātēs. Those in ēd-, ūt-, are masculine, except mercēs and quiēs with its compounds (f.). Those in ēt-, lēt-, are masculine, except abīēs, mergēs, segēs, tegēs (f.), and those which are common by signification. Those in āt- are neuter; those in nt- various (see list, § 67. d); those in lt-, rt-, feminine. (For a few isolated forms, see list, § 67.)

e. Palatal Stems.—Stems in c- preceded by a consonant or long vowel are Feminine, except calix, decunx, phoenīx, storax, vervēx (m.). Those in c- preceded by a short vowel are chiefly masculine (for exceptions, see list, § 67. e); those in g-, masculine, except [tfrūx], lēx, phalanx, sērinx; also nīx (nīvis) (f.).
67. The following are the Forms of Inflection of nouns of the Third Declension, classed according to their Stems:

\[\text{§ 67.}\]

\textbf{a. Vowel-Stems.}

-ēs, -is: about 35 nouns (see list, § 51. a), feminine, except tudēs, vātēs, verrēs, m.

-īs, -īs: about 100 nouns, chiefly feminine, as felīs, pellīs.

Exc. — aedīlis, amnīs, anguis, c., annālis, antēs (pl.), assis, axis, būris, callīs, c., canālis, c., canis, c., cassis, caulis, cīvis, c., clūnis, c., collīs, crīnis, c., ēnīs, fascis, finīs, c., follīs, finīs, c., justīs, hostīs, c., ignīs, iuvenīs, c., lactēs (pl.), c., larēs (pl.), mānēs (pl.), mēnīs, molāris, nātālis, orbīs, pānis, pedīs, c., piscīs, postīs, sentīs, c., sodālis, testīs, c., torris, ungūnis, vectīs, veprēs (pl.), c., vermis, m. [Those marked c. are sometimes feminine; the rest are masculine.]

-ē, -īs: upwards of 20 nouns, all neuter, as mare, cubīle.

-āl, -ālis; -ār, -āris: 24 neuter, with several used only in the plural, as animal, Sātūrnālia (see list, § 53. c; for those in -ār, -āris, see Liquid Stems).

-ēr, -ris: imber, linter, āter, venter,—all m. except linter, which is commonly f. [For other apparently consonant stems, see below.]

\textbf{Peculiar. — grūs, gruis, f.; rhūs, rhois (acc. rhum), m.; sūs, suis, c., hērōs, hērōs, m.; misy, yos, f.; oxys, yōs, f.; cinnabarī, gumī, sināpī, n. (indecl.); chelys, -yn, -y, f.; bōs, bovis, c.}

\textbf{b. Liquid-Stems.}

-ī, -īnis: 9 nouns, masculine, as cōnsul, sōl, except sīl, and (sometimes) sūl, n.

-ēn, -ēnis: [†vēn], splēn, m.

-ēn, -ēnis: Hūmēn, m.

ēn, -īnis: 10 nouns, m., as tībīcen; except polīn, ungūn, glūten, sanguēn, N.

-mēn, -mēnis (verbal), as āgmen; about 60 nouns, N.; but flāmen, m.

-ōn, -ōnis (Greek): canōn, daemōn, gnōmōn, m.; aēdōn, alocēn, ancōn, sindōn, F.

-ō, -ōnis: about 70 nouns, all masculine, as sermō; with many family names, as Cicerō.

-ō, -ōnis (material objects, etc.), as pugiō: about 30 nouns, masculine.

-ō, -ōnis (abstract and collective), as legiō, regiō: upwards of 180, feminine, including many rare verbal abstracts.

-ō, -inis: homō, turbō, nēmō, Apollō, m.
§ 67. 

Third Declension.

-̀ōː, -̀īnis: nearly 50 nouns, as grandō, feminine except cardō, ȯrdō, M.
-̀ōː, -̀īnis: about 40 nouns, as compāgō, feminine; with margō, M. or F.
-̀āː, -̀āris: baccar, iubar, nectar, N.; lār, salar, M.
-̀ēr, -̀ēris: accipiter, frāter, pater, M., māter, F.
-̀ēr, -̀ēris (mostly Greek): crātēr, haltēr, prestēr, M., vēr, N.
-̀ēr, -̀ēris: āēr, aethēr, M.

-̀ōr, -̀ōris: acipēnser, agger, ānsers, asser, aster, cancer, carcer, later, passer, vesper, vōmer, M.; mulier, F.; acer, cadāver, cicer, lauer, pāpāver, piper, sīler, siser, sūber, tūber, tūber, āber, N.

-̀ēs, -̀ēris: Cerēs, F.
-̀īs, -̀īris: cinis, cucumis, pulvis, vōmis, M.

-̀ōr (-̀ōs), -̀ōris: nearly 70 nouns (besides many denoting the Agent, formed upon verb-stems), as favor, ōrātor, all M. except soror, uxor, F.

-̀ōr, -̀ōris: castor, rhētor, M.; arbor, F.; ador, aequor, marmor, N.

-̀ōs, -̀ōris: fīōs, mōs, rōs, M.; glōs, F.; ēōs, N.

-̀ūr, -̀ūris: ūr, C.

-̀ūr, -̀ūris: 9 masculine, as vultur; with fulgur, guttur, murmur, sul-

-̀ūr, -̀ūris: ebor, femur, iecur, rōbur (-̀us), N.

-̀ūs, -̀ēris: 20 neuter, as genus; also, Venus, F.

-̀ūs, -̀ōris: 14 nouns, as pectus, neuter, except lepus, M.

-̀ūs, -̀ūris: mūs, M.; tellūs, F.; crūs, ēōs, pūs, rūs, tūs (thūs) N.

Peculiar.—Aniō, -̀īenis; delphīn, -̀īnis; sanguīs (-̀en), -̀inis; senex, senīs, M.; carō, carnīs, F.; aes, aerīs; far, farrīs; fēl, fēllīs; mel, mellīs; iter, itinerīs; iecur, ieclīoris (iecōris), N.; glis, glīris, M.

_c._ LABIAL.

-̀bs, -̀bis: chalybs, M.; plēbs, trabs, urbs, F.; scobs, scrobs, C.¹

-̀ms, -̀mis: hiems (often written hiemps), F.

-̀ps, -̀pis: 15 nouns, masculine, as princeps; except [̀daps], merops, 

_ops, stīps, F.; forceps, stirps,² C.

_d._ LINGUAL.

-̀ās, -̀ādis (mostly Greek): 14 nouns, feminine, as lampas; except 

dromas, vas, M.

-̀ēs, -̀ēdis: cūpēs, hērēs, M.; mercēs, F.; also, praes, praedis.

-̀ēs, -̀ēdis: pēs, quadrupēs, M.; compēs, F.

-̀ēs, -̀ēdis: obsēs, praesēs, C.

¹ These five were originally 1-stems. ² Originally 1-stem.
-ís, -ídis: nearly 40 nouns (mostly Greek), as cassis, aegis, F.; lapís, M.
-ōs, -ōdis: custós, C.
-ós, -ótis: nepós, M.; cós, dós, F.; sacerdós, C.
-ús, -údis: incús, palús, subscús; with fraus, laus, pecús (-údis), F.
-ā, -ātis (Greek): nearly 20 nouns, neuter, as poëma.
-ās, -ātis: about 20 (besides derivatives), M., satiās, F.; also, ands (-ātis), C.
-ēs, -ētis: celēs, lebēs, māgnēs, M.; quiēs, requiēs, inquiēs, F.
-ēs, -ētis: ariēs, pariēs, M.; abiēs, F.
-ēs, -ētis: seges, teges, F.; interpres, C.
-ēs, -ētis: about 20, masculine or common, as stēpes, hospes.
-ūs, -ūtis: inuentūs, salūs, senectūs, servitūs, virtūs, F.
-ns, -ndis: frōns, glāns, iuglāns, F.
-ns, -ntis: nearly 20 (besides many participles used as nouns), common, as infāns; dēns, fōns, mōns, pōns, M.; frōns, gēns, lēns, mēns, F.
-ns, -ntis (originally i-stems): ars, pars, cohors, foris, Mārs, mors, sors, F.
-ŷs, -ŷdis; -s, -ntis (Greek): chlamys, F.; Atlās, -antis, M.

E. PALATAL.

-ax, -ācis: anthrax, corax, frāces (pl.), ἰαναξ, scolōpax, M.; fax, styrax (storax), F.
-āx, -ācis: cnōdāx, cordāx, limāx, thōrāx, M.; pāx, F.
-ēx, -ēcis: ālēx, M. or F.; vervēx, M.
-ex, -īcis: upwards of 40 nouns, masculine, as apex, vertex, except cārex, forfex, ilex, imbrex, nex (nēcis), pellex, F. (imbrex also M.)
-ix, -īcis: appendix, coxendix, filix, fornix, larix, salix, struix, vārix, F.
-ix, -īcis: about 30 nouns, feminine, as cervīx, rādīx; besides many in -trīx, regular feminines of nouns of agency in -tor (§ 162. a).
-ōx, -ōcis: celōx, vōx, F.
-ux, -ūcis: dux, C.; crux, nux, F.
-ūx, -ūcis: balux, lāx, F.
-x, -cis: arx, calx, falx, lynx, merx (def.), F.; calx, calyx, M.
-x, -gis: coniux (-nx), grex, rēmex (gen. -gis), rēx, M. or C.; [tfrāx] (def.), léx, phalanx, F.; with a few rare names of animals.

Other nouns in -x are nix, nivis; nox, noctis; supellex, -ectilis, F.; onyx, -ychis, M. and F.; Styx, Stygis, F.
FOURTH DECLENSION.

68. The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in u-. This is usually weakened to i before -bus. Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative by adding -s; neuters have for nominative the simple stem, but with ū (long).

Nouns of the fourth declension are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>hand (f.)</th>
<th>lake (m.)</th>
<th>knee (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>Stem manus</td>
<td>lacu-</td>
<td>genu-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>lacus</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>genu (ūs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manuī (ū)</td>
<td>lacuī (ū)</td>
<td>genu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manum</td>
<td>lacum</td>
<td>genu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>lacus</td>
<td>genui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manū</td>
<td>lacū</td>
<td>genu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.

|       | manūs          | lacūs          | genua          |
| Nom.  | manuum         | lacuum         | genuum         |
| Gen.  | manibus        | lacubus        | genibus        |
| Dat.  | manūs          | lacūs          | genna          |
| Acc.  | manūs          | lacūs          | genua          |
| Voc.  | manūs          | lacūs          | genibus        |
| Abl.  | manibus        | lacubus        | genibus        |

Note.—The fourth declension is only a modified form of the third. The relation is seen in the following parallel forms, uncontracted (of the third) and contracted (of the fourth).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>manus</th>
<th>manuīs (ūs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>†manuīus (ūs)</td>
<td>manuīm (um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manuī (ū)</td>
<td>manuibus (ibus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manum</td>
<td>†manuēs (ūs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>†manuēs (ūs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>†manuē (ū)</td>
<td>manuibus (ibus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

69. Gender.—a. Most nouns in -us are Masculine. The following are Feminine: acus, anus, colus, domus, īdūs (pl.), manus, nurus, porticus, quīnquātrūs (pl.), socrus, tribus, with a few names of plants and trees. Also, rarely, arcus, penus, specus.

b. The only neuters are cornū, genū, pecū (§ 78. 1. ε), verū.

70. Case-Forms.—a. The uncontracted form -uis (sometimes -uos) is sometimes found in the genitive, as senāturos; and an old (irregular) genitive in -ī is used by some writers: as, ornātī, senātī.
b. The nominative plural has rarely the form -uus.

c. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted into -um.

d. The following retain the regular dative and ablative plural in -ūbus: artus, partus, portus, tribus, verū; also disyllables in -cus: as, lacus (but sometimes portibus, veribus).

e. Most names of plants, and colus, distaff, have also forms of the second declension.

f. Domus, house, has (either originally, or by mistake) two stems ending in u- and o- (cf. gen. in -i, § 70. a), and is declined as follows:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. domus</td>
<td>domuēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. domūs (domī, loc.)</td>
<td>domuum (domōrum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. domūi (domō)</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. domum</td>
<td>domōs (domūs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. domō (domū)</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

g. The only locative form of the fourth declension is domūl. But even this is rare, and domī is almost universally used instead.

h. An old form of the ablative ends in -d: as, magistrātūd (cf. § 62. a).

71. Most nouns of the fourth declension are formed from verb-stems, or roots, by means of the suffix -tus (-sus) (cf. § 163. b): as, cantus, song, canō, sing; cāsus (for cad-tus), change, canō, cadō, fall; exsulātus, exile, from exsulō, to be an exile (exsul). Many are formed either from verb-stems not in use, or by analogy: as, cōnsulātus (as if from fconsulo, -āre), senātus, incestus.

a. The Supines of verbs (§ 109. c) are the accusative and ablative (or dative, perhaps both) of derivatives in -tus (-sus): as, auditūm, memorātū.

b. Of many verbal derivatives only the ablative is used as a noun: as, iūsū (meō), by (my) command; so iniūsū (populī), without (the people’s) order. Of some only the dative: as, memorātuī, dīvīsūī.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

72. The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in -ē, which appears in all the cases. The nominative is formed from the stem by adding -s.

---

1 The forms in parenthesis are less common. But the form domī is regular as locative, though genitive in Plautus; domōrum is poetic.
These nouns are thus declined—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. thing (F.)</th>
<th>PLUR. Stem rē-</th>
<th>SING. day (M.)</th>
<th>PLUR. diē-</th>
<th>faith (F.) fīdē-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>fīdēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rēī</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>diēī (diē)</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>fīdēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rēī</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>diēī (diē)</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>fīdēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rem.</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>fīdēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>fīdēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>fīdē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — The ē has been shortened in the genitive and dative singular of fīdēs, spēs, rēs, but in these it is found long in early Latin.

73. Gender. — All nouns of this declension are feminine, except diēs (usually m.), day, and meridēst (m.), noon. Diēs is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, and regularly feminine when used of time in general: as, longa diēs, a long time; consitūtā diē, on a set day; also in the poets: as, pulchra diēs, a fine day.

74. Case-Forms. — a. The Genitive singular anciently ended in -ēs (cf. -ās of first declension, § 36. b). The genitive ending -ēī was sometimes contracted into -ē, -ī, or -ē: as, diī (Æn. i. 636), and the phrases plēbī-scriūm, tribūnus plēbē. An old Dative in -ī or -ē also is mentioned by grammarians.

b. The fifth declension is only a variety of the first, and several nouns have forms of both: as, māteria, -iēs; saevitia, -iēs.1 The genitive and dative in -ēī are rarely found in these words.

c. The Locative form of this declension ends in -ē (cf. dative -ē under d). It is found only in certain adverbs and expressions of time: as, hodīē (for hoi-diē, cf. huico), to-day; perendīē, day after to-morrow; diē quartō (old, quarto), the fourth day; prīdīē, the day before.

d. Of nouns of the fifth declension, diēs and rēs only are declined throughout. Most want the plural, which is, however, found in the nominative and accusative in the following: aciēs, effigiēs, éluiēs, faciēs, glaciēs, seriēs, speciēs, spēs.2

1 Nouns in -iēs (except diēs) are original s-stems. The others are probably (excepting rēs) corrupted s-stems, like mōlēs (cf. moles-tus); diēs, cf. diurnus; spēs (cf. spērō). Some vary between the fifth and the third declension: as, requīēs, satīēs (satiēs, gen. -ātēs), plēbēs (plebs, plēbis), famōs (famōs, gen. -īs).

2 The forms faciērum, speciērum, speciēbus, spērum, spēbus, are cited by grammarians, also spērēs, spērībus.
Etymology: Declension of Nouns. [§§ 75, 76.

DEFECTIVE NOMENS.

75. Some nouns are ordinarily found in the Singular number only (singulāria tantum). These are —

1. Most proper names: as, Caesar, Cæsar; Gallia, Gaul.
2. Names of things not counted, but reckoned in mass: as, aurum, gold; aēr, air; triticum, wheat.
3. Abstract nouns: as, ambitio, ambition; fortitūdō, courage; calor, heat.

But many of these are used in the plural in some other sense. Thus —

a. A proper name may be applied to two or more persons or places, or even things, and so become strictly common: as, duodecim Cæsarēs, the twelve Caesars; Galliae, the two Gauls (Cis- and Trans-alpine); Castōrēs, Castor and Pollux; Iovēs, images of Jupiter.

b. Particular objects may be denoted: as, aera, bronze utensils, nīves, snowflakes; or different kinds of a thing: as, aērēs, airs (good and bad).

c. The plural of abstract nouns denotes occasions or instances of the quality, or the like: as, quaedam excellentiae, some cases of superiority; ōtia, periods of rest; calōrēs, frigora, times of heat and cold.

76. Some nouns are commonly found only in the Plural (plurālia tantum (cf. § 79. c)). Such are —

1. Many proper names: as, Athēnae, Athens, Thúriī, Philippī, Vēlī, names of towns, Adelphoe (The Adelphi), the name of a play; but especially names of festivals and games: as, Olympia, the Olympic Games; Bacchānālia, feast of Bacchus; Quīnquātrūs, festival of Minerva; lūdī Rōmānī, the Roman Games.

2. Names of classes: as, optimātēs, the upper classes; māiorēs, ancestors; ĭberī, children; penātēs, household gods.

3. Words plural by signification: as, arma, weapons; artūs, joints; dīvītiae, riches; scālae, stairs; valvae, folding-doors; forēs, double-doors.

These often have a corresponding singular in some form or other, as noun or adjective.

a. As noun, to denote a single object: as, Bāchānāl, a spot sacred to Bacchus; optimum, an aristocrat.

b. As adjective: as, Catō Māior, Cato the Elder.

c. In a sense rare, or found only in early Latin: as, scāla, a ladder; valva, a door; artūs, a joint.
77. Many nouns are defective in case-forms:—

1. Indeclinable nouns: fās, nefās, instar, necesse, nihil, opus (need), secus.

2. Nouns found in one case only (monoptotes): as.—
   a. In the nom. sing. glōs, F.
   b. In the gen. sing. dicis, naucī, N.
   c. In the dat. sing. memoratūf, M. (cf. § 71. b).
   d. In the acc. sing. amussim, M.
   e. In the abl. sing. pondō, N.; māne, N. (Both also treated as indeclinable nouns. Of māne an old locative form mānū is found.) iūssū, iniūssū, M. (§ 71. b).
   f. In the acc. plur. īnfitiās, suppetiās.

3. Nouns found in two cases only (diptotes).
   a. In the nom. and abl. sing. fors, forte, F.; astus, astū, M.
   b. In the gen. and abl. sing. spontis, sponte, F.
   c. In the dat. and acc. sing. vēnūf (vēnō in Tac.), vēnum, M.
   d. In the acc. sing. and plur. dicam, dicās, F.
   e. In the acc. and abl. plur. forās, forīs, F. (cf. forēs).

4. Nouns found in three cases only (triptotes).
   a. In the nom., acc., and abl. sing. impetus, -um, -ū (M.); luēs, -em, -ē (F.).
   b. In the nom., acc., and dat. or abl. plur. grātēs, -ibus (F.).
   c. In the nom., gen., and dat. or abl. plur. iūgera, -um, -ibus (N., but iūgerum, etc., in the sing., cf. § 78. 1. b).

5. Nouns declined regularly in the plural, but defective in the singular.
   a. Nouns found in the sing., in gen., dat., acc., abl.: diciōnis, -ī, -em, -ē (F.); frūgis, -ī, -em, -ē (F.); opis, -ī (once only), -em, -ē (F., nom. as a divinity, see § 46).
   b. Nouns found in the dat., acc., abl.: precī, -em, -ē (F.).
   c. Nouns found in the acc. and abl.: cassem, -e (F.); sordem, -e (F.).
   d. Nouns found in the abl. only: ambēge (F.); fauce (F.); obice (C., nom. obex rare).

6. Nouns regular in the singular, defective in the plural.
   a. iūs and rūs have only iūra, rūra.
   b. calx, cor, cōs, crux, fax, faex, lūx, nēx, ōs, pāx, pīx, praes, rōs, sāl, sōl, tūs (thūs), vas, want the genitive plural.
   c. Most nouns of the fifth declension want the whole or part of the plural (see § 74. d).
7. Nouns defective in both singular and plural.
   c. Nouns found in the gen., dat., acc., and abl. sing.; gen. plur. wanting: dapis, -i, -em, -e.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

78. Many nouns vary either in Declension or Gender.

1. In Declension (heteroclites, nōmina abundantia).
   a. colus (f.), distaff; domus (f.), house (see § 70. f), and many names of plants in -us, vary between the second and fourth declensions.
   b. Some nouns vary between the second and third: as, iūgerum, -ī, abl. -e, plur. -a, -um, etc.; Mulciber, gen. -berī and -beris; seques-ter, gen. -trī and -tris; vās, vāsis, and vāsum, -ī.
   c. Some vary between the second, third, and fourth: penus, penum, gen. -i and -oris, abl. penū.
   d. Many nouns vary between the first and the fifth (see § 74. b).
   e. requiēs has gen. -ētis, dat. wanting, acc. -ētem or -em; famēs has abl. famē (§ 57. c); pūbēs (pūbis, pūber) (m.) has -eris, -em, -e; pecus has pecoris, etc., but also nom. pecū, dat. pecui; pl. pecua, pecuum, pecubus.
   f. Many vary between different stems of the same declension: femur (n.), gen. -oris, also -inis (as from fīfemen); iecur (n.), gen. iecinorris, iocinoris, iecoris; mūnus (n.), pl. mūnera and mūnia.

2. In Gender (heterogeneous nouns).
   a. The following have a masculine form in -us and a neuter in -um: balteus, cāseus, clipeus, collum, cingulum, pīleus, tertum, vāllum, with many others of rare occurrence.
   b. The following have in the plural a different gender from the singular:

- balneum (N.), bath; balneae (F.), baths (an establishment).
- caelum (N.), heaven; caelōs (M. acc.).
- carbasus (F.), a sail; carbasā (N.), sails (-ōrum).
- dēlicium (N.), pleasure; dēliciae (F.), pet.
- epulum (N.), feast; epulae (F.), feast.
- frēnum (N.), a bit; frēnī (M.) or frēna (N.), a bridle.
- iocas (M.), a jest; io(ī) (N.), io(ī) (M.).
- rāstrum (N.), a rake; rāstrī (M.), rāstra (N.).
- locus (M.), place; loca (N.), locī (M., usually topics, spots).
79 [79. c in old edition]. Many nouns have irregularities of Number either in their ordinary or occasional use.

a. Many nouns vary in meaning as they are found in the Singular or Plural: as,—

aedēs, -is (F.), temple;  
aqua (F.), water;  
auxiliōn (N.), help;  
bonum (N.), a good;  
carcer (M.), dungeon;  
castrum (N.), fort;  
cōdicillus (M.), bit of wood;  
comitium (N.), place of assembly;  
cōpia (F.), plenty;  
fidēs (F.), harp-string;  
finis (M.), end;  
fortūna (F.), fortune;  
grātia (F.), favor (rarely, thanks);  
hortus (M.), a garden;  
impeđimentum (N.), hinderance;  
littera (F.), letter (of alphabet);  
locus (M.), place [pl. loca (N.)];  
lūdus (M.), sport;  
nātālis (M.), birthday;  
opera (F.), work;  
[ops] opis (F.), help ($\S$ 46);  
paris (F.), a part;  
plāga (F.), region;  
rōstrum (N.), beak of a ship;  
sāl (M. or N.), salt;  
tabella (F.), tablet;  
aedēs, -ium, house.  
aquae, a watering-place.  
auxilia, auxiliaries.  
bona, property.  
carcerēs, barriers (of race-course).  
castra, camp.  
cōdicilli, tablets.  
comitia, an election (town-meeting).  
cōpiae, troops.  
fidēs, lyre.  
finēs, bounds, territories.  
fortūnae, possessions.  
grātiae, thanks (also, the Graces).  
hortī, pleasure-grounds.  
impeđimenta, baggage.  
litterae, epistle.  
locī, topics.  
(loci, topics. (In early writers the regular plur.)  
lūdī, public games.  
nātālēs, descent.  
operae, day-laborers ("hands").  
opēs, resources, wealth.  
partēs, part (on the stage), party.  
plāgae, snares.  
rōstra, speaker's platform.  
salēs, witticisms.  
tabellae, documents, records.

b. The singular of a noun usually denoting an individual is sometimes used collectively to denote a group: as, Poenus, the Carthaginians; miles, the soldiery; eques, the cavalry.

c. Of many nouns the plural is usually, though not exclusively, used (cf. $\S$ 76): as, cervīcēs, the neck; Quīrītēs, Romans; vīscera, flesh; faucēs, throat.
d. The poets often use the plural number for the singular, sometimes for metrical reasons, sometimes from a mere fashion: as, ὅρα (for ὁς), the face; σceptra (for sceptrum), sceptre; silentia (for silentium), silence (cf. §75. c).

PROPER NAMES.

80. A Roman had regularly three names, denoting the person, the gens, and the family.

a. Thus, in the name Marcus Tullius Cicero, we have Marcus, the praenomen, or personal name (like a Christian or given name); Tullius, the nomen (properly an adjective), i.e. the name of the gens, or house, whose original head was a (real or supposed) Tullus; Cicero, the cognomen, or family name, often in its origin a nickname,—in this case from cicer, a vetch, or small pea.

 NOTE.—When two persons of the same family are mentioned together, the cognomen is usually put in the plural: as, Publius et Servius Sullae.

b. A fourth or fifth name was sometimes given. Thus the complete name of Scipio the Younger was Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus: Africanus, from his exploits in Africa; Aemilianus, as adopted from the Aemilian gens.

c. Women had commonly in classical times no personal names, but were known only by the nomen of their gens. Thus, the wife of Cicero was Terentia, and his daughter Tullia. A younger daughter would have been called Tullia secunda or minor, and so on.

d. The commonest praenomens are thus abbreviated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Aulus.</th>
<th>L. Lucius.</th>
<th>Q. Quinctus.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

e. A feminine praenomen is sometimes abbreviated with an inverted letter: as, Ϙ for Gaia (Caia).

1 The Romans of the classical period had no separate name for these additions, but later grammarians invented the word agnomen to express them.
Chapter IV. — Adjectives.

Inflection.

Adjectives and Participles are in general formed and declined like Nouns, differing from them only in their use. In accordance with their use, they distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, and correspond with their nouns in gender, number, and case. They are (1) of the First and Second Declensions, or (2) of the Third Declension.¹

1. First and Second Declensions.

81. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (a- and o-stems) are declined in the Masculine like servus, in the Feminine like stella, and in the Neuter like bellum; as, —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. F. N.</td>
<td>M. F. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem bono-</td>
<td>bonā-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. bone</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most Latin adjectives and participles are either o-stems with the corresponding feminine a-stems, or i-stems. Many, however, were originally stems in u- or a consonant, which passed over, in all or most of their cases, into the i-declension, for which Latin had a special fondness. (Compare the endings -ēs and -īs of the third declension with the Greek -es and -as; nāvis (nom.) with the Greek ναύς; βραχύς with brevis; cornū with bicornis; lingua with bilinguis; cor, corde, corda, with discors, -di, -dia, -diu; suāvis with ἱδές; ferēns, -entis, with φέρων, -οντα.) A few, which in other languages are nouns, retain the consonant-form: as, vetus = ἔτος. Comparatives also retain the consonant form in most of their cases.
Etymology: Adjectives.

§§ 81–83.

a. The masculine genitive singular of Adjectives in -ius ends in -ii, and the vocative in -ie; not in -i, as in Nouns (cf. § 40, b, c): as, Lacedaemonius, -ii, -ie.

Note. — The possessive meus, my, has the vocative masculine mi (cf. § 98. 3).

82. Stems ending in ro- preceded by e or a consonant (also satur) form the masculine nominative like noun-stems in ro- of the second declension (cf. puer, ager, § 38). They are thus declined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>N. miser</th>
<th>miserum</th>
<th>niger</th>
<th>nigra</th>
<th>nigrum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>miser</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>niger</td>
<td>nigra</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>miserf</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserf</td>
<td>nigrf</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>miserf</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserf</td>
<td>nigrf</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miseram</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>miser</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>niger</td>
<td>nigra</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>miserf</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserf</td>
<td>nigrf</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.

| N. miserf | miserae | misera | nigrf | nigrae | nigra |
| G. miserorum | miserarum | miserorum | nigrorum | nigra | nigrum |
| D. miseris | miseris | miseris | nigris | nigris | nigris |
| Ac. miseris | miseris | misera | nigris | nigras | nagra |
| V. miseris | miseris | misera | nigris | nigrae | nigra |
| Ab. miseris | miseris | misera | nigris | nigras | nigras |

a. Stems in ero- (as prōcērus), with mōrigērus, propērus, have the regular nominative masculine in -us.

b. Like miser are declined asper, gibber, lacer, liber, prosper (also prosperus), satur (-ura, -urum), tener, with compounds of -fer and -ger: as, saetiger, -era, -erum, bristle-bearing; also, usually, dexter. In these the e belongs to the stem; but in dextra it is often omitted: as, dextra manus, the right hand.

c. Like niger are declined aeger, āter, crēber, faber, glaber, integer, lūdicer, macer, piger, pulcher, ruber, sacer, scaber, sinister, taeter, vafer; also the possessives noster, vester (p. 64. 3).

d. The following feminines lack a masculine singular nominative in classic use: cētera, Īfera, postera, supera. They are rarely found in the singular except in certain phrases: as, posterō dieā, the next day.

Note.—A feminine ablative in -ō is found in a few Greek adjectives: as, lectīca octophorō (Verr. v. 27).

83. The following o-stems with their compounds have the genitive singular in -ius (one only having -ius) and the dative in -i in all genders:
§§ 83, 84. | Inflection of Adjectives. 49

alius (N. aliud), other. totus, whole. alter,1 -terius, the other.
nullus, no, none. ullus, any. neuter, -trius, neither.
solus, alone. unus, one. uter, -trius, which (of two).

Of these the singular is thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>unus</td>
<td>una</td>
<td>unum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>unus</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>unum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>um</td>
<td>unam</td>
<td>unum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ali</td>
<td>ali</td>
<td>alium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>alto</td>
<td>alto</td>
<td>alto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural of these words is regular, like that of bonus (§ 81).

b. The i of the genitive-ending -ius, though originally long, may be made short in verse. Alterius is generally accented on the antepenult, as having the i permanently shortened.

Instead of alius, alterius is commonly used, or in the possessive sense the adjective alienus, belonging to another, another’s.

In compounds — as alteriter — sometimes both parts are declined, sometimes only the latter. Thus, alteri utri or alterutri, to one of the two.

2. Third Declension.

Adjectives of the third declension are of one, two, or three terminations.

84. Adjectives of the third declension having stems in i. — distinguished by being parasyllabic (§ 53. a) — have but one form for both Masculine and Feminine, and one for the neuter, and hence are called adjectives of two terminations. In the neuter the nominative ends in -e.

They are declined as follows:—

1 The suffix -ter, in alter, uter, neuter is the same as the Greek comparative suffix -tereo(s). The stem of alius appears in early Latin and in derivatives as ali- in the forms allis, alid (for alius, aliud), alter, etc. The regular forms of the genitive and dative (as in bonus) are also found in early writers.

2 The genitive in -ius, dative in -i, and neuter in -d are pronominal (cf. § 101).
Etymology: Adjectives.

lēvis (stem levi-), light.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M., F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>levis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>levis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>levī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>levem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>levī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following stems in ri- have the masc. nom. in -er: ācer, alacer, campester, celeber, equester, palūster, pedester, puter, salūber, silvester, terrester, volucer, and are called adjectives of three terminations. So also, celer, celeris, celere; and names of months in -ber (cf. § 51. b): as, Octōber.

These are declined as follows:

ācer, keen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācrai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — This formation is comparatively late, and hence, in the poets and in early Latin, either the masculine or the feminine form of these adjectives was sometimes used for both genders: as, coetus alacris (Enn.). In others, as faenebris, fūnebris, illustris, lugubris, mediocris, müllebris, there is no separate masculine form at all. Thus:

illustris, brilliant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>illustris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illustris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illustrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illustrēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illustrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Case-Forms. — Adjectives of two and three terminations, being true i-stems, retain in the ablative singular -ē, in the neuter plural -ia, in the genitive plural -ium, and in the accusative plural regularly -īs (see § 55 and p. 30, n. 2). But the forms of some are doubtful.

Note. — For metrical reasons, an ablative in -ē sometimes occurs in poetry.
§§ 84, 85. Inflection of Adjectives.

84. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are Consonant-stems; but all except Comparatives have the form of i-stems in the ablative singular -i, the nominative, accusative and vocative plural neuter -ia, and the genitive plural -ium. In the other cases they follow the rule of Consonant-stems.

NOTE.—The ablative singular of these words often has -e.

These adjectives (except comparatives) have the same nominative singular for all genders, and hence are called adjectives of one termination.¹ All except stems in l- or r- form the nominative singular from the stem by adding -s.

a. Adjectives of one termination are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>atrōx, fierce</th>
<th>egēns, needy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M., F.</td>
<td>atrōx</td>
<td>egēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>atrōcis</td>
<td>egentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>atrōcī</td>
<td>egenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>atrōcī or atrōx</td>
<td>egentem or egēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>atrōcem</td>
<td>egentem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>atrōcī or atroce</td>
<td>egenti or egēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>atrōcēs</td>
<td>egentēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>atrōcium</td>
<td>egentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>atrōcibus</td>
<td>egentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>atrōcīs (ēs)</td>
<td>egentīs (ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>atrōcibus</td>
<td>egentibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The regular feminine of these adjectives, by analogy of cognate languages, would end in -ia: this form does not appear in Latin adjectives, but is found in the abstracts āmentia (from āmēns), dēsida (from dēses), sōcordia (from sōcors), etc., and in proper names, as Flōrentia (cf. Greek φέρουσα for φέρων-ία). The neuter would regularly have in the nominative and accusative singular the simple stem, as caput, cor(d-), alēc, Greek φέρον(τ-); but in all except liquid stems the masculine form in -s has forced itself not only upon the neuter nominative, but upon the accusative also, where it is wholly abnormal.
b. Other examples are the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concors, harmonious.</th>
<th>Iëns, going.</th>
<th>Pär, equal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>M., F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V. concors</td>
<td>iëns</td>
<td>pär</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. concordis</td>
<td>euntis</td>
<td>päris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. concordi</td>
<td>eunti</td>
<td>parī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. concordem concors</td>
<td>euntem iëns</td>
<td>darem pär</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. concordi</td>
<td>eunte (ī)</td>
<td>parī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>M., F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V. praeceps</td>
<td>dīves</td>
<td>über</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. praecipitís</td>
<td>divitis</td>
<td>überis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. praecipitī</td>
<td>diviti̇</td>
<td>überī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. praecipitem praeceps</td>
<td>divitem dīves</td>
<td>überem über</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. praecipitī</td>
<td>divite</td>
<td>übere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V. praecipitēs praecipitia divitēs [dītia] überēs übera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. praecipitium¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D., Abl. praecipitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. praecipitēs (ēs) praecipitia divitēs (ēs) divitia überēs übera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vetus, old.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V. vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. veterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. veterem vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. vetere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** — Of these vetus is originally an s-stem. In most s-stems the r has intruded itself into the nominative also, as bi-corpor (for bi-corpos), dégener (for dé-genēs).

c. A few adjectives of one termination, used as nouns, have a feminine form in -a: as, clienta, hospita, with the apppellative Iūnō Sōspita.

¹ Given by grammarians, but not found.
3. Comparatives.

86. Comparatives are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Stem melior- for melios-</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M., F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meliöris</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>meliöri</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>meliörem</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>meliöre or meliöri</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>meliöres</td>
<td>meliöra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meliörum</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>meliöribus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>meliöris (ēs)</td>
<td>meliöra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>meliöribus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The stem of comparatives properly ended in os-; but this became or- in all cases except the neuter singular (N., A., V.), where s is retained, and 8 is changed to ū (cf. honōr, -ōris; corpus, -ōris). Thus comparatives appear to have two terminations.

b. The neuter singular plús is used only as a noun. The genitive (rarely ablative) is used as an expression of value (cf. § 252. a). The dative is not found in classic use. The compound complūrés, several, has sometimes neuter plural complūría.

All other comparatives are declined like melior.

4. Case-Forms.

87. In adjectives of Consonant stems the following Case-forms are to be remarked:—

a. The Ablative singular commonly ends in -ī; but adjectives used as nouns (as superstes, survivor) have -e. Participles in -ns used as such (especially in the ablative absolute, § 225), or as nouns, regularly have -e; but participles used as adjectives have regularly -ī.

The following have uniformly -ī: āmēns, anceps, concors (and other compounds of cor), cōnsors (but as a substantive, -e), dēgener, hebes, ingēns, inops, memor (and its compounds), pār (in prose), perpes, praeceps, praepeps, teres.

b. In the following, -e is the regular form of the ablative: caeles, compos, [†dēses], dīves, hospes, pauper, particeps, princeps, superstes, sospes; also in patrials (see § 54. 3) and stems in āt-, ìt-, nt-, rt-, when used as nouns, and sometimes when used as adjectives.
c. The genitive plural ends commonly in -ium. The accusative plural regularly ends in -is, even in comparatives, which are less inclined to the i-declension.

d. The genitive plural ends in -um:—

1. Always in dīves, compos, inops, particeps, princeps, praepes, supplex, and compounds of nouns which have -um: as, quadrupēs, bi-color.

2. Sometimes, in poetry, in participles in -ns: as, silentum concilium, a council of the silent shades (Virg.).

e. In vetus (gen. -ēris), pūbes (gen. -ēris), ūber (gen. -ēris), which did not become i-stems, the endings -e (abl. sing.), -a (neut. nom. acc. plur.), -um (gen. plur.) are regular. (Ūber has also -ē in abl.)

f. 1. Several adjectives vary in declension: as, gracilis (-us), hilaris (-us), inermis (-us), bicolor (-ōrus).

2. A few are indeclinable: as, damnās, frūgī (really a dat. of service, see § 233), nēquam (originally an adverb).

3. Several are defective: as, (a) exspēs (only nom.), exlēx (exlēgem) (only nom. and acc. sing.), pernox (pernocte) (only nom. and abl. sing.); (b) primōris, sēminecī, etc., which lack the nom. sing.

4. Potis is often used as an indeclinable adjective, but sometimes has pote in the neuter.

5. Special Uses.

88. The following special uses are to be observed:—

a. Many adjectives have acquired the meaning and construction of nouns: as, amicus, a friend; aequālis, a contemporary; māiōrēs, ancestors (see p. 47, head-note, and § 188).

b. Many adjectives, from their signification, can be used only in the masculine and feminine. These may be called adjectives of common gender. Such are adulēscēns, youthful; [†dēses], -īdis, slothful; inops, -opis, poor; sōspes, -ītis, safe. Similarly, senex, old man, and iuvenis, young man, may be called masculine adjectives.

c. Many nouns may be used as adjectives: as, pedes, a footman or on foot (see § 188, d'). Such are especially nouns in -tor (m.) and -trix (f.), denoting the agent (§ 162. a): as, victor exercitus, the conquering army; victrix causa, the winning cause.

d. Certain forms of many adjectives are regularly used as adverbs. These are, the accusative and ablative of the neuter singular (§ 148. d, e): as, multum, multō, much; the neuter singular of comparatives (see § 92): as, melius, better; levius, more lightly.

Note.—Adverbs ending in -ē and -ēr were also once case-forms: as, cārē, dearly; levīter, lightly; ācerrimē, most eagerly (§ 148. a, b).
COMPARISON.

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison: the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

1. Regular Comparison.

89. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding -ior (neuter -ius\(^1\)), the Superlative by adding -issimus (-a, -um) to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel: as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carus, dear (st. caro-)</td>
<td>carior, dearer</td>
<td>carissimus, dearest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levis, light (st. levi-)</td>
<td>levior, lighter</td>
<td>levissimus, lightest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felix, happy (st. felic-)</td>
<td>felicior, happier</td>
<td>felicissimus, happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hebès, dull (st. hebet-)</td>
<td>hebetior, duller</td>
<td>hebetissimus, dullest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative. The comparative is regular: as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acer, keen</td>
<td>acrior, acerrimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, wretched</td>
<td>miserior, miserrimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So vetus (gen. veteris) has superlative veterrimus, from the old form veter; and matūrus, besides its regular superlative (matūrisimus), has a rare form matūrrimus.

For the comparative of vetus, vetustior (from vetustus) is used.

b. The following in -lis add -limus to the stem clipped of its vowel: facilis (st. facili-), difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis. The comparative is regular: as, facilis, easy; facilior, faciliimus.

c. Compounds in -dicus (saying), -ficus (doing), -volus (willing), take in their comparison the forms of corresponding participles in -ns, which were anciently used as adjectives: as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maledicus, slanderous</td>
<td>maledicentior, maledicentissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malevolus, spiteful</td>
<td>malevolentior, malevolentissimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Adjectives in -us preceded by any vowel but u rarely have forms of comparison, but are compared by means of the adverbs magis, more; maxime, most: as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>idoneus, fit</td>
<td>magis idoneus, maxime idoneus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — But pius has plissimus.

---

\(^1\) The comparative suffix (earlier -los) is the same as the Greek -loγ, or the Skr. -iyans. That of the superlative (-issimus) is a double form; perhaps for -los- timus (comparative and superlative), or possibly for -ist-timus (two superlatives). The endings -limus and -rimus are formed by assimilation (§11./) from -timus and -simus. The comparative and superlative thus formed are new stems, and are not strictly to be regarded as forms of inflection.
Most derivatives in -icus, -idus, -alis, -aris, -īs, -ulūs, -undus, -timus, -inus, -īvus, -ōrus, with compounds (as dēgener, inops) are also compared by means of magis and māximē.

e. Participles when used as adjectives are regularly compared: as,—
patiēns, patient; patientior, patientissimus.
apertus, open; apertior, apertissimus.

f. A form of diminutive is made upon the stem of some comparatives: as, grandius-culus, a little larger (see § 164. a).

2. Irregular and Defective Comparison.

90. Several adjectives have in their comparison irregular forms: as,—

bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.
malus, pēior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.
māgnus, māior, māximus, great, greater, greatest.
parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.
multus, plūs (N.) (§ 86. b), plūrimus, much, more, most.
multī, plūres, plūrimī, many, more, most.
nēquam (indecl.), nēquior, nēquissimus, worthless (cf. § 87. f. 2).
frūgī (indecl.), frūgiātor, frūgāllissimus, useful, worthy (cf. § 87. f. 2).
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right, handy.

Note.—These irregularities arise from the use of different stems (cf. § 89. c).

91. Some Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive:1 —

a. The following are formed from stems not used as adjectives:—
cis, citrā (adv. on this side): citerior, citimus, hither, hithermost.
in, intrā (prep. in, within): interior, intimus, inner, inmost.
prae, prō (prep. before): prior, primus, former, first.
prope (adv. near): propior, proximus, nearer, next.
ūltrā (adv. beyond): últerior, últimus, farther, farthest.

b. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):—

1 The forms in -trā and -terus were originally comparative (cf. alter), so that the comparatives in -terior are double comparatives. Inferus and superus are comparatives of a still more primitive form (cf. the English comp. in -er).
The superlatives in -timus (-tumus) are relics of old forms of comparison; those in -mus likeimus, summus, primus, are still more primitive. Forms like extrāmus are superlatives of a comparative. In fact, comparison has always been treated with an accumulation of endings, as children say furtherer and furtherest.
Comparison of Adverbs.

§§ 91, 92. | exterus, exterior, extrémus (extimus), outer, outmost.
[Inferus], inferior, infimus (imus), lower, lowest (§ 82. a).
[posterus], posterior, postrémus (postumus), latter, last.
[superus], superior, suprémus or summus, higher, highest.

The plurals, _exterī_, foreigners; _inferī_, the gods below; _posterī_, posterity; _superī_, the heavenly gods, are common.

c. From _iuvenis_, youth, _senex_, old man (cf. § 88. b), are formed the comparatives _junior_, younger, _senior_, older. For these, however, _minor nātū_ and _māior nātū_ are sometimes used (nātū being often omitted). The superlative is regularly expressed by _minimus_ and _māximus_, with or without nātū.

Note.—In these phrases nātū is ablative of specification (see § 253).

a. In the following, one or other of the forms of comparison is wanting:
1. The positive is wanting in _dēterior_, _dēterrimus_; _ōciōr_, _ōcis-simus_; _potior_, _potissimus_.
2. The comparative is wanting in _bellus_, _caesius_, _falsus_, _fidus_ (with its compounds), _inclusus_ (or _inclitus_), _invictus_, _invītus_, _novus_, _pius_, _sacer_, _vafer_, _vetus_ (§ 89. a).

Note.—Many adjectives—as _aureus_, golden—are from their meaning incapable of comparison; but each language has its own usage in this respect. Thus _niger_, glossy black, and _candidus_, shining white, are compared; but not _āter_ or _albus_, meaning absolute dead black or white (except that Plautus once has _ātrior_).

3. Comparison of Adverbs.

92. The comparative of Adverbs is the neuter accusative of the comparative of the corresponding Adjective; the superlative is the Adverb in _ē_ formed regularly from the superlative of the Adjective: as,—

cārē, dearly (from _cārus_, dear): _cārius_, _cāriissimē_

misērē (miseriter), wretchedly (from _miser_, wretched): _miserius_, _miserissimē_.

leviter (from _levis_, light): _levīus_, _levissimē_.

audācter (audāciter) (from _audāx_, bold): _audācius_, _audācissimē_.

benē, well (from _bonus_, good): _melius_, _optīmē_.

malē, ill (from _males_, bad): _pēius_, _pessimē_.
The following are irregular or defective: —

diū, long (in time); diūtius, diūtissimē.
potius, rather; potissimum, first of all, in preference to all.
saepe, often; saepius, often, again; saepissimē.
satis, enough; satius, preferable.
secus, otherwise; secius, worse.
multum (multō), magis, maximē, much, more, most.
parum, not enough, minus, less, minimē, least.

4. Signification.

93. Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows: —

a. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as, brevior, rather short; audacior, too bold.

b. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality without implying a distinct comparison: as, maximus numerus, a very great number. With quam, vel, or ānus it denotes the highest possible degree: as, quam plurimē, as many as possible; quam maximē potest (maximē quam potest), as much as can be; virum ānnum doctissimum, the one most learned man.

c. With quisque, each, the superlative has a peculiar signification. Thus the phrase dītissimus quisque means, all the richest (each richest man); prīmus quisque, all the first (each first man in his order).1

Two superlatives with quisque imply a proportion: as,—
sapientissimus quisque aequissimō animō moritur (Cat. Maj. 83), the wisest men die with the greatest equanimity.

d. A high degree of a quality is also denoted by such adverbs as admodum, valdē, very, or by per or prae in composition (§ 170. c): as, valdē malus, very bad = pessimus; permagnus, very great; praesaltus, very high (or deep).

e. A low degree of a quality is indicated by sub in composition: as, subrūstiticus, rather clownish; or by minus, not very; minimē, not at all; parum, not enough; nōn satis, not much.

f. The comparative māiōrēs has the special signification of ancestors (cf. §§ 88. a, 91. c).

g. The comparative minōrēs often means descendants.

1 As in taking things one by one off a pile, each thing is uppermost when you take it.
94. Cardinal numbers are the regular series of numbers used in counting. Ordinal numbers\(^1\) are adjectives derived from these to express order or place.

**Note.**—Cardinal numbers answer the question *quot? how many?* Ordinal numbers, the question *quotus? which in order? one of how many?*

These two series are as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL</th>
<th>ORDINAL</th>
<th>ROMAN NUMERALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <em>one.</em></td>
<td>primus, -a, -um, <em>first.</em></td>
<td>I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. duo, duae, duo, <em>two.</em></td>
<td>secundus (alter), <em>second.</em></td>
<td>II.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. trēs, tria, <em>three.</em></td>
<td>tertius, <em>third.</em></td>
<td>III.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. quattuor (quātuor)</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
<td>IV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. quīnque</td>
<td>quīntus</td>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>VI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>VII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
<td>VIII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
<td>IX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>X.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. ūndecim</td>
<td>ūndecimus</td>
<td>XI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td>XII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. tredecim (decem et trēs)</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td>XIII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. quattuordecim</td>
<td>quārtus decimus</td>
<td>XIV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. quīndecim</td>
<td>quīntus decimus</td>
<td>XV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. sēdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>XVI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>XVII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)</td>
<td>duodēvīcēnsimus</td>
<td>XVIII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)</td>
<td>ūndēvīcēnsimus</td>
<td>XIX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. vigintī</td>
<td>vīcēnsimus (vīgensimus)</td>
<td>XX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. vigintī ūnus</td>
<td>vīcēnsimus primus</td>
<td>XXI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The Ordinals (except *secundus, tertius, octāvus*) are formed by means of the same suffixes as superlatives. Thus *decimus* (compare the form *infimus*) may be regarded as the last of a series of ten; *primus* is a superlative of the stem of *prō*; the forms in -*tus* (*quārtus, quīntus, sextus*) may be compared with the corresponding Greek forms in -*tos*, and with *πρότος*, superlative of *πρό*; *nōnus* is contracted from *novimus*; while the others have the regular superlative ending -*simus*. Of the exceptions, *secundus* is a participle of *sequor*; and *alter* is a comparative form (compare -*repos* in Greek). The multiples of ten are compounds of the unit with a fragment of *decem*: as, *vigintī = dvi-ginti* (duldecem-tī?).
CARDINAL.  
30. triginta  
40. quadrāginta  
50. quīnquāginta  
60. sexāginta  
70. septuāginta  
80. octōginta  
90. nōnāginta  
100. centum
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.
200. ducentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī
400. quadringentī
500. quīngentī
600. sexcentī
700. septingentī
800. octingentī
900. nōngentī
1000. mille
5000. quīnque milia (millia)
10,000. decem milia (millia)
100,000. centum milia (millia)

ORDINAL.  
trīcēnsimus  
quadrāgēnsimus  
quīnquāgēnsimus  
sexāgēnsimus  
septuāgēnsimus  
ocēnsimus  
nōnāgēnsimus  
centēnsimus  
centēnsimus prīmus, etc.
ducentēnsimus  
trecentēnsimus  
quadringentēnsimus  
quīngentēnsimus  
sexcentēnsimus  
septingentēnsimus  
octingentēnsimus  
nōngentēnsimus  
millēnsimus  
quīnquiēns millēnsimus  
deciēns millēnsimus  
centiēns millēnsimus

ROMAN NUMERALS.  
XXX.  
XL.  
L.  
LX.  
LXX.  
LXXX.  
XC.  
c.  
C.
Cl.
CC.
CCC.
CD.
DCC.
DCCC.
DCCCC.
CCI33.
CCCI333.

Note.—The forms in -ēnsimus are often written without the n: as, vicēsimus, etc.

a. For the inflection of ūnus, see § 83. It often has the meaning of same or only. The plural is used in this sense; but also, as a simple numeral, to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning: as, ūna castra, one camp (cf. § 95. b).

The plural occurs also in the phrase ūnī et alterī, one party and the other (the ones and the others).

b. Duo,1 two, and ambō, both, are thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>duo</th>
<th>duae</th>
<th>duo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>duōs (duo)</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Trēs, tria, three, is an i-stem, and is regularly declined like the plural of levis (see § 84). The other cardinal numbers, up to centum (100), are indelensible.

1 The form in -o is a remnant of the dual number, which was lost in Latin, but is found in cognate languages.
The forms octōdecim, novendecim are rare, duodēvigintī, undēvigintī being used instead. Similar forms for higher numbers are occasionally found: as, duōdēquadragintā, thirty-eight; undecentum, ninety-nine.

d. The hundreds, up to 1000, are o-stems, and are regularly declined like the plural of bonus.

e. Mille, a thousand, is in the singular an indeclinable adjective. In the plural (mīlia or millia, thousands), it is used as a neuter noun, with a genitive plural. Thus, cum mille hominibus, with a thousand men; but cum duōbus mīlibus hominum, with two thousand men.\(^1\)

Note.—The singular mille is sometimes found as a noun in the nominative and accusative: as, mille hominum misit; but in the other cases only in connection with the same case of mīlia: as, cum octō mīlibus pedītum mille equītum, with eight thousand foot and a thousand horse.

f. The ordinals are o-stems, and are declined like bonus.

2. Distributives.

95. Distributive Numerals are declined like the plural of bonus.

Note.—These answer to the interrogative quotēnī? how many of each, or at a time? as,—

1. singuli, one by one. 18. octōni dēnī or 100. centēnī
2. bīnī, two-and-two. duodēviciēnī 200. ducēnī
3. ternī, trinī 19. novēnī dēnī or 300. trecēnī
4. quaternī ūndēviciēnī 400. quadringenī
5. quīnī 20. viciēnī 500. quīngeni
6. sēnī 21. viciēnī singuli, etc. 600. sēsēnī
7. septēnī 30. tricēnī 700. septingeni
8. octōnī 40. quadrāgēnī 800. octingeni
9. novēnī 50. quīnquāgēnī 900. nōngeni
10. dēnī 60. sexāgēnī 1000. mille
11. ūndēnī 70. septuāgēnī 2000. bīna mīlia
12. duōdēnī 80. octōgēnī 10,000. dēna mīlia
13. ternī dēnī, etc. 90. nōnāgēnī 100,000. centēna mīlia

Distributives are used as follows:—

a. In the sense of so many apiece or on each side: as, sīngula sīngulis, one apiece (one each to each one); agrī septēna iūgera plebī dīvīsa sunt, i.e. seven jugera to each citizen (seven jugera each). etc.

---

\(^1\) Or, in poetry, cum bis mille hominibus, with twice a thousand men.
b. Instead of Cardinals, to express simple number, when a noun is plural in form but singular in meaning: as, bīna castra, two camps (duō castra would mean two forts). But the plural únī is used (instead of singulī), to signify one (see § 94. a), and trīnī (not ternī) for three.

c. In multiplication: as, bis bīna, twice two; ter septēnis diēbus, in thrice seven days.

d. By the poets instead of cardinal numbers, particularly where pairs or sets are spoken of: as, bīna hastilia, two shafts (two in a set).


96. The Numeral Adverbs answer the question quotiēns (quotiēs), how many times, how often.

1. semel, once. 12. duodeciēns 40. quadrāgiēns
2. bis, twice. 13. terdecieāns 50. quinquāgiēns
3. ter, thrice. 14. quaterdecieāns 60. sexāgiēns
4. quater 15. quīndecieāns 70. septuāgiēns
5. quīnquēs (ēs) 16. sēdecieāns 80. octōgiēns
6. sexiēns (ēs) 17. septīesdecieāns 90. nōnāgiēns
7. septicēs (ēs) 18. duodevīciēns 100. centieāns
8. octiēns 19. ūndēvīciēns 200. ducentieāns
9. noviēns 20. vīciēns 300. trecentieāns
10. deciēns 21. semel et vīciēns, etc. 1000. mīliēns
11. ūndeciēns 30. trīciēns 10,000. decīciēns mīliēns

Note.—They are used, in combination with mille, to express the higher numbers: as, ter et triciēns (centēna milia) sēstertium, 3,300,000 sesterces. Forms in -ns are often written without the n: as, quīnquēs.

4. Other Numerals.

97. The adjectives simplex, single, duplex, double, two-fold, triplex, quadru-, quīncu-, septem-, decem-, centu-, sēsqu- (1½), multi-plex, manifold, are called Multiplicatives.

a. Proportionals are: duplus, triplus, etc., twice as great, etc.

b. Temporals: bīmus, trīmus, of two or three years’ age; biennis, triennis, lasting two or three years; bimēstris, trimēstris, of two or three months; biduum, biennium, a period of two days or years.

c. Partitives: bīnārius, ternārius, of two or three parts.

d. Fractions: dimidia pars (dimidium), a half; tertia pars, a third.

Note.—But fractions are regularly expressed by special words derived from ās (a pound) and the numerals: as, triēns, a third; bēs, two-thirds.

e. Other derivatives are: únīō, unity; bīnīō, the two (of dice); prīmānus, of the first legion; prīmārius, of the first rank; dēnārius, a sum of 10 asses; bīnus (distributive), double, etc.
# Chapter V. — Pronouns.

## 98. Pronouns have special forms of declension.

**Note.** — These special forms are, in general, survivals of a more primitive form of declension than that of nouns.

### 1. Personal Pronouns.

The Personal pronouns of the first person are *ego, I, nōs, we*; of the second person, *tu, thou, vōs, ye or you*.

**First Person.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>ego, I</em>;</td>
<td><em>nōs, we</em>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>meī, of me</em>;</td>
<td><em>nostrum (trī), of us</em>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>mihi (mī), to me;</em></td>
<td><em>nōbis, to us</em>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>mē, me</em>;</td>
<td><em>nōs, us</em>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>mē, by me</em>;</td>
<td><em>nōbis, by us</em>;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Second Person.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>tu, thou</em>;</td>
<td><em>vōs, ye or you</em>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>tuī, you</em>;</td>
<td><em>vostrum, vostrī; vestrūm (trī)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>tibi</em></td>
<td><em>vōbis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>tē</em></td>
<td><em>vōs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td><em>tū</em></td>
<td><em>vōs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><em>tē</em></td>
<td><em>vōbis</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* The personal pronouns of the third person — *he, she, it, they* — are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being sometimes used (see § 101).

*b.* The plural *nōs* is often used for the singular *ego*; the plural *vōs* never for the singular *tu*.

*c.* Old forms are genitive, *mīs, tīs*; accusative and ablative *mēd, tēd* (cf. § 70. *k*).

### 2. Reflexive Pronouns.

Reflexive pronouns are used in the Oblique Cases to refer to the Subject of the sentence or clause (see § 196).

*a.* In the first and second persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as Reflexives: as, *mē contulī, I went* (I betook myself); *tē laudās, you praise yourself; nōbis persuādēmus, we persuade ourselves.*
b. The reflexive pronoun of the Third Person has a special form used only in this sense, the same for both singular and plural. It is thus declined:

**GEN.** suī, of himself, herself, themselves.

**DAT.** sibi, to himself, herself, themselves.

**ACC.** sē (sēsē), himself, herself, themselves.

**ABL.** sē (sēsē), by himself, herself, themselves.

Sīs (genitive) and sēd (accusative and ablative) are ancient.

### 3. Possessive Pronouns.

The Possessive pronouns are, for the first person: meus, my, noster, our; for the second person: tuus, thy, your, voster, vester, your; for the third person: suus, his, her, their. These are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions (see §§ 81, 82). But meus has regularly mī (rarely meus) in the vocative singular masculine.

**NOTE.**—Suus is only reflexive, referring to the subject. For a possessive pronoun of the third person not referring to the subject, the genitive of a demonstrative must be used. Thus, patrem suum occidit, he killed his (own) father; but patrem eius occidit, he killed his (somebody else's) father.

### 99. In the meaning and use of the Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive pronouns it is to be observed that—

**a.** To express Possession and similar ideas the possessive pronouns must be used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns (cf. § 197. a). Thus, my father is pater meus, never pater meī.

**b.** The forms nostrūm, vostrūm, etc., are used partitively: as,—

unusquisque nostrūm, each one of us; so
vostrūm omnium, of all of you.

**NOTE.**—The forms of the genitive of the personal pronouns are really the genitives of the possessives: meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vostī, gen. sing. neuter: nostrūm, vostrūm, gen. plur. masc or neuter contracted. So in early and later Latin we find una vestrārum, one of you (women).

**c.** The genitives meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī, are chiefly used objectively (see § 213. n.) as,—

memor sis nostrī, be mindful of us (me).

mē tuī pudet, I am ashamed of you.
d. The reciprocals *one another* and *each other* are expressed by *inter se* or *alter...alterum*: as,—

alter alterius óva frangit, *they break each other's eggs* (one...of the other).
inter se amant, *they love one another* (they love among themselves).

e. The preposition *cum, with*, is joined enclitically with the ablative of the personal and reflexive pronouns: as, *tēcum loquitur, he talks with you.*

f. To the personal and reflexive (and sometimes to the possessive) pronouns certain enclitics are joined for emphasis: -met to all except *tū* (nom.); -te to *tū* (*tūte, also tūtimet*); -pte to the ablative singular of the adjectives, and in early Latin to the others: as,—

vōsmetipsōs prōditis, *you betray your own very selves.*
suōpte pondere, *by its own weight.*

4. Demonstrative Pronouns.

100. The Demonstrative pronouns are *hīc, this; is, ille, iste, that;* with the Intensive *ipse, self,* and *īdem, same.¹*

a. *Ille* is a later form of *ollus (olle),* which is sometimes used by the poets; a genitive singular in -ī, -ae, -ī, occurs in *ille* and *iste.*

b. *Iste* is sometimes found in early writers in the form *ste,* etc., with the entire loss of the first syllable; and the first syllable of *ipse* and *ille* is very often used as short in early poetry.

c. *Ipse* is compounded of *is* and -pse (for -pte, from the same root as *potis*) (cf. § 99.f), meaning *self.* The former part was originally declined, as in *reāpse (for rē eāpse), in fact.* An old form *ipsus* occurs.

Īdem is the demonstrative *is* with the affix -dem.

---

¹ These demonstratives are combinations of o- and i-stems, which are not clearly distinguishable. *Hīc* is a compound of the stem *ho-* with the demonstrative enclitic -ce, which appears in full in early Latin (*hīce*), and when followed by the enclitic -ne (*hīcine*). In most of the cases -ce is shortened to -c, and in many lost; but it is often appended for emphasis to forms that do not regularly retain it (as hūlusce). In early Latin -c alone is retained in some of these (*hūrunc*), *ille* and *iste* are sometimes found with the same enclitic: *illīc, illaec, illūc;* also *illōc* (acc. or abl.: § 101. p. 67).
101. The demonstratives are used either with nouns as Adjectives, or alone as Pronouns. From their signification they cannot (except ipse) have a vocative. They are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hic, this.</td>
<td>is, that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. huius huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. huiuoc</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AbL. hoc</td>
<td>hac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. hūrum hārum</td>
<td>hūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AbL. hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLURAL.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. idem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ēiusdem</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eandem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eōdem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Idem**, the same.

**iste, ista, istud**, that (yonder), is declined like **ille**.
Ille and iste are combined with the demonstrative -ce. Thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>illōc</td>
<td>illaec</td>
<td>illōc(illāc)</td>
<td></td>
<td>istīc</td>
<td>istaec</td>
<td>istōc (istūc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illunct</td>
<td>illanc</td>
<td>illōc(illāc)</td>
<td></td>
<td>istunci</td>
<td>istanc</td>
<td>istōc (istūc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illōc</td>
<td>illāc</td>
<td>illōc</td>
<td></td>
<td>istōc</td>
<td>istāc</td>
<td>istōc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.
N., Acc. illaec istaec

a. For the dative and ablative plural of hic the old form hibus is sometimes found; haec occurs (rarely) for hae.

b. The normal forms illī, istī (gen.), and illae, istae (dat.), are found; also the nominative plural istaece, illaecce (for istae, illae).

c. The plural forms ī, īs, īdem, īsdem, are often written īī, īīs, etc. Obsolete forms are eae (dat. for ī), and eābus or ībus (dat. plur. for īs). For ī are found also ēī and ēīl.

d. By composition with ecce or ēn, behold! are formed eccum, eccam, eccōs, eccās; eccillum, ēllum, ēllam, ēllōs, ēllās; eccistam. These forms are dramatic and colloquial.

e. The combinations hūiusmodī (hūiuscemodī), ēiusmodī, etc., are used as indeclinable adjectives, equivalent to tālis, such: as, rēs ēiusmodī, such a thing (a thing of that sort: compare § 215).

102. In the use of these demonstratives it is to be observed that—

a. Hic is used of what is near the speaker (in time, place, thought, or on the written page). It is hence called the demonstrative of the first person. It is sometimes used of the speaker himself; sometimes for "the latter" of two persons or things mentioned in speech or writing; more rarely for "the former," when that, though more remote on the written page, is nearer the speaker in time, place, or thought.

b. Ille is used of what is remote (in time, etc.); and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. It is sometimes used to mean "the former" (see under hic, a); also (usually following its noun) of what is famous or well-known; often (especially the neuter illūd) to mean "the following."

1 The intensive -ce is also found in numerous combinations; as, hūiusce, huncce, hōruncce, hāruncce, hōsce, hīsce, hisce (cf. n., p. 65), illuscce, isce; also with the interrogative -ne, in hōcine, hōscine, istūcine, illicine, etc. The intensive -pse is found in the forms eapse (nom.), eumpse, eampse, eōpse, eūpse (abl.).
68  

**Etymology: Pronouns.**  

---

c. *Iste* is used of what is *between the two others* in remoteness: often in allusion to the person addressed,—hence called the *demonstrative of the second person*. It especially refers to one's opponent (in court, etc.), and frequently implies a kind of contempt.

d. *Is* is a weaker demonstrative than the others and does not denote any special object, but refers to one just mentioned, or to be afterwards explained by a relative. It is used oftener than the others as a personal pronoun (see §g8. i. a); and is often merely a correlative to the relative *qui*: as, *eum quem, one whom; eum consulem qui nōn dubitet* (Cic), *a consul who will not hesitate.*

e. *Ipse* may be used with a personal pronoun of either person, as *nōs ipsī* (nōsmetipsī), *we ourselves*; or independently (the verb containing the pronoun, or the context implying it), as *ipsī adestis, you are yourselves present*; or with a noun, as *ipsī fontēs* (Virg.), *the very fountains.*

**Note.**—In English, the pronouns *himself, etc.*, are used both intensively (as, *he will come himself*) and reflexively (as, *he will kill himself*): in Latin the former would be translated by *ipse*; the latter, by *se* or *sēsē*.

f. The pronouns *hic, ille, and is* are used to point in either direction, back to something just mentioned or forward to something about to be mentioned. The neuter forms are especially used to refer to a clause, phrase, or idea: as, *est illud quidem vel máximum animum vidēre* (Tuscul. i. 52), *that is in truth a very great thing to see the soul.*

---

5. **Relative Pronouns.**

*103.* The relative pronoun *qui, who, which*, is thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. <em>qui</em></td>
<td><em>qui</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. <em>cuius</em></td>
<td><em>quorum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. <em>cui</em></td>
<td><em>quibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. <em>quem</em></td>
<td><em>quōs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>quō</em></td>
<td><em>quibus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

6. **Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns.**

*104.* The interrogative or indefinite *quis* (*qui*), *who? which? any*, is declined in the Singular as follows:—

| Nom. | *quis* (*qui*) | *quae* | *quid* (*quod*) |
| Gen. | *cuius* | *cuius* | *cuius* |
| Dat. | *cui* | *cui* | *cui* |
| Acc. | *quem* | *quam* | *quid* (*quod*) |
| Abl. | *quō* | *quā* | *quō* |
The Plural is the same as that of the Relative. The singular quis is rare as an indefinite (see § 105. d).

NOTE.—The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns are originally of the same Stem, and the forms for the most part are the same (compare § 103 with § 104). The stem has two forms, quo- and qui.-1 The interrogative sense is doubtless the original one.


NOTE.—But qui is often used without any apparent adjective force; and quis is very common as an adjective, especially with words denoting a person: as, qui nōminat mē? who calls my name? quis diēs fuit? what day was it? quis homō? what man? but often qui homō? what sort of a man? něsciō qui sis, I know not who you are.

b. Old forms for the genitive and dative are quōius, quoi.

c. The form qui is used for the ablative of both numbers and all genders; but especially as an adverb (how, by which way, in any way), and in the combination quīcum, with whom, as an interrogative or an indefinite relative.

d. A nominative plural quēs (stem qui-) is found in early Latin. The dative and ablative quīs (stem quo-) is old, but not infrequent.

e. The preposition cum is joined enclitically to all forms of the ablative, as with the personal pronouns (§ 99. e): as, quōcum, qui-cum, quibuscum.

NOTE.—But occasionally cum precedes as with other words: as, cum quō (Juv. 4. 9).

f. The accusative form quom, cum (stem quo-) is used only as a conjunctive adverb, meaning when or since.

g. The adjective uter is used as an interrogative and indefinite relative. It is declined as an adjective of three terminations (see § 83).

NOTE.—This word is probably the comparative of the stem quo-; cf. intrā (p. 56, foot-note), and Greek πορεὺς.

105. The pronouns quis and qui appear in various combinations.

1 From qui- are formed quis, quid, quem, quibus, qui (abl.); while qui, quae (nom.), are probably lengthened forms of quō-, quā- (see § 32, decl. i), made by the addition of the demonstrative particle i.
a. The adverb -cumque (-cunque) (cf. quisque) added to the relative makes an indefinite relative, which is declined like the simple word: as, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever; cuiuscunque, etc.

Note.—This suffix, with the same meaning, may be used with any relative: as, quillscumque, of whatever sort; quandocumque (also rarely quandoque), whenever; ubicumque, wherever.

b. The interrogative form doubled makes an indefinite relative: as, quisquis, whoever (so utut, however, ubiubi, wherever). Of quisquis both parts are declined, but the feminine is wanting in classic use: thus—

Nom. quisquis (qui\-qui\) quidquid (quicquid)
Acc. quemquem quidquid (quicquid)
Abl. quôquô quâquâ quôquô

Plur. Nom. qui\-qui
D., Abl. quibusquibus

Note.—This compound is rare, except in the forms quisquis, quicquid, and quâquô. The case-form quamquam is used only as a conjunction, meaning although (strictly however). Quïqui (nom. sing.) is an early and quâquâ a late form. The grammarians give also a regular genitive and dative. Cuicuimodi is used like a genitive, but is probably locative.

c. Indefinite compounds are the following: quidam, a, a certain; quispiam, any; quívis, quilibet, any you please; quisquam, any at all. Of these the former part is declined like quis and qui, but they all have both quod (adjective) and quid (substantive) in the neuter.

d. The indefinite quis, otherwise rare, is found in the compounds aliquis, some one, and the combinations si quis, if any; ne quis, lest any, that none; ecquis, num quis, whether any, and a few others.

These are declined like quis, but have generally qua instead of quae, except in the nominative plural feminine. The forms aliquaee, ecquae, nominative singular feminine, occur rarely.

Note.—The compounds quispiam, aliquis, and quisquam are often used instead of quis with si, ne, and num, and are rather more emphatic, as si quis, if any one, si aliquis, if some one, si quisquam, if any one (ever, cf. h).

These compounds are thus declined:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>aliquis, some.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquis (aliqui) aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliciius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliqui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliquo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§§ 105, 106. Correlatives.

Plur. | aliquī | aliquae | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā | aliquā |
Nom. |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
Gen. | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
Dat. | aliquōs | aliquās | aliquās | aliquās | aliquās | aliquās |
Acc. |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
Abl. |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

The forms in -quī and -quod are adjective; those in -quis and -quid, substantive: as, aliquod bonum, some good thing; but aliquid bonī, something good (something of good).

Note. — Aliquis is compounded with all-, old stem of alius (p. 49, foot-note). But the meaning other usually disappears.

e. The enclitic particle que added to the interrogative gives a universal: as, quisque, every one, uterque, either of two, or both. In this combination quis is regularly declined.

In the compound unusquisque, every single one, both parts are declined, and they are sometimes separated by other words.

Quotus quisque has the signification how many, pray? often in a disparaging sense.

f. The relative and interrogative have rarely a possessive adjective cuius (-a, -um), whose; and a prael cuiās (cuiāt-), of what country.

g. Quantus, how great, quālis, of what sort, are derivative adjectives from the same stem as the interrogative. They are used as interrogative or relative, corresponding to the demonstratives tantus, tālis (§ 106).

h. Quisquam, with illus, any, unquam, ever, usquam, anywhere, are chiefly used in negative sentences, or where there is an implied negative, as in interrogative or conditional sentences, or after quam, than; sine, without; vix, scarcely: as, nequisquam ex āgmine tāntō, and nobody from that great throng; sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum, if any one is timorous, I am the man; sine ūllō dominō, without any master; an quisquam usquam gentium est aequē miser? why! is there anybody anywhere in the world so wretched?

i. Quisnam is emphatic: pray, who? ecquis and numquis are compounded from the indefinite particle ēn and the interrogative num; they mean not who, but any in a question: as, ecquis nōs videt? does any one see us? num quid hōc dubitās, do you at all doubt this?

7. Correlatives.

106. Many pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and adverbs have corresponding demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite forms. Such parallel forms are called Correlatives. They are shown in the following table:
Etymology: Pronouns.

DEMONSTR.       RELATIVE.       INTERROG.     INDEF. RELATIVE.     INDEF.
is, that         qui, who         quis? who?     quisquis, whoever     aliquis, some
tantus, so great quantus quantus? (quantuscumque) aliquantus
tālis, such      quālis quālis? (quāliscumque) —
ibi, there       ubi ubi?         ubiubi         alicubi
eō, thither      quō quō?         quōquō         aliquō
eā, that way     quā quā?         quāquā         aliquā
inde, thence     unde unde?       (undecumque)   alicunde
tum, then        quom, cum quandō? (cumcumque)   aliquandō
tot, so many     quot?           quotquot        aliquot
totīēs, so often quotiēs? (quotiēscumque) aliquotiēs

a. The forms tot (originally toti), so many, quot, how (as) many, aliquot, several, totidem, as many, are indeclinable, and may take any gender or case: as, per tot annōs, tot proeliīs, tot imperātōrēs (Cic.), so many commanders, for so many years, in so many battles.

b. The relative word in a pair of correlatives is often to be rendered simply as: thus, tantum argenti quantum aeris, as much (of) silver as (of) copper.

c. A frequent form of correlative is found in the ablative quō or quantō, by how much; eō or tantō, by so much, used with comparatives (rendered in English the . . . the)¹: as, —
quō magis cōnāris, eō longius prōgrederis, the more you try, the farther on you get (by which the more, etc., by that the farther).

107. Certain relative and demonstrative adverbs are used correlatively as conjunctions: as, —

ut (rel.) . . . ita, sīc (dem.), as (while) . . . so (yet).
tam (dem.) . . . quam (rel.), so (as) . . . as.
cum (rel.) . . . tum (dem.), both . . . and; while . . . so also; not only . . . but also.

Compare et . . . et, both . . . and; aut (vel) . . . aut (vel), either . . . or; sīve (seu) . . . sīve; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or.

¹ In this phrase the is not the definite article but a pronominal adverb, being the Anglo-Saxon ād, the instrumental case of the pronoun hāt, that. This pronoun is used both as demonstrative and relative. Thus the . . . the corresponds exactly to quō . . . eō.
Chapter VI. — Verbs.

I. — Inflection of the Verb

1. Voice, Mood, Tense.

108. The inflection of the Verb denotes Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

a. The Voices are two: Active and Passive.

b. The Moods are four: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.¹

c. The Tenses are six, viz.:

   1. For continued action, Present, Imperfect, Future.
   2. For completed action, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

d. Person and Number. — There are separate terminations for each of the three Persons, — first, second, and third, — both in the singular and in the plural.

2. Noun and Adjective Forms.

109. The following Noun and Adjective forms are also included in the inflection of the Latin Verb:

a. Four Participles,² viz.:

   Active: the Present and Future Participles.
   Passive: the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.³

b. The Gerund: this is in form a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the oblique cases of the singular. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive (see § 114 note).

c. The Supine: see §§ 71. a and 114. b.

3. Defective Forms.

110. Special forms for some of the tenses are wanting in certain parts of the verb:

¹ The Infinitive is strictly a case of an abstract noun, expressing the action of the verb (p. 120), but it plays so important a part in verbal construction, that it is properly treated as a part of the verb.

² The Participles are Adjectives in inflection and meaning (see § 25 e), but have the power of Verbs in construction and in distinguishing time.

³ The Gerundive is also used as an adjective, indicating necessity or duty (see § 113 d). In late use it became a Future Passive Participle.
a. The Subjunctive mood wants the Future and the Future Perfect. In most constructions, these tenses are supplied without ambiguity by the Present (or Imperfect) and the Perfect (or Pluperfect); for originally all tenses of the subjunctive referred to future time. In some constructions the want is supplied by the future participle with the proper tense of the verb signifying TO BE: as, cum secūtūrus sit, since he will follow.

b. In the Passive voice in all moods the tenses of completed action (Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect) are supplied by the Perfect Participle with the present, imperfect, and future of the verb signifying TO BE: as, occīsus est, he was killed.

c. In the Imperative mood, the only tenses are the Present and the Future.

d. In the Infinitive mood the Present (active and passive) and the Perfect (active) only are formed by inflection. A Future in the active voice is formed by the Future Participle with the infinitive signifying TO BE: as, amātūrus esse, to be going to love; in the passive, by the Former Supine with īrī (infin. pass. of īrē, to go): as, amātum īrī, to be about to be loved. For the Perfect passive, see b above.

II.—SIGNIFICATION OF THE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. Voices.

111. The Active and Passive Voices in Latin generally correspond to the active and passive in English; but—

a. The passive voice often has a Reflexive meaning: as, induitur vestem, he puts on his (own) clothes; Turnus vertitur, Turnus turns (himself).

Note.—This use corresponds very nearly to the Greek Middle voice, and is doubtless a survival of the original meaning of the passive (§ 118. note).

b. Many verbs are used only in the passive form, but with an active or reflexive meaning. These are called DEPONENTS (dépōnentia), i.e., verbs which have laid aside (dépōnerē) the active form and the passive meaning (see § 135).


112. The Moods of the Latin verb are used as follows:

a. The Indicative Mood is used for direct assertions and interrogations: as,—valēsne? valeō, are you well? I am well; and also in some other idiomatic forms of predication.
b. The Subjunctive Mood has many idiomatic uses, as in commands, conditions, and various dependent clauses. It is frequently translated by the English Indicative; sometimes by means of the auxiliaries may, might, would, should; sometimes by the (rare) Subjunctive; sometimes by the Infinitive; and often by the Imperative, especially in prohibitions. Thus—

eámus, let us go.
cum vénisset, when he had come.
adsüm ut vídēam, I am here to see (that I may see).
tū nē quaesieris, do not thou inquire.
nēmō est qui ita existimet, there is no one who thinks so.
beātus sís, may you be blessed.
nē abeat, let him not depart.
quid morer, why should I delay?
sunt quī putent, there are some who think.
imperat ut scribam, he orders me to write (that I write).
nesciō quid scribam, I know not what to write.
licet eās, you may go (it is permitted that you go).
cave cadās, don't fall.
vereor nē eat, I fear he will go.
vereor ut eat, I fear he will not go.
sī moneam audiat (pres.), if I should warn, he would hear.
sī vocārem audīret (imperf.), if I were (now) calling, he would hear.

quae cum dīxisset abiit, and when he had said this, he went away.

Note.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated, formally, by means of the English auxiliaries may, might, could, would, etc., to distinguish it from the Indicative, because the English has no subjunctive in general use. But the Latin uses the subjunctive in many cases where we use the indicative; and we use a colorless auxiliary in many cases where the Latin employs a separate verb with more definite meaning. Thus, I may write is often not scribam (subj.), but licet mihi scribere; I can write is possum scribere; I would write is scribam, scriberem, or scribere velim (vellem); I should write, (if, etc.), scriberem (si), or (implying duty) oportet mé scribere.

c. The Imperative is used for exhortation, entreaty, or command; but its place is often supplied by the Subjunctive (§§ 266, 269).

d. The Infinitive is used chiefly as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or object of another verb (§§ 270, 271. a). In special constructions it takes the place of the Indicative, and may be translated by that mood in English (see "Indirect Discourse," § 335 ff.).

Note.—For the Syntax of the Moods, see § 264 ff.
3. Participles.

113. The Participles of the Latin verb are used as follows:—

a. The Present participle (ending in -ns) has commonly the same meaning and use as the English participle in -ING: as, vocāns, calling; legentēs, reading. (For its inflection, see egēns, § 85).

b. 1. The Future participle (ending in -ūrus) is oftenest used to express what is likely or about to happen.

   Note.—When thus used with the tenses of the verb TO BE it forms what is called the First Periphrastic conjugation (see § 129): as, urbs est ĉāsūra, the city is about to fall; mānsūrus eram, I was going to stay.

   2. It is also used, more rarely, to express purpose (see § 293, b): as, vēnit auditūrus, he came to hear (about to hear).

c. The Perfect participle (ending in -tus, -sus) has two uses:—

   1. It is sometimes equivalent to the English Perfect Passive participle in -ED: as, tēctus, sheltered; acceptus, accepted; ictus, having been struck; and often has simply an adjective meaning: as, acceptus, acceptable.

   2. It is also used to form certain tenses of the passive (§ 110, b): as, vocātus est, he was (has been) called.

   Note.—There is no Perfect Active or Present Passive participle in Latin. The perfect participle of deponents, however, is generally used in an active sense, as secūtus, having followed. In the case of other verbs some different construction is used for these missing participles: as, cum vēnisset, having come (when he had come); equītātū praemissō, having sent forward the cavalry (the cavalry having been sent forward); dum verberātur, while he is (being) struck (= τοῦτο ὁμοιός).

d. 1. The Gerundive (ending in -ndus) is often used as an adjective implying obligation or necessity (ought or must): as, audiendus est, he must be heard.

   Note.—When thus used with the tenses of the verb TO BE it forms the Second Periphrastic conjugation deligerdus erat, he ought to have been chosen (§ 129).

   2. In the oblique cases the Gerundive commonly has the same meaning as the Gerund (cf. § 114, a), though its construction is different. (For examples, see § 295 ff.)

e. The Participles may all be used as simple adjectives; and the present and perfect participles are sometimes compared as adjectives: as, amāns, amantior, more fond; dilēctus, dilēctissimus, dearest.

f. The Present and Perfect participles are (like adjectives) often used as nouns, especially in the plural (§ 188): as, regentēs, rulers (those ruling); mortuī, the dead.
g. As an adjective, the participle is often used predicatively to indicate some special circumstance or situation: as, moritūrī vōs salūtāmus, we at the point of death (about to die) salute you.


114. The Gerund and Supine are used as follows:—

a. The GERUND is, in form, the neuter singular of the Gerundive. It is a verbal noun, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun in -ing (§ 295): as, loquendi causā, for the sake of speaking.

   NOTE.—In this use the Gerund is found only in the oblique cases. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive: thus, scribere est utile, writing (to write) is useful; but, ars scribendi, the art of writing.

b. The SUPINE is in form a noun of the fourth declension (§ 71. a), found only in the accusative ending in -tum, -sum and the ablative (or dative, probably both) ending in -tū, -sū. These are sometimes called the Former and the Latter Supine. The Former is used after verbs and the Latter after adjectives (§§ 302, 303): as,—

   1. vēnit spectātum, he came to see.
   2. mīrābile dictū, wonderful to tell.

5. Tenses.

115. The tenses of the verb are of two classes, viz.:—

1. Of continued action.

   1. Present: scribō, I am writing.
   2. Imperfect: scribēbam, I was writing.

2. Of completed action.

   4. Perfect: scripsī, I have written, I wrote.
   5. Pluperfect: scripseram, I had written.
   6. Future Perfect: scripserō, I shall have written.

a. Tenses of the Indicative.

   a. The tenses of the Indicative have, in general, the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English; but are in some cases distinguished differently in their use. Thus—

   1. The Future or Future Perfect is often used in subordinate clauses where we use the Present: as,—

      sī quid habēbō dabō, if I have (shall have) any thing, I will give.
      cum vēnerō scribam, when I come (shall have come), I will write.
2. The Present and Imperfect are often used to express continued action where the English uses tenses of completed action: as,—

iam diū aegrōtō, I have long been (and still am) sick.
iam diū aegrōtābam, I had long been (and still was) sick.

Note.—Here the Perfect, aegrōtāvī, would imply that I am now well; Pluperfect, that I was well at the past time designated.

b. The Imperfect is used to describe in past time a continued action or a condition of things: as, scribēbat, he was writing; ārdēbat, it was on fire.

c. The Perfect, having two separate uses, is divided into the Perfect Definite and the Perfect Historical (or Indefinite).

1. The Perfect Definite represents the action of the verb as completed in present time, and corresponds to the English (present- or compound-) perfect: as, scripsī, I have written.

2. The Perfect Historical narrates a simple act or state in past time without representing it as in progress or continuing. It corresponds to the English past or preterite and the Greek aorist: as, scripsit, he wrote; ārsit, it blazed up.

b. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

da. The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood are chiefly used in dependent clauses, following the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (see § 286); but have also special idiomatic uses (see Syntax, §§ 266 ff., 283, 308).

III.—PERSONAL ENDINGS.

116. Verbs have regular terminations¹ for each of the three Persons, both singular and plural, active and passive. These are:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -m (-ō or -ī):</td>
<td>amē-ō, I love.</td>
<td>-r: amo-r, I am loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -s:</td>
<td>amā-s, thou lovest.</td>
<td>-ris or -re: amā-ris, thou art loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -t:</td>
<td>ama-t, he loves.</td>
<td>-tur: amā-tur, he is loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>ACTIVE.</td>
<td>PASSIVE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. -mus:</td>
<td>amā-mus, we love.</td>
<td>-mur: amā-mur, we are loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -tis:</td>
<td>amā-tis, you love.</td>
<td>-minī: amā-minī, you are loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -nt:</td>
<td>ama-nt, they love.</td>
<td>-ntur: amā-ntur, they are loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ These terminations are fragments of old Pronouns, whose signification is thus added to that of the verb-stem (compare p. 19, note 1). But the ending -minī in the second person plural of the passive is a remnant of the participial form found in the Greek -μενος, and has supplanted the proper form, which does not appear in Latin. It is thought by some scholars that -nt has a similar origin.
§§ 116–18. **Forms of the Verb.**

**NOTE.** — The present indicative of the active voice has lost the -m, and ends in the modified stem-vowel -ö except in sum and inquam (§§ 119, 144. b). This ö stands for m blended in sound with a preceding vowel (amö = famä-m). The perfect the future perfect, and the future in -bö have also lost the -m.

a. The Perfect Indicative active has the special terminations:—

**Sing.** 2. -stö: amäv-i-stö, thou lovedst.

**Plur.** 2. -stis: amäv-i-stis, you loved.

3. -ōrun or -ōre: amäv-ōrun (-ōre), they loved.

b. The Imperative has the following terminations:—

**Sing.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. -ö: amä, love thou.</td>
<td>-re: amä-re, be thou loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -tö: amä-tö, thou shalt love.</td>
<td>-tor: amä-tor, thou shalt be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. -töte: amä-töte, ye shall love.</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ntö: amä-ntö, let them love.</td>
<td>-ntor: amä-ntor, let them be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV.—**FORMS OF THE VERB.**

117. Every Latin verb-form (except the adjective and noun forms) is made up of two parts, viz.:

1. The Stem (see § 21). This is either the root or a modification or development of it.

2. The Ending, consisting of—

   a. the signs of mood and tense.

   b. the personal ending (see § 116).

**NOTE 1.** — Thus in the verb vocä-vl-t, he called, the root is voc, modified into the verb-stem vocä-, which by the addition of the tense sign -vl (-vl) becomes the perfect tense vocävl; and to this is added the personal ending (-t) of the third person singular.

**NOTE 2.** — These endings are of various origin. In none of them, however, is the tense or mood sign strictly inserted between the root and the personal terminations. All verb-forms are either inherited from a time when the elements were still significant and could still be compounded, or are imitations of such inherited forms.

118. The Verb-endings, as they are formed by the signs for mood and tense combined with personal endings, are exhibited in the following table:—
### Etymology: Verbs.

#### Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> 1. -ō</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>-or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -s</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-ris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -t</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> 1. -mus</td>
<td>-mus</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -tis</td>
<td>-tis</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -nt</td>
<td>-nt</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> 1. -or</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ris or -re</td>
<td>-ris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -tur</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> 1. -mur</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -mini</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ntur</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> 1. -ba-m</td>
<td>-re-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bā-s</td>
<td>-rē-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ba-t</td>
<td>-re-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> 1. -bā-mus</td>
<td>-rē-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bā-tis</td>
<td>-rē-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -bānt</td>
<td>-rē-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> 1. -a-m</td>
<td>-eri-m</td>
<td>sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -a-s</td>
<td>-eri-s</td>
<td>sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -a-t</td>
<td>-eri-t</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> 1. -a-mus</td>
<td>-eri-mus</td>
<td>sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -a-tis</td>
<td>-eri-tis</td>
<td>sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -enta</td>
<td>-eri-nt</td>
<td>sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> 1. -bo-r</td>
<td>-a-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -be-ris (-re)</td>
<td>-a-ris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -bē-tur</td>
<td>-tē-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> 1. -bē-mur</td>
<td>-tē-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -bē-mini</td>
<td>-tē-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -bē-ntur</td>
<td>-tē-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> 1. -isis-m</td>
<td>-isse-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -issē-s</td>
<td>-tēs (-ta, -tum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -isse-t</td>
<td>-erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong> 1. -isser-mus</td>
<td>-tēs (-ta, -tum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -isser-tis</td>
<td>-estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -isser-nt</td>
<td>-erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 122).
§§ 118, 119. \textit{Forms of the Verb.}

\textbf{Future Perfect}

\begin{align*}
\text{Sing.} & \quad 1. \text{er-ð} & \quad \text{erð} \\
& \quad 2. \text{eri-s} & \quad \text{eris} \\
& \quad 3. \text{eri-t} & \quad \text{erit} \\
\text{Plur.} & \quad 1. \text{eri-mus} & \quad \text{erimus} \\
& \quad 2. \text{eri-tis} & \quad \text{eritis} \\
& \quad 3. \text{eri-nt} & \quad \text{erunt}
\end{align*}

\textbf{Imperative.}

\textbf{Present.}

\begin{align*}
\text{Sing.} & \quad 2. \text{te} & \quad \text{Plur.} & \quad 2. \text{te} \\
& \quad 3. \text{ntö} & \quad 2. \text{tor} & \quad 2. \text{ntor}
\end{align*}

For convenience a table of the Noun and Adjective forms of the verb is here added.

\textbf{Infinitives.}

\begin{align*}
\text{Pres.} & \quad \text{-re} & \quad \text{I. II. IV. -fi; III. -i} \\
\text{Perf.} & \quad \text{-isse} & \quad \text{-tus (-ta, -tum) esse} \\
\text{Fut.} & \quad \text{-türus (-a, -um) esse} & \quad \text{-tum fri}
\end{align*}

\textbf{Participles.}

\begin{align*}
\text{Pres.} & \quad \text{-ns, -ntis} & \quad \text{Perf.} & \quad \text{-tus, -ta, -tum} \\
\text{Fut.} & \quad \text{-türus, -a, -um} & \quad \text{Ger.} & \quad \text{-ndus, -a, -um} \\
\text{Supine.} & \quad \text{-ndi, -ndö, -ndum, -ndö} & \quad \text{-tum, -tü}
\end{align*}

\textbf{Gerund.}

\textbf{NOTE.}—The i of the Perfect, which in early Latin is always long except before -mus, is of doubtful origin. It is probably in all cases a part of the stem, as it is in dedi, steti, where it takes the place of the vowel a. \textit{In the suffixes -vi (of unknown origin) and -si (akin to those of Greek ἐντα and Skr. adiksham), and in the perfects of consonant-roots, it seems to be, but probably is not, a mere connecting vowel. The s before -ti and -tis is also anomalous. Most scholars regard it as a remnant of es; but it may be, like the personal endings, of pronominal origin.}

The Passive is a \textit{middle} (or reflexive) form peculiar to Latin and Celtic, and of uncertain origin.

\textbf{The Verb Sum.}

\textbf{119.} The verb \textit{sum}, \textit{be}, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Its conjugation is given at the outset, on account of its importance for the inflection of all other verbs.
**Etymology:** Verbs.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. <em>sum</em>, I am.</td>
<td>Sim&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>ēs</em>, thou art (you are).</td>
<td>Sīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>est</em>, he (she, it) is.</td>
<td>Sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. <em>sumus</em>, we are.</td>
<td>Sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>estis</em>, you are.</td>
<td>Sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>sunt</em>, they are.</td>
<td>Sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. <em>eram</em>, I was.</td>
<td>Essem (forem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>eras</em>, you were.</td>
<td>Essēs (forēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>erat</em>, he (she, it) was.</td>
<td>Essēt (foret)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. <em>eramus</em>, we were.</td>
<td>Essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>erātis</em>, you were.</td>
<td>Essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>erant</em>, they were.</td>
<td>Essent (forent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. <em>erō</em>, I shall be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>eris</em>, you will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>erit</em>, he will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. <em>erimus</em>, we shall be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>eritis</em>, you will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>erunt</em>, they will be.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. <em>fuī</em>, I was (have been).</td>
<td>Fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>fuistī</em>, you were</td>
<td>Fueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>fuit</em>, he was.</td>
<td>Fuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. <em>fuimus</em>, we were.</td>
<td>Fuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>fuistis</em>, you were.</td>
<td>Fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>fuērunt, fuēre</em>, they were.</td>
<td>Fuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1. <em>fuēram</em>, I had been.</td>
<td>Fuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>fuēras</em>, you had been.</td>
<td>Fuisśēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>fuērat</em>, he had been.</td>
<td>Fuissett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1. <em>fuērāmus</em>, we had been.</td>
<td>Fuisśēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>fuērātis</em>, you had been.</td>
<td>Fuisśētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>fuērunt</em>, they had been.</td>
<td>Fuisissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<sup>1</sup> All translations of the subjunctive are misleading, and hence none is given, see § 112, b.
The Verb Sum.

§§ 119, 120.

Future Perfect.
Sing. 1. fuerō, I shall have been.  
2. fueris, you will have been.  
3. fuerit, he will have been.  
Plur. 1. fuerimus, we shall have been.  
2. fueritis, you will have been.  
3. fuerint, they will have been.

Imperative.
Sing. 2. es, be thou.  
Plur. 2. estōte, ye shall be.  
Future. 2. estō, thou shalt be.  
3. estō, he shall be.  
3. suntō, they shall be.

Infinitive.
Present. esse, to be.  
Perfect. fuisse, to have been.  
Future. fore or futūrus esse, to be about to be.

Participle.
Future. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

a. The present participle, which should be ṣāns (compare Sanskrit sant), appears in that form in ab-sāns, praesāns; and as ēns (compare aw) in pot-āns. The simple form ēns is sometimes found in late or philosophical Latin as a participle or abstract noun, in the forms ēns, being; entia, things which are.

b. Rare Forms.—Indicative: Future, escit, escunt (strictly an inchoative present, see § 167. a).

Subjunctive: Present, siem, siēs, siet, sient; fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant; Perfect, fūvimus; Pluperfect, fūvisset.

Note.—For essem, etc., forem, forēs, etc., are often used without difference of meaning.

120. The verb sum appears in numerous compounds, which will be treated under Irregular Verbs (§ 137).

Note.—The root of the verb sum is es, which in the imperfect is changed to er (see § 11. a. 1), and in many cases is shortened to s. Some of its modifications, as found in several languages more or less closely related to Latin, may be seen in the following table,—the "Indo-European" being the primitive or theoretic form, and the form syām corresponding to the Latin sim (sēm):—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>es-mi</td>
<td>as-mi</td>
<td>syāṃ (opt.)</td>
<td>ḍumū1</td>
<td>s-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es-si</td>
<td>as-i</td>
<td>syās</td>
<td>ḍosī2</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es-ti</td>
<td>as-ti</td>
<td>syāt</td>
<td>ḍotī</td>
<td>es-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-masI</td>
<td>s-mas</td>
<td>syāma</td>
<td>ḍumēv</td>
<td>s-umus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-tasI</td>
<td>s-tha</td>
<td>syāta</td>
<td>ḍoṭē</td>
<td>es-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-antI</td>
<td>s-anti</td>
<td>syus</td>
<td>ḍunī</td>
<td>s-unt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Perfect and Supine stems, fui-, futūro-, are kindred with the Greek ḍovu, and with the English be.

1 Old form.
The Three Stems.

121. The parts of the Latin verb may be formed upon three different stems (partly real and partly supposed), called the Present, the Perfect, and the Supine Stem (see notes, pp. 86, 119 ff.).

a. The tenses of continued action, both active and passive, together with the Gerund and Gerundive, are formed upon the Present Stem, and collectively are called the Present System.

b. The tenses of completed action in the active voice are formed upon the Perfect Stem, and are called the Perfect System.

c. The Perfect and Future Participles and the Supine are formed upon the Supine Stem, and are called the Supine System.

Note 1.—Since Latin verbs are commonly spoken of under the form of their present tense, the other parts are usually said to be derived from this. It is only in the verbs formed later in the language that this is true. Thus armāvi, I have armed, does come from armō, I arm; but sīvī, I have allowed, does not come from sinō, I allow; but both sinō and sīvī come from a common source, the root (see §§ 22, 123, 124), by different processes.

Note 2.—The Influence of Analogy. Many Latin verbs were not inherited from the parent speech, but formed during the separate existence of the language. The forms of these verbs are not strictly compounds of root or stem and ending, but are imitations of verbs already existing in Latin. For it is only by analogy that elements (parts of words) not complete and significant in themselves can be used to form new words in a developed language. When stems are not felt as significant, they cannot be used for composition. Thus a form like fugābat could be made only from a complete word fuga, or from some form in which fuga seemed to be a complete word; and must be regarded, not as a compound of stem and auxiliary, fugā- + bat (like arā- + bat), but as an imitation of forms like arābat, which originally were really compounds. Simple Perfects like dedi and compound forms like vēxī have both influenced, by analogy, the production of new forms, like momordī from mordeō, mànsī from maneō.

V.—REGULAR VERBS.

Latin verbs are classed as Regular or Irregular according as they do or do not follow the inflection of the Four Conjugations.

122. There are in Latin four principal forms of Present Stems, ending respectively in -ā-, -ē-, -ē-, -ī. With this difference of stem most of the other differences of conjugation coincide.
§ 122. Regular Verbs.

a. Verbs are accordingly classed in Four Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before -re in the Present Infinitive Active.

b. The Principal Parts of a verb, which determine its conjugation throughout, are—

1. The Present Indicative § showing the present stem and
2. The Present Infinitive § the conjugation.
3. The Perfect Indicative, showing the perfect stem.
4. The Supine (or the Perfect Participle), showing the supine stem.

c. The regular forms of the conjugations are seen in the following: —

First: Active, amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love.
   Passive, amor, amārī, amātus.
   Present- and Verb-stem amā-, Perfect-stem amāv-, Supine-stem amāt-.

Second: dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out.
   Passive, dēleor, dēlērī, dēlētus.
   Present- and Verb-stem dēlē-, Perfect-stem, dēlēv-, Supine-stem dēlēt-.

Third: tegō, tegère, tēxi, tectum, cover.
   Passive, tegor, tegī, tectus.
   Root teg, Verb-stem tegē-, Perfect-stem tēx-, Supine-stem tēct-.

Fourth: audiō, audire, audīvī, audītum, hear.
   Passive, audior, audīrī, audītus.
   Present- and Verb-stem audī-, Perfect-stem, audīv-, Supine-stem, audīt-.

In the Second conjugation, however, the characteristic e- rarely appears in the perfect and supine: the type of this conjugation is, therefore —

Second: moneō, monere, monuī, monitum, warn.
   Passive, moneor, monērī, monitus.

d. In many verbs the principal parts take forms belonging to two or more different conjugations (cf. § 134): as,—

1. 2. domō, domāre, domuī, domitum, subdue.
2. 3. maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum, remain.
3. 4. petō, petère, petīvī, petītum, seek.
4. 3. vinciō, vincīre, vincī, vincitum, bind.

Such verbs are referred to the conjugation to which the first or Present-stem conforms.
1. Present Stem.

**Note.** — The parent speech from which Latin comes possessed verbs with present stems of three different kinds. These verbs were formed as follows:

First: From roots, by adding the personal endings.

Second: From noun-stems, by adding the personal endings. These noun-stems had been formed from roots by the addition of various suffixes, as *a-, na-, ya-, ta-*.

Third: From roots and stems, by adding a common suffix (probably *-yami*, etc., later *-yomī*) which already contained the personal endings.

Verbs of all these forms were inherited by the Latin. Of the first class few survive, and these are counted as irregular, except such as have been forced into some one of the four conjugations. Examples are: *ēst*, from *edo*; *fert*, from *ferō*; *dās*, from *dō* (*dāre*); *flēmus*, from *fleō*.

Of the second class a large number remain. In these the verb-stem ends in a short vowel, *ē* (*ī*). This is a remnant of the original vowel *a-* (*ō-*) of the noun-suffixes. Besides this, the consonant of the suffix is often preserved. Verbs of this form are often called *primitive verbs,* because the language lost the power of making new forms of this type except in a few cases. They make up the third conjugation. Examples are: *ferō* (stem *feroe-*) for *bher-o-mi* (cf. *fert* in the first class); *sternimus* (stem *sterno-e-*) for *star-no-mas*; *plectunt* (stem *plectoe-*) for *plec-to-nti*; *pellō* (stem *pello-e-*) for *pel-yo-mi.* So *disco* (stem *disco-e-*) for *di(c)sco-mi.* This last form became the type for a large number of verbs called *inceptive* (see § 167. a).

Of the third class, those verbs in which any vowel (except *u*) came in contact with the suffix (*-yami*) suffered contraction so as to present a long vowel, *ā-, ē-, ī-*, at the end of the stem. These became the types of the first, second, and fourth conjugations respectively. In imitation of these long vowel-stems numerous verbs were formed by the Romans themselves (after the mode of formation had been entirely forgotten) from noun and adjective stems. This came to be the regular way of forming new verbs, just as in English the borrowed suffix *-ize* can be added to adjectives to make a verb; as, *modernize.*

Those verbs of the third class in which a consonant or *u* came in contact with the suffix *-yami* suffered various phonetic changes. Such verbs fell partly into the third conjugation, giving rise to an irregular form of it, and partly into the fourth, and some have forms of both.

Examples are: *(cōn)*spiciō, *spicere*, for *spek-yomi*; *veniō, venīre,* for *(g)ven-yomi*; *cupiō, cupere,* but *cupīvī*; *orior, oritur,* but *orītī.* But *pluō, pluere,* for *plu-yomi:* and hence, by analogy, *acuō, acuere.*
But in all these cases many cross-analogies and errors as well as phonetic changes have been at work to produce irregularities. Hence has arisen the traditional system which may be practically represented as follows:

123. The Present Stem is formed from the Root in all regular verbs in one of the following ways:

a. In the First, Second, and Fourth conjugations, by adding a long vowel (ā-, ē-, ī-) to the root, whose vowel is sometimes changed: as, vocā-re (voc), monē-re (mēn, cf. meminī), sopī-re (sop).

Note. — These verb-stems are almost all really formed from noun-stems on the pattern of older formations (see note, p. 86).

b. In the Third conjugation, by adding a short vowel (ē-, ī-) to the root; as, tegē-re (teg), all-tis (al). This vowel may be preceded:
   1. By n, t, sc, or the terminal consonant of the root repeated (a phonetic representative of original i): as, temne-re (tem), plectō (plec), crēscē-re (crē), pellō (for pel-īō, pel), mittō (mit).
   2. By i, which in most forms disappears in inflection (see § 126. c): as, fug-īō, fugē-re (fug).

c. The root may also be changed:
   1. By lengthening the vowel: as, dicē-re (dic), caedē-re (cad?).
   2. By the repetition of a part of it (reduplication): as, gīgnē-re (gen).
   3. By inserting a nasal (m or n): as, findē-re (fid); tangē-re (tag).

d. In some verbs the present stem is formed from a noun-stem irregularly treated as a root: as, statuē-re (stātus), aestuā-re (aestus); cf. acuō, acuere.

e. A few isolated forms use the simple root as a present stem: as, fer-re, fer-t; es-se; vel-le, vul-t. These are counted as irregular.

1 These formations may be traced in the following parallel inflections:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. vāch-ayā-mi</td>
<td>voc-ā-ō</td>
<td>2. vah-ā-mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vach-aya-si</td>
<td>voc-ā-s</td>
<td>vah-ā-si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vach-aya-ti</td>
<td>voc-ā-t</td>
<td>vah-ā-ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vach-ayā-mas</td>
<td>voc-ā-mus</td>
<td>vah-ā-mas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vach-aya-tha</td>
<td>voc-ā-tis</td>
<td>vah-ā-tha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vach-aya-nti</td>
<td>voc-ā-nti</td>
<td>vah-ā-nti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some cases there appears to be a connecting vowel not explained above; but this comes from the irregular use of a verb-stem in place of a root, as in ortūrus (cf. ortus), monitus (cf. mēns, mentis).
88

Etymology: Verbs.  [§§ 123–125.

f. A few have roots ending in a vowel. These generally use as present stem the root without additions, but sometimes modified: as, da-mus (DA), fle-mus (stem fle-, root form unknown), sisti-mus (STA). But others, as rui-mus (RU), are formed with an additional vowel according to the analogy of d.

2. Perfect Stem.

124. The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:—

a. The suffix v (u) (see p. 120, c) is added to the verb-stem: as, voca-v-i, audí-v-i; or to the root: as, son-u-i (sonā-re, root SON), mon-u-i (monē-re, MON treated as a root).

Note.—In a few verbs the vowel of the root is transposed and lengthened (see § 9. d): as, strā-v-i (sternō, STAR), sprē-v-i (spernō, SPAR).

b. The suffix s is added to the root: as, carp-s-i (CARP), tēx-i (for teg-s-i, TEG).

Note.—The modifications of the present stem sometimes appear in the perfect: as, finx-i (FIG, present stem fingē-), sanx-i (SAC, present stem sancī).

c. The root is reduplicated by prefixing the first consonant—generally with ē, sometimes with the root-vowel: as, ce-cid-i (caddō, CAD), to-tond-i (tonēdō, TOND).

Note.—In fid-i (for fte-fid-i, fnd-ō), scid-i (for fsci-scid-i, scindo), the reduplication has been lost, leaving merely the root.

d. The root-vowel is lengthened: as, ēg-i (āg-ō), fūg-i (fūg-ī-ō).

e. The root itself is used as the perfect stem: as, vert-i (vert-ō, VERT), solv-i (solv-ō, SOLV used as root).

f. Sometimes the perfect is formed from a lost or imaginary stem: as, petī-v-i (as if from †peti-ō, †petī-re, PET).

3. Supine Stem.

125. The Supine Stem1 is formed by adding t- (or phonetically s-) :—

a. To the verb-stem: as, amā-t-um, dēlē-t-um, audī-t-um.

b. To the root, with or without i: as, cap-t-um (capīō, CAP), moni-t-um (moneō, MON used as root), cās-um (for cad-t-um, CAD).

Note 1.—The modifications of the present stem sometimes appear in the supine: as, tīnc-t-um (tingō, TIC), tēn-s-um (ten-d-ō, TEN).

Note 2.—The supine is sometimes from a lost or imaginary verb-stem: as, petī-t-um (as if from †peti-ō, †petī-re, PET).

1 For the modifications of the Supine Stem, see p. 121, 3.
126. The forms of the several conjugations from which, by adding the verb endings in § 118, all the moods and tenses can be made are as follows:—

a. The First Conjugation includes all verbs which add ā- to the root to form the present stem:¹ as, amā-re; with a few whose root ends in a (dō, dāre; for, fārī; flō, flāre; nō, nāre; stō, stāre).

1. The stem-vowel ā- is lost before -ō (as, amō = ūamā-ō), and in the present subjunctive is changed to e: as, amē-s, amē-mus.

2. The perfect stem regularly adds v, the supine stem t, to the present stem: as, amā-v-ī, amā-t-um. For exceptions, see § 130.

b. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs which add ē- to the root to form the present stem, as monē-re; with a few whose root ends in ē (fle-ō, fle-re; neō, ne-re; re-or, rē-rī).

1. In the present subjunctive ā is added to the verb-stem: as, mone-ā-s, mone-ā-mus (cf. § 118).

2. A few verbs form the perfect stem by adding v (u), and the supine stem by adding t to the present stem: as, delē-v-ī, delē-t-um. But most form the perfect stem by adding v (u) to the root, and the supine stem by adding t to a weaker form of the present stem, having ī for ē: as, mon-u-ī, moni-t-um. For lists, see § 131.

c. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs (not irregular, see § 137) which add ē- to the root to form the present stem: as, tegē-re, capē-re; with a few whose root ends in ē: as, se-rē-re for āse-se-re (reduplicated from se, cf. sātum).

1. The stem-vowel ē- is lost before -ō, becomes u² before -nt, and ī before the other endings of the indicative and imperative: as, teg-ō, teg-it, tegu-nt; in the imperfect indicative it becomes ē: as, tegē-bam; in the future, ē: as, tegēs; in the present subjunctive ā: as, tegā-s.

Verbs in -īō retain the ī before a, ō, u, and ē: as, capi-at, capi-unt, capi-ēbat, capi-ēs, capi-et³; but lose it elsewhere: as, capi-it (not capi-it), capi-eret.

2. All forms of perfect and supine stems are found in this conjugation. See lists, § 132. But the perfect is never formed from the present stem, but always from the root (§ 121. n. 1).

¹ The present stem is thus the verb-stem. For exceptions, see § 130.
² The gerundive varies between -endus and -undus (§ 12. d).
³ The e in capiēt, once long, was afterwards shortened.
**Etymology: Verbs.**

*d.* The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs which add *i* to the root to form the present stem: as, **audī-re.**¹ In these the perfect and supine stems regularly add *v, t,* to the verb-stem: as, **audī-v-ī, audī-t-um.**² The endings of the third conjugation are added in the third person plural of the present (indicative and imperative), in the imperfect and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive: as, **audi-unt, audi-ēbat, audi-ētis, audi-at.**

*e.* The Pres. Imperative Act. (second pers. sing.) is the same as the present stem: as, **amā, monē, tegē, audī.** But verbs in -īō of the third conjugation omit *i*: as, capē (not †capie).

*f.* The tenses of *completed action* are all regularly formed by adding the tense-endings (given in § 118) to the perfect stem: as, **amāv-ī, amāv-eram, amāv-erō, amāv-erim, amāv-issem, amāv-isse.**

*g.* The tenses of *completed action* in the Passive voice are formed by adding to the perfect participle the corresponding tenses of *continued action* of the verb *esse*: as, perf. **amātus sum; plup. amātus eram,** etc.

### 4. Synopsis of the Verb.

**127.** The following synopsis shows the forms of the verbs arranged according to the several stems. **Amō,** a regular verb of the first conjugation, is taken as a type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present stem, amā-;</th>
<th>Perfect stem, amāv-;</th>
<th>Supine stem, amāt-;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PASSIVE.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRES.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PERF.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IND. amō</td>
<td>amā-bam</td>
<td>amā-bō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB. ame-m</td>
<td>amā-rem</td>
<td>amā-tō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMP. 2. amā</td>
<td>amāt-ūrus</td>
<td>amāv-issem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF. amā-re</td>
<td>amāt-ūrus</td>
<td>esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART. amā-nus</td>
<td>amāt-ūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IND.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amō-bar</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-bor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUB.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amē-rer</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāt-us</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMP. 2. amā-re</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-tor</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INF.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-rī</strong></td>
<td><strong>amāt-ūm</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Ger. ama-ndus</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ A few are formed from noun-stems, as **finī-re** (from **finī-s**), and a few roots end in *i*; but these are not distinguishable in form.

² For exceptions, see § 133.
128. The following special forms require notice:—

a. In tenses formed upon the perfect stem, v between two vowels is often lost and contraction takes place. Thus,—

1. Perfects in -avī, -ēvī, -ōvī, often contract the two vowels into ā, ē, ē respectively: as, amāsse for amāvisse; amārim for amāverim; amāssem for amāvissem; cōnsuērat for cōnsuēverat; flēstis for flēvistis; nōsse for nōvisse. So in perfects in -vī, where the v is a part of the present stem: as, commōrat for commōverat.

Note.—The first person of the perfect indicative (as amāvī) is never contracted, the third very rarely.

2. Perfects in -īvī regularly omit v, but rarely contract the vowels except before st and ss, and very rarely in the third person perfect: as, audieram for audiveram; audīsse for audivisse; audīstī for audivistī; abiit for abīvit. The forms sīris, sīrit, sīritis, sīrint, for sīveris, etc. (from sīverō or sīverim), are archaic.

b. In many forms from the perfect stem, is, iss, sis are lost in like manner when s would be repeated if they were retained: as, dīxtī for dīxistī (x = cs); trāxe for trāxisse; ēvāstī for ēvāsistī; vīxet for vīxisset; ērēpsēmus for ērēpsissēmus. These forms belong to archaic and colloquial usage.

c. Four verbs — dīcō, dūcō, faciō, fērō — with their compounds, drop the vowel-termination of the imperative, making dīc, dūc, fāc, fēr; but compounds in -ficiō retain it, as cōnfice. The forms dīce, dūce, face (never fere), occur in early Latin.

d. For the imperative of sciō, the future form scītō is always used in the singular, and scītōte usually in the plural.

e. The following ancient forms are chiefly found in poetry:—

1. In the fourth conjugation -ībam, -ībō for -īebam, -īam (future). These forms are regular in eō, go (§ 141).

2. In the present subjunctive -im: as in duim, perduim (for dem, īperdem), retained in religious formulas. This form is regular in sum and volō and their compounds (§§ 119, 138).

3. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect -sim, -sō: as, faxim, faxō, iūssō, recēpsō, (= fēcerō, etc.); ausim (= ausus sim).

4. In the passive infinitive -ier: as, vocārier for vocārī; agier for aggi.

5. A form in -āssō, -āssere is found used as a future perfect: as, amāssis, from amō; levāssō, from levō; impetrāssere, from impetrō; iūdicāssit, from iūdicō.
**FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.**

**Principal Parts:** Pres. amō, Infin. amāre, Perf. amāvī, Supine amātum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō, <em>I love.</em></td>
<td>amem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amās, <em>thou loveth (you love).</em></td>
<td>amēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat, <em>he (she, it) loves.</em></td>
<td>amet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmus, <em>we love.</em></td>
<td>amēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātis, <em>you love.</em></td>
<td>amētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amānt, <em>they love.</em></td>
<td>ament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| amābam, *I loved.* | amārem |
| amābās, *you loved.* | amārēs |
| amābat, *he loved.* | amāret |

| amābāmus, *we loved.* | amārēmus |
| amābātis, *you loved.* | amārētis |
| amābant, *they loved.* | amārent |

**Future.**

| amābō, *I shall love.* | |
| amābis, *you will love.* | |
| amābit, *he will love.* | |

| amābimus, *we shall love.* | |
| amābitis, *you will love.* | |
| amābunt, *they will love.* | |

**Perfect.**

| amāvī, *I loved.* | amāverim |
| amāvistī, *you loved.* | amāveris |
| amāvit, *he loved.* | amāverit |

| amāvimus, *we loved.* | amāverimus |
| amāvistis, *you loved.* | amāveritis |
| amāvērunt (-ēre), *they loved.* | amāverint |

**Pluperfect.**

| amāveram, *I had loved.* | amāvissem |
| amāverās, *you had loved.* | amāvissēs |
| amāverat, *he had loved.* | amāvisset |

| amāverāmus, *we had loved.* | amāvisseμus |
| amāverātis, *you had loved.* | amāvissetis |
| amāverant, *they had loved.* | amāvissent |
§ 129. The so-called Periphrastic conjugations are formed by combining the tenses of *esse* with the Future Active Participle and with the Gerundive: as,—

### First Periphrastic Conjugation.

#### Indicative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amātūrus</em> sum, I am about to love.</td>
<td><em>sim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amātūrus</em> erō, I shall be about to love.</td>
<td><em>essem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amātūrus</em> fuerō, I shall have been about, etc.</td>
<td><em>fuerim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amātūrus</em> fueram, I had been about, etc.</td>
<td><em>fuissem</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive:**

- Present: *amāndus* sum, I am to be loved.
- Imperfect: *amandus* eram, I was to be loved.
- Future: *amandus* erō, I shall be [worthy] to be loved.
- Perfect: *amandus* fuī, I was about, etc.
- Pluperfect: *amandus* fuerō, I shall have been, etc.

**Subjunctive:**

- Present: *amandus* esse
- Imperfect: *amandus* essem
- Future: *amandus* fuisses

### Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amandus</em> sum, I am to be loved.</td>
<td><em>sim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amandus</em> eram, I was to be loved.</td>
<td><em>essem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amandus</em> erō, I shall be [worthy] to be loved.</td>
<td><em>fuerim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amandus</em> fuī, I was about, etc.</td>
<td><em>fuissem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amandus</em> fueram, I had been about, etc.</td>
<td><em>fuissem</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive:**

- Present: *amandus* esse
- Imperfect: *amandus* essem
- Future: *amandus* fuisses

### Imperative.

- Present: *amāte*, love ye.
- Imperfect: *amātote*, ye shall love.
- Future: *amantō*, they shall love.

### Future Perfect.

- SINGULAR.
  - *amāverō*, I shall have loved.
  - *amāveris*, you will have loved.
  - *amāverit*, he will have loved.
- PLURAL.
  - *amāverimus*, we shall have loved.
  - *amāveritis*, you will have loved.
  - *amāverint*, they will have loved.
**Etymology:** Verbs.

**FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.**

**Principal Parts:** Pres. amor, Infin. amārī, Perf. amātus sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amor, <em>I am loved.</em></td>
<td>amer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāris (-re), <em>you are loved.</em></td>
<td>amēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātur, <em>he is loved.</em></td>
<td>amētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmūr, <em>we are loved.</em></td>
<td>amēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāminī, <em>you are loved.</em></td>
<td>amēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amantur, <em>they are loved.</em></td>
<td>amentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābar, <em>I was loved.</em></td>
<td>amārer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāris (-re), <em>you were loved.</em></td>
<td>amārēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābātur, <em>he was loved.</em></td>
<td>amārētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāmūr, <em>we were loved.</em></td>
<td>amārēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābāminī, <em>you were loved.</em></td>
<td>amārēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābantur, <em>they were loved.</em></td>
<td>amārentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābor, <em>I shall be loved.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāberis (-re), <em>you will be loved.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābitur, <em>he will be loved.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābimūr, <em>we shall be loved.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābimīnī, <em>you will be loved.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābuntur, <em>they will be loved.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus sum, <em>I was loved.</em></td>
<td>amātus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus es, <em>you were loved.</em></td>
<td>amātus sīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus est, <em>he was loved.</em></td>
<td>amātus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sumus, <em>we were loved.</em></td>
<td>amātī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī estis, <em>you were loved.</em></td>
<td>amātī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sunt, <em>they were loved.</em></td>
<td>amātī sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus eram, <em>I had been loved.</em></td>
<td>amātus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus erās, <em>you had been loved.</em></td>
<td>amātus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus erat, <em>he had been loved.</em></td>
<td>amātus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī erāmus, <em>we had been loved.</em></td>
<td>amātī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī erātis, <em>you had been loved.</em></td>
<td>amātī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī erant, <em>they had been loved.</em></td>
<td>amātī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 130. There are about 360 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them formed directly on a noun- or adjective-stem: as, armō, arm (arma, arms); caecō, to blind (caecus, blind); exsulō, be an exile (exsul, an exile) (§ 166. a). Their conjugation is usually regular, like amō; though of many only a few forms are found in use.

The following verbs form their Perfect and Supine stems irregularly. Those marked * have also regular forms.

crepō, crepuī, crepit-, resound.
cubō, cubuī, cubit-, lie down.
dō, dāre, dedī, dāt-, give (DA).
domō, domui, domit-, subdue.
fricō, fricui, *frict-, rub.
iuvō (ad-iuvō), iūvī, iūt-, help.
labō, -āvī (no sup.), totter.
micō, micui (no sup.), glitter.

Note.—Compounds of these verbs have the following forms:—
crepō: dis-crepui or -crepāvī.
dō: circum-, inter-, pessum-, satis-, super-, vēnum-dō, -dedī, -dat-, of the 1st conjugation; other compounds are of the 3d, as condō, condère, condīdī, conditum.
micō: dī-micavi, -micāt-, e-micui, -micāt-
plicō: re-, sub- (sup.), multil-plicō, -pli-cāvī, -plicāt-, ex-plicō (unfold), -uī, -it- (explain), -āvī, -āt-, im-plicō, -āvī (-uī), -cātum (-itum).
stō: cōn-stō, -stīfī, -stīt- (-stīt-); ad-, re-stō-, -stīfī, —; ante- (anti-), inter-, super-stō, -stefī, —; circum-stō, -stefī (-stīfī), —; dī-stō, no perfect or supine.

1 Future Participle in -ātūrus.
**SECOND CONJUGATION.**

**Principal Parts:** Active, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum; Passive, moneor, monērī, monitus sum.

### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneō, I warn.</td>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>moneōris (-re)</td>
<td>moneāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs, you warn.</td>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>monēris (-re)</td>
<td>moneāris (-re)</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet, he warns.</td>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>monētus</td>
<td>moneātur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>monēminī</td>
<td>moneāminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēnt</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>monentur</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperfect

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>monērer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>monēbāris (-re)</td>
<td>monērēris (-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>monērēmus</td>
<td>monēbāmur</td>
<td>monērēmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>monērētis</td>
<td>monēbāminī</td>
<td>monērēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>monērent</td>
<td>monēbantur</td>
<td>monērentur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td>monēberis (-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbimus</td>
<td>monēbimur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitis</td>
<td>monēbimini</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td>monēbuntur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīstī</td>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monitus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīt</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monitus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīmus</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>monitī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīstis</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>monitī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuīrunt (-re)</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>monitī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monitus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuisseās</td>
<td>monitus erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>monitus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>monuisseāmus</td>
<td>monitī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>monuissetis</td>
<td>monitī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuisssent</td>
<td>monitī erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monitus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuisseās</td>
<td>monitus erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>monitus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>monuisseāmus</td>
<td>monitī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>monuissetis</td>
<td>monitī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuisssent</td>
<td>monitī erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 131. Second Conjugation.

131. There are nearly 120 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them denominative verbs of condition, having a corresponding noun and adjective from the same root, and an inceptive in -scō (§ 167. a): as, caleó, be warm; calor, warmth; calidus, warm; calēscō, grow warm; timeó, fear; timor, fear; timidus, timid.

Most of the verbs of the second conjugation form their perfect and supine like moneō. The following have -ēvi and -ētum: déleō, destroy; fleō, weep; neō, spin; vieō, plat; and compounds of -pieō, fill; -oleō, grow. The remainder are:—

algeō, alsī, be cold.
ardeō, ārsī, ārs-, burn.
audeō, ausus sum, dare.
augeō, auxī, auct-, increase.
caveō, cāvi, caut-, care.
cēnseō, cēnsuī, cēns-, value.
cieō, cīvi, cit-, excite.
doceō, docui, doct-, teach.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. monēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. monuisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. monitūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ger. monendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monendī, -dō, -dum, -dō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supine.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monitum, monitū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

faveō, fāvi, faut-, favor.
ferveō, fervī (ferbus), glow.
foveō, fōvi, fōt-, cherish.
frigeō, frīxi, be cold.
fulgeō, fūlsi, shine.
gaudeō, gāvisus sum, rejoice.
haereō, haesī, haes-, cling.
indulgeō, indulgi, indulg-, indulge.
### Etymology: Verbs.

- **Etymology**: Verbs.

  - **iubeō, iüssī, iüss-**, order.
  - **languō, languī, be faint.**
  - **liqueō, líqui (-licuí), melt.**
  - **lúceō, lúxi, -luct-, shine.**
  - **lúgeō, lúxi, lúct-, mourn.**
  - **maneo, mansī, mans-, wait.**
  - **miscēō, -cuī, mixt- (míst-), mix.**
  - **mordeō, momordī, mors-, bite.**
  - **moveō, movi, mot-, move.**
  - **mulceō, mulsi, muls-, soothe.**
  - **mulgeō, -xi, muls- (-mulct-), milk.**
  - **niveō, -nivi (-nixī), wink.**
  - **paveō, pávi, fear.**
  - **pendeō, pependī, pens-, hang.**
  - **prandeō, prandi, prans-, dine.**
  - **rideō, rīsi, rīs-, laugh.**
  - **sedeō, sēdī, sēss-, sit.**
  - **soleō, solitus sum, be wont.**
  - **sorbeō, sorbus (sorpsī), sorpt-, such.**
  - **spondeō, spongō, spōns-, pledge.**
  - **strīdeō, strīdī, whiz.**
  - **suadeō, suāsi, suā-, urge.**
  - **teneō (-tineō), tenui, tent-, hold.**
  - **tergeō, tērsī, ters-, wipe.**
  - **torqueō, torsī, tort-, twist.**
  - **tendō, tendī, tend-, ear.**
  - **videō, vīdī, vīs-, see.**
  - **voveō, vōvī, vōt-, vow.**

**Note.** — The following have a perfect in -ui, but have no supine. A few (as maereō, be sad) have neither perfect nor supine.

- **arceō, ward off.**
- **beō, need.**
- **pateō, lie open.**
- **studeō, attend to.**
- **calleō, be skilful.**
- **flōreō, bloom.**
- **sileō, be silent.**
- **timeō, fear.**
- **careō, lack.**
- **horreō, shudder.**
- **cāneō, be white.**

### Third Conjugation.

**Principal Parts:** Active, tegō, tegēre, tēxi, tēctum; Passive, tegor, tegī, tēctus sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tegō, I cover.</td>
<td>tegam</td>
<td>tegor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegis, you cover.</td>
<td>tegās</td>
<td>tegēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegit, he covers.</td>
<td>tegat</td>
<td>tegitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegimus</td>
<td>tegāmus</td>
<td>tegimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegitis</td>
<td>tegātis</td>
<td>tegimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegunt</td>
<td>tegant</td>
<td>teguntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbam</td>
<td>tegērem</td>
<td>tegēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbās</td>
<td>tegērēs</td>
<td>tegēbāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbat</td>
<td>tegēret</td>
<td>tegēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbāmus</td>
<td>tegērēmus</td>
<td>tegēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbātis</td>
<td>tegērētis</td>
<td>tegēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēbant</td>
<td>tegērent</td>
<td>tegēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tegor</td>
<td>tegar</td>
<td>tegēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēris (-re)</td>
<td>tegāris (-re)</td>
<td>tegātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegitur</td>
<td>tegimur</td>
<td>tegēmum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegimur</td>
<td>tegimini</td>
<td>tegēminipi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teguntur</td>
<td>teguntur</td>
<td>tegēmentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subj.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subj.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegam</td>
<td>tegar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēs</td>
<td>tegēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teget</td>
<td>tegētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegēmus</td>
<td>tegēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegētis</td>
<td>tegēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegent</td>
<td>tegentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegi</td>
<td>tegerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegist</td>
<td>tegeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegit</td>
<td>tegerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegimus</td>
<td>tegerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegistis</td>
<td>tegeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegerunt (-re)</td>
<td>tegerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegeram</td>
<td>tegerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegeras</td>
<td>tegeras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegerat</td>
<td>tegerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegeramus</td>
<td>tegeramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegeratis</td>
<td>tegeratis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegerant</td>
<td>tegerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future Perfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegero</td>
<td>tectus ero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegeris</td>
<td>tectus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegerit</td>
<td>tectus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegerimus</td>
<td>tecti erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegeritis</td>
<td>tecti eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegerint</td>
<td>tecti erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> 2. tege, cover. tegite</td>
<td>tegere tegimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> 2. tegito tegitote</td>
<td>tegitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. tegito tegunto</td>
<td>tegitor teguntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive.

| Pres. tegere | tegi |
| Perf. texisse | tectus esse |
| Fut. tecturus esse | tectum iri (tectus fore) |

### Participles.

| Pres. tegēns | Perf. tectus |
| Fut. tecturus | Ger. tegendus (-undus) |

**Gerund:** tegendī, -dō, -dum, -dō  
**Supine:** tectum, tectū
Verbs of the third conjugation in -io have certain forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. They retain the i of the stem before a, o, u, and e, but lose it elsewhere except in the future and in the participle and gerund. Verbs of this class are conjugated as follows:

**Principal Parts**: capio, capère, cēpī, captum; capior, capī, captus sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subj.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capio, <em>I take.</em></td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis, <em>you take.</em></td>
<td>capiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit, <em>he takes.</em></td>
<td>capiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitāis</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gerund**: capiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō
**Supine**: captum, -tū
Third Conjugation.

132. The following lists include most simple verbs of the third conjugation, classed according to the formation of the perfect stem.

a. Forming the perfect stem in s(x) (§ 124. b and note):

angō, anxi, anct., choke.
carpō, carpsi, carpt, pluck.
cēdō, cessī, cēss-, yield.
cingō, cinxi, cinct-, bind.
clangō, clanxi, sound.
claudō, clausi, claus-, shut.
clepō, lepsi, clept-, steal.
cōmō, cōmpsi, cōmp-, comb, deck.
coquō, coxi, coct-, cook.
cutio, cussi, cuss-, shake.
dēmō, dēmsi, dēmpt-, take away.
dīcō, dīxi, dict-, say.
dīvidō, dīvisi, dīvis-, divide.
dūcō, dūxi, dūct-, guide.
figō, fixi, fix-, fix.
fingō [FIG], finxi, fict-, fashion.
flectō, flexi, flex-, bend.
fluō, flūxi, flūx-, flow.
frendō, -rēsi, fress-, gnash.
frīgō, frīxi, frīct- (frīx-), fry.
gerō, gessi, gest-, carry.
laedō, laesi, laes-, hurt.
-liciō, -lexi, -lect- entice (ēlicui, -licit-).
lingō, linxi, linct-, lick.
lūdo, lūsi, lūs-, play.
mergō, mērsi, mērs-, plunge.
mittō, misi, miss-, send.
nectō [NEC], nexi (nexui), nex-, to weave.
nūbō, nūpsi, nūpt-, marry.
pectō, pexi (pexui), pex-, comb.
Etymology: Verbs.

b. Reduplicated in the perfect (§ 124. c):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cadō, cecīdī, cās-, fall.</td>
<td>pariō, peperī, part- (paritūrus), bring forth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedō, cecīdī, caes-, cut.</td>
<td>fellō, pepuli, pulsi-, drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canō, cecīni, cant-, sing.</td>
<td>pendō, pependī, pēns-, weigh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currō, cucurrī, curs-, run.</td>
<td>poscō, poposcī, (poscitūrus), demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discō [DIC]. didicī, (discitūrus), learn.</td>
<td>pungō [Pug], pupugi, punct-, prick.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-dō, -didī, -dit- (as in ab-dō, etc., with crēdō, vēnīdō), put [DHA].
fallō, fefellī, fals-, deceive.
pangō [PAG], pēgī (pepigī), pāct-, fasten, fix, bargain.
parcō, parsī, pepercī, partīcī (-pars-), spare.

(c. Adding u (v) to the verb-root (§ 124. a):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alō, aluī, alt- (alit-), nourish.</td>
<td>pāscō, pāvī, pāst-, feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cernō, -crēvī, -crēt-, decree.</td>
<td>percellō, -culī, -culsi-, upset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colō, colui, cult-, dwell, till.</td>
<td>pōnō [Pos], posui, posit-, put.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compēscō, compēscui, restrain.</td>
<td>quiēscō, quiēvi, quiēt-, rest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsulō, -lui, cōnsulti-, consult.</td>
<td>rapiō, rapui, rapt-, seize.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crēscō, crēvī, crēt-, increase.</td>
<td>scīscō, scīvi, scīt-, decree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cumbō [CUB], cubuī, cubit-, lie down.</td>
<td>serō, sēvī, sat-, sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depso, depsuī, depst-, knead.</td>
<td>serō, seruī, sert-, entwine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excellō, -cellui, -celsi-, excel.</td>
<td>sinō, sīvi, sit-, permit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fremō, fremuī, fremit-, roar.</td>
<td>spernō, sprevī, spret-, scorn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furō, furui, rage.</td>
<td>sternō, strāvi, strāt-, strew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gemō, gemuī, gemit-, groan.</td>
<td>stertō, stertui (sterti), snore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gīgnō [GEN], genuī, genit-, beget.</td>
<td>strepō, strepuī, strepit-, sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metō, messuī, messi-, reap.</td>
<td>-suēscō, -suēvī, -suēt-, be wont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molō, molui, molit-, grind.</td>
<td>texō, texui, text-, weave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occulō, occuluī, occult-, hide.</td>
<td>tremō, tremuī, tremble.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occulō, occuluī, occult-, hide.</td>
<td>vomō, vomuī, vomit-, vomit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d. Adding Iv to the verb-root (cf. § 124. f):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arcessō, -ivī, arcessit-, summon.</td>
<td>petō, petīvi, petīt-, seek.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capessō, capessivī, undertake.</td>
<td>quærō, quaessivī, quaessit-, seek.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupiō, cupivī, cupit-, desire.</td>
<td>rudō, rudivī, rudit-, bray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incessō, incessivī, attack.</td>
<td>sapiō, sapivī (sapuī), be wise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laccēsō, laccissivī, laccesit-, provoke.</td>
<td>terō, trīvi, trit-, rub.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 132. Third Conjugation.

e. Lengthening the vowel of the root (cf. § 124. d):

agō, ēgī, āct-, drive.
capiō, cēpī, capt-, take.
edō, ēdī, ēsum, eat (see § 140).
emō, ēmī, empt-, buy.
faciō, fēcī, fact-, make (see § 142).
fodiō, fōdī, fōss-, dig.
frangō [FRAG], frēgī, frāct-, break.
fugiō, fūgī, fugit-, flee.
fundiō [FUD], fūdī, fūs-, pour.
iaciō, iēcī, iact-, throw, (iiciō, -iect-).
lavō, lāvī, lōt- (laut-), wash (also reg. of 1st conj.).
legō, lēgī, lēct-, gather.
linō [LI], lēvi (Iīvī), lit-, smear.
linquō [LIC], līquī, līct-, leave.
nōscō [GNO], nōvī, nōt- (cō-gnit-, a-gnit-, ad-gnit-), know.
rumpō [RUP], rūpī, rupt-, burst.
scabō, scābī, scratch.
vincō [VIC], vīcī, vīct-, conquer.

f. Retaining the present stem or verb-root (cf. § 124. e):

arguō, -uī, -ūtum, accuse.
bibō, bibī, bibit-, drink.
-cendo, -cendi, -cens-, kindle.
cūdō, -cūdi, -cūs-, forge.
faccēsō, facessī, facessit-, execute.
-fendo, -fendi, -fēns-, ward off.
findō [FID], fidī,2 fīss-, split.
ficō, fici, fict-, hit.
lambō, lambī, lambit-, lap.
lūō, lūi, luit-, wash.
mandō, mandī, mãns-, chew.
nuō, nuī, nuit-, nod.
pandō, pandī, pāns- (pass-), open.
pīnsō, -si, pīns- (pīnst-, pīst-), bruise.
prehendō, -dī, prehēns-, seize.
rūō, rūi, rūt- (ruit-), fall.
scandō, scandī, scāns-, climb.
scindō [SCID], scīdī,2 scīss-, tear.
sidō, sīdī (sēdī), -sēss-, settle.
solvō, solvī, solūt-, loose, pay.
strīdō, strīdī, whiz.
vellō, vellī (vulsī), vuls-, pluck.
verrō, verrī, vers-, sweep.
vertō, vertī, vers-, turn.
visō [VID], visī, vis-, visit.
volvō, volvī, volūt-, turn.

NOTE.—The following have no perfect or supine:

claudō, limp.
fatiscō, gape.
fugō, flash.
glisco, swell.
glubō, peel.
hiiscō, yawn.
rabō, rave.
tollō (sustulii, sublātum supplied from sufferō), raise.
vergō, incline.

1 The following compounds of legō have -lēxi: diligō, intellegō, neglegō.
2 In these the perfect stem is the same as the verb-root, having lost the reduplication (§ 124. e. note).
# Etymology: Verbs.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**Principal Parts:** *Active,* audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum; *Passive,* audior, audīrī, audītus sum.

### Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō, <em>I hear.</em></td>
<td>audiām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs, <em>you hear.</em></td>
<td>audiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit, <em>he hears.</em></td>
<td>audiāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiōmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītis</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiunt</td>
<td>audiānt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audiār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīris (-re)</td>
<td>audiāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītur</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiūm</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiāminī</td>
<td>audiāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīuntur</td>
<td>audīantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiērem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiērēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiērēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>audiērētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbānt</td>
<td>audiērent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiām</td>
<td>audiār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīēs</td>
<td>audiēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīēmus</td>
<td>audiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīētis</td>
<td>audiēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audient</td>
<td>audientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audīverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
<td>audīveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvimus</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistis</td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvērunt (-re)</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plus perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīveram</td>
<td>audīvissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverās</td>
<td>audīvisēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
<td>audīvisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverāmus</td>
<td>audīvisēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverātis</td>
<td>audīvisētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverant</td>
<td>audīvissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 133. There are—besides a few deponents and some regular derivatives in -āriō, as ēsuriō, be hungry (cf. § 167. e)—about 60 verbs of this conjugation, a large proportion of them being descriptive verbs: like—

crōciō, croak. ganniō, yelp. hirriō, snarl. scatūriō, gush.
cūcūriō, crow. glūtiō, gulp. mūgiō, bellow. tinniō, tinkle.
ēbulliō, bubble. grunniō, grunt. muttiō, mutter. tussiō, cough.
fritinniō, twitter. hinniō, neigh. singulttiō, hiccup. vāgiō, cry.

Those verbs not conjugated regularly like audiō, are the following:
amiciō, amixī (-cui), amict-, clothe.
aperiō, aperui, apert-, open.
comperiō, -perī, compert-, find.
farcīō, farśī, farct- (-tum), stuff.
feriō, strike (no perfect or supine).
saepiō, saepest, saepst-, hedge in.  
salio (-siliō), salui (saliī), salt- (-sult-), leap.  
sanciō [SAC], sau̺xī, sanct-, sanct- 
sarciō, sarst, sat-, patch.  

The following are regular in the perfect, but have no supine stem. —  
caecūtiō, be purblind.  
dēmentiō, be mad.  
ferōciō be fierce.  

gestiō, be overjoyed.  
glōciō, cluck (as a hen).  
ineptiō, play the trifler.

Parallel Forms.

134. Many verbs have more than one set of forms, of which only one is generally found in classic use: as, —  
lavo, lavare or lavēre, wash (see § 132. i).  
scateō, scatēre or scatēre, gush forth.  
lūdificō, -äre or lūdificor, -ari, mock.  
fulgō, fulgēre or fulgēō, fulgēre, shine.

DEPONENT VERBS.

135. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification: as, —  
1st conj. mīrōr, mīrāri, mīrātus, admire.  
2d conj. vereor, verēri, veritus, fear.  
3d conj. sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow.  
4th conj. partior, partīri, partītus, share.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. mīror  vereor  sequor  partior  
mīrāris (-re)  verēris (-re)  sequeris (-re)  partīris (-re)  
mīrātur  verētur  sequitur  partītur  
mīrāmor  verēmor  sequimur  partīmum  
mīrāminī  verēminī  sequimini  partīminī  
mīrantur  verentur  sequuntur  partiuntur  
Impf. mīrābar  verēbar  sequēbar  partiēbar  
Fut. mīrābor  verēbor  sequar  partiar  
Perf. mīrātus sum  veritus sum  secūtus sum  partītus sum  
Plup. mīrātus eram  veritus eram  secūtus eram  partītus eram  
F. P. mīrātus erō  veritus erō  secūtus erō  partītus erō
Deponent Verbs.

§ 135.]

Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. mīrer</td>
<td>verear</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>partiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf. mīrārer</td>
<td>verērer</td>
<td>sequerer</td>
<td>partīrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. mīrātus sim</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>secūtus sim</td>
<td>partitus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. mīrātus essem</td>
<td>veritus essem</td>
<td>secūtus essem</td>
<td>partitus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

mīrāre, -ātor, etc. verēre, -ētor sequere, -ētor partīre, -ētor

Infinitive.

Pres. mīrārī verērī sequī partīrī
Perf. mīrātus esse veritus esse secūtus esse partitus esse
Fut. mīrātūrus esse veritūrus esse secūtūrus esse partītūrus esse

Participles.

Pres. mirāns verēns sequēns partīens
Fut. mirātūrus veritūrus secūtūrus partitus
Perf. mirātus veritus secūtus partitus
Ger. mirandus verendus sequendus partiendus

Gerund.

mirandī, -ī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

Supine.

mīrātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partītum, -tū

a. Deponents have the participles of both voices: as, —
sequēns, following. secūtūrus, about to follow.
secūtus, having followed. sequendus, to-be-followed.

b. The perfect participle generally has an active sense, but in verbs otherwise deponent it is often passive: as, mercātus, bought; adeptus, gained (or having gained).

c. The future infinitive is always in the active form: thus, sequor has secūtūrus esse (not secūtum frī).

d. The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs, or neuter verbs used impersonally: as,—
hōc confitendum est, this must be acknowledged.
moriendum est omnibus, all must die.

e. Most deponents are neuter or reflexive in meaning, corresponding to what in Greek is called the Middle Voice (§ 111. a).

f. Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense: as, criminor, I accuse, or I am accused.

g. About twenty verbs are, with an active meaning, found in both active and passive forms: as, mereō or mereor, I deserve.
h. More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation, and all of these are regular. The following deponents are irregular:—

adsentior, -īrī, adsēnsus, assent.
apiscur, (-ip-), -ī, aptus (-eptus), get.
dēfetiscor, -ī, -fessus, faint.
expērgiscor, -ī, perrēctus, rouse.
experior, -īrī, expertus, try.
fateor, -ērī, fassus, confess.
fatiscur, -ī, gape.
fruor, -ī, frūctus (fruitus), enjoy.
fungor, -ī, fāncctus, fulfil.
gradiōr (-grēdiōr), -ī, gressus, step.
frāscor, -ī, frātus, be angry.
lābor, -ī, lāpsus, fall.
loquor, -ī, locūtus (loquūtus), speak.
-miniscur, -īrī, -mention, think.
mētior, -ērī, mēnsus, measure.
moriōr, -ī (-ērī), mortuus (mortūrus, die.
nanciscor, -ī, nactus (nactus), find.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, be born.
nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus), strive.
obliviscor, -ī, oblītus, forget.
opperior, -īrī, oppertus, await.
ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus, begin.
orīor (3d), -īrī, ortus, (orītūrus), rise.
paciscor, -ī, pāctus, bargain.
patior (-petior), -ī, passus (-pessus), suffer.
-plector, -ī, -plexus, clasp.
proficiscor, -ī, profectus, set-out.
queror, -ī, questus, complain.
reor, rērī, ratus, think.
revertor, -ī, reversus, return.
ringor, -ī, rīctus, snarl.
sequor, -ī, secūtus (sequūtus), follow.
tueor, -ērī, tuitus (tutus), defend.
ucliscor, -ī, ultus, avenge.
ūtor, -ūsus, use, employ.

Note. — The deponent comprerio, -ērī, compertus, is rarely found for comprēriō. Revertor, until the time of Augustus, had regularly the active forms in the perfect system, revertī, reverteram, etc.

i. The following deponents have no supine stem:—
dēvertor, -tī, turn aside (to lodge).
diffiteor, -ērī, deny.
liquor, -ī, melt (neut.).
medeor, -ērī, heal.
reminiscor, -ī, call to mind.
vessor, -ī, feed upon.

Note. — Deponents are only passive (or middle) verbs whose active has disappeared. There is hardly one that does not show at some period of the language signs of being used in the active.

Semi-Deponents.

136. A few verbs having no perfect stem are regular in the present, but appear in the tenses of completed action as deponents. These are called semi-deponents or neuter passives. They are:—
audeō, audēre, ausus, dare. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, rejoice.
fīdō, fīdēre, fīsus, trust. soleō, solēre, solitus, be wont.
**§§ 136, 137. Deponent Verbs.**

*a.* From *audēō* there is an old subjunctive perfect *ausim*. The form *sōdēs* (for *sī audēs*), *an thou wilt*, is frequent in the dramatists and rare elsewhere.

*b.* The active forms *vāpulō, vāpulāre, be flogged*, and *vēneō, vēnīre, be sold* (contracted from *vēnum īre, go to sale*), have a passive meaning, and are sometimes called *neutral passives*. To these may be added *fieri*, *to be made* (see § 142), and *exsulāre*, *to be banished* (live in exile).

**Note.**—The following verbs are sometimes found as semi-deponents: *īurō, īrare, īrātus, swear; nūbō, nūbere, nūpta, marry; placeō, placēre, placitus, please.*

*For the regular Derivative Forms of Verbs, see § 167.*

### IRREGULAR VERBS.

**137.** Several verbs add some of the personal endings of the present system directly to the root, or combine two verbs in their inflection. These are called Irregular Verbs (cf. p. 86). They are *sum, volō, ferō, edō, queō, eō, fiō*, and their compounds.

*Sum* has already been inflected in § 119.

*a.* *Sum* is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions *ab, ad, dé, in, inter, ob, prae, prō* (*prōd*), *sub, super*.

In the compound *prōsum, prō* retains its original *d* before *e*. Thus,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Pres.</em></td>
<td><em>prōsum, I help.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>prōdes</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>prōdest</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imp.</em></td>
<td><em>prōsumus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>prōdestis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>prōsunt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fut.</em></td>
<td><em>prōderam, I was helping.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>prōderō, I shall help.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Perf.</em></td>
<td><em>prōfuī, I helped.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plupf.</em></td>
<td><em>prōfueram, I had helped.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>F. P.</em></td>
<td><em>prōfuerō, I shall have helped.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imper.</th>
<th><em>prōdes, prōdestō, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Infin. Pres.</em></td>
<td><em>prōdesse</em> <em>Perf.</em> <em>prōfuisse</em> <em>Fut.</em> <em>prōfutūrus esse</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Part.</em></td>
<td><em>prōfutūrus, about to help.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. *Sum* is also compounded with the adjective *potis*, or *pote*, *able*, making the verb *possum*. This is inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>possum</em>, <em>I can.</em></td>
<td><em>possim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>potes</em>, <em>you can.</em></td>
<td><em>possis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>potest</em>, <em>he can.</em></td>
<td><em>possit</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>possamus</em>, <em>we can.</em></td>
<td><em>possimus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>potestis</em>, <em>you can.</em></td>
<td><em>possitis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>possunt</em>, <em>they can.</em></td>
<td><em>possint</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>posteram</em>, <em>I could.</em></td>
<td><em>possem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>poterō</em>, <em>I shall be able.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>potui</em>, <em>I could.</em></td>
<td><em>potuerim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plupf.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>potueram</em></td>
<td><em>potuissem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>potuerō</em>, <em>I shall have been able.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pres.** *posses*                  **Perf.** *potuisse*

**Part.** *poṭēns* (adj.), *powerful*.

Note.—The forms *potis* *sum*, *pote* *sum*, etc., occur in early writers. Other early forms are *potesse*; *possiem*, -ēs, -ēt; *poterint*, *potisit* (for *possit*); *potestur* (with pass. inf. cf. § 143. a).

138. *Volō* and its compounds are inflected as follows:

*volō*, *velle*, *volui*, *wish*.

*nōlō* (for *nē* *volō*), *nōlle*, *nōluī*, *be unwilling*.

*mālō* (for *magis* or *mage* *volō*), *mālle*, *māluī*, *wish rather, prefer*.

**Pres.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>volō</em></td>
<td>velim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vīs</em></td>
<td>velīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>volt</em> (vult)</td>
<td>velit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>volumus</em></td>
<td>velīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voltis</em> (vult)</td>
<td>velītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>volunt</em></td>
<td>velint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>volēbam</em></td>
<td>vellem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>volam</em></td>
<td>nōlam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>volēs</em>, etc.</td>
<td>nōlēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>voluī</em> voluerim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>volueram</em> voluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>voluerō</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>voluerō</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Irregular Verbs.

§§ 138, 139.

**Imperative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōli</td>
<td>nōlitō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlīte, do not.</td>
<td>nōlītōte, thou shalt not, ye shall not.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

velle voluisse nōlle nōluissē mālle māluissē

**Participles.**

Pres. volēns, willing. nōlēns, unwilling.

**Gerund.**

volēndī (late)

Note.—The forms sīs for sī vis, sūltīs for sī voltīs, and the forms nē volō, nēvis (nē-vis), mage volō, māvolō, etc., occur in early writers.

139. Ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātum,1 bear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDIC.</td>
<td>SUBJ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>ferant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tūlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

Pres. fer | ferte | ferre | feriminī |
Fut. fertō | fertōte | fertor | |
| fertō | fertōte | fertor | feruntor |

**Infinitive.**

Pres. ferre | |
Perf. tulisse | lātus esse |
Fut. lātūrus esse | lātum īrī (lātus fore) |

**Participles.**

Pres. volēns | Perf. lātus |
Fut. lātūrus | Ger. ferendus |

Gerund: ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

Supine: lātum, -tū

1 The perfect tulī is for tetullī (which sometimes occurs), from TUL, root of tollō; the supine lātum is for tīlātum (cf. τλητός).
**Etymology**

**Verbs.**

140. **Edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum, cat**, is regular of the third conjugation, but has also some forms directly from the root (ED) without the characteristic vowel. These are in full-faced type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indic.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subj.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edō</td>
<td>edam (ēdim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edis (ēs)</td>
<td>edās (ēdis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edit (ēst)</td>
<td>edat (ēdit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edimus</td>
<td>edāmus (ēdimus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editis (ēstis)</td>
<td>edātis (ēditis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edunt</td>
<td>edant (ēdint)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| | | | |
| edēbam | ederem (ēsem) | edēbar | ederer |
| edēbās | ederes (ēsēs) | edēbāris (-re) | ederēris (-re) |
| edēbat | ederet (ēsēt) | edēbātur | ederētur (ēsētur) |

**Future.**

| | | |
| edam | edar |
| edēs | edēris |
| edet, etc. | edētur, etc. |

**Perfect.**

| | | |
| ēdī | ēderim | ēsus sum |
| ēderam | ēdissem | ēsus eram |

**Pluperfect.**

| | | |
| ēderō | ēsus erō |

**Imperative.**

| | | |
| ede (ēs) | edite (ēste) | edere |
| editō (ēstō) | editōte (ēstōte) | editor |
| editō (ēstō) | eduntō | eduntor |

**Infinitive.**

| edere (ēsse) | edī |
| edisse | ēsus esse |
| ēsūrus esse | ēsum īri |

**Participles.**

| Pres. | Perf. |
| edēns | ēsus |
| Fut. ēsūrus | Ger. edendus |

**Gerund.**

| ēdendī, -dō, -dum, -dō | ēsum, -sū |
§ 141. Eō, ĕre, ĕvi, ĕtum, go.

**Indicative.**

- **Pres. S.** eō, ĕs, ĕt
- **P.** ĭmus, ĭtis, eunt
- **Imperf.** ĭbam, ĭbās, ĭbat
- **Future.** ĭbō, ĭbis, ĭbit
- **Perfect.** ĭvī (īf)
- **Pluperf.** ĭveram (īeram)
- **Fut. Perf.** ĭverō (īerō)

**Subjunctive.**

- eam, ĕās, ĕat
- ĭēmus, ĭētis, ĭant
- ĭrem, ĭrēs, ĭret
- ĭrēmus, ĭrētis, ĭrent

**Imperative.**

- ĭ, ĭte, ĭtō, ĭtō, ĭtote, euntō

**Infinitive.**

- **Pres. ĭre**
- **Perf. ĭvisse (īsse)**
- **Fut. ĭtūrus esse**

**Participles.**

- **Pres. ĭēns, euntis**
- **Fut. ĭtūrus**
- **Ger. eundum**

- **Gerund:** ĭundī, -dō, -dum, -dō
- **Supine:** ĭtum, ĭtū

**a.** The compounds adeō, approach, ineō, enter, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive: —

- **Indic.**
- **Pres. adeor**
- **Impf. adībar**
- **adīris**
- **Fut. adībor**
- **adītur**
- **Perf. aditus sum**
- **adīmur**
- **Plup. aditus eram**
- **-adīnī**
- **F. P. aditus erō**
- **Infin. adīrī, aditus esse**
- **adeuntur**
- **Part. aditus adeundus**

Thus inflected, the forms of eō are used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive: as, ĭtum est (§ 146. d). The infinitive ĭrī is used with the supine in -um to make the future infinitive passive (§ 147. c. 1). The verb vēneō, be sold (i.e. vēnum eō, go to sale), has also several forms in the passive.

**b.** In the perfect system of eō the forms without v are more common, and in the compounds are regular: as, adīf, adieram, adīisse (adīsse).

**c.** The compound ambīō is inflected regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation. But it has also ambībat in the imperfect indicative.

**d.** Prō with eō retains its original d: as, prōdeō, prōdīs, prōdit.

---

1 Root ĕ, cf. ĭmu; the ĕ stands for ĭ, lengthened form of the root ĭ.
142. Faciō, facēre, fēcī, factum, *make*, is regular. But it has imperative fac in the active, and besides the regular forms the future perfect faxō, perfect subjunctive faxim. The passive of faciō is—

fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, or become.*

The tenses of the first stem of fīō are regular of the fourth conjugation, but the subjunctive imperfect is fierem, and the infinitive fieri.

---

**Indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>First Stem</th>
<th>Second Stem</th>
<th>Third Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. S.</td>
<td>fīō, fīs, fit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td>fīmus, fītis, fīunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>fīēbam, fīēbās, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>fīam, fīēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>factus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>factus eram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>factus erō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>First Stem</th>
<th>Second Stem</th>
<th>Third Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fīam, fīās, fīat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td>fīāmus, fīātis, fīant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>fierem, fierēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>factus sim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>factus essem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>factus erō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imper.**

fī, fīte, fītō, fītōte, fīuntō

**Infin.**

Pres. fierī | Perf. factus esse | Fut. factum ēri

**Part.**

Perf. factus | Ger. faciendus

*a.* Most compounds of faciō with prepositions change a to I (present stem), or ē (supine stem), and are inflected regularly: as,—

cōnficiō, cōnficēre, cōnfēci, cōnfectum, *finish.*

cōnfacicior, cōnfacicēre, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.

*b.* Other compounds retain a, and have -fīō in the passive: as, benefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum; pass. benefiō, -fierī, -factus, *benefit.* These retain the accent of the simple verb: as, bene-fā'cis (§ 19. d).

c. A few isolated forms of -fīō occur in other compounds: viz.,—

cōnfīt, it happens. dēfīt, it lacks. Infīt, he begins (to speak).

cōnfīt   dēfīunt   Infīunt

cōnfīat  dēfīet     effīerī, to be effected.

cōnfīeret dēfīat     interfīerī, to perish.

cōnfīerī  dēfīerī    interfīat, let him perish.

---

**Defective Verbs.**

143. Some verbs have lost their Present stem, and use only tenses of the Perfect, in which they are inflected regularly. These are—
§§ 143, 144. [Defective Verbs. 115

a. Coepī,\(^1\) I began; Infin. coepisse; Fut. Part. coeptūrus; Perf. Pass. Part. coeptus.

The passive is used with the passive infinitive: as, coeptus sum vocārī, I began to be called, but coeptī vocāre, I began to call (cf. § 144. 2, note). For the present incipio is used.

b. Ōdī, I hate;\(^2\) perfect participle òsus, hating or hated (peròsus, utterly hateful), future participle òsūrus, likely to hate.

c. Meminī, I remember;\(^3\) with the Imperative mementō, mementote; Part. meminēns.

Note.—Ōdī and meminī have a perfect form with a present meaning, and are called preteritive verbs. Nōvī and cōnsuēvī (usually referred to nōscō and cōnsuēscō) are often used in the sense of I know (have learned), and I am accustomed (have become accustomed), as preteritive verbs. Many other verbs are occasionally used in the same way (see § 279. Remark).

144. Many verbs are found only in the present system. Such are maereō, -ēre, be sorrowful (cf. maestus, sad); ferō, -īre, strike.

In many the simple verb is incomplete, but the missing parts occur in its compounds: as, vādō, vādere, invāsī, invāsum.

Some verbs occur very commonly, but only in a few forms: as,—

a. Āīō, I say:

Indic. Pres. āīō, ais, ait; — — — āiunt

Imperf. āīēbam (aīēbam), āīēbās, etc.

Subj. Pres. āīās, āiāt, āiānt

Imper. āī

Part. āīēns

b. Inquam, I say (used only, except in poetry, in direct quotations, like the English quoith, which is possibly from the same root): —

Indic. Pres. inquam, inquis, inquit

inquirimus, inquitis (late), inquiiunt

Imperf. inquiēbat

Fut. inquīēs, -et

Perf. inquistī, inquit

Imper. inque, inquītō

c. The deponent fārī, to speak, forms the perfect tenses regularly: as, fātus sum, eram, etc. It has also—

Indic. Pres. fātur, fantur

Fut. fābor, fābitur

Imper. fāre

Infin. fārī

1 Root AP (as in apiscor) with co(n-).

2 Root OD, as in ōdiām.

3 Root MEN, as in mēns.
Part. Pres. (dat.) fanti
Perf. fatus, having spoken.
Ger. fandus, to be spoken of.

GER. fandī, -dō
Sup. fātū

Several forms compounded with the prepositions ex, prae, prō, inter, occur: as, praefātur, affārī, prōfātus, interfātur, etc. The compound Infāns is regularly used as a noun (child). Infandus, nefandus, are used as adjectives, unspeakable, abominable.

d. Quaesō, I ask, beg (original form of quærō, § 132. d), has—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>quaesō, quaesūmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infin.</td>
<td>quaesere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part.</td>
<td>quaesēns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Ovāre, to triumph, has the following:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ovat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subj.</td>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ovet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>ovāret</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part.</td>
<td>ovāns, ovātūrus, ovātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>ovandī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f. A few verbs are found chiefly in the Imperative: as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>sing. salvē, plur. salvēte, hail! (from salvus, safe and sound). An infin. salvēre also occurs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sing. avē (or havē), plur. avēte, Fut. avētō, hail or farewell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sing. cedo, plur. cedite (cette), give, tell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>sing. apage! begone! (properly a Greek word).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

g. Queō, I can, nequeō, I cannot, are conjugated like eō. They are rarely used except in the present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queō</td>
<td>queam</td>
<td>nequeō (nōn queō) nequeam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīs</td>
<td>queās</td>
<td>nōnquīs</td>
<td>nequeās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>queat</td>
<td>nequit</td>
<td>nequeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīmus</td>
<td>queāmus</td>
<td>nequīmus</td>
<td>nequeāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quītis</td>
<td>queātis</td>
<td>nequītis</td>
<td>nequeātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queunt</td>
<td>queant</td>
<td>nequeunt</td>
<td>nequeant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībam</td>
<td>quiREM</td>
<td>nequībam</td>
<td>nequiREM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībat</td>
<td>quiRET</td>
<td>nequībat</td>
<td>nequiRET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quībant</td>
<td>quiREnt</td>
<td>nequībant</td>
<td>nequiREnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Impersonal Verbs

#### Indic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quibō</td>
<td>quibunt</td>
<td>nequibunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvī</td>
<td>quīvissent</td>
<td>nequīvissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subj.</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quibunt</td>
<td>nequibunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subj.</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quīvī</td>
<td>nequīvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvit</td>
<td>quīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvērunt</td>
<td>nequīvērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subj.</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quīsset</td>
<td>nequīsset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subj.</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quīrive (quīisse)</td>
<td>nequīrive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subj.</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quiēns, queuntis</td>
<td>nequiēns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.**—A few passive forms are used by old writers with passive infinitives: as, quitur, quitus, queātur, queantur, nequitur, nequītur; cf. possum and coepī (§§ 137. note and 143. a).

### Impersonal Verbs

145. Many verbs, from their meaning, appear only in the *third person singular*, the *infinitive*, and the *gerund*. These are called Impersonal Verbs, as having no personal subject.¹ Their synopsis may be given as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Con. I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>Pass. Con. I.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it is plain.</td>
<td>it is allowed.</td>
<td>it chances.</td>
<td>it results.</td>
<td>it is fought.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstat</td>
<td>licet</td>
<td>accidit</td>
<td>ēvenit</td>
<td>pūgnātūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstatēbat</td>
<td>licēbat</td>
<td>accidēbat</td>
<td>ēveniēbat</td>
<td>pūgnābātūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstatēbit</td>
<td>licēbit [est]</td>
<td>accidet</td>
<td>ēveniet</td>
<td>pūgnābitūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstitit</td>
<td>licuit, -itum</td>
<td>accidit</td>
<td>ēvenit</td>
<td>pūgnātum est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstititerat</td>
<td>licuerat</td>
<td>acciderat</td>
<td>ēvenerat</td>
<td>pūgnātum erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnstititerit</td>
<td>licuerit</td>
<td>acciderit</td>
<td>ēvenerit</td>
<td>pūgnātum erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnestet</td>
<td>liceat</td>
<td>accidat</td>
<td>ēveniat</td>
<td>pūgneāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnestāret</td>
<td>licēret</td>
<td>accideret</td>
<td>ēvenīret</td>
<td>pūgnārētūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnestīterit</td>
<td>licuerit</td>
<td>acciderit</td>
<td>ēvenerit</td>
<td>pūgnātum sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnestīset</td>
<td>licuisset</td>
<td>accidisset</td>
<td>ēvenisset</td>
<td>pūgnātum esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnestāre</td>
<td>licēre</td>
<td>accidēre</td>
<td>ēvenēre</td>
<td>pūgnārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnestītīse</td>
<td>licuissē</td>
<td>accidisse</td>
<td>ēvenisse</td>
<td>pūgnātum esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ With impersonal verbs the word *It* is used in English, having usually no representative in Latin, though *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, are often used nearly in the same way.
146. Impersonal Verbs may be classified as follows:—

a. Verbs expressing the operations of nature and the time of day: as, pluit, it rains; nígít, it snows; grandínat, it hails; fulgurát, it lightens; vespéra-scít (inceptive, § 167. a), it grows late; lúceít hoc iam, it is getting light now.

NOTE.—In these no subject is distinctly thought of. Sometimes, however, the verb is used personally with the name of a divinity as the subject: as, füppiter tonat, Jupiter thunders. In poetry other subjects are occasionally used: as, fundae saxa pluunt, the slings rain stones.

b. Verbs of feeling, where the person who is the proper subject becomes the object, as being himself affected by the feeling expressed in the verb (§ 221. b). Such are: miseret, it grieves; paenitet (poenitet), it repents; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it shames; taedet, it disgusts: as, miseret mé, I pity (it distresses me).

NOTE.—Such verbs often have also a passive form: as, misereor, I pity (am moved to pity); and occasionally other parts: as, paenitúrus (as from paenió), paenitendus, pudendus, pertaesum est, pigítum est.

c. Verbs which have a phrase or clause as their subject (§§ 270. a, 330, 332. a): as,—

accidit, contingit, évenit, obtingit, obvenit, fit, it happens.
libet, it pleases.
licet, it is permitted.
certum est, it is resolved.
cónstat, it is clear.
placet, vidétur, it seems good.
délectat, iuvat, it delights.
óportet, nécès est, it is needful.
presat, it is better.
interest, réfert, it concerns.
vacat, there is leisure.
restat, superest, it remains.

NOTE.—Many of these verbs may be used personally. Libet and licet have also the passive forms libítum (licitum) est, etc. The participles libéns and licéns are used as adjectives.

d. The passive of intransitive verbs is very often used impersonally: as, púgnatúr, there is fighting (it is fought); ítur, some one goes (it is gone); parcitúr mihi, I am spared (it is spared to me, see § 230).1

1 This use of the passive proceeds from its original reflexive meaning, the action being regarded as accomplishing itself (compare the French cela se fait).
§ 147. | Origin and History of Verb-Forms.

**Periphrastic Forms.**

147. The following periphrastic forms are found in the inflection of the verb: —

a. The so-called "Periphrastic Conjugations" (see § 129).

b. The tenses of completed action in the passive formed by the tenses of *esse* with the perfect participle: as, *amātus est*.

c. The future infinitive passive, formed as follows: —

1. By the infinitive passive of *ēō, ġō*, used impersonally with the supine in *-um*: as, *amātum irī*.

2. By *fore* (or *futūrum esse*), with the perfect participle (as *amātus fore*).

3. By *fore* with *ut* and the subjunctive (cf. § 288.).

**NOTE.**

**Origin and History of Verb-Forms.**

The forms that make up the conjugation of a verb are composed of formations from a root, originally separate, but gradually grouped together, and afterwards supplemented by new formations made on old lines to supply deficiencies. Some of these forms were inherited, already made, by the Latin language; others were developed in the course of the history of the language itself.

I. **Present Stem.** — The Present stem is a modification or development of the root (see § 123). In regular forms of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations it appears in all the other parts of the verb (including noun and adjective forms) as well, and is accordingly called the Verb-Stem.

The tenses of the Present system are made from the Present stem as follows: —

a. In the Present Indicative the personal endings are added directly to the present stem. Thus root *ār*, present- (and verb-) stem *āra-*; *ār-s, ār-a-mus, ār-a-tis*.

b. In the Imperfect Indicative the suffix *-bam, -bās*, etc. (originally a complete verb), is added. *Bam* is probably the imperfect of the root *BHU* (cf. *fū, futūrus, ēō, φω, ἔ*), meaning *I was*. This was added to a complete word originally a case of a noun, as in I *was a-ploughing*, hence *āra-bam*. The form probably began in the second or the third conjugation and from that was extended to the others.

c. In the Future Indicative a similar suffix, *-bō, -bīs*, etc., is added (by the same process). *Bō* is probably a present form of the same root *BHU*, with a future meaning: as, *āra-bō*. 
This form once in use in all the conjugations was later supplanted in the third and fourth by an inherited form, which was originally an optative mood, differing from the present indicative only in the final vowel of the stem (see § 126. c. 1): as, sugē-bō (old); sugam, sugēs (later).

d. In the Present Subjunctive the personal terminations were added to another form of present stem of great antiquity with a different vowel: as, amem, moneam, audiam.

e. In the Imperfect Subjunctive a suffix, -rem, -res, etc., was added. -rem is doubtless a very old modal form of sum diverted from its original use.

f. The noun and adjective forms of the Present system were originally separate formations made from the root by means of noun-suffixes. These forms being associated with the verb became types for the formation of new ones from the present stem, in cases where no such formation from the root ever existed. Thus regere is originally a dative (or locative) of a noun like genus, generis; but as regere seems to be rege + re, so ara-re was made in the same manner. Gerendus is the noun-stem gerōn-, i.e. ger + ōn- (gerō, -ōnis, § 162. c) + dus; but it seemed to be gere + nus, and thus gave rise to aman-dus.

2. Perfect Stem.—The Latin inherited from the parent Indo-European speech preterite forms of two kinds:—

a. In the real perfect (perfect with have in English) the proper terminations (see § 118) are added directly to a root-form, which was originally a reduplication (doubling) of the root with vowel change. Thus stō, root sta, perfect stetī (for stesti); cf. pungō (root pug), pungūtī (later pungūtī).

b. In other inherited verbs the perfect was formed by a verbal auxiliary (some form of sum) added to the root (or later to the present stem). Thus dīcō, root dic, perfect dīc-sī (dixī). This auxiliary being a complete verb-form, contained, of course, the personal terminations.

c. The remaining perfects were formed with a suffix -vī, of uncertain origin, but containing the personal terminations. But these formative processes had been forgotten long before the Latin language reached the stage in which we know it. The form in -vī, however, became the type for new Perfects. By the Romans, the first person singular of the Perfect (however formed), losing its final vowel, was treated as a new stem, from which other forms were developed by the use of added auxiliaries or by analogy with those already formed. This stem is
called the Perfect Stem. Thus were formed the Pluperfect and the Future Perfect Indicative, the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Perfect Infinitive. The terminations of these tenses are parts of *sum* in some form or other, but precisely how they are made is uncertain.

3. **Supine Stem.**—The Perfect and Future Participles and the Supine, though strictly noun-forms, each with its own suffix, agree in having the first letter of the suffix (t) the same and in suffering the same phonetic changes (by which the t becomes s, § 11. a. 2).

Hence these forms, along with several sets of derivatives (see §§ 162. *a*, 163. *b*, 164. *m*) used as nouns or adjectives, were felt by the Romans as belonging to one system, and are conveniently associated with the Supine Stem. Thus,—

*pingō, pictum, pictus, pictūrus, pictūra, pīctor.*

*rīdeō, rīsum (for rīd-tum), rīsus (part.), rīsus (noun), rīsūrus, rīsiō, rīsor, rīsibilis.*

The signs of mood and tense are often said to be inserted between the Root (or verb-stem) and the Personal ending. No such insertion is possible in a developed language like the Latin. All true verb-forms are the result, as shown above, of *composition*; that is, of adding to the root or the verb-stem either pronouns (personal endings) or fully developed auxiliaries (themselves containing the personal terminations), or of adding similar auxiliaries to the perfect stem; or of imitation of such processes. Thus *amābāmus* is made by adding to *amā-*, originally a significant word, or a form conceived as such, a full verbal form *†bāmus*, not by inserting *bā* between *amā- and -mus.*
Etymology: Particles.

Chapter VII.—Particles.

Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions are called Particles.

In their origin these words are either (1) case-forms, actual or extinct, or (2) compounds and phrases.

Particless cannot always be distinctly classified, for many adverbs are used also as prepositions and many as conjunctions (§§ 152 and 155), and interjections must be reckoned as particles (§ 27).

I.—Adverbs.

1. Derivation.

148. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives as follows:

a. From adjectives of the first and second declensions, by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to -ē: as, cārē, dearly, from cārus, dear (stem cāro-).

Note.—The ending -ē is a relic of an old ablative in -ēd (cf. § 36. f).

b. From adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter to the stem. Stems in nt- (nom. -ns) lose the t-. All others are treated as i-stems. Thus,—

fortiter, bravely, from fortis (stem forti-), brave
ācriter, eagerly, from ācer (stem ācri-), eager.
vigilanter, watchfully, from vigilāns (stem vigilant-).
prūdenter, prudently, from prūdens (stem prūdent-).
alter, otherwise, from alius (old stem ali-).

Note.—This suffix is probably the same as -ter in the Greek -τερος and in uter, alter (p. 49, n. 1). If so, these adverbs are neuter accusatives (cf. d).

c. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have adverbs of both forms (-ē and -ter). Thus dūrus, hard, has both dūrē and dūriter; miser, wretched, has both misērē and misēriter.

d. The neuter accusative of adjectives and pronouns is often used as an adverb: as, multum, much; facilē, easily; quid, why.

So regularly in the comparative degree: as, ācrīus, more keenly (positive ācriter); facilius, more easily (positive facilē).

Note.—These adverbs are strictly cognate accusatives (see § 240. a).
e. The ablative neuter or (less commonly) feminine of adjectives, pronouns, and nouns, may be used adverbially: as, falsō, falsely; citō, quickly; rectā (viā), straight (straightway); crēbrō, frequently; fortē, by chance; spontē, of one’s own accord.

f. Some adverbs are derived from adjectives not in use: as, abundē, plentifully (as if from ābundus, cf. ābundō, abound); saepē, often (cf. saepēs, hedge, and saepīō, hedge in); propē, almost (as if from āpropīs).

Note.—Many adverbs and other particles are case-forms of nouns or pronouns. In some the case is not obvious, and in some it is doubtful. Examples may be seen in the following:

a. Accusative forms: āctūtum, quickly; nōn (for nē ūnum), not; īterum (comparative of īs), a second time; dēmum (superlative of dē, down), at last.

b. Ablative or Instrumental forms (§ 31. i): quā, where; contrā, on the other hand; īntra, within; qui, how; alqui, somehow; volgō, commonly; frūstrā, in vain; forīs, out of doors.

c. Datives of adjectives and pronouns: as, quō, whither; adeō, to that degree; ūltrō, beyond; citrō, this side (as end of motion); retrō, back; illōc (for illō-ce), weakened to illōc, thither.

Remark.—Those in -tōrē are from comparative stems (cf. ās, ċis, re-).

d. Locative forms: Ībī, there; ubi, where; peregrī (peregrō), abroad; hīc (for īhōl-ce), here; īnterīm, meanwhile (cf. īnter); īndē, thence; tamen, yet; ālīm (from ōllus, old form of ille), once. Also the compounds extrinsecus, outside; hōdiē (holi + dē), to-day; perēndīē, day after to-morrow.

e. Feminine accusatives: āstatīm, on the spot; salītum, at least (generally saltem), from lost nouns in -tis (genitive -tis). Thus -tīm became a regular adverbial termination; and by means of it adverbs were made from many noun and verb stems immediately, without the intervention of any form which could have an accusative in -tīm: as, sēparātīm, separately, from sēparātus, separate. Some adverbs that appear to be feminine accusative are perhaps locative: as, palam, openly; perperam, wrongly; tamā, so; quam, as.

f. Plural accusatives: as, ālīās, elsewhere; forās, out of doors (as end of motion).

g. Of uncertain formation: (1) those in -tūs (usually preceded by ī), with an ablative meaning: as, fundītus, from the bottom, utterly; divīnitus, from above, providentially; īntus, within; pēnītus, within; (2) those in ēdem, ēdam, dō: as, quidem, indeed; quondam, once; quandō (cf. dōnec), when; (3) dūm (probably accusative of time), while; īam (perhaps locative, cf. nam), now.

h. Phrases or clauses which have grown together into adverbs (cf. notwithstanding, nevertheless, besides): antēā, old antideā, before (ante ēa, probably ablative or instrumental); postmodō, presently (post modo, a short time after); dēnō, aneu (dē novō); prōrūs, absolutely (prō vorsus, straight ahead); quōt-annīs, yearly (quot annīs, as many years as there are); quam-ob-rem, wherefore; cōminus, hand to hand (con manus); ūminus at long range (ex manus); ob-viam (as in īre obviam, to go to meet); prīdem (cf. prae and -dem in ī-dem), for some time; forsān (for ān [ēst]) perhaps (it’s a chance whether); forsītan (fors sit ān), perhaps (it would be a chance whether); scīlicet (scī, licet), that is to say (know, you may); vidēlicet (vidē, licet), to wit (see, you may).
2. Classification.

149. Adverbs are classified as follows:—

**Adverbs of Place.**

| Ibi, there. | Eo, thither. | Inde, thence. | Ea, by that way. |
| Istic, there. | Istituc, thither. | Istinc, thence. | Ista, by that way. |
| Illio, thence. | Illuc, thither. | Illinc, thence. | Illa (illac), " |
| Ubi, where. | Quo, whither. | Unde, whence. | Qua, by what way. |
| Alichubi, somewhere. | Aliquo, etc. | Alicundc, from, etc. | Aliaqua, by, etc. |
| Ibidem, in the same. | Indidem | Eadem |
| Aliubi, elsewhere. | Alio | Aliunde |
| Ububi, wherever. | Quoquo | Undecunque |
| Ubivis, anywhere. | Quovis | Undique |
| Sicubi, if anywhere. | Sicuo | Sicunde |
| Necubi, lest " | Nequo | Necunde |

Usque, all the way to. | Citro, to this side. |
Usquam, anywhere. | Intrro, inwardly. |
Usquam, nowhere. | Porrro, further on. |
Ultrro, beyond (or freely, i.e. beyond what is required). |

Quorsum (for quo vorsum, whither turned?), to what end? | Reorosum, backward. |
Horsum, this way. | Sursum, upward. |
Prorsum, forward (prorsus, utterly). | Cesorsum, downward. |
Introrsum, inwardly. | Aliorsum, another way. |

**Adverbs of Time.**

Quando? when? (interrog.); Cum (quom, quum), when (relat.); Ut, when, as. |
Nunc, now; Tunc (tum), then; Mox, presently; Iam, already; Dum, while.

---

1 The demonstrative adverbs hic, ibi, istic, illic, and their correlatives, correspond in signification with the pronouns hic, is, iste, ille (see § 102), and are often equivalent to these pronouns with a preposition: as, inde = ab eó, etc. So the relative or interrogative ubi corresponds with qui (quis), all-cubi with aliquis, ubiubi with quisquis, si-cubi with quis (see §§ 104, 105, with the table of Correlatives in § 106). All these adverbs were originally case-forms of pronouns. The forms in -bi, -ic, -inc, and -unde are locative, those in -ó and -áct dative, those in -á and -ác ablative or instrumental (p. 123, note).
Classification of Adverbs.

primum (prīmō), first; deinde (postea), next after; postremum (postremō), finally; posteaquam, postquam, when (after that, as soon as).

umquam (unquam), ever; numquam (nunquam), never; semper, always.

aliquandō, at some time, at length; quandōque (quandōcumque), whenever; dēnique, at last.

quotiens (quotiēs), how often; totiens, so often; aliquotiēns, a number of times.

cotīdiē (quotīdiē), every day; in diēs, from day to day.

nōndum, not yet; necdum, nor yet; vixdum, scarce yet; quam primum, as soon as possible; saepe, often; crēbrō, frequently; iam nōn, no longer.

Adverbs of Degree or Cause.

quam, how, as; tam, so; quamvis, however much, although; quōmodō, how.

cūr, quārē, why; quod, quia, quoniam (for quom-iam), because, eō, therefore.

ita, sīc, so; ut (uti), as, how; utut, utcumque, however.

quamquam (quanquam), although, and yet; et, etiam, quoque, even, also.

I. Interrogative Particles.

an, -ne, anne, utrum, utrumque, num, whether.

nōnne, annōn, whether not; numquid, ecquid, whether at all (ecquid intellegis? have you any idea? do you understand at all?).

utrum (num), -ne, whether;... an (annōn, necne), or.

“...-ne

“

II. Negative Particles.

nōn, not (in simple denial); haud (hau, haut), minimē, not (in contradiction); nē, not (in prohibition); nēve, neu, nor; nēdum, much less.

nē, lest; neque, nec, nor; nē... quidem, not even.

nōn modo... vērum (sed) etiam, not only... but also.

nōn modo... sed nē... quidem, not only not... but not even.

si minus, if not; quō minus (quōminus), so as not.

quīn (relat.), but that; (interrog.), why not?

nē, nec (in compos.), not; so in nescīō, I know not; negō, I say no (āīō, I say yes); negotiōnum, business (nec ōtium); nēmō (nē hōmō), no one; nē quis, lest any one; necopīnātus, unexpected; neque enim, for... not.
Etymology: Particles. §§ 149–51.


150. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: as,

nēmō nōn audiet, every one will hear (nobody will not hear).

a. Many compounds of which nōn is the first part express an indefinite affirmative: as,

nōnnūllus, some; nōnnūlli (= aliqui), some few.
nōnnihil (= aliquid), something.
nōnnēmō (= aliquot), sundry persons.
nōnumquam (= aliquotiens), sometimes.
necnōn, also (nor not).

b. Two negatives of which the second is nōn (belonging to the predicate) express a universal affirmative: as,

nēmō nōn, nullus nōn, nobody [does] not, i.e. everybody [does] (cf. nōnnēmō above, not nobody, i.e. somebody).
nihil nōn, everything.
numquam nōn, never not, i.e. always (cf. nōnumquam above, not never, i.e. sometimes).

151. The following adverbs require special notice:

a. Etiam (et iam), also, even, is stronger than quoque, also, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while quoque follows it: as,

nōn verbīs sōlum sed etiam vi (Verres ii. 64), not only by words, but also by force.
hōc quoque maleficium (Rosc. A. 117), this crime too.

b. Nunc (for †num-ce) means definitely now, in the immediate present, and is not used as in English of past time. Iam means now, already, at length, presently, and includes a reference to previous time through which the state of things described has been or will be reached. It may be used of any time. With negatives it means (no) longer. Tum, then, is correlative to cum, when, and may be used of any time. Tunc, then, at that time, is a strengthened form of tum (†tum-ce, cf. nunc). Thus

ut iam antēa dixi, as I have already said before.
si iam satis acēsīs atque rōboris habēret (Rosc. Amer. 149), if he had attained a suitable age and strength (lit. if he now had, as he will by and by).
nōn est iam lēnitātī locus, there is no longer room for mercy.
§§ 151, 152.]  

Prepositions.

quod iam erat institutum, which had come to be a practice (had now been established).

nunc quidem deléta est, tunc florēbat (Læl. 13), now ('tis true) she [Greece] is ruined, then she was in her glory.

tum cum régnavat, at the time when he reigned.

c. Certō means certainly; certē (usually), at any rate: as, certō sciō, I know for a certainty; ego certē, I at least.

d. Prīnum means first, "firstly" (first in order, or for the first time), and implies a series of events or acts. Prīmō means at first, as opposed to afterwards, giving prominence merely to the difference of time: as,—

hoc prīnum sentio, this I hold in the first place.

aedēs prīmō ruere rēbāmur, at first we thought the house was falling.

In enumerations, prīnum (or prīmō) is often followed by deinde, secondly, in the next place, or by tum, then, or by both in succession. Deinde may be several times repeated (secondly, thirdly, etc.). The series is often closed by dēnique or postrēmō, lastly, finally. Thus,—

prīnum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine, tum dē imperātōre dēligendō (Manil. 6), first of the kind of war, next of its magnitude, then of the choice of a commander.

e. Quidem, indeed, gives emphasis, and often has a concessive meaning, especially when followed by sed, autem, etc.: as,—

hoc quidem vidēre licet (Læl. 54), this surely one may see. [Emphatic.]

(sēcūritās) specie quidem blanda, sed réapse multīs locīs repudianda (id. 47), (tranqullity) in appearance, 'tis true, attractive, but in reality to be rejected for many reasons. [Concessive.]

Nē . . . quidem means not even or not . . . either. The emphatic word or words must stand between nē and quidem.

senex nē quod spēret quidem habet (C. M. 68), an old man has not anything to hope for even.

sed nē Jugurtha quidem quiētus erat (Jug. 51), but Jugurtha was not quiet either.

II. — PREPOSITIONS.

152. Prepositions[1] are regularly used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

[1] Prepositions are not originally distinguished from Adverbs in form or meaning, but only specialized in use. Most of them are true case-forms: as, the comparative instrumentals contrā, infrā, suprā, and the accusatives (cf. § 88. d) circum, coram, cum, circiter, praeter (comp. of prae), propter (comp. of prope). Of the remainder, versus is a petrified nominative (participle of vertō); adversus is a compound of versus; while the origin of the brief forms ab, ad, dé, ex, ob, tranś, is obscure and doubtful.
a. The following are used with the Accusative:

ad, to.  extrā, outside.  post, after.
adversus, against.  in, into.  praeter, beyond.
adversum, towards.  infrā, below.  prope, near.
ante, before.  inter, among.  propter, on account of.
apud, at, near.  intrā, inside.  secundum, next to.
circā, around.  iuxtā, near.  sub, under.
circum, around.  ob, on account of.  supra, above.
circiter, about.  penes, in the power.  trans, across.
cis, citrā, this side.  per, through.  ultrā, on the further side.
contra, against.  pōne, behind.  versus, towards.
ergā, towards.

b. The following are used with the Ablative:

ā, āb, abs, away from, by.  in, in.
absque, without, but for.  praē, in comparison with.
cōram, in presence of.  prō, in front of, for.
cum, with.  sine, without.
dē, from.  sub, under.
ē, ex, out of.  tenus, up to, as far as.

The following may be used with either the Accusative or the Ablative, but with a difference in meaning:

in, into, in.  sub, under.
subter, beneath.  super, above.

In and sub, when followed by the accusative, indicate motion to, when by the ablative, rest in, a place: as,

vēnit in aedes, he came into the house; erat in aedibus, he was in the house. disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam transiit, the system is thought to have been discovered in Great Britain and thence brought over to Gaul.

sub ilicē consēderat, he had seated himself under an ilex.
sub lēgēs mittere orbem, to subject the world to laws (to send the world under laws).

153. The uses of the Prepositions are as follows:

Ā, ab, away from,2 from, off from, with the ablative.

a. Of place: as, ab urbe prefectus est, he set out from the city.

b. Of time (1) from: as, ab hōrā tertīā ad vesperram, from the third hour till evening; (2) just after: as, ab ēō magistrātū, after [holding] that office.

1 For palam, etc., see § 261. b, c.
2 Ab signifies direction from the object, but often towards the speaker; compare dē, down from, and ex, out of.
§ 153. \textit{Prepositions.}

Idiomatic uses: \textit{a reliquis differunt, they differ from the others; ab parvulis, from early childhood; prope ab urbe, near (not far from) the city; liberāre ab, to set free from; occīsus ab hoste (periit ab hoste), slain by an enemy; ab hac parte, on this side; ab rectī eius, to his advantage; a rēpublicā, for the interest of the state.}

\textbf{Ad, TO, TOWARDS, AT, NEAR,} with the accusative (cf. in, into).

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{a. Of place: as, ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city; ad meridiem, towards the south; ad exercitum, with the army; ad hostem, toward the enemy; ad urbem, near the city.}
\item \textit{b. Of time: as, ad nonām hōram, till the ninth hour.}
\item \textit{c. With persons: as, ad eum vēnit, he came to him.}
\end{itemize}

Idiomatic uses: \textit{ad supplicia descendunt, they resort to punishment; ad haec respondit, to this he answered; ad tempus, at the [fit] time; adire ad rempūlicam, to go into public life; ad petendam pācem, to seek peace; ad latera, on the flank; ad arma, to arms; ad hunc modum, in this way; quem ad modum, how, as; ad centum, near a hundred; ad hōc, besides; omnēs ad ūnum, all to a man; ad diem, on the day.}

\textbf{Ante, IN FRONT OF, BEFORE,} with the accusative (cf. post, after).

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{a. Of place: as, ante portam, in front of the gate; ante exercitum, in advance of the army.}
\item \textit{b. Of time: as, ante bellum, before the war.}
\end{itemize}

Idiomatic uses: \textit{ante urbem captam, before the city was taken; ante diem quintum (a.d.v.) Kal., the fifth day before the Calends (the 3d day before the last of the month); ante quadriennium, four years before or ago; ante tempus, too soon (before the time).}

\textbf{Apud, AT, BY, AMONG,} with the accusative.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{a. Of place (rare and archaic): as, apud forum, at the forum (in the marketplace).}
\item \textit{b. With reference to persons or communities: as, apud Helvētīōs, among the Helvetians; apud populum, before the people; apud aliquem, at one’s house; apud sē, at home or in his senses; apud Cicerōnem, in [the works of] Cicero.}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Circum,\textsuperscript{1} cīrca, circiter, ABOUT, AROUND,} with the accusative.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{a. Of place: circum haec loca, hereabout; cīrca sē habent, they have with them.}
\item \textit{b. Of time or number (circā or circiter, not circum): as, cērā eandem hōram, about the same hour; circiter passūs mille, about a mile. Especially about, in regard to: cīrā quem pūgna est (Quintil.), with regard to whom, etc.}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Contrā,\textsuperscript{2} OPPOSITE, AGAINST,} with the accusative: as, —

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{contrā Italiam, over against Italy; contrā haec, in answer to this.}
\item Often as adverb: as, haec contrā, this in reply; contrā autem, but on the other hand; quod contrā, whereas, on the other hand.}
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{1} \textit{Circum} is an accusative form; \textit{cīrca}, is instrumental; \textit{circiter}, accusative of a comparative. For the stem, cf. \textit{circus}.

\textsuperscript{2} \textit{Contrā} is instrumental comparative of \textit{cum} (con-).
**Etymology:**

*a*, *de* *as*, *in* *de* *as*, *in* *as*, *a*.  

**De,** **DOWN FROM,** FROM, with the ablative (![](https://scholar.google.com/scholar?q=Idiomatically%20a.)  

*a.* Of place: *as,* dē caelo dēmissus, *sent down from heaven;* dē nāvibus dēsilire, *to jump down from the ships.*  

*b.* Figuratively, CONCERNING, ABOUT, OF.† as, cognoscit dē Clōdi caede, *he learns of the murder of Clodius;* cōnsilia dē bellō, *plans of war.*  

c. In a partitive sense (compare *ex*), OUT OF, OF: as, unus dē plēbe, *one of the people.* Idiomatic uses: multis dē causis, for many reasons; quà dē causā, *for which reason;* dē imprōvisō, of a sudden; dē industriā, on purpose; dē integro, *at once;* dē tertīa vigilīa, *just at midnight* (starting at the third watch); dē mēnse Decembri navigāre, *to sail as early as December.*  

**Ex,** ē, **FROM** (the midst, opposed to in), OUT OF, WITH, the ablative (cf. *ab* and dē).  

*a.* Of place: as, ex omnibus partibus silvae evolēverunt, *they flew out from all parts of the forest;* ex Hispanicā, [a man] from Spain.  

*b.* Of time: as, ex ēō die quintus, *the fifth day from that* (four days after); ex hōc die, *from this day forth.* Idiomatically or less exactly: ex cōnsulātū, *right after his consulship;* ex ēius sententiā, according to his opinion; ex aequō, justly; ex imprōvisō, unexpectedly; ex tua rē, *to your advantage;* magnā ex parte, *in a great degree;* ex equō pūgnāre, *to fight on horseback;* ex usū, expedient; ē regione, opposite; quaeere ex aliqūo, *to ask of some one;* ex senātūs cōnsulō, *according to the decree of the senate;* ex fugā, *in [their] flight* (proceeding immediately from it); unus ē filiīs, *one of the sons.*  

**In,** with the accusative or the ablative.  

1. With the accusative, INTO (OPPPOSED TO *EX*).  

*a.* Of place: as, ēōs in silvās reieccerunt, *they drove them back into the woods.*  

*b.* Of time, TILL, UNTIL: as, in lūcem, till daylight.  

Idiomatically or less exactly: in meridiem, *towards the south;* amor in (ergā or adversus) patrem, *love for his father;* in āram cōnfugit, *he fled to the altar* (on the steps, or merely to); in diēs, from *day to day;* in longūdinem, *in length;* in haec verba iūrāre, *to swear to these words;* hunc in modum, *in this way;* ōrātiō in Catilinam, *a speech against Catiline;* in perpetuum, *for ever;* in pēius, *for the worse;* in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth.*

---

1 Of originally had the same meaning as dē (compare of).
2. With the ablative, in, on, among.

In very various connections: as, in castris, in the camp (cf. ad castra, to, at, or near the camp); in mari, on the sea; in urbe esse, to be in town; in tempore, in season; in scribendō, while writing; est mihi in animō, I have it in mind; in ancorā, at anchor; in hoc homine, in the case of this man; in dubī esse, to be in doubt.

infra, below, with the accusative.

a. Of place: as, ad mare infra oppidum, by the sea below the town; infra caelum, under the sky.

b. Figuratively: as, infra Homērum, later than Homer; infra tres pedēs, less than three feet; infra elephantōs, smaller than elephants; infra inhumōs omnēs, the lowest of the low.

inter, between (with two accusatives), among: as,—

inter me et Scipionem, between myself and Scipio; inter ōs et ommās, between the cup and the lip (the mouth and the morsel); inter hostīum tēla, amid the weapons of the enemy; inter omnēs primūs, first of all; inter bibendum, while drinking; inter sē loquuntur, they talk together; inter nōs, between ourselves.

ob, towards, on account of, with the accusative.

a. Literally: (1) of motion (archaic): as, ob Rōmam, towards Rome (Ennius); ob viam, to the road (preserved as adverb, in the way of). (2) Of place in which, before, in a few phrases: as, ob oculōs, before the eyes.

b. Figuratively, in return for (mostly archaic, probably a word of account, balancing one thing against another): as, ob mulierem, in pay for the woman; ob rem, for gain. Hence applied to reason, cause, and the like, on account of (a similar mercantile idea), for: as, ob eam causam, for that reason; quam ob rem (quamobrem), wherefore, why.

per, through, over, with the accusative.

a. Of motion: as, per urbm īre, to go through the city; per mūrōs, over the walls.

b. Of time: as, per hiemem, throughout the winter.

c. Figuratively, of persons as means or instruments: as, per homīnēs idōnēos, through the instrumentality of suitable persons; licet per mē, you (etc.) may for all me. Hence, stat per mē, it is through my instrumentality. So, per sē, in and of itself.

d. Weakened, in many adverbial expressions: as, per iocum, in jest; per speciem, in show, ostentatiously.

praē, in front of, with the ablative.

a. Literally, of place (in a few connections): as, praē sē portāre, to carry in one’s arms; praē sē ferre, to carry before one (hence figuratively), exhibit, proclaim, ostentatiously make known.

b. Figuratively, of hindrance, as by an obstacle in front (compare English for): as, praē gaudīo conticiuit, he was silent for joy.
c. Of comparison: as, prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum, *in comparison with* their own great size.

**Praeter, along by, by, with the accusative.**

1. Literally: as, praeter castra, *by the camp* (along by, in front of); praeter oculōs, *before the eyes.*

2. Figuratively, *beyond, besides, more than, in addition to, except:* as, praeter sperm, *beyond hope*; praeter aliōs, *more than others*; praeter paucōs, *with the exception of a few.*

**Prō, in front of, with the ablative:** as, —


**Propter, near, by, with the accusative:** as, —

propter tē sedet, *he sits next you.* Hence, *on account of* (cf. all along of): as, propter metum, *through fear.*

**Secundum,** *just behind, following, with the accusative.*

1. Literally: as, ite secundum mē (Plaut.), *go behind me*; secundum litus, *near the shore*; secundum flūmen, *along the stream* (cf. secundō flūmine, *down stream*).

2. Figuratively, *according to:* as, secundum nāturam, *according to nature.*

**Sub, under, up to, with the accusative or the ablative.**

a. Of motion, with the accusative: as, sub montem succēderea, *to come close to the hill.*

Idiomatically: sub noctem, *towards night*; sub lūcem, *near daylight*; sub haec dicta, *at (following) these words.*

b. Of rest, with the ablative: as, sub Iove, *in the open air* (under the heaven, personified as Jove): sub monte, *at the foot of the hill.*

Idiomatically: sub eōdem tempore, *about the same time* (just after it).

**Super,** *above, over, with the accusative or ablative:* as, —

vulnus super vulnus, *wound upon wound*; super Indōs, *beyond the Hindoos.*

But, — super tāli rē, *about such an affair.* (See § 260. c.)

**Suprā,** *on top of, above, with the accusative:* as, —

suprā terram, *on the surface of the earth.* So also figuratively: as, suprā hanc memoriam, *before our remembrance*; suprā mōrem, *more than usual*; suprā quod, *besides.*

---

1 Part. of sequor. 2 Comp. of sub. 3 Instrumental of superus, § 91. b.
Conjunctions.

§§ 153, 154.

Trāns,\(^1\) ACROSS, OVER, THROUGH, BY, with the accusative.

a. Of motion: as, trāns mare currunt, they run across the sea; trāns flūmen ferre, to carry over a river; trāns aethera, through the sky; trāns caput iace, throw over your head.

b. Of rest: as, trāns Rhēnum incolunt, they live across the Rhine.

Ültrā, BEYOND (on the further side), with the accusative: as,—
cis Padum ultrāque, on this side of the Po and beyond; ultrā eum numerum, more than that number; ultrā fidem, incredible; ultrā modum, immoderate.

[For Prepositions in Compounds, see § 170.]

Note.—Some adverbs appear as prepositions: as, intus, insuper.

III. — CONJUNCTIONS.

154. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences. They are of two classes: —

a. Co-ordinate, connecting co-ordinate or similar constructions (see § 180. a). These are: —

1. Copulative or disjunctive, implying a connection or opposition of thought as well as of words: as, et, and.

2. Adversative, implying a connection of words, but a contrast in thought: as, sed, but.

3. Causal, introducing a cause or reason: as, nam, for.

4. Illative, denoting an inference: as, igitur, therefore.

b. Subordinate, connecting a subordinate or dependent clause with that on which it depends (see §180. b). These are: —

1. Conditional, denoting a condition or hypothesis: as, si, if; nisi, unless.

2. Comparative, implying comparison as well as condition: as, ac si, as if.

3. Concessive, denoting a concession or admission: as, quamquam, although (lit. however much it may be true that, etc.).


5. Consecutive, expressing result: as, ut, so that.

6. Final, expressing purpose: as, ut, in order that; nē, that not.

Note 1.—Conjunctions, like adverbs, are either petrified cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, or obscured phrases: as, sed, an old ablative (cf. rēd, prōd); quod, an old accusative; dum, an old accusative (cf. tum, cum); vērō, an old ablative of vērus; nihilōminus, none the less; proinde, lit. forward from there.

Note 2.—A phrase used as a conjunction is called a conjunctive phrase: as, quā propter, quō circā, wherefore.

\(^1\) Probably neuter participle, cf. terminus.
Etymology: Particles.

155. Conjunctions are more numerous and more accurately distinguished in Latin than in English. The following list includes the common conjunctions and conjunctive phrases:

1. Co-ordinate.

   a. Copulative and Disjunctive.

   et, -que, atque (ac), and.
   et . . et; et . . . -que (atque); -que . . et; -que . . -que (poet.),
   both . . and.
   etiam, quoque, neque nōn (necnōn), quīnetiam, itidem (item), also.
   cum . . tum; tum . . tum, both . . and; not only . . but also.
   quā . . quā, on one hand . . on the other hand.
  modo . . modo, now . . now.
   aut . . aut; vel . . vel (-ve), either . . or.
   sīve (seu) . . sīve, whether . . or.
   nec (neque) . . nec (neque); neque . . nec; nec . . neque (rare), neither . . nor.
   et . . neque, both . . and not.
   nec . . et; nec (neque) . . -que, neither . . and.

   b. Adversative.

   sed, autem, vērum, vērō, at, atquī, but.
   tamen, attamen, sed tamen, vērum tamen, but yet, nevertheless.
   nihilōminus, none the less.
   at vērō, but in truth; enim vērō, for in truth.
   cēterum, on the other hand, but.

   c. Causal and Illative.

   nam, namque, enim, etenim, for.
   quia, quod, because.
   quoniam, quippe, cum (quom, quum), quandō, quandōquidem,
   sīquidem, utpote, since, inasmuch as.
   propterēa ( . . quod), for this reason ( . . that).
   quāpropter, quārē, quamobrem, quōcīrcā, unde, wherefore, whence.
   ergō, igitur, itaque, idēō, idcirco, proinde, therefore, accordingly.

   Note.—Of these quia quod, quoniam, quippe, cum, sīquidem, often introduce subordinate clauses. As all subordinate clauses have been developed from clauses once co-ordinate (p. 164), the distinction between co-ordinate conjunctions and subordinate is often obscure.

1 Some of these have been included in the classification of adverbs. See also list of correlatives, § 106.
Conjunctions.

§§ 155, 156.

d. Concessive.

quidem, to be sure, it is true.

2. Subordinate.

e. Conditional.

si, if; sin, but if; nisi (nī), unless, if not; quod si, but if.
modo, dum, dummodo, sī modo, if only, provided.
dummodo nē (dum nē, modo nē), provided only not.

f. Comparative.

ut, uti, sīcut, velut, prout, praet, ceu, as, like as.
tamquam (tanquam), quasi, utsī, āc sī, velut, veluti, velutsī, as if.
quam, atque (āc), as, than.

g. Concessive.

etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, tamenetsī, quamquam (quanquam), although.
quamvīs, quantumvīs, quamlibet, however much.
licet (properly a verb), ut, cum (quom, quum), though, suppose, whereas.

h. Temporal.

cum (quom, quum), cum prīmum, ubi, ut prīmum, postquam (posteāquam), when.
prius ... quam, ante ... quam, before, nōn ante ... quam, not ... until.
quandō, simul atque (simul āc), simul, as soon as.
dum, usque dum, dōnec, quoad, until.

i. Consecutive and Final.

ut (uti), quō, so that, in order that.
nē, ut nē, lest (that ... not, in order that not); nēve (neu), nor.
quīn (after negatives), quōminus, but that (so as to prevent).

156. The following are the principal conjunctions whose meaning requires to be noticed:—

a. Et, and, simply connects words or clauses; -que combines more closely into one connected whole. -que is always enclitic to the word connected or to the first or second of two or more words connected. Thus,
cum coniugibus et liberis, with [their] wives and children.
ferrō ignīque, with fire and sword. [Not as separate things, but as the combined means of devastation.]
aquā et ignī interdictus, forbidden the use of water and fire. [In a legal formula, where they are considered separately.]
Atque (āc) adds with some emphasis or with some implied reflection on the word added. Hence it is often equivalent to and so, and yet, and besides, and then. But these distinctions depend very much upon the feeling of the speaker, and are often untranslatable: as, —

omnia honesta atque inhonesta, everything honorable and dishonorable (too, without the slightest distinction).
úsus atque disciplīna, practice and theory beside (the more important or less expected).
atque ego crédō, and yet I believe (for my part).

In the second of two connected ideas, and not is expressed by neque (nec): as, —
neque vērō hōc sōlum dixit, and he not only said this.

Atque (āc), in the sense of as, than, is also used after words of comparison and likeness: as, —
nōn secus (aliter) āc sī, not otherwise than if.
prō eō āc dēbūi, as was my duty (in accordance as I ought).
aequē āc tū, as much as you.
haud minus āc iūsī faciunt, they do just as they are ordered.
simul atque, as soon as.

b. Sed and the more emphatic vērum or vērō, but, are used to introduce something in opposition to what precedes, especially after negatives (not this ... but something else). At introduces with emphasis a new point in an argument, but is also used like the others.

At enim is almost always used to introduce a supposed objection which is presently to be overthrown. At is more rarely used alone in this sense. Autem, however, now, is the weakest of the adversatives, and often has hardly any adversative force perceptible. Atqui, however, now, sometimes introduces an objection and sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning. Quod sī, but if, and if, now if, is used to continue an argument. Ast is old or poetic and is equivalent to at.

Note.—A concessive is often followed by an adversative either in a coordinate or a subordinate clause: as, etiamsi quod scribas nōn habēbīs, scribitō tamen (Cic.), though you have nothing to write, still write all the same.

c. Aut, or, excludes the alternative; vel (probably imperative of volō) and -ve give a choice between two alternatives. But this distinction is sometimes disregarded. Thus, —

sed quis ego sum aut quae est in mē facultās, but who am I or what special capacity have I? [Here vel could not be used, because in fact a negative is implied and both alternatives are excluded].
quam tenui aut nūllā potius valēūdine, what feeble health [he had], or rather none at all. [Here vel might be used, but would refer only to the expression, not to the fact].

aut bibat aut abeat, let him drink or (if he won't do that, then let him) quit. [Here vel would mean, let him do either as he chooses].

vita tālis fuit vel fortūnā vel glōriā, his life was such either in respect to fortune or fame (whichever way you look at it).

si propinquōs habeant imbecillōres vel animō vel fortūnā, if they have relatives beneath them either in spirit or in fortune (in either respect, for example).

cum cōgnītī sunt et aut deōrum aut rēgum filīi inventī, sons either of gods or of kings. [Here one case would exclude the other.]

implicātī vel ūsū diūtūrō vel etiam officīs, entangled either by close intimacy or even by obligations. [Here the second case might exclude the first.]

Sīve (seu) is properly used in disjunctive conditions (if either . . . or if), but also with alternative words and clauses, especially with two names for the same thing: as,—

sīve arrīdēns sīve quod ita putāret (De Orat. i. 91), either laughingly or because he really thought so.

Vēl, even, for instance, is often used with no alternative force: as,—

vel minimus, the very least.

d. Nam and namque, for, usually introduce a real reason, formally expressed, for a previous statement; enim (always postpositive), a less important explanatory circumstance put in by the way; etēnim (for, you see; for, you know; for, mind you) and its negative neque enim introduce something self-evident or needing no proof.

(ea vīta) quae est sōla vīta nōminanda. nam dum sumus in his inclūsi compāgibus corporis mūnere quōdam necessitātīs et grāvi opere per-

fungimur. est enim animus caelestis, etc. (Cat. Maj. 77).

hārum trium sententiārum nūlli prōrsus assentīor. nec enim illa prīma vēra est, for of course that first one isn't true.

e. Ergō, therefore, is used of things proved formally, but often has a weakened force. Igitur, then, accordingly, is weaker than ergō and is used in passing from one stage of an argument to another. Itaque, therefore, accordingly, and so, is used in proofs or inferences from the nature of things rather than in formal logical proof.

All of these are often used merely to resume a train of thought broken by a digression or parenthesis. Idcirco, for this reason, on this account, is regularly followed (or preceded) by a correlative: as, quia, quod, sī, ut, nē, and refers to the special point introduced by the correlative.
Etymology: Particles.

né aegri quidem quia nón omnēs convalēscunt, idcirco ārs nulla medicinae est. primum igitur aut negandum est esse deōs ... aut quī deōs esse con-
cèdant eis fatendum est eōs aliquid agere idque praeclārum; nihil est autem praelārius mundī administrātiōne, deōrum igitur consiliō administrātur. quod si aliter est, aliquid profectō sit necesse est melius et māiore vi praeditum quam deōs ... nōn est igitur nātūra deōrum praepotēns neque excellēns, si quidem ea subjecta est eī vel necessitāti vel nātūrae quà caelum maria terrae regantur, nihil est autem praestantius deō, ab eō igitur mundum necesse est regī. nūlī igitur

Est nātūrae oboediēns aut subjectus deōs: omnem ergō regit ipse nātūram. etenim si concèdimus intellegentīs esse deōs, concèdimus etiam prōvidentiēs et rērum quidem māxiārum. ergō utrum ignōrant quae rēs māxumae sint quōque eae modō trāctandae et tuendae an vim nōn habent quā tantās rēs sustineant et gerant? (N. D. ii. 76.) malum mihi vidētur mors. est miserum igitur, quoniam malum. certē.

ergō et ei quibus ēvēnit iam ut morerentur et eī quibus ēventūrern est miserī. mihi ita vidētur. nēmō ergō nōn miser. (Tusc. i. 9.) meministīs enim cum illius nefarīi gladiātōris vocēs percrēbuisissent quās, etc.— tum igitur (Murena 50).

f. Quia, because, regularly introduces a fact; quod, either a fact or a statement. Quoniam (for quom iam), inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses or justifications, and the like. Quandō, since, is mostly archaic or late.

possunt quia posse videntur, they can because they think they can. locus est ā mē quoniam ita Murēna voluit retrāctandum (Murena 54), I must review the point, since Murēna has so wished.

mē reprehendīs quod idem dēfendam (as he had not) quod lēge pūnerīm (Murena 67), you blame me because [as you say] I defend the same charge which I have punished by the law.

reprehendīs mē quia dēfendam (as he had) (Sulla, 50).

cūr igitur pācem nōlō? quia turpis est (Philip. vii. 9), why then do I not wish for peace? Because it is disgraceful.

In the denial of a reason, nōn quō is used as well as nōn quod, nōn quia, and nōn quīn, but not nōn quoniam. Thus,—

nōn quia multīs dēbeō ... sed quia saepe concurrent aliqūōrum bene dē mē meritōrum inter ipsōs contentiōnēs (Plancius 78), not because I am indebted to many, but because, etc.

nōn quīn parī virtūte et voluntāte aliū fuerint, sed tantam causam nōn habuērunt (Philip. vii. 6), not that there were not others of equal courage and good-will, but they had not so much reason.

g. Cum (quom), when, is always a relative, and is often correlative with tum (see h. 1, below); quandō, when (rarely since), is used as interrogative, relative and indefinite: as, quandō? hodie, when? to-
day; sī quandō, if ever.
§ 156. Conjunctions; Interjections.

h. 1. Conjunctions, especially those of relative origin, frequently have a correlative in another clause, to which they correspond: as,—

\[ ut \ \text{sementem feceris}, \ \text{ita metes, as you sow, so shall you reap.} \]
\[ uti initium, sic finis est, as is the beginning, so is the end. \]
\[ tum cum Catilinam eiciēbam (Catil. iii. 3), at the time when, etc. \]

2. Often the same conjunction is repeated in two co-ordinate clauses. Examples are:—

\[ et \ldots et, both \ldots and. \]
\[ modo \ldots modo, now \ldots now. \]
\[ nunc \ldots nunc, now \ldots now. \]
\[ iam \ldots iam, now \ldots now. \]
\[ simul \ldots simul, at once (this) and also (that). \]
\[ quā \ldots quā, both \ldots and, as well \ldots as, alike (this) and (that). \]

i. The concessives (etsī, quamvis, etc., although) may introduce either a fact or a mere supposition, and are often followed by the correlative tamen, yet, nevertheless; quamquam is regularly used to introduce an admitted fact and not a mere supposition.

**Quamquam** (and rarely etsī, tametsī), in the sense of though (and yet, but, however) are also used to introduce an independent statement made to limit or correct the preceding (quamquam correc-
tivum): as,—

\[ ille volt diū vivere, hic diū vixit, quamquam, ó dī bonī, quid est in hominis vitā diū? (Cat. Maj. 68), the one wishes to live long, the other has lived long, though (after all) Good Heavens! what is there that is long in the life of man? \]

k. **Autem, enim, and vērō** are postpositive, i.e. they always follow one or more words of their clause; so generally igitur and often tamen.

INTERJECTIONS.

Ō, ēn, ecce, ehem, papae, vāh (of astonishment).

īō, ēvae, ēvoe, euhoe (of joy).

heu, ēheu, vae, alas (of sorrow).

heus, eho, ehodum, ho (of calling); st, hist.

ēia, euge (of praise).

prō (of attestation): as, prō pudor, shame!
CHAPTER VIII.—Formation of Words.

NOTE.—All formation of words is originally a process of composition. An element significant in itself is added to another significant element, and thus the meaning of the two is combined. No other combination is possible for the formation either of inflections or of stems. Thus, in fact, words (since roots and stems are significant elements, and so words) are first juxtaposed, then brought under one accent, and finally felt as one word. This gradual process is seen in sea change, sea-nymph, seaside. But as all derivation, properly so-called, appears as a combination of uninflected stems, every type of formation in use must date back of inflection. Hence words were not in strictness derived either from nouns or from verbs, but from stems which were neither, because they were in fact both; for the distinction between noun- and verb-stems had not yet been made.

After the development of Inflection, however, that one of several kindred words which seemed the simplest was regarded as the Primitive form, and from this the other words of the group were thought to be derived. Such supposed processes of formation were then imitated, often erroneously, and in this way new modes of derivation arose. Thus new adjectives were formed from nouns, new nouns from adjectives, new adjectives from verbs, and new verbs from adjectives and nouns.

In course of time the real or apparent relations of many words became confused, so that nouns and adjectives once supposed to come from nouns were often assigned to verbs, and others once supposed to come from verbs were assigned to nouns.

Further, since the language was constantly changing, many words went out of use, and do not occur in the literature as we have it. Thus many derivatives survive of which the Primitive is lost.

Finally, since all conscious word-formation is imitative, intermediate steps in derivation were sometimes omitted, and occasionally apparent derivatives occur for which no proper Primitive ever existed.

I.—ROOTS AND STEMS.

157. Roots¹ are of two kinds:—

1. Verbal, expressing ideas of action or condition (sensible phenomena).

2. Pronominal, expressing ideas of position and direction.

Stems are divided into (1) Noun- (including Adjective-) stems, and (2) Verb-stems.

NOTE.—Noun- and verb-stems were not originally different (see p. 163), and in the consciousness of the Romans were often confounded, but in general were treated as distinct.

¹ For the distinction between Roots and Stems, see §§ 21, 22.
158. Words are formed by inflection:—
1. From roots inflected as stems:—

   a. Without change: as, duc-is (dux), duc; nec-is (nex); is, id.
   So in verbs: as, est, fert, est (cf. p. 86).

   b. With change of the root-vowel: as, ldc-is (ldx), luc; pác-is
      (páx). So in verbs: i-s for iis, from eō, ire; fátur from for, fári.

   Note. — In these cases it is impossible to say with certainty
   whether the form of root in a or in b is the original one. But for
   convenience the above order is adopted.

   c. With reduplication: as, fur-fur, mar-mor, mur-mur. So in
      verbs: as, si-sto (root sta).

2. From derived stems; see § 159.

II.—SUFFIXES.

159. Stems are derived from roots or from other stems
   by means of suffixes. These are:—

1. Primary: added to the root, or (in later times by analogy) to
   verb-stems. The root has either the weaker or the fuller vowel (cf.
   § 158. a, b).

2. Secondary: added to a noun- or adjective-stem.

Both primary and secondary suffixes are for the most part pronom-
inal roots (§ 157. 2), but a few are of doubtful origin.

Note. — The distinction between primary and secondary suffixes, not being or-
   inal (see p. 140, head-note), is constantly lost sight of in the development of a lan-
   guage. Suffixes once primary are used as secondary, and those once secondary
   are used as primary. Thus in hosticus (hosti + cus) the suffix -cus, originally
   ka (see § 160. λ) primary, as in paucus, has become secondary, and is thus
   regularly used to form derivatives; but in pudicus, apricus, it is treated as
   primary again, because these words were really or apparently connected with verbs.
   So in English -able was borrowed as a primary suffix, but also makes forms like
   clubbable, salable; -some is properly a secondary suffix, as in toilsome, lonesome,
   but makes also such words as meddlesome, venturesome.

1. Primary Suffixes.

160. The words in Latin formed immediately from the
   root by means of Primary suffixes, are few.

   a. Inherited words so formed were mostly further developed by the
      addition of other suffixes, as we might make an adjective lone-by-some-ish,
      meaning nothing more than lone, lonely, or lonesome.

   b. By such accumulation of suffixes, new compound suffixes were
      formed which crowded out even the old types of derivation: thus—
A word like mēns, mentis, by the suffix ōn- (nom. -ō) gave mentiō, and this being divided into mēn + tiō, gave rise to a new type of abstract nouns in -tiō (phonetically -siō): as, légātiō, embassy.

A word like audītor, by the suffix io- (nom. -ius), gave rise to adjectives like audītorius, of which the neuter is used to denote the place where the action of the verb is performed. Hence tōrio- (nom. -tōrium), N., becomes a regular suffix (§ 164. i. 5).

So in English such a word as mechanically gives a suffix -ally, making telegraphically, though there is no such word as telegraphical.

c. Examples of primary suffixes are:—

1. Vowel suffixes:—

a,1 found in nouns and adjectives of ā- and o-stems, as sonus, lūdus, vagus, scriba, toga (root TEC).

i, less common, and in Latin frequently changed, as in rūpēs, or lost, as in scobs (scobis, root SCAB).

u, disguised in most adjectives by an additional i, as in suā-vis (for tīsuādus, cf. ōsvēs), ten-uis (root TEN in tendō), and remaining alone only in nouns of the fourth declension, as acus (root AK, sharp, in acer, aciēs, ōkūs), pecū (root PAC, bind, in paciscor).

2. Suffixes with a consonant:—

a. ta (in the form to-) in the regular perfect passive participle, as tēctus, tēctum; sometimes with an active sense, as in pōtus, prānsus; and found in a few words not recognized as participles, as pūtus (cf. pūrus), altus (alō).

b. ti in abstracts and rarely in nouns of agency, as messis, vestis, pars, mēns. But in many the i is lost.

c. tu in abstracts (including supines), sometimes becoming concretes, as aēctus, lūctus.

d. na, forming perfect participles in other languages, and in Latin making adjectives of like participial meaning, which often become nouns, as māgnus (= māctus, root MAG), plēnus, rēgnum.

e. ni, in nouns of agency and adjectives, as ignis, sēgnis.

f. nu, rare, as in manus, sinus.

g. ma with various meanings, as in animus, almus, firmus, forma.

h. va (commonly uo-) with an active or passive meaning, as in equus, arvum, conspicuus, exigus, vacīvus (vacuus).

i. ra (or la, a passive participle termination in other languages), usually passive, as in ager, integer, plēri-que (= plēnus = plētus), sella (for sed-la, cf. ēdpa).

1 Observe that it is the stem, not the nominative, that is formed by the suffix, although the nominative is here given for convenience of reference. The vowel in these suffixes is given as a to avoid puzzling questions of comparative grammar, though it had no doubt assumed the form o, even in the Parent Speech.
k. ya (forming gerundives in other languages), in adjectives and abstracts, including many of the first and fifth declensions, as eximius, audácia, Flórentia, perniciës.

l. ka, sometimes primary, as in paucí (cf. παυόμενος), locus (for stlocus). In many cases the vowel of this termination is lost, leaving a consonant-stem: as, apex, cortex, loquax.

μ. an (in-, ǒn-), in nouns of agency and abstracts: as, aspergō, compāgō (-īnis), gerō (-ōnis).

ν. man (men-: also used in the form men- as a conscious derivative) expressing means, often passing into the action itself: as, āgmen, fliumen.

ξ. tar, forming nouns of agency: as, pater (i.e. protector), frāter (i.e. supporter), ōrātor.

ο. tra, forming nouns of means: as, claustrum, mületrum.

π. as (sometimes phonetically changed into er-, or-), forming names of actions: as, genus, furor.

ρ. ant, forming active participles: as, legēns, with some adjectives from roots unknown: as, frequēns, recēns.

The above, with some suffixes given below, belong to the Indo-European parent speech, and most of them were not felt as living formations in the Latin.

2. Significant Endings.

161. Both primary and secondary suffixes, especially in the form of compound suffixes, were used in Latin with more or less consciousness of their meaning. They may therefore be called Significant Endings.


Note.—There is really no difference in etymology between an adjective and a noun, except that some formations are habitually used as adjectives and others as nouns (§ 25. 6, note).

III.—DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. Nouns of Agency.

162. Nouns of Agency properly denote the agent or doer of an action. But they include many words in which the idea of agency has entirely faded out, and also many words used as adjectives. Their significant endings are:—

a. -tor (-sor), m., -trix, f., added to roots or verb-stems to denote the agent or doer of an action.
Etymology: Formation of Words.  §§ 162, 163.

cano, sing (can, supine cantum); cantor, singer; cantrič, songstress.

vincō (vinc, supine victum), conquer: victor, victrix, conqueror (victorious).

tondeō, shear (tond as root, sup. tônsum): tōnsor, tōnstrīx, hair-cutter.

petō, seek (peti- as stem, sup. petitum): petitor, candidate.

senātor (lost verb senō, -āre), senator.

By analogy -tor is sometimes added to noun-stems, but these may be stems of lost verbs (cf. senātor above): as, viātor, traveller, from via, way (but cf. inviō).

Note 1.—The termination -tor (-sor) has the same phonetic change as the supine ending -tum (-sum) (p. 121. 3), and is added to the same form of root or verb-stem as that ending (see § 125).

Note 2.—The feminine form is always -trīx. Masculines in -sor lack the feminine, except expulsor (expultrīx) and tōnsor (tōnstrīx).

Note 3.—-tor is an inherited termination (cf. § p. 143). The feminine is a further formation in -ca which has lost its final vowel (cf. § 160. a).

b. t- (originally ta-, cf. § 160. a), c., added to verb-stems making nouns in -es (-itis, -etis, stem -it-, -et-) descriptive of a character: as, —

miles (verb-stem mile-, as in mille, thousand), a soldier (man of the crowd).

teges (verb-stem tege-, cf. tegō, cover), a coverer, a mat.

comes, -itis (con- and meō, go, cf. trāmes, sēmita), a companion.

c. -ō (gen. -ōnis, stem ōn-), m., added to stems conceived as verb-stems (but perhaps originally noun-stems) to indicate a person employed in some specific art or trade: as, —

gerō (ges in gerō, gerere, carry, but compare -ger in armiger (squire), a carrier.

com-bibō (bib as root in bibō, bibere, drink), a pot-companion.

Note.—This termination is also used to form many nouns descriptive of personal characteristics (cf. § 164. g).

2. Names of Actions.

163. Names of Actions are confused, through their suffixes, with real abstract nouns and nouns denoting means and instruments. They are derived (1) apparently or really from roots and verb-stems (primary) or (2) from noun-stems (secondary).
§ 163.]

Names of Actions. 145

1. Significant endings giving real or apparent primary formations are:

a. -or (st. ēr-, earlier ēs-), m., -ēs (gen. -is, st. i., earlier es-), f., -us (st. ēs-, earlier es- or os-), n., added to roots or forms conceived as roots: as,—

*timeō, fear; tim- or, dread.*
*sedeō, sit; sēd-ēs, seat.*
*decēt, it is becoming; dec-us, grace, beauty.*

†facinō (old form of faciō, do); facin-us, a deed.

Note.—Many nouns of this class are formed by analogy from imaginary roots: as, facinus above (from a supposed root FACIN).

b. -īō (st. īōn-), -tiō (st. tiōn-), -tūra (st. tūrā-), F., -tus (st. tu-), m.,

(phonetically -siō, -sūra, -sus), apparently added to roots or verb-stems, making verbal abstracts which easily pass into concretes.

*legō, gather, enroll; leg-iō, a legion (originally, the annual conscription).*
*regō, direct; reg-iō, a direction, a region.*
*īnserō (SA), implant; īnsi-tiō, grafting.*
*vocō, call; v-cā-tiō, a calling.*
*mōlior, toil; mōli-tiō, a toiling.*

pingō (PIG), paint; pic-tūra, a painting.

sentiō, feel; sēn-sus (for sent-tus, § II. a. 2), perception.

fruor, enjoy (for *frugiiour*); frūc-tus, enjoyment, fruit.

Note 1.—-tiō, -tūra, -tus are added to roots or verb-stems precisely as -tor, with the same phonetic change. Hence they are conveniently associated with the supine stem (see p. 121). They sometimes form nouns when there is no corresponding verb in use: as, senātus, senate (cf. senex); mentiō, mention (cf. mēns); fētūra, offspring (cf. fētus); litterātūra, literature (cf. litterae); cōnsulātūs, consulship (cf. cōnsul).

Note 2.—Of these endings, -tus was originally primary (cf. § 160. γ); -īō is a compound formed by adding ēn- to a stem ending in a vowel (originally i): as, dīciō (cf. -dicus and dīcis); -tiō is a compound formed by adding ēn- to stems in ti-: as, gradātiō (cf. gradātim); -tūra is formed by adding -ra, feminine of -rus, to stems in tu-: as, nātūra from nātus; statūra from status (cf. figūra, of like meaning, from a simple u-stem, fīgu-s; and māturūs, Mātūta).

c. -men, -mentum, -mōnium, N., -mōnia, F., apparently added to roots or verb-stems to denote acts, or means and results of acts.

AG, root of agō, lead; āg-men, line of march.

regi- (stem seen in regō, direct); {regi-men, rule.
regi-mentum, rule.

So colu-men, pillar; mō-men, movement; nō-men, name.

fruor, enjoy; frūc-tus, enjoyment, fruit.

testor, witness; testi-mōnium, testimony.

queror, complain; queri-mōnia, complaint (but see note).
Also flā-men (m.), a priest (from flō, blow, in reference to the sacrificial fire).

Remark: -mōnium and -mōnia are also used as secondary, forming nouns from other nouns and from adjectives: as, sancti-mōnia, sanctity (sanctus, holy); mātri-mōnium, marriage (māter, mother).

Note.—Of these endings, -men is primary (cf. § 160. v); -mentum is a further development of -men made by adding to-, and appears for the most part later in the language than -men: as, mōmen, movement (Lucr.); mōmentum (later). So elementum is a development from L-M-N-a, l-m-n's (letters of the alphabet), changed to elementa along with other nouns in -men. -mōnium and -mōnia are compound secondary suffixes formed from mo-, as in the series almus, fostering; Almōn, a river near Rome; almōnia, support. But the last was formed from alō later, when -mōnia had become established as a supposed primary suffix.

d. -bulum, -culum, -brum, -crum, -trum, n., added to verb-stems or roots (rarely to noun-stems), to denote MEANS OR INSTRUMENT: as,—
pāscō, feed; pā-bulum, fodder.
stō, stand; sta-bulum, stall.
tūs (gen. tūris), incense; tūri-bulum, a censer.
vocō, call; vocā-bulum, a name, a word.
lateō, hide; lati-bulum, hiding-place.
vehō, carry; vehi-culum, wagon.
pīō, purify; piā-culum, an expiation.
cernō (crevi), sift; cri-brum, sieve.
flō, blow; flā-bra (pl.), blasts.
candēla, a candle; candēlā-brum, a candlestick.
ambulō, walk; ambulā-crum, place for walking.
sepeliō, bury; sepul-crum, tomb.
simulō, pretend; simulā-crum, image.
claudō, shut; claus-trum, a bar.
arō, I plough; arā-trum, a plough.

A few Masculines and Feminines of the same formation occur as nouns and adjectives: as,—
for, speak; fā-bula, tale.
rīdeō, laugh; rīdi-culus, laughable.
faciō, make; fa-ber, smith.
lateō, hide; late-bra, hiding-place.
terō, bore; tere-bra, auger.
mulgeō, milk; mulo-tra, milk-pail.
ūrō, burn; Aus-ter, South wind.

Note.—These are no doubt compound nominal suffixes, bo- + lo-, co- + lo-, bo- + ro-, co- + ro-, to- + ro-, but the series cannot be distinctly made out. They had become fully welded into independent suffixes before the historical period.
Abstract Nouns.

2. Significant endings entirely secondary forming Abstract nouns are:—

   e. -ia, -tia (-īs, -tiēs), -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, r., added to adjective stems and a few to nouns. So -dō and -gō, r., but associated with verbs, and apparently added to verb-stems. Thus:—

   audāx, bold; audāc-ia, boldness. So fidūc-ia, confidence (†fidāx).
   prūdēns, wise; prūden-tia, wisdom.
   superbus, proud; superb-ia, pride.
   trīstis, sad; trīstī-tia, sadness.
   pauper, poor; pauper-īēs, poverty.
   sēgnis, lazy; sēgni-tīēs, laziness.
   bonus, good; boni-tās, goodness.
   civis, citizen; civī-tās, citizenship.
   senex, old; senec-tūs, age.
   sola, alone; solī-tūdō, solitude.
   dulcis, sweet; dulcē-dō, sweetness (probably from a lost stem dulcē-).

   stems ending in o- or ā- lose these vowels before -ia (as superb-ia), and change them to i before -tās, -tūs, -tia (as boni-tās, above).

   consonant-stems often insert -i before -tās: as, loquāx (stem loquāc-), loquāci-tās; but hones-tās, māies-tās (as if from old adjectives in -es), über-tās, volup-tās. o after i is changed to e: as, pius (stem pio-), pie-tās; socius, socie-tās (see § 11. c).

   note.—of these, -ia is inherited as secondary (cf. § 160. k); -tia is formed by adding -la to stems with a t-suffix: as, millītia, from miles (st. milit-); molestia from molestus; clēmentia from clēmēns; whence by analogy, mall-tia, avāri-tia. -tās is inherited, but its component parts, ta- + ti-, are found as suffixes in the same sense: as, senecta from senex; sēmen-tīs from sēmen. -tūs is tū- + ti-, cf. servitū-dō. -dō and -gō appear only with long vowels, as from verb-stems, by a false analogy; but -dō is do- + ōn-: as, cupidus, cupidō; grāvidus, grāvēdō (cf. grāvē-scō); albidus, albēdō (cf. albē-scō); formidus, hot, formidō (cf. formidulōsus), (hot flash?) fear; -gō is possibly co- + ōn-; cf. vorāx, vorāgō, but cf. Cethōgus. -tūdō is compounded of -dō with tu-stems, which acquire a long vowel from association with verb-stems in u- (cf. volūmen, from volvō): as, consuētū-dō, valētū-dō, habītū-dō, sollicitū-dō; whence servitū-dō (cf. servitūs, tūtīs).
Etymology: Formation of Words. [§§ 163, 164.

f. -ium, -tium, added to noun- and perhaps verb-stems, forming neuter abstracts, which easily pass into concretes denoting offices and groups: as,—

hospes (gen. hospit-is), a guest; hospit-ium, hospitality, an inn.
servus, a slave; servi-tium, slavery, the slave class.
collēga, a colleague; collēg-ium, colleagueship, a college.
auspeān, a soothsayer; auspic-ium, soothsaying, an omen.
gaudiēs, rejoice; gaud-ium, joy.
benefaciēs, benefit; benefic-ium, a kindness (but cf. beneficus).
dē-siderēs, miss (from dē-sīdēs, out of place, of missing soldiers)
dēsider-ium, longing.
effugēs, escape; effug-ium, an escape (cf. profugus).
ad verbum, [added] to a verb; adverb-ium, an adverb.
inter īlīnas, between moons; interlūn-ium, time of new moon.
regiās fugā, flight of a king; regifug-ium, flight of kings.

Vowel-stems lose their vowel before -ium, as collēg-ium, from collēga.

Note. — -ium, neuter of -ius (§ 164. g), -ia (cf. e), is an inherited primary suffix (cf. § 160. b), but is used with great freedom as secondary; -tium is formed like -tia, by adding -ium to stems with t: as, exit-ium, equit-ium (cf. exitus, equitēs); so, by analogy, calvi-tium, servi-tium (from calvus, servus).

164. Derivative adjectives are Nominal (from nouns or adjectives) or Verbal (as from roots or verb-stems).

Their significant endings are: —

I. Nominal.

a. -ulus (-a, -um) (after a vowel -olus), -culus, -ellus, -illus, making an important class of adjectives, which are usually appropriated to one gender, that of the Primitive, and used as DIMINUTIVE NOUNS: as,—
rivus, a brook; riv-us, a streamlet.
gladius, a sword; gladi-olus, a small sword.
filius, a son; fili-olus, a little son.
filia, a daughter; fili-ola, a little daughter.
atrium, a hall; atri-olum, a little hall.
homō, a man; homun-culus, a dwarf.
auris, an ear; auri-cula, a little ear.
mūnus, N., a gift; mūnus-culum, a little gift.
aparvus (-a, -um), little; parv-olus (later parv-us), very small.
maior (old māiōs), greater; māius-culus, somewhat larger.

Note 1.—These are all formed by adding -lus (originally -rus, cf. § 160. i) to various stems, forming adjectives. The formation is the same as that of -ulus in § 160. But these words became settled as diminutives, and retained their connection with nouns. So in English the diminutives whitish, reddish, are of the same formation as bookish and snappish. -culus comes from -lus added to adjectives in -cus formed from stems in n- and s-. as, iuven-cus, Aurun-cus (cf. Aurunculēus), pris-cus, whence the cu becomes a part of the termination, and the whole ending is used elsewhere, but mostly with n- and s-stems, in accordance with its origin.

Note 2.—Diminutives are often used to express affection, pity, or contempt: as, deliciolae, little pet; m.ullercula, a poor (feeble) woman; homunculus, wretched man.

Remark: -ciō, added to stems in n-, has the same diminutive force, but is added to masculines only: as, homun-ciō, a dwarf (from homō, a man).

b. -adēs, m., -ās, F., -idēs, -īdēs, m., -īs, -ēs, F., -ēs, -eus, M., added to proper names, forming PATRONYMICS to indicate descent or relationship.

These, originally Greek adjectives, have almost all become nouns in Latin: as,—

Tyndareus: Tyndar-idēs, Castor or Pollux; Tyndar-is, Helen, daughter of Tyndarus.
Atlās: Atlanti-adēs, Mercury; Atlanti-adēs (Gr. pl.), the Pleiads.
Scipiō: Scipio-adēs, son of Scipio.

Anchīsēs: Anchīsi-adēs, Æneas.
Thēseus: Thēs-idēs, son of Theseus.

Týdeus: Týd-idēs, Diomedes, son of Tydeus.

Oileus: Aiāx Oile-ēus, son of Oileus.
Thaumās: Thaumanti-ās, Iris, daughter of Thaumas.
Hesperus: Hesper-ides (from Hesper-is, -idis), f. pl., the daughters of Hesperus, the Hesperides.

c. -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus; -ās, -ēnsis, -acus (-ācus), -icus; -ēus (generally shortened to -ēus), -ēius, -icius, forming adjectives with the sense of belonging to.

1. So from common nouns: as,—
mōns (st. monti-), mountain; mont-ānus, of the mountains.
vetus (st. veter-), old; veter-ānus, veteran.
antelūc-ānus, before daylight.
ēgoō, lack; eg-ēnus, needy (see note below).
terra, earth; terr-ēnus, earthly.
sērus, late; ser-ēnus, calm (of evening stillness).
collis, hill; coll-īnus, of a hill.
dīvus, god; dīv-īnus, divine.
lībertus, one’s freedman; lībert-īnus, of the class of freedmen.
vitulus, a calf; vitul-īna (sc. carō), veal.
quis, who? cui-ās, of what country?
īnīmus, lowest; īnīm-ās, of the lowest rank.
forum, a market-place; for-ēnsis, of a market-place, or the Forum.
merum, pure wine; mer-ācus, pure.
cīvis, a citizen; cīv-icus, civic, of a citizen.
fullō, a fuller; fullōn-icus, of a fuller.
fēmina, a woman; fēmin-eus, of a woman, feminine.
lāc, milk (st. lacti-); lact-eus, milky.
plēbēs, the commons; plēb-ēius, of the commons, plebeian.
pater, father; patr-icius, patrician.

2. But especially from proper nouns (names of places, peoples, and persons), denoting belonging to or coming from: as,—

Rōma: Rōm-ānus, Roman.
Sulla: Sull-ānī, Sulla’s veterans.
Cyzicus: Cyzic-ēnī, Cyzicenes, people of Cyzicus.
Liguria: Ligur-īnus, of Liguria.
Sicilia: Sicili-ēnsis, Sicilian.
Ilium, Troy; Īli-acus, Trojan (a Greek form).
Platō: Platōn-icus, Platonic.
Aquila: Aquil-ēius, a Roman name; Aquilēia, a town in Italy.
§ 164. Nominal Adjectives.

3. Many derivative adjectives with these endings have by usage become nouns. Thus,—

silva, woods; Silv-ánus, m., a god of the woods.
membrum, limb; membr-ána, f., skin.
Aemilia (gēns); Aemili-ánus, m., name of Scipio Africanus.
lanius, butcher; lāni-ána, f., a butcher’s stall.
†Aufidius (Auidaōs), m.; Aufidi-ánu, a Roman name.

3. Many derivative adjectives with these endings have by usage become nouns. Thus,—

silva, woods; Silv-ánus, m., a god of the woods.
membrum, limb; membr-ána, f., skin.
Aemilia (gēns); Aemili-ánus, m., name of Scipio Africanus.
lanius, butcher; lāni-ána, f., a butcher’s stall.
†Aufidius (Auidaōs), m.; Aufidi-ánu, a Roman name.
incola, an inhabitant; inquil-ínus, m., a lodger.
caecus, blind; Caec-ina, used as m., a Roman name.
gallus, a cock; gall-ina, f., a hen.
rūō, fall (no noun existing); rū-ina, p., a fall.
doctor, teacher; doctr-ina, p., learning.

NOTE.—Of these terminations, -ánu, -ánus, -ínus are compounded from -nus added to a stem-vowel: as, arca, arcánus; collis, collinus. The long vowels come from a confusion with verb-stems, as in plō-nus, fini-tus, tribú-tus, assisted by the noun-stem in á: as, arcánus. A few nouns occur of similar formation, as from verb-stems in ò- (which were lost in the later language) and in û-: as, colónus (colō, cf. incola), patrónus (cf. patrō, -āre), tribúnus (cf. tribuō, tribus), Portúnus (cf. portus), Vакūna (cf. vакo, vacuus).

d. -ális, -āris, -ēlis, -ális, -nus, pertaining to, of various modes of relation or possession, but not used as Gentile adjectives: as, nātūra, nature; nātur-ális, natural.

populus, a people; popul-āris, fellow-countryman.
patruus, uncle; patru-ēlis, cousin.
hostis, an enemy; host-ēlis, hostile.
currus, chariot; sella cur-ēlis, curule chair.

ver, spring; vērn-ūs, vernal.

NOTE.—-nus is inherited (cf. § 160. ò) and used as secondary. The others are weakened forms of ra- (§ 160. ò) added to various vowel-stems. The long vowel comes partly from confusion with verb-stems, cf. Aprilis (aperiō), edūlis (edo), and the suffix is afterwards used indiscriminately, as in semilis (senex).

c. -ter (-tris), -ester (-estris), -timus, -ernus, -urnus (-turnus), belonging to, of places, times, and the like (but some are general adjectives).

palūs, a marsh; palūs-ter, of the marshes.

pedes, a footman; pedes-ter, of the foot.
sex mēnsēs, six months; sēmēs-tris, semi-annual.
silva, a wood; silv-ester, silv-estris, woody.

finis, an end; fini-timus, neighboring, on the borders.

hērī (old hesī), yesterday; hes-ternus, of yesterday.
dīū, long (in time); dīū-turnus, lasting.
hodē, to-day; hodī-ernus, of to-day.
dīēs, day; di-urnus, daily.
NOTE.—Of these, -ester is formed by adding tri- (cf. tro-, § 160) to stems in t- or d- (phonetically s-). Thus pedet-tri- becomes pedestri-, and others follow the analogy. -ernus and -urnus are formed by adding -nus to s-stems: as, diur-nus (for filius-nus), and hence, by analogy, hodiernus (hodie).

f. -atus, -itus, -ütus, PROVIDED WITH, making adjectives with participial ending, formed from nouns, but in reference to an imaginary verb-stem (cf. the English horned, crested, hooked).

barba, a beard; barb-átus, bearded.
auris, an ear; aur-ítus, long-eared.
versus, a turning; vers-útus, crafty, adroit (full of turns).
So -tus, added directly to nouns without reference to any verb: as,—

fünus, death; fünes-tus, deadly.
honor, honor; hones-tus, honorable.
favor, favor; faus-tus (for faves-tus), favorable.

That -tus, added directly to nouns without reference to any verb: as,—

aurum, gold; aur-eus, golden.
pater, a father; patr-ius, paternal.
uxor, a wife; uxór-ius, uxorious.
rosa, a rose; ros-äceus, of roses.
later, a brick; later-icius, of brick.
presaéns, present; praesent-änneus, operating instantly.
extrá, without; extr-änneus, external.
sub terrá, underground; subterr-änneus, subterranean.
saliz, willow; salig-neus, of willow.
voló, fly; volá-ticus, winged (volátus, a flight).
domus, a house; domes-ticus, of the house, domestic.
silva, a wood; silvá-ticus, sylvan.

NOTE.—-ius is originally primitive (§ 160. κ); -icius and -äceus are formed by adding -ius and -eus to stems in ïc-, ãc- (suffix co-, orig. ka-, § 160. λ); -eus corresponds to Greek -elos, -eos, and has lost a y-sound (cf. ya-, § 160. κ).

-neus is no-+ -eus (§ 160. δ); -änneus is formed by adding -neus to ä-stems. For -ticus, see § 159. n.

h. -ärius, -tórius (-örius), BELONGING TO, making many adjectives often fixed as nouns (see i).

ördó, rank, order; ördin-äríus, regular.
argéntum, silver; argent-ärius, of silver or money.
extrá, outside; extr-ärius, stranger.
meritus, earned; meri-tórius, profitable.
dévorsus, turned aside; dévor-sórius, of an inn (cf. i. 5).

NOTE.—Here -ius (§ 160. κ) is added to shorter forms in -äris and -or: as, pecúliärius (from pecúliäris), bellátörius (from bellátor).
§ 164. Nominal Adjectives.

1. Many fixed forms of the above adjective suffixes make nouns, more or less regularly used in particular senses: as,—

1. -ārius (regular), *person employed about anything*: as,—
   argent-ārius, silversmith, broker (from argentum).

2. -āria, *thing connected with something*:
   arēn-āriae, F. pl., sandpits (from arēna, sand).
   Asin-āria, F., name of a play (from asinus, ass).

3. -ārium (regular), *place of a thing* (with a few of more general meaning): as,—
   aer-ārium, N., treasury (from aës, copper)
   tepid-ārium, N., warm bath (from tepidus, warm).
   sūd-ārium, N., a towel (cf. sūdō, -āre, sweat).
   sal-ārium, N., salt money, salary (from sāl, salt).

4. -tōria (-sōria): as,—
   Agitā-tōria, F., a play of Plautus, The Carter (from agitātor).
   vor-sōria, F., a tack (from versus, a turn).

5. -tōrium (-sōrium) (regular), *place of action* (with a few of more general meaning): as,—
   dēvor-sōrium, N., an inn (as from dēvortō, turn aside).
   audi-tōrium, N., a lecture-room (as from audiō, hear).
   ten-tōrium, N., a tent (as from tendō, stretch).
   tēc-tōrium, N., plaster (as from tegō, tectus, cover).
   por-tōrium, N., toll (cf. portō, carry, and portus, harbor).

6. -īle, animal-stall: as,—
   bov-īle, N., cattle-stall (bōs, bōvis, ox, cow).
   ov-īle, sheep-fold (ovis, st. ovī-, sheep).

7. -al for -āle, *thing connected with the primitive*: as,—
   capit-al, N., headdress, capital crime (caput, head).
   penetr-āle (esp. in pl.), N., inner apartment (cf. penetrō).
   Sātur-n-ālia N. pl. (the regular form for names of festivals), feast of Saturn (from Sāturnus).

8. -ētum, N. (cf. -ātus, -ātus, see f), *place of a thing*: as,—
   querc-ētum, N., oak grove (from quercus, oak).
   Argil-ētum, N., The Clay-pit (from argilla, clay).
9. -cus (sometimes with inserted i, -icus), -icus, in any one of the genders, with various meanings: as,—

villicus, M., villica, F., a steward (stewardess) (from villa, farm house).

fabrica, F., a workshop (from faber, workman).

bubulcus, M., ox-tender (from bubulus, dim., cf. bos, ox).

canticum, N., song (from cantus, act of singing).

rubrica, F., red paint (from ruber, red).

10. -eus, -ea, -eum, with various meanings: as,—

alveus, M., a trough (from alvus, the belly).

caprea, F., a roe (from caper, he-goat).

flammeeum, N., a bridal veil (from flammea, flame, from its color).

11. -ium, confounded with the primary suffix (see § 163.f).

12. -ter (stem tro-) and -ter (stem tri-), -aster -ester: as,—

Auster, M., South wind (from uru, burn).

eques-ter, M., knight (for equet-ter, see e, note).

sequester, M., a stake-holder (from derivative of sequor, follow).

oleaster, M., wild olive (from olea) (cf. surdaster, from surdus).

k. -ōsus, -(o)lēns, -(o)lentus, FULL OF, PRONE TO: as,—

fluctus, wave; fluctuōsus, billowy.

forma, beauty; formōsus, beautiful.

periculum, peril; periculōsus, full of danger.

pestis, pest; pести-lēns, pести-lentus, pestilent.

vinum, wine; viño-lentus, viń-ōsus, given to drink.

II. Verbal.

l. -āx, -idus, -ulus, -vus (-uus, -ivus, -tīvus), PRONE TO, FITTED TO, apparently added to verb-stems, forming adjectives, to express the action of a verb as a QUALITY or TENDENCY. -āx, denotes a faulty or aggressive tendency; -tīvus is oftener passive. Thus,—

pugnō, to fight; pugnāx, pugnacious.

audēō, to dare; audāx, bold.

cupiō, to desire; cupidus, eager.

bibō, to drink; bibulus, thirsty (as dry earth, etc.).

prōterō, to trample; prōter-vus, violent, wanton.

noceō, do harm; noc-uus (noc-īvus), hurtful, injurious.

capiō, take; captīvus, captive, M., a prisoner of war.

recidō, fall back; recidivus, restored.

---

1 The forms felt as verbal are, like the nominal forms, derived from noun-stems, and the two are constantly confounded.
Note. — Of these, -ax is a reduction of -acus (stem-vowel a- + -cus), become independent and used with verb-stems. Similar forms in -ex, -ox, -ix, and -ux are found or implied in derivatives: as, imbrex, m., a rain-tile (from imber); senex, old (from sens-); ferōx, fierce (from ferus); atrōx, savage (from åter, black); celōx, r., a yacht (cf. cellō); felix, happy, orig. fertile (from fēiō, such [?]); fiducia, f., confidence (as from fidūx); cf. also victix (from victor). So manduca, chewing (from mandō).

-idus is no doubt denominative, as in herbi-dus, herb; tumidus, swollen (cf. tumu-lus, hill; tumul-tus, uproar); callidus, tough, cunning (cf. callum, tough flesh); muci-dus, slimy (cf. mucus, slime); tābidus, wasting (cf. tābēs, wasting disease). But later it was used to form adjectives directly from verb-stems.

-ulus is the same suffix as in diminutives, but attached to verb-stems. Cf. aemulus, rivalling (cf. imitor and imāgō); sēdulus, sitting by, attentive (cf. domi-seda, home-staying, and sēdō, calm); pendulus, hanging (cf. pondō, abl., in weight; perpendiculum, a plummet; appendix, an addition); strāgulus, covering (cf. strāgēs); legulus, a picker (cf. sacrī-legus, a picker up of things sacred). But they were formerly attached to verbs.

-vus seems originally primary (cf. § 160, ᾨ), but -ivus and -īvus have become secondary and are used with nouns: as, aestivus, of summer (from aestus, heat); tempestīvus, timely (from tempus); cf. domes-ticus (from domus).

m. -ilis, -bilis, -ius, -tilis, (-silis), expressing PASSIVE QUALITIES, but occasionally active: as, —

frangō (frag), break; frag-ilis, frail.

nōscō (NO), know; nō-bilis, well known, famous.

eximō, take out, select; exim-ius, choice, rare (cf. ē-greg-ius)

agō, drive; ag-ilis, active.

habeō, hold; hab-ilis, handy.

alō, nourish; al-tilis, fattened (see note).

Note. — Of these, -ius is primary, but is also used as secondary (cf. § 163, τ). -ilis is certainly secondary: as, similis, like (cf. ὅπως, Eng. same); agilis, active (cf. prōdigus, στραγγύς, so agō- + -ilis); facilis, easy (cf. bene-ficus); fragilis, frail (cf. foederi-fragus). -billes also is probably bo- + -ilis (cf. -bus in morbus, -bulum, -bundus, -brum, -bris; cf. also -ilis and -tilis); in -tilis and -silis, -lis is added to - (so-), stem of the perfect participle: as, fossilis, dug up (from fossus, dug); volātilis, winged (from volātus, flight).

n. -minus, -mnus. These endings are properly participial (cf Greek -μενος, and amā-minū). They form a few nouns in which the participial force is discernible: as, —

fe, produce; fē-mina, woman (the producer).

alō, nourish; alu-mnus, a foster child, nursling.

o. -nůsus (the same as the gerund-ending) forms a few active or reflexive adjectives: as, —

sequor, follow; secu-nůsus, second (the following), favorable.

rotō, whirl (from rota, wheel); rotu-nůsus, round (whirling).
Etymology: Formation of Words. §§ 164, 165.

**Note.**—This suffix is no doubt on-+-dus: as, †gerus (st. gerō-, cf. armiger), gerō (st. gerōn-), †gerondus (cf. -bundus and -cundus; and turunda, a paste-ball).

\( \text{p.} \) -bundus, -cundus, with a participial meaning, but denoting continuance of the act or quality.

iocus, a jest; iū-cundus, pleasant (cf. iuvō, -āre).
vītō, shun; vītā-bundus, dodging about.
tremō, tremble; treme-bundus, trembling.
moriō, die; mori-bundus, at the point of death.
for, speak; fā-cundus, eloquent.
FE, produce; fē-cundus, fruitful.
So ïra, anger; ïrā-cundus, irascible (cf. ïrā-scor).

**Note.**—These must have been originally nominal: as in the series, rubus, red bush; rubidus (but no †rubicus), red; Rubicon, Red River (cf. Mīnī, a river of Etruria; Mīnius, a river of Lusitania); rubicundus (as in averruncus, homun-culus). So turba, commotion; turō, a top; turbidus, roily, etc. Cf. apexabō, longābō, gravēdō, dulcēdō.

**III. Irregular Derivatives.**

**q.** The primary suffix ōn- (nom. -ō) is used as secondary to form nouns denoting possessed of (originally adjectives), and so expressing a character, and often used as proper names:¹ as,—

epulae, a feast; epul-ō, a feaster.
nāsus, a nose; nās-ō, with a large nose (also as a proper name).
-volus (in bene-volus), wishing; vol-ōnēs (pl.), volunteers.
frōns, forehead; front-ō, big-head (also as a proper name).
So cūria, a curia; cūri-ō, head of a curia (also as proper name).
restis, a rope; resti-ō, a rope-maker.
†vespertīlis, of the evening; vespertīli-ō, a bat.

**r.** Rarely suffixes are added to compound stems imagined, but not used in their compound form: as,—

ad-verb-ium, adverb; ad, to, and verbum, verb, but without the intervening †adverbus.
lāti-fund-ium, large estate; lātus, wide, fundus, estate.

su-ove-taur-ilia, a sacrifice of a sheep, a swine, and a bull; sūs, swine, ovis, sheep, taurus, bull, where the primitive would be impossible in Latin, though such formations are common in Sanskrit.

**IV. Derivation of Verbs.**

**165.** Verbs may be classed as Primitive or Derivative.

¹ This suffix is the same as in § 162. c, but not connected with a verb.
1. Primitive verbs are those inherited by the Latin from the parent speech.

2. Derivative verbs are those formed in the development of the Latin as a separate language. They are of two main classes:

   a. **Denominative verbs**, formed from nouns or adjectives.
   b. Verbs apparently derived from the stems of other verbs (see § 167).

### 1. Denominative Verbs.

#### 166. Verbs were formed in Latin from almost every form of noun- and adjective-stem.

a. Many verbs of the First Conjugation\(^1\) are formed directly from a-stems, regularly with a transitive meaning: as, *fuga*, flight; *fugō*, put to flight.

   **Note.**—No doubt originally particular forms of stem formed particular conjugations of verbs, but from changes of stem and from various cross-analogies the relation between conjugations and stem-forms became entirely confused. Thus *poena* should make *pūnāre*, but it really makes *pūnīre*, in accordance with an i-stem, as in *impūni-s*; *servus* makes *servāre* in one sense, *servīre* in another.

b. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation (generally intransitive) are recognizable as formed from noun-stems, but most are inherited, or the primitive noun-stem is lost: as,—

---

\(^1\) A few verbs of the first conjugation are inherited. These are (1) formed directly from a root ending in a vowel, as *dāre* (DA), *stāre* (STA), *nāre* (NA); (2) formed with *-yami* (see p. 86), as *vocāre*; or (3) uncertain, as *amāre*. 

---
Etymology: Formation of Words. §§ 166, 167

albus, white; albeō, be white (cf. albē, -āre, whiten, under a. 2).
cānus (stem cāno-), hoary; cāneō, be hoary.
tumulus, hill (implying † tumus, swelling); tumeō, swell.
prō-vidus, foreseeing; prō-video, foresee.
But moneō, remind; cf. meminī, remember.
algēō, be cold; cf. algidus, cold.

NOTE.—The second conjugation has undoubtedly been formed partly through the agency of stems like those of the fifth declension in ō-, originally ōs-: as, †sordēs, -is, filthy; sordeō, be dirty, cf. Eng. swart; tābēs, -is, wasting; tābeō, waste away (cf. also pūbēs, pūbēscō); rēs, thing; reor, reckon. But the traces of the original formation of these verbs are almost lost from the language.

c. Some verbs in -uō, -uere are formed from noun-stems in u- where probably an i has been lost: as,—

status, position; statuō, set up.
metus, fear; metuō, fear.
indu (old form of in), in, on: induō, put on.
So, by analogy, exuō, doff, from ex, out of.

NOTE.—Many verbs in u are inherited, being formed from roots in u: as, fluō, fluere; so-lvō, solvere. Some roots have a parasitic u: as, loquor, locutus.

d. Many verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed from i-stems:

mōlēs (-is), mass; mōlior, -īrī, toil.
finis, end; finiō, -īre, bound.
sitis, thirst; sitiō, -īre, thirst.
stabilis, stable; stabilō, -īre, establish.

Some arise by confusion from other stems treated as if i-stems: as,—

bulla, bubble; bulliō, -īre, boil.
condus, storekeeper; condiō, -īre, preserve.
insānus, mad; insāniō, -īre, rave.
gestus, gesture; gestiō, -īre, show wild longing.
custōs, guardian; custōdiō, -īre, guard.

NOTE.—Some of this form are of doubtful origin: as, ĕrdior, begin, cf. ĕrdō and exĕrdium. The formation is closely akin to that of verbs in -ō of the third conjugation (p. 100).

2. Verbs from Other Verbs.

167. The following classes of verbs regularly derived from other verbs have special meanings connected with their terminations.
§ 167. Derivation of Verbs.

Note.—These classes are all really denominative in their origin, but had become so associated with verbs that new derivatives were often formed directly from verbs without the intervention of a noun-stem.

a. Inceptives or Inchoatives add -scō to the present stem of verbs. They denote the beginning of an action. Of some there is no simple verb in existence. Thus,—

caleō, be warm; calē-scō, grow warm.
labō, totter; labā-scō, begin to totter.
scio, know; scī-scō, determine.
cupīō, desire; con-cupī-scō, conceive a desire for.
alō, feed; ale-scō, grow.
So ūrā-scor, get angry; cf. ūrā-tus.
iuvene-sco, grow young; cf. iuvenis, young man.
mīte-scō, grow mild; cf. mītis, mild.
vesperā-scit, it is getting late; cf. vesper, evening.

Note.—Inceptives properly have only the present stem, but many use the perfect and supine systems of simple verbs: as, calē-scō, calē; proficiscor, profectus.

b. Intensives or Iteratives end in -tō or -itō (rarely -sō), and denote a forcible or repeated action: as,—

iaciō, throw; iac-tō, hurl.
dicō, say; dict-itō, keep on saying.
quatiō, shake; quas-sō, shatter.

They are of the first conjugation, and are properly denominative, derived from the participle in -tus (stem to-).

Note.—But they were originally denominatives from a noun of agency in -ta, like nauta, sailor. Hence some are formed from a stem different from the supine: as, agō, agitō (not āctō); so, dictitō, not ādictātō, from dictō.

c. Another form of Intensives—sometimes called Meditatives, or verbs of practice—ends in -essō (rarely -issō). These denote a certain energy or eagerness of action: as,—

capiō, take; cap-essō, lay hold on.
faciō, do; fac-essō, do (with energy).
petō, seek; pet-issō, seek (eagerly).

These are of the third conjugation, usually having the perfect and supine of the fourth: as,—
lacessō, lacessēre, lacessīvī, lacessītum, provoke.

d. Diminutives (derived from real or supposed diminutive nouns) end in -illō, and denote a feeble or petty action: as,—
cavilla, raillery; cav-illor, jest.
cantō, sing; cant-illō, chirp or warble.

e. Deseratives end in -turiō (-suriō), and express longing or wishing. They are of the fourth conjugation, and only three are in common use: —

emō, buy; emp-turiō, want to buy.
edō, eat; ē-suriō, be hungry.
parīō, bring forth; par-turiō, be in labor.

Others are used by the dramatists.

NOTE.—Deseratives are derived from some noun of agency: as, empturiō, from emptor, buyer. Vísō, go to see, is an inherited deserative of a different formation.

3. Compound Words.

A Compound Word is one whose stem is made up of two or more simple stems.

Only noun-stems can be thus compounded. A preposition, however, often becomes attached to a verb.

168. New stems are formed by composition as follows: ¹

a. The second part is simply added to the first: as, —

su-ove-taurīlia (sūs, ovis, taurus), the sacrifice of a hog, sheep, and bull (cf. § 164. r).

septen-decim (septem, decem), seventeen.

b. The first part modifies the second as an adjective or adverb (Determinative Compounds): as, —

lāti-fundium (lātus, fundus), a large landed estate.

c. The first part has the force of a case, and the second a verbal force (Objective Compounds): as, —

¹ In these compounds only the second part receives inflection. This is most commonly the proper inflection of the last stem; but, as this kind of composition is in fact older than inflection, the compounded stem sometimes has an inflection of its own (as, cornicien, -cinis; lucifer, -feri; indicis, -dicis), from stems not occurring in Latin. Especially do compound adjectives in Latin take the form of i-stems: as, animus, exanimis; nōrma, abnōrmis (see note, p. 30). In composition stems regularly have their uninflected form: as, igni-spicium, divining by fire. But o- and ē-stems weaken the final vowel of the stem to i-, as in ēl-pēs (from ēla, st. ēlā-); and i- is so common a termination of compounded stems, that it is often added to stems which do not properly have it: as, foederifragus (for *foeder-fragus: foedus, fragus), treaty-breaking.
§§ 168–70. Compound Words.

agri-cola (ager, †cola akin to colō), a farmer.
armi-ger (arma, †ger akin to gerō), armor-bearer.
corni-cen (cornī, †cen akin to canō), horn-blower.
carni-fez (carō, †fez akin to faciō), executioner.

d. Compounds of the above kinds, in which the last word is a noun, acquire the signification of adjectives, meaning possessed of the quality denoted (Possessive Compounds): as,—
äli-pēs (āla, pēs), wing-footed.
māgn-animus (māgnus, animus), great-souled.
con-cors (con-, cor), harmonious.
an-ceps (amb-, caput), double (having a head at both ends).

Note.—Many compounds of the above classes appear only in the form of some further derivative, the proper compound being impossible in Latin (cf. § 164. r).

169. In many apparent compounds, complete words—not stems—have grown together in speech.

These are not strictly compounds in the etymological sense. They are called Syntactic Compounds. Examples are:—

a. Compounds of faciō, factō, with an actual or formerly existing noun-stem confounded with a verbal stem in e-. These are CAUSATIVE in force: as, cōnsuē-faciō, habituate (cf. cōnsuē-scō, become accustomed); cale-faciō, cale-factō, to heat (cf. calē-scō, grow warm).

b. An adverb or noun combined with a verb: as, bene-dīcō (bene dīcō), to bless; sat-agō (satis agō), to be busy enough.

c. Many apparent compounds of stems: as, fide-iubeō (fideī iubeō), to give surely; mān-suētus (manuī suētus), tame; Īuppiter (Īīs-pater); Mārci-por (Mārcī puer), slave of Marcus.

d. A few phrases forced into the ordinary inflections of nouns: as,—
prō-cōnsul, proconsul (for prō cōnsule, instead of a consul).
trium-vir, triumvir (singular from trium virōrum).
septen-trīō, the Bear, a constellation (supposed singular of septem triōnēs, The Seven Oxen).

170. Many syntactic compounds are formed by prefixing a Particle to some other part of speech:—

a. Prepositions are prefixed to Verbs or Adjectives. In these compounds the prepositions retain their original adverbial sense:¹ as,—

¹ The prepositions sometimes, however, have their ordinary force as prepositions, especially ad, in, circum, trāns, and govern the case of a noun: as, trānsire flūmen, to cross a river (see § 239, b. Rem.).
Etymology: Formation of Words.

§ 170

a, ab, away: au-ferre (ab-ferō), to take away.
ad, to, towards: af-ferre (ad-ferō), to bring.
ante, before: ante-ferre, to prefer; ante-cellere, to excel.
circum, around: circum-mūnire, to fortify completely.
con-, con- (cum), together or forcibly: cōn-ferre, to bring together; col-locāre, to set firm.
dē, down, utterly: dē-spicere, despise; dēstruere, destroy.
ē, ex, out: ef-ferre (ec-fero), to carry forth, uplift.
in (with verbs), in, on, against: in-ferre, to bear against.
inter, between, to pieces: inter-rumpere, to interrupt.
ob, towards, to meet: of-ferre, to offer; ob-venire, to meet.
sub, under: sub-struere, to build beneath.
super, upon, over and above: super-fluere, to overflow; superstes, a survivor.

Note.—In these compounds short a of the root is weakened to i before one consonant, to e before two: as, faciō, cōnficiō, cōnfactus; iaciō, ēiciō, ēlectus. But long a is retained: as, perāctus.

b. Verbs are also compounded with the following inseparable particles, which do not appear as prepositions in Latin:—

amb- (am-, an-), around: amb-īre, to go about (cf. āūbi, about).
dis-, di-, asunder, apart: dis-cēdere, to depart (cf. duō, two).
por-, forward: por-tendere, to hold forth, predict (cf. porrō, forth).
red-, re-, back, again: red-īre, to return; re-clādere, to open (from claudō, shut); re-ficere, to repair (make-again).
sēd-, sē-, apart: sē-cernō, to separate (cf. sed, but).

C. An Adjective is sometimes modified by an adverbial prefix. Of these, per (less commonly prae), very; sub, somewhat; in-, not, are regular, and may be prefixed to almost any adjective: as,—

per-māgnus, very large.
prae-longus, very long.
sub-rūsticus, rather clownish.
in-finitus, boundless.

Note.—Per and sub, in these senses, are also prefixed to verbs: as, per-terreō, terrify; sub-rīdeo, smile. In īgnōscō, in- appears to be the negative prefix.

d. Many Verbals are found compounded with a preposition, like the verbs to which they correspond. Thus,—

per-fuga, deserter; cf. per-fugiō.
trādux, vine-branch; cf. trāns-duco.
PART SECOND.—USE OF WORDS (SYNTAX).

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

The study of formal grammar arose at a late period in the history of language, and deals with language as fully developed. The terms of Syntax correspond accordingly to the logical habits of thought that have grown up at such a period, and have therefore a logical as well as a simply grammatical meaning. But Syntax as thus developed is not essential to language. A form of words—like *ō puerum pulcrum* *ah! beautiful boy*—may express a thought, and in some languages might even be a sentence; while it does not logically declare anything, and does not, strictly speaking, make what we call a sentence at all.

At a very early period of spoken language, Roots were no doubt significant in themselves, and constituted the whole of language,—just as to an infant the name of some familiar object will stand for all it can say about it. At a somewhat later stage, two simple roots put side by side*¹* made a rudimentary form of proposition: as a child might say *fire bright*; *horse run*. With this begins the first form of logical distinction, that of Subject and Predicate; but as yet there is no distinction between noun and verb either in form or function. Roots were presently specialized, or modified in meaning, by the addition of other roots either pronominal or verbal, and Stems were formed; but the same stem could still be either nominal or verbal. In this period composition is the only form of syntax. Still later,—by combination chiefly of different pronominal elements with verb-stems and with noun-stems—Inflections were developed to express *person, tense, case,* and other grammatical relations,*²* and we have true parts of speech.

Not until language reached this last stage was there any limit to the association of words, or any rule prescribing the manner in which they should be combined. But gradually, by custom, particular forms came to be limited to special uses, or were produced to serve those uses; and rules were established for combining words in what we now call Sentences. These rules are in part general laws or forms of thought (*Logic*), resulting from our habits of mind (*General Grammar*); and in part what may be called *By-Laws,* established by custom in a given language (*Particular Grammar*), and making what is called the Syntax of that language.

¹ In most languages there still remain traces of the *unorganized* forms of expression: as, for example, the nominative or accusative in Exclamations (§ 240. d), and the omission of the Copula (§ 206. c). These are sometimes wrongly regarded as cases of Ellipsis. Compare also the use of Interjections generally.

² Sometimes called *accidents*: hence the "accidence" of the language. Compare pp. 19, note 1; 78, note 1; 119-21; § 118. note.
Syntax: Introductory Note.

In the fully developed methods of expression to which we are almost exclusively accustomed, the unit of expression is the Sentence; that is, the completed statement, with its distinct Subject and Predicate. Originally every sentence is simple. But two simple sentences may be used together, without the subordination of either, to express a more complex form of thought than can be denoted by one alone. This is parataxis (arrangement side by side). In time two sentences, thus habitually used in connection, come to be regularly associated with each other, in certain relations, as parts of one logical idea, and the one is felt to depend upon the other. This is syntaxis (arrangement together). In this way, through various courses of development, which correspond to the growth of our habitual forms of thought, there are produced various forms of complex sentences. Thus timeō nē id accidat was originally two simple sentences: I fear. Let that not happen! and these, becoming attached, formed the complex sentence: I fear (lest) that may happen. The results of these processes constitute the subject-matter of Syntax as shown in the annexed Outline.

I. A Sentence may be either Simple or Compound: viz.,

1. SIMPLE:
   
   a. Containing two or more Co-ordinate Clauses (§ 180. a).

2. COMPOUND:
   
   b. Modified by Subordinate Clauses (complex) (§ 180. b).

II. The Essential Parts of the Sentence are—

1. The Subject: consisting of
   
   a. Noun or its equivalent (§ 174. 1).
   
   b. Pronoun contained in verb-ending (§ 174. 2).

2. The Predicate: consisting of
   
   b. Copula with Predicate Noun or Adjective (§ 172. note).
   
   c. Verb with Object (§§ 175. b, 177).

III. The Subject and Predicate may be Modified as follows:—

1. The Noun (Subject or Object) by
   
   
   b. Adjective or Participle (§ 186).
   
   c. Noun in Oblique Case (§ 178. a, b).
   
   d. Preposition with its case (§ 260).
   
   e. Relative Clause (§ 180. c).

2. The Verb (predicate) by
   
   a. Adverb or Adverbial Phrase (§§ 179, 207).
   
   b. Predicate Adjective (§ 191).
   
   c. Subordinate Clause (§ 180. b).

IV. Hence: { a. Rules of AGREEMENT (the Four Concord) (§ 182).

   b. Rules of GOVERNMENT (Construction of Cases) (§ 213 ff.).

1 The meaning of Sentence is "Thought" (sententia from sentire). The grammatical form of the sentence is the form in which the thought is expressed.
Chapter I.—The Sentence.

1. Definitions.

171. A Sentence is a form of words which contains a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

a. A sentence in the form of a Statement is called a Declarative Sentence: as, equus currit, the horse runs.

b. A sentence in the form of a Question is called an Interrogative Sentence: as, equusne currit? does the horse run?

c. A sentence in the form of an Exclamation is called an Exclamatory Sentence: as, quam celeriter currit equus! how fast the horse runs!

d. A sentence in the form of a Command, an Exhortation, or an Entreaty is called an Imperative Sentence: as, currat equus, let the horse run; i, curre per Alpēs, go, run across the Alps.

172. Every sentence consists of a Subject and a Predicate.

The Subject of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of.

The Predicate is that which is said of the Subject.

Thus in equus currit, the horse runs, equus is the subject, and currit the predicate.

Note.—Every complete sentence must contain a subject (§ 174) and a verb. The verb itself is usually the predicate, but when any form of sum is used simply to connect a noun or adjective as an attribute with the subject, such word is called the predicate noun or adjective, and sum is known as the copula (or connective) (§ 176. a). Thus in Caesar cōnsul erat, Caesar was consul, Caesar is the subject, cōnsul the predicate noun, and erat the copula.

But sum in the sense of exist makes a complete predicate alone. It is then called the substantive verb: as, sunt vīri fortēs, there are (exist) brave men.

2. Subject and Predicate.

173. 1. The Subject of a Finite verb is in the Nominative Case: as,—

equus currit, the horse runs.   régina sedet, the queen sits.

2. The Subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative (see § 240. f).

Note.—A finite verb is a verb in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative. These are called finite moods to distinguish them from the Infinitive.
174. 1. The Subject of a sentence is usually a Noun or some word or phrase used as a Noun: as,—

humānum est errāre, to err is human.
quaeeritur num mors malum sit, the question is whether death is an evil.
vēnit, incertum est unde, he came, where from is uncertain.

2. But in Latin the subject may be implied in the termination of the verb (see § 206. a, b): as,—
sedē-mus, we sit.  curri-tis, you run.  inci-ti-t, says he.

175. Verbs are either Transitive or Intransitive.

a. An Intransitive (or Neuter) verb contains in itself an entire statement: as,—
cadō, I fall (am falling).
sōl lūcet, the sun is shining.
sunt viri fortēs, there are brave men.

b. A Transitive (or Active) verb has or requires a Direct Object to complete its sense (see § 177): as,—
frātrem cecidit, he slew his brother.

Note 1.—Among transitive verbs FACTITATIVE VERBS are sometimes distinguished as a separate class. These state an act which produces the thing expressed by the word which completes their sense. Thus mēnsam fēcit, he made a table (which was not in existence before), is distinguished from mēnsam percussit, he struck a table (which already existed).

Note 2.—A transitive verb may often be used absolutely without any object expressed: as, arat, he is ploughing, where the verb does not cease to be transitive because the object is left indefinite, as we see by adding,—quid, what? agrum suum, his land.


176. An intransitive verb is often followed by a noun or adjective to describe or define the subject. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective: as,—
mortuus cecidit, he fell dead.
Quintus sedet iūdex, Quintus sits as judge.
Caesar victor incēdit, Caesar advances victorious (a victor).

a. The copula sum especially is used with a predicate noun or adjective (§ 172. note). So also verbs signifying to become, to be made, to be named, to appear, whence these are called COPULATIVE (i.e. coupling) verbs.

Note.—A noun in agreement with some part of the predicate is sometimes a Predicate Noun (see § 185. c).
b. A Predicate noun or adjective after the copula sum or a copulative verb is in the same case as the subject (see § 185. a).

Rōma est patria nostra, Rome is our country.
stellae lūcidae erant, the stars were bright (cf. stellae lūcēbant).
cōnsul creātus est, he was elected consul.
mors finis esse vidētur, death seems to be the end.
dicit nōn omnis bonōs esse beātōs, he says that not all good men are happy.

4. Object.

177. The person or thing immediately affected by the action of a verb is called the Direct Object.

A person or thing indirectly affected is called the Indirect Object.

Only transitive verbs can have a Direct Object; but an Indirect Object may be used with both transitive and intransitive verbs (§§ 225, 226). Thus:—
pater vocat filium (direct object), the father calls his son.
mihi (ind. obj.) agrum (dir. obj.) ostendit, he showed me a field.
mihi (ind. obj.) placet, it is pleasing to me.

NOTE.—The distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs is not fixed, but most transitive verbs may be used intransitively, and many verbs usually intransitive may take a direct object and so become transitive (§ 237. b).

a. When a transitive verb is changed from the Active to the Passive voice, the Direct Object becomes the Subject and is put in the nominative case: as,—

Active: pater filium vocat, the father calls his son.
Passive: filius ā patre vocātur, the son is called by his father.
Active: lūnam et stellās vidēmus, we see the moon and the stars.
Passive: lūna et stellae videntur, the moon and stars are seen (appear).

b. With certain verbs, the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative is used where the English, from a difference in meaning, requires the Objective. Thus:—
hominem videō, I see the man (ACCUSATIVE).
hominī serviō, I serve the man (DATIVE, see § 227).
hominis misereor, I pity the man (GENITIVE, see § 221. a).
homine amicō ūtor, I treat the man as a friend (ABLATIVE, see § 249).

c. Many verbs transitive in Latin are translated in English by an intransitive verb with a preposition: as,—
petit aprum, he aims at the boar.
laudem affectat, he strives after praise.
cūrat valetūdinem, he takes care of his health.
NOTE.—One or more words, essential to the grammatical completeness of a sentence, but clear enough to the mind of a hearer, are often omitted. This omission is called ELLIPSIS, and the sentence is called an ELLIPTICAL SENTENCE: as, adest, he is here; quis? (sc. adest), who? miles (sc. adest), the soldier.

5. Modification.

178. A Subject or a Predicate may be modified by a single word, or by a group of words (a Phrase or a Clause, see §§ 179, 180).

The modifying word or group of words may itself be modified in the same way.

a. A single modifying word may be an adjective, an adverb, an appositive (§ 184), or the oblique case of a noun. Thus in the sentence *vir fortis patenter fert*, a brave man bears patiently, the adjective *fortis*, brave, modifies the subject *vir*, man, and the adverb *patenter*, patiently, modifies the predicate *fert*, bears.

b. The modifying word is in some cases said to LIMIT the word to which it belongs. Thus in the sentence *pueri patrem videō, I see the boy’s father*, the genitive *pueri* limits *patrem* (by excluding any other father).

179. A Phrase is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an Adjective or an Adverb.

Thus in the sentence *vir fuit summā nōbilitāte*, he was a man of the highest nobility, the words *summā nōbilitāte*, of the highest nobility, are used for the adjective *nōbilis*, noble (or *nōbilissimus*, very noble), and are called an ADJECTIVE PHRASE. In the sentence *māgnā celeritāte vēniō*, he came with great speed, the words *māgnā celeritāte*, with great speed, are used for the adverb *celeritēr*, quickly (or *celerrimē*, very quickly), and are called an ADVERBIAL PHRASE.

180. Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

A sentence containing a single statement is called a SIMPLE SENTENCE.

A sentence containing more than one statement is called a COMPOUND SENTENCE, and each single statement in it is called a CLAUSE.
1. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be Co-ordinate. They are usually connected by a Co-ordinate Conjunction (§ 154. a); but this is sometimes omitted (§ 208. b). Thus:

\[ \text{divide et impera, divide and conquer. But,} \]
\[ \text{vēnī, vidi, vici, I came, I saw, I conquered.} \]

b. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be SUBORDINATE, and the clause modified is called the MAIN CLAUSE.

This subordination is indicated by some connecting word, either a Subordinate Conjunction or a Relative (§ 154. b): as,

\[ \text{ôderint dum metuant, let them hate so long as they fear.} \]
\[ \text{servum mīsit quem sēcum habēbat, he sent the slave whom he had with him.} \]

A sentence containing one or more subordinate clauses is sometimes called COMPLEX.

Note.—A subordinate clause may itself be modified by another subordinate clause.

c. A clause introduced by a Relative pronoun or adverb is called a RELATIVE CLAUSE.

A clause introduced by an adverb of time is called a TEMPORAL CLAUSE. Thus:

\[ \text{dum tacent clamant, while they are silent they cry aloud.} \]
\[ \text{hominēs aegri morbō gravi cum iactantur aestū febrique, si aquam gelidam} \]
\[ \text{biberint primō relevāri videntur, men suffering with a severe sickness,} \]
\[ \text{when they are tossing with the heat of fever, if they drink cold water,} \]
\[ \text{seem at first to be relieved.} \]

d. A clause containing a Condition, introduced by si, if, or some equivalent, is called a CONDITIONAL CLAUSE. A sentence containing a conditional clause is called a CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

Thus, si aquam gelidam biberint, primō relevāri videntur (cf. c above) is a Conditional Sentence, and si... biberint is a Conditional Clause.

e. A clause expressing the Purpose of an action is called a FINAL CLAUSE.

\[ \text{edō ut vivam, I eat to live (that I may live).} \]
\[ \text{misit lēgātōs quī dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say (who should say).} \]

A clause expressing the Result of an action is called a CONSECUTIVE CLAUSE.\(^1\)

\[ \text{tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, I was too far away to see (so far away} \]
\[ \text{that I didn’t see).} \]

\(^1\) Observe that the classes defined in a-e are not mutually exclusive, but that a single clause may belong to several of them at once. Thus a relative clause is usually subordinate, and may be at the same time conditional; and subordinate clauses may be co-ordinate with each other.
The Sentence, §§ 180-84.

f. Sentences or clauses are regularly connected by means of conjunctions; but frequently in Latin—more rarely in English—-independent sentences are connected by relative pronouns or adverbs. In this case, the relative is often best translated in English by a conjunction with a demonstrative (cf. §§ 201. e, 336. b. Rem.): as,—

quō cum vēnisset, and when he had come there (whither when he had come).
quaē cum ita sint, and since these things are so.

AGREEMENT.

181. A word is said to agree with another when it is required by usage to be in the same gender, number, case, or person.

182. The following are the general forms of agreement, sometimes called the four concords:—

1. The agreement of the noun in apposition or as predicate (§§ 184, 185).
2. The agreement of the adjective with its noun (§ 186).
3. The agreement of the relative with its antecedent (§ 198).
4. The agreement of the verb with its subject (§ 204).

a. A word sometimes takes the gender or number, not of the word with which it should regularly agree, but of some other word implied in that word. This use is called synesis, or cōnstrūctīō ad sēnsum (construction according to sense).

I.—Nouns.

183. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case: as,—

Servius rēx, Servius the king.
ad urbem Athēnās, to the city [of] Athens.
Cicero cōnsul cēatur, Cicero is chosen consul.

The descriptive noun may be either an appositive (§ 184) or a predicate noun (§ 185).

1. Apposition.

184. The descriptive noun, when in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an appositive, and is said to be in apposition: as,—
Agreement of Nouns.

184. externus timor, māximum concordiae vinculum, iungēbat animōs (Liv. ii. 39), fear of the foreigner, the chief bond of harmony, united their hearts. [Here the descriptive noun belongs to the subject.]

185. quattuor hic primum ōmen equōs vidi (Æn. iii. 537), I saw here four horses, the first omen. [Here both nouns are in the predicate.]

litterās Graecās senex didici (C. M. 26), I learned Greek when an old man. [Here senex, though in apposition, really states something further: viz., the time, condition, etc., of the act (Predicate Apposition).]

a. Words expressing parts may be in apposition with a word including the parts, or vice versa: as,—

Gnaeus et Públius Scipiónēs, Cneius and Publius, the Sciptos.

b. An appositive generally agrees in Gender and Number when it can: as,—

sequuntur nātūram, optimam ducem (Lœl. 19), they follow nature, the best guide.

omnia doctrīnārum inventrices Athēnās (De Or. i. 13), Athens, discoverer of all learning.

NOTE.—But such agreement is often impossible: as,—

ōlim truncus eram ficulnus inūtile lignum, I once was a fig-tree trunk, a useless log (Hor. Sat. i. 8. 1).

c. A common noun in apposition with a Locative (§ 258. c) is put in the Ablative, with or without the preposition in: as,—

Antiochiae, celebri quondam urbe (Arch. 4), at Antioch, once a famous city. Albae cōnstitērunt in urbe mü nitā (Phil. iv. 6), they halted at Alba, a fortified town.

d. A possessive pronoun or an adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun (§ 197. e): as,—

in nostrō omnium fātū (Mīl, 92), amid the tears of us all. ex Annīānā Milōnis domō (Att. iv. 3) [= ex Annī Milōnis domō], out of Annius Milo’s house.

e. A genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive (see § 214. f). So also a dative in certain constructions (see § 231. b).

2. Predicate Agreement.

The Predicate noun may agree (1) with the subject, being connected with it by the copula or a copulative verb (§ 176. a), or (2) with the direct object of a verb.

185. A descriptive noun used to form a predicate is called a Predicate Nominative (or other case, according to the construction).

**§§ 185, 186.**

**a.** The case of the predicate after the copula and copulative verbs is the same as that of the subject (§ 176. b): as,—

pācis semper auctor fui (Ligar. 28), I have always been an adviser of peace.

quae pertinacía quibusdam, eadem aliis cōnstantia vidērī potest (Marcel. 31), what may seem obstinacy to some, may seem to others consistency.

cēus mortis sēdētis ultōres (Milon. 79), you sit as avengers of his death.

habeātur vir ēgregius Paulus (Catil. iv. 21), let Paulus be regarded as an extraordinary man.

ego patrōnus exstiti (Rosc. Amer. 5), I have come forward as an advocate.

**b.** A predicate noun referring to two or more singular nouns is in the plural: as,—

cōnsulēs creantur Caesar et Servilius (B. C. iii. i), Caesar and Servilius are elected consuls.

c. For Predicate Accusative, see under that case, § 239. a.

---

**II. ADJECTIVES.**

1. Rules of Agreement.

**186.** Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in **Gender, Number, and Case.**

vir fortis, a brave man.
illa mulier, that woman.
urbium magnarum, of great cities,
cum ducentis militibus, with 200 soldiers.
imperator victus est, the general was beaten.

**Note.** — All rules for the agreement of adjectives apply also to adjective pronouns and to participles.

Adjectives are either Attributive or Predicate.

2. An Attributive adjective simply qualifies its noun without the intervention of a verb or participle, expressed or implied.

bonus imperātōr, a good commander.
stellae lūcidae, bright stars.

3. All other adjectives are called Predicate adjectives.

1. A predicate adjective, like a predicate noun, may be connected with the subject by **esse** or a copulative verb expressed or implied (see § 176. a): as,—

stellae lūcidae erant, the stars were bright.

2. After verbs of naming, calling, making, etc., an adjective may be used as a predicative accusative like a noun (see § 239. a).

3. A predicate adjective may be used in apposition like a noun (see c, below).
Predicate adjectives in apposition follow the rules of agreement of other adjectives (see § 186, above): as,—

Scipionem vivum vidi, I saw Scipio in his lifetime (lit., living).

With two or more nouns the adjective is regularly plural, but sometimes agrees with the nearest (especially when attributive). Thus,

Nisus et Euryalus primī (Ann. v. 294), Nisus and Euryalus first.
Caesaris omni et gratia et opibus fruor (Fam. i. 9), I enjoy all Caesar's favor and resources.

NOTE. — An adjective referring to two nouns connected by cum, is occasionally plural: as,—

Iuba cum Labienō captī (B. Afr. 52), Juba and Labienus were taken.

187. One adjective may belong in sense to two or more nouns of different genders.

1. An attributive adjective agrees with the nearest: as,—

multae operae ac laboris, of much trouble and toil.

vitā moreāque mēi, my life and character.

si rēs, si vir, si tempus illum dignum fuit (Mil. 19), if any thing, if any

man, if any-time was fit.

2. A predicate adjective may agree with the nearest, if the nouns form one connected idea: as,—

factus est strepitus et admurmuratio (Verr. i. 45), a noise of assent was

made (noise and murmur).

NOTE. — This is only when the Copula agrees with the nearest subject (§ 205. d).

But generally, a predicate adjective will be masculine, if nouns of different genders mean living beings; neuter, if things without life: as,

uxor deinde ac liberi amplexī (Liv. ii. 40), then his wife and children

embraced him.

labor (m.) voluptuōse (f.), societāte quádam inter seminatūrāli sunt iōneta

(N.) (id. v. 4), labor and delight are bound together by a certain natural

alliance.

NOTE. — If nouns of different genders include both living beings and things without life, a predicate adjective is sometimes masculine (or feminine), sometimes neuter, and sometimes agrees in gender with the nearest if that is plural: as,—

rex réginae classis īnā profectī (Liv. xxi. 50), the king and the royal fleet

set out together.

nātūrā īnīmica sunt libera civitās et rēx (id. xlv. 24), by nature a free state

and a king are hostile.

legātōs sortēisque ērūculi ēxspectandās (id. v. 15), that the ambassadors

and the replies of the oracle should be waited for.
Two or more abstract nouns of the same gender may have a predicate adjective in the neuter plural (cf. § 189. c): as, —

stultitia et temeritas et iniustitia... sunt fugienda (Fin. iii. 39), folly, rashness, and injustice are [things] to be shunned.

A collective noun may take an adjective of a different gender and number agreeing with the gender and number of the individuals implied (Synesis, § 182. a): as, —

pars certæ parāti (En. v. 108), a part ready to contend.
duo milia refetti (Liv. xxxvii. 39), two thousand were left.
coloniae aliquot dēductae, Prisci Latini appellāti (id. i. 3), several colonies were planted (led out) [of men] called Old Latins.
magna pars raptae (id. i. 9), a large part [of the women] were seized.
omnis aetas currere obvīi (id. xxvii. 51), [people of] every age ran to meet them.

A superlative in the predicate sometimes takes the gender of the partitive genitive by which it is limited: as, —

velocissimum animālīum delphīnum est (Plin.), the dolphin is the swiftest [creature] of creatures.

2. Adjectives used Substantively.

Adjectives are often used as Nouns (substantively), the masculine usually to denote men or people in general of that kind, the feminine women, and the neuter things: as, —

omnēs, all men (everybody).
maiores, ancestors.
Romani, Romans.
līberta, a freedwoman.
sapiens, a sage (philosopher).
boni, the good (good people).
omnia, all things (everything).
minorēs, descendants.
barbari, barbarians.
Sabinæ, the Sabine wives.
amicus, a friend.
bona, goods, property.

Remark.—The plural of adjectives, pronouns, and participles is very common in this use. The singular is rare except in a few words which have become practically nouns. See below and § 189. a.

a. Certain adjectives have become practically nouns, and are often modified by other adjectives. Thus, —
tuus vīcīnus proximus, your next-door neighbor.
propinquī cēterī, his other relatives.
meurs aequalīs, a man of my own age.
familiaris tuus, an intimate friend of yours (cf. § 218. d).

b. When any ambiguity would arise from the substantive use of an adjective, a noun must be added. Thus, —
§§ 188, 189. Adjectives used Substantively.

boni, the good; omnia, everything (all things); but,—

potentia omnium rerum, power over everything. [omnium alone would mean all men.]

Many adjectives are used substantively either in the singular or the plural, with the added meaning of some noun which is understood from constant association: as,—

Africus [ventus], the south-west wind.
vitulina [carō], veal (calf's flesh).
fera [bestia], a wild beast.
patria [terra], the fatherland.
Gallia [terra], Gaul (the land of the Galli).
hiberna [castra], winter quarters.
triremis [nāvis], a three-banked galley, trireme.
argentarius [faber], a silversmith.
regia [domus], the palace.
Latinae [feriae], the Latin festival.
Tusci [lundi], a Tuscan estate.

Note. — These are specific in meaning, not generic like those in § 188, above.

A noun is sometimes used as an adjective, and may then be modified by an adverb: as,—

victor exercitus, the victorious army.
servum pecus, a servile troop.
admodum puer, quite a boy (young).
magis vir, more of a man (more manly).

A few adverbs appear to be used like adjectives. Such are:—

1. obviam: as,—

fit obviam, he goes to meet (becomes in the way of).

2. contra, contradicting some previous adjective, and so in a manner repeating it: as,—

alia probābilia, contra alia dicimus (Off. ii. 7), we call some things probable, others the opposite (not probable).

3. palam: as,—

palam rēs est, the thing is all out.

4. So also, rarely, by a Greek construction—

erī semper lēnitās (Ter. Andr. 175), my master's constant (always) gentleness.

189. Neuter adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses:—

a. The neuter singular may denote either a single object or an abstract quality: as,—
raptō vivere, to live by plunder.
in arido, on dry ground.
honestum, an honorable act, or virtue as a quality.
opus est mātūratō, there is need of haste (cf. impersonal passives, § 146. d).

b. The neuter plural is used to signify objects in general having the quality denoted, and hence may stand for the abstract idea: as,—
honesta, honorable deeds (in general).
praeterita, the past (lit., bygones).
omnes fortia laudant, all men praise bravery (brave things).

3. Possessives.

190. Possessive and other derivative adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the possessive case, or a noun with a preposition (compare §§ 184. d, 197. a): as,—
pūgna Cannēnsis, the fight at Cannae.
C. Blossius Cūmānus, Caius Blossius of Cumae.
aliēna domus, another man’s house.
Caesarina celeritās (Att. xvi. 10), despatch like Caesar’s (Caesarian quickness).

a. Possessive and other derivative adjectives are often used substantively to denote some special class or relation (see § 197. d): as,—
nostri, our countrymen or men of our party.
Sullāni, the veterans of Sulla’s army.
Pompeianī, the partisans of Pompey.
b. A possessive or derivative adjective sometimes appears to be used for the Objective Genitive, see § 217. a.


191. An adjective, agreeing with the subject or object is often used to qualify the action of the verb, having the force of an adverb: as, —

primus venit, he came first (was the first to come).
nullus dubito, I no way doubt.
laeti audiere, they were glad to hear.
erat Romae frequens (Rosc. A. 16), he was often at Rome.
serus in caelum redeas (Hor. Od. i. 2), may'st thou return late to heaven.

5. Comparatives and Superlatives.

192. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are in the comparative: as, —

longior quam latior acies erat (Liv. xxvii. 48), the line was longer than it was broad (or, rather long than broad).

a. Where magis is used, both adjectives are in the positive: as, —

clari magis quam honesti (Jug. 8), more renowned than honorable.

b. A comparative and a positive, or even two positives, are sometimes connected by quam: as, —

clarius maioris quam vetustis (Ann. iv. 61), of a family more famous than old.
vehementius quam cautè (Agric. 4), with more fury than good heed.

Note. — This use is rarer and less elegant than those before noticed.

193. Superlatives (and more rarely comparatives) denoting order and succession — also medius, ceterus, reliquis — usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant: as, —

summus mons, the top of the hill.
in ultima platea, at the end of the place.
prior actio, the earlier part of an action.
reliqui captivi, the rest of the prisoners.
in colle medio (B. G. i. 24), half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill).
inter ceteram plantium (Jug. 92), in a region elsewhere level.

Note. — A similar use is found in such expressions as serà (multà) nocte, late at night. But medium viae, the middle of the way; multum diei, much of the day, also occur.
III.—PRONOUNS.

NOTE.—A pronoun indicates some person or thing without either naming or describing it. Pronouns are derived from a distinct class of roots, which seem to have denoted only ideas of place and direction (§ 157. 2), and from which nouns or verbs can very rarely be formed. They may therefore stand for Nouns when the person or thing, being present to the senses or imagination, needs only to be pointed out. Some pronouns indicate the object in itself, without reference to its class, and have no distinction of gender. These are PERSONAL PRONOUNS. They stand syntactically for Nouns, and have the same construction as nouns. Others designate a particular object of a class, and take the gender of the individuals of that class. These are called ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS. They stand for Adjectives, and have the same construction as adjectives. Others are used in both ways; and, though called adjective pronouns, may also be treated as personal, taking, however, the gender of the object indicated.

1. Personal Pronouns.

194. The Personal Pronouns have, in general, the same constructions as nouns.

a. The personal pronouns are not expressed as subjects, except for distinction or emphasis (compare § 346. d): as, —

té vocō, I call you; but
quis mé vocat? ego té vocō, who is calling me? I (emphatic) am calling you.

b. The personal pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in -um being used partitively (§ 216), and that in -ī oftenest objectively (cf. § 213. 2): as, —

māior vestrūm, the elder of you.
habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī (Cat. iv.19), you have a leader
who thinks (is mindful) of you and forgets (is forgetful of) himself.
pars nostrūm, a part (i.e. some) of us.
nostrī melior pars animus est (Sen.), the better part of us (i.e. of man) is
the soul.

NOTE.—"One of themselves" is expressed by unus ex suis or ipsīs (rarely
ex sē), or unus suōrūm. The genitives nostrūm, vestrūm are occasionally
used objectively (§ 217): as, cupidus vestrūm (Ver. iii.224), fond of you;
custōs vestrūm (Cat. iii.29), the guardian of you (your guardian).

c. The Latin has no personal pronouns of the third person except
the reflexive (sē). The want is supplied by a Demonstrative or a Rela-
tive (§§ 180. f, 195, 201. e).

2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

195. Demonstrative pronouns are used either adject-
vively or substantively.

As adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement
of adjectives (§§ 186, 187).
As substantives, they are equivalent to personal pronouns. This use is regular in the oblique cases, especially of *is*. Thus:

1. **Personal:**

Caesar et exercitus *eius*, Cæsar and his army (not suus). [But, Caesar exercised *suum* dimisit, Cæsar disbanded his [own] army.]

si obsidés ab *eis* darentur, *if* hostages *should* be given *by* them (persons just spoken of).

*his* Cæsar ita respondit, *to* them Cæsar thus replied.

ille minimum propter adolescentiam poterat, *he* (emphatic) *had* very little power, *on account of* his youth.

hi sunt extrà pròvinciam trànś Rhodanum prìmì, *they* (those just mentioned) *are* the first [inhabitants] *across* the Rhone.

2. **Adjective:**

*hoc* proelio *facto*, *after* this battle *was* fought (this battle *having* been, etc.);

*eddem* proelio, *in* the *same* battle.

*eius* rei periti, *men* acquainted with that *business*.

[For special significations of the demonstratives, see § 102.]

*a.* The demonstratives are sometimes used as pronouns of reference, to indicate with emphasis a noun or phrase just mentioned: as,—

nullam virtùs aliam mercédem dēsiderat praeter *hanc* laudìs (Arch. 28),

*virtue* wants *no* other reward *except* that [just spoken of] *of* praise.

*b.* But the demonstrative as a pronoun of reference is commonly omitted, or some other construction is preferred: as,—

memoriae artem quam oblivíonis mālō, *I* prefer (like more) *the* art of memory to (*than*) [that] of forgetfulness.

Cæsarís exercitus *Pompeìános* ad Pharsalum vicit, *the* army of Cæsar defeated *that* of Pompey (the Pompeians) *at* Pharsalus.

*c.* When a quality or act is ascribed with emphasis to a person or thing already named, *is* or *idem* (often with the concessive *quidem*) is used to indicate that person or thing: as,—

vincula, *et* ea sempiterna (Cat. iv. 7), imprisonment, and *that* perpetual.

legionēm *neque* eam plēnissimam déspicēbant (B. G. iii. 2), *they* despised the single legion, and *that* not a very full one.

tuus dolor hūmānus *is* *quidem* sed, etc., *your* grief *is* human, *to* be sure, *but*, etc.

per ūnum servum *et* eum ex gladiatorīō lūdō (Att. i. 16. 5), *by* means of a single slave, and *that* too one *from* the gladiatorial school.

Ti. Gracchus régnum occupáre cōnātus est, vel régnavit *is* *quidem* paucōs mēnsēs (Læt. xii. 41), *Tiberius* Gracchus tried to usurp royal power, *or* rather he actually reigned a few months.
d. An adjective pronoun usually agrees with an appositive or predicate noun, if there be one, rather than with the word to which it refers (cf. § 199): as,—

hic labor hoc opus est, this is the toil, this the task [namely, revocāre gradum, which would regularly take a neuter pronoun].

rērum caput hoc erat, hic fōns (Hor. Ep. i. 17. 45), this was the head of things, this the source.

eam sapientiam interpretantur quam adhuc mortālis nēmō est consēcutus [for id . . . quod] (Læl. 18), they explain that [thing] to be wisdom which no man ever yet attained.

e. Ídem, the same, is often equivalent to an adverb or adverbial phrase (also, too, yet, at the same time): as,—

ōrātiō splendidā et grandis et eadem in prīmis facēta (Bru. 273), an oration, brilliant, able, and very witty too.

cum [haec] dicit, negat ídem in Deō esse grātiam (N. D. i. 121), when he says this, he denies also that there is mercy with God (he, the same man).

Note.—This is really the same use as in e, above, but in this case the pronoun cannot be represented by a pronoun in English.

f. The intensive ípse, self, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis: as,—

turpe mihi ípsi vidēbātur (Cic.), even to me (to me myself) it seemed disgraceful.
id ipsum, that very thing:
quod ipsum, which of itself alone.
in eum ipsum locum, to that very place.

Remark.—The emphasis of ípse is often expressed in English by just, very, mere, etc. (see above examples).

g. Ípse is often used alone, substantively, as an emphatic pronoun of the third person: as,—

mihi satis, ípsīs nōn satis (Cic.), enough for me, not for themselves.
omnēs bonī quantum in ípsīs fuit (id.), all good men so far as was in their power (in themselves).

beātōs illōs quī cum adesse ípsīs nōn licebat aderant tamen (id.), happy they who, when it was not allowed them to attend in person, still were there.

dī capiti ípsum generique reserverunt (/Add. viii. 484), may the gods hold in reserve [such a fate] to fall on his own and his son-in-law's head.

h. Ípse is often used alone, substantively, to emphasize an omitted subject of the first or second person: as,—

vōbiscum ípsi recordāmini (Cic.), remember in your own minds (yourselves with yourselves).

i. **Ipse**, used substantively, sometimes refers to a principal personage, to distinguish him from subordinate persons: as,—

\[\text{ipse dixit (cf. αὐτὸς ἐφα), HIE (the Master) said it.}\]

Nōmentānus erat super ipsum (Hor.), *Nomentanus was above* [the host] *herself* [at table].

k. **Ipse** is often, is rarely, used instead of a reflexive. See under Reflexives, § 196. i.

l. **Ipse** usually agrees with the subject, even when the real emphasis is in English on a reflexive in the predicate: as,—

\[\text{mē ipse cōnsōlor, I console myself. [Not mē ipsum, as the English would lead us to expect].}\]

m. For adverbs used instead of a demonstrative pronoun, see § 207. a.

3. Reflexive Pronouns.

196. The Reflexive pronoun (*sē*),\(^1\) and usually its corresponding possessive (*suus*), are used in some part of the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause: as,—

\[\begin{align*}
&\text{virtūs sē nōvit, } v i r t u e \text{ knows itself.} \\
&\text{prōmisit sē ventūrum [esse], he promised that he would come.} \\
&\text{Brūtus amicum suum occīdit, Brutus killed his friend.} \\
&\text{Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum (B. G. iv. 16), } C e s a r \text{ decided that he must cross the Rhine (the R. must be crossed by himself).}
\end{align*}\]

a. In a subordinate clause of a compound sentence there is a double use of reflexives.

1. The Reflexive may always be used to refer to the subject of its own clause (*Direct Reflexive*): as,—

\[\begin{align*}
&\text{ex quō iūdicāri potest quantum habeat in sē bonī cōnstantia (B. G. i. 40),} \\
&\text{from which it can be determined how much good firmness possesses (has in itself).} \\
&\text{[Caesar] nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī e suīs finibus trānśirent (B. G. i. 28), } C e s a r \text{ did not wish this place to lie vacant, for fear the Germans would cross over from their territories.} \\
&\text{si qua significātō virtūtīs elūcēat ad quam sē similis animus adplicet et adiungat (Lādius 48), if any sign of virtue shine forth to which a similar disposition may attach itself.}
\end{align*}\]

\(^{1}\) This seems to have been originally the personal pronoun of the third person (Skr. *sva* and Gr. *σφεῖς*), but it came by use to be purely reflexive.
2. If the subordinate clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause, the reflexive is regularly used to refer to that subject (Indirect Reflexive): as, —

petiérunt ut sibi licéret (B. G. i. 30), they begged that it might be allowed them (the petitioners).

Iccius nuntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittátur, etc. (B. G. ii. 6), sends him a message that unless relief be furnished him (Iccius), etc. quem salútém suam crédítúrum sibi (Q. C. iii. 8), who should trust his safety to him (Darius)?

[Caesar] hús uti conquirérent et reducérent, sí sibi púrgáti esse vellent imperávit (B. G. i. 28), Caesar ordered them (the Gauls) to hunt up and bring back [the fugitives] if they (the Gauls) wished to be free from fault towards him (Caesar).

hostium sē habitúrum numeró cónfirmat, sí aut Ambiorígem aut éius légátós finibus suis récèpsisset, [Cæsar] said that he should treat [them] as enemies if they received either Ambiorix or his envoys into their territories.

decima legió éi grátiaès égit, quod dé sē optimum iúdícium fécisset (B. G. i. 41), the tenth legion thanked him because [they said] he had expressed a high opinion of them.

sí obsidés ab éis (the Helvetians) sibi (Cæsar, who is the speaker) darentur, sē (Cæsar) cum éis pácem esse factúrum (B. G. i. 14), [Cæsar said] that if hostages were given him by them he would make peace with them.

Tarquinium dixisse ferunt sē intelléxisse quós fidós amícós habuíset, etc. (Lælius 53), they say that Tarquin said that he understood, etc.

NOTE.—Sometimes is or ipse is used as an Indirect Reflexive either from careless writing or to avoid ambiguity (cf. i) as: —

quì sē ex hís minus timidós existímári vellent, nón sē hostem veréri, sed angustiás itinerès et mágnitúdinem silvárum quae intercédérent inter ípsós (the persons referred to by sē above) atque Ariovistum ... timére dicebant (B. G. i. 39), those of them who wished to be thought less timid said they did not fear the enemy, but were afraid of the narrow and the vast extent of the forests which were between themselves and Ariovistus.

audístis núper dicere légátos Tyndaritánós Mercurium qui sacrís anniversários apud eós coléretur Verris imperiò esse sublátum (Verr. iv. 84), you have just heard the ambassadors from Tyndaris say that the statue of Mercury which was worshipped with annual rites among them was taken away, etc. [Here Cicero wavers between apud eós colébátur, a remark of his own, and apud sē coléretur, the words of the légát. eós does not strictly refer to the ambassadors, but to the people — the Tyndaritáni.]

3. If the subordinate clause does not express the words, etc., of the main subject, the reflexive is not regularly used, though it is occasionally found. Thus: —
§ 196. Reflexive Pronouns.  

sunt ita multi ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit (Catil. ii. 22), they are so many that the prison cannot hold them. [Here sē could not be used.]

ibi in proximōs villīs ita bipartitō fučrunt, ut Tiberīs inter eōs et pōns interesseret (Catil. iii. 5), there they stationed themselves in the nearest farmhouses, in two divisions, in such a manner that the Tiber and the bridge were between them (the divisions). [Here inter sē might be used, but it would refer to a purpose of the soldiers.]

nōn fuit cō contentus quod eī praeter spēm acciderat (Leg. Manil. 25), he was not content with that which had happened to him beyond his hope.

Compare: qui fīt Mæcēnās ut nēmō quam sībi sortem seu ratiō dederit seu fors obiércerit illā contentus vivat (Hor. Sat. i. i. 1), how comes it, Mæcenas, that nobody lives contented with that lot which choice has assigned him or chance has thrown in his way? [Here sībi is used to put the thought into the mind of the discontented man.]

But,— Metellus in eīs urbbīs quae ad sē défecerant praesidia im pónit (Sall. Jug. 61), Metellus posted garrisons in those cities which had revolted to him. [The author vacillates between the thought of Metellus and his own.]

b. The reflexive in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the subject of a suppressed main clause: as,—

Paeetus, omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1), Pæetus gave me all the books which (as he said in the act of donation) his brother had left him (cf. a).

c. The reflexive may refer to any noun in its own clause, which is so emphasized as to become in a manner the subject of discourse (cf. the note): as,—

Sōcratem cīvēs suī interfēcērunt, Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens.

qui poterat salūs suā cuquām nōn probāri (Milon. 81), how can any one fail to approve his own safety? [In this and the preceding example the emphasis is preserved in English by the change to the passive.]

hunc sī secūtī erunt suī comitēs (Cat. ii. 10), this man, if his companions follow him.

Note.—Occasionally the clause to which the reflexive really belongs is absorbed: as,—

studeō sānāre sībi ipsōs (Catil. ii. 17), I am anxious to cure these men for their own benefit (i.e. ut sānī sībi sint).

suō sībi gladiō (Plautus), with his own sword. [Here the clause is too indefinite to be supplied.]

d. The reflexive may follow a verbal noun or adjective: as,—

sūi laus, self-praise.

impotēns suī (Q. C.), without self-control.

hominēs cum suī similibus servis (Phil. i. 5), men with slaves like themselves.
e. The reflexive may refer to the subject implied in an infinitive or verbal abstract used indefinitely: as,—

bellum est sua vitia nōsse (Cic.), it is a fine thing to know one's own faults. cui prōposita sit cōnservātiō sūi (Fin. v. 37), one whose aim is self-preservation.

f. Inter sē, among themselves, is regularly used to express reciprocal action: as,—

cohārentia inter sē, things consistent with each other.

g. Suus is used for one's own as emphatically opposed to that of others, in any part of the sentence and with reference to any word in it: as,—

suīs flammīs dēlēte Fīdēnās (Liv. iv. 33), destroy Fīdēnae with its own fires (the fires kindled by that city, figuratively). [Cf. Catil. i. 32.]

h. For reflexives of the first and second persons the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (meī, tui, etc.) are used (see p. 63): as,—

mortī mē obtuli (Milon. 94), I have exposed myself to death.

hinc tē rēgīne ad limīna perfer (Æn. i. 389), do you go (bear yourself) hence to the queen's threshold.

quid est quod tantīs nōs in labōribus exercēamus (Archias 28), what reason is there why we should exert ourselves in so great toils?

singulīs vōbīs novēnōs ex turmīs manipulīque vestrī similēs eligite (Liv. xxi. 54), for each of you pick out from the squadrons and maniples nine like yourselves.

i. Ipse is often (is rarely) used instead of an indirect reflexive, to avoid ambiguity; and in later writers is sometimes found instead of the direct reflexive (cf. a. 2 and 3): as,—

cūr dē suā virūtē aut dē ıpsius diligentiā dēspērarent (B. G. i. 40), why (he asked) should they despair of their own courage or his diligence?

qui mortuō Dārēō ıpsās tuerētur repperisse (Q. C. x. 5), we found one (said she) to protect us after the death of Darius.

omnia aut ıpsōs aut hostēs populātōs (id. iii. 5), [they said that] either they themselves or the enemy had laid all waste.

4. Possessive Pronouns.

197. The Possessive pronouns are derivative adjectives, which take the gender, number, and case of the noun to which they belong, not that of the possessor: as,—

Caesar uxōrem suam repudiāvit, Caesar put away his wife.

haec sunt mea ornāmenta, these are my jewels. [mea is neut. pl., though the speaker is a woman.]
Possessive Pronouns.

§ 197. mei sunt őrdinēs, mea dēscriptiō (Cat. M. 59), mine are the rows, mine the arrangement. [mea is fem., though the speaker is Cyrus.]

multa in nostrō collēgiō praecālā (Cat. M. 64), [there are] many fine things in our college. [nostro is neut. sing., though men are referred to.]

a. The possessive pronouns are used instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun.

1. Always instead of the Possessive Genitive: as,—

domus mea, my house. [Never domus meī.]
pater noster, our father. [Never pater nostrī.]
patrōnium tuum, your inheritance. [Not tuī.]

Note 1.—In different languages the ideas associated with possessives are not always the same, and hence idiomatic uses differ. Thus my eulogist may, in Latin, be laudātor nostrī (Att. i. 14, 6), or, like the English, laudātor noster (see Att. i. 16, 5), with a different conception of the relation.

Note 2.—The Possessive cūius, -a, -um, is rare: as, cūium pecus? whose flock? The genitive cūlus is generally used instead.

2. Rarely instead of the Objective Genitive (§ 217, cf. note 1, above).

Thus, regularly:—

sui dēspiciēns, disdainful of himself.

Non sōlum suī déprecatōrem, sed etiam accusātōrem meī, not only a mediator for himself, but an accuser of me (Att. xi. 8).

But occasionally,—

ea quae faciebat, tuā sē fidūciā facere dīcebat (Ver. v. 176), what he was doing, he said he did relying on you (with your reliance).

neque negligentiā tuā, neque id odiō fecit tuō (Ter. Phorm. 1016), from neglect or hatred of you.

b. The possessives have often the acquired meaning of peculiar to, or favorable or propitious towards the person or thing spoken of: as,—

[petere] ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine ūtātur, they asked (they said) that he would show his [wonted] clemency and humanity.

tempore tuō pugnāstī, did you fight at a fit time? (lit., your own).

īgnorantī quem portum petat nūllus suus ventus est (Sen. Ep. 71), to him who knows not what port he is bound to, no wind is fair (his own).

Note.—This use is merely a natural development of the meaning of the possessive, and may often be rendered literally.

c. The possessives are regularly omitted (like other pronouns) when they are plainly implied in the context: as,—

amicum grātulātur, he greets his friend. [amicum suum would be distinctive, his friend (and not another's); suum amicum, emphatic, his own friend.]
d. Possessives are often used substantively (§ 190. a): as,—

nostri, our countrymen, or men of our party.
suos continebat (B. G. i. 15), he held his men in check.
flamma extra meorum (Æn. ii. 431), last flames of my countrymen.

NOTE.—There is no reason to suppose an ellipsis here. The adjective becomes a noun like other adjectives (see § 188).

e. A possessive representing a genitive may have a genitive in apposition (§ 184. d): as,—

mea solius causa, for my sake only.
nostra omnium patria, the country of us all.
suum ipsius regnum, his own kingdom.

f. A possessive representing a genitive may serve as an antecedent to a relative (see § 199. b. note).

g. For the special reflexive use of the possessive suus, see § 196.

5. Relative Pronouns.

NOTE.—A Relative pronoun is properly an Adjective, in agreement with some word expressed or implied either in its own clause, or (often) in the antecedent (demonstrative) clause. The full construction would require the antecedent to be expressed in both clauses, with more commonly a corresponding demonstrative to which the relative would refer: as,—

iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audirebat (B. G. iv. 7), he began to march into those places in which places he heard the Germans were.

But one of these nouns is commonly omitted. The antecedent is, in Latin, very frequently (rarely in English) found in the relative clause, but more commonly in the antecedent clause. Hence relatives serve two uses:—

1. as Nouns (or adjectives) in their own clause: as,—

ei qui Alesiae obsidebantur, those who were besieged at Alesia.

2. as Connectives: as,—

T. Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, Titus Balventio, who the year before had been a centurion of the first rank.

In this latter use they are often equivalent merely to a demonstrative with a conjunction: as,—

quae cum ita sint (— et cum ea ita sint), [and] since these things are so.

This connective force does not belong to the relative originally, but is developed from an interrogative or indefinite meaning specialized by use. The clauses were originally co-ordinate. Thus, qui quiëstus animo est, is est sapiens originally meant, Who is undisturbed in soul? That [man] is a sage.

A Relative pronoun indicates a relation between its own clause and some substantive. This substantive is called the Antecedent of the relative.
Thus, in the sentence—

eum nihil delectabat, quod fās esset, nothing pleased him which was right,

the relative quod connects its antecedent nihil with the predicate fās esset, indicating a relation between the two.

198. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number; but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands: as,—

puer qui vēnit abīt, the boy who came has gone away.
liber quem legis meus est, the book you are reading is mine.
via quā ambulat ducit ad urbem, the path he walks in leads to the city.

This rule applies to all relative words so far as they are variable in form: as, quālis, quantus, quicumque.

Note.—The relative may be the subject or object of its own clause, or a modifier of either: as,—

eōs enim cīvēs pūgna illa sustulerat quibus nōn modo vivēs sed etiam victoribus incolumis et flōrens cīvitās esset (Phil. xiv. 23).

a. If a relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the rules for the agreement of predicate adjectives (§§ 186, 187): as,—

filium et filiam, quōs valdē dilēxit, unō tempore amīsit, he lost a son and a daughter at the same time, whom he dearly loved.

grandēs nātū mātrēs et parvuli libēri, quōrum utrōrumque aetās misericordiam nostram requirit (Ver. v. 129), aged matrons and little children, whose time of life in each case demands our compassion.

ōtium atque divitiae quae prīma mortālēs putant (Sall. Cat. 36), idleness and wealth which men count the first (objects of desire).

eae frūgēs et frūctūs quōs terra gignit (N. D. ii. 37), those fruits and crops which the earth produces.

199. A relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number (cf. § 195. d): as,—

mare etiam quem Neptūnum esse dicitōs (N. D. iii. 52), the sea, too, which you said was Neptune. [Not quod.]

Thēbae ipsee, quod Boōtiae caput est (Liv. xlii. 44), even Thebes, which is the chief city of Boōtia. [Not quae.]

Note.—This rule is occasionally violated: as,—

flūmen quod appellātūr Tamesis (B. G. v. 11), a river which is called the Thames.
a. A relative occasionally agrees with its antecedent in case (by attraction): as,

si aliquid agés eōrum quōrum consuestī (Fam. v. 14), if you should do something of what you are used to do. [For eōrum quae.]

b. A relative may agree in gender and number with an implied antecedent: as,

quartum genus ... qui aere vetere alienō vacillant (Cat. ii. 21), a fourth class, that are staggering under old debts.

unus ex eo numerō qui parātī erant (Judg. 35), one of the number [of those] who were ready.

conjurāvēre pauci ... de quā [i.e. conjurātione] dicam (Sall. Cat. 18), a few have conspired ... of which [conspiracy] I will speak.

NOTE.—So regularly when the antecedent is implied in a possessive pronoun (cf. § 197.f): as,

nostra qui adsumus salūs, the safety of us who are present. [Here qui agrees with the nostrum implied in nostra.]

200. The antecedent noun sometimes appears in both clauses; but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted. Thus—

a. The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause:

as,

locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri dēlēgerant (B. G. ii. 18), the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.

b. The antecedent noun may appear only in the relative clause:

as,

quās ės in consulsātū nostrō gessimus attigij hic versibus (Arch. 28), he has touched in verse the things which I did in my consulship.

urbem quam statuō vestra est (Aēn. i. 573), yours is the city which I am founding.

NOTE.—In this case a demonstrative (īs, ille, or hic) usually stands in the antecedent clause: as,

istōs captivōs duōs, heri quōs ēmi dē praedā ... his inditō catēnās singulārias (Plaut. Capt. 110), those two prisoners that I bought yesterday, — put fetters on them.

quae pars civitātis calamitātem populō Rōmanō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit (B. G. i. 12), that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.

In a sentence of this class the relative clause usually stands first in Latin (cf. § 201.c), as in the example.
c. The antecedent may be entirely omitted, especially if it is indefinite: as,

qui decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat (B. G. iv. 25), [the man] who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.
qui cōgnōscerent misīt (id. i. 21), he sent [men] to reconnoitre (who should, etc.).

d. A predicate adjective (especially a superlative) agreeing with its antecedent in gender and number may stand in the relative clause: as,

vāsā ea quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat (Verr. iv. 63), those most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house. [Nearly equivalent to the vessels of which he had seen some very beautiful ones.]

e. The phrase id quod or quae rēs is used (instead of quod alone) to refer to a group of words or an idea: —

[obtrectātum est] Gabiniō dīcam an Pompeiō? an utrique — id quod est verius? (Manil. 57), an affront is offered — shall I say to Gabinius or to Pompey? or — which is truer — to both? multum sunt in vēnātiōnibus . . . quae rēs vīrēs alit (B. G. iv. 1), they spend much time in hunting, which [practice] increases their strength. [Cf. B. G. ii. 5.]

Note. — But quod alone often occurs: as,

Cassius noster, quod mihi māgnae voluptātī fuit, hostem reiēcerat (Fam. ii. 10), our friend Cassius — which was a great satisfaction to me — had driven back the enemy.

201. In the use of relatives, the following points are to be observed: —

a. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English. Thus, —

liber quem mihi dedisti, the book you gave me.
is sum quī semper fui, I am the same man I always was.
eo in loco est de quō tibi locitus sum, he is in the place I told you of.

b. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English; particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency: as, —

īēgēs quae nunc sunt, the existing laws (the laws which now exist).
Caesar qui Galliam vicīt, Caesar the conqueror of Gaul (who conquered Gaul).
īnsta gloria quae est frūctus virtūtis, true glory [which is] the fruit of virtue. qui legīt, a reader (one who reads).
īlē qui petit, the plaintiff (he who sues).
c. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun (cf. § 200. b): as,—

\[
\text{quae mala cum multis patimur, en nobis levis iura videntur, the evils we suffer [in common] with many, seem to us lighter.}
\]

Note. — In colloquial language, the relative clause in such cases often contains a demonstrative pronoun which properly belongs in the antecedent clause: as,—

\[
\text{ille qui consul te ... cavit, diutine uti ei bene licet partum bene (Plaut. Rud. 1240), he who is on his guard, he may enjoy, etc.}
\]

d. The antecedent noun, when in apposition with the main clause, or with some word of it, is put in the relative clause: as,—

\[
\text{firmi amici, cuius generis est magna penisuria, steadfast friends, a class of which there is great lack (of which class).}
\]

e. A relative may stand (even with another relative or an interrogative) at the beginning of a sentence or clause, where in English a demonstrative must be used (§ 180. f): as,—

\[
\text{quae qui audi ebant, and those who heard this (which things).}
\]

\[
\text{quae cum ita sint, and since these things are so.}
\]

\[
\text{quorum quod simile factum (Cat. iv. 13), what deed of theirs like this?}
\]

f. 1. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case: as,—

\[
\text{mortuus Cumis quo se contulerat (Liv. ii. 21), having died at Cumce, whither he had retired. [Here in quam urbem might be used, but not in quas.]}
\]

2. So, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun (cf. whence, whereto, wherewith): as,—

\[
\text{locus quo aditus non erat, a place to which (whither) there was no access.}
\]

\[
\text{regna unde genus ducis, the kingdom from which you derive your race.}
\]

\[
\text{unde petitur, the defendant (he wherefrom something is demanded, cf. § 207. a).}
\]

g. The relatives qui, qualis, quantus, quot, etc., are often rendered simply by as\(^1\) in English (§ 106. b): as,—

\[
\text{idem quod semper, the same as always.}
\]

\[
\text{talis dux qualem Hannibalem novimus, such a chief as we know Hannibal [to have been].}
\]

\[
\text{tanta dimicatio quanta numquam fuit, such a fight as never was before.}
\]

\[
\text{tot mala quot sidera, as many troubles as stars in the sky.}
\]

\(^1\) The English as in this use is strictly a relative, though invariable in form.
Indefinite Pronouns.

202. The Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant, without designating what one.

NOTE.—For the meanings of the compounds of quī and quis, see § 105.

a. Of the particular indefinites meaning some or any (quis, quispiam, nesciō quis, aliquis, quīdam), the simple quis is least definite, quīdam most definite: as,—

dixerit quis (quispiam), some one may say.
aliquī philosophi ita putant, some philosophers think so. [quīdam would mean certain particular persons defined to the speaker's mind, though not named.]
habitant hic quaedam mulierēs pauperculae, some poor women live here [i.e. some women he knows of; some women or other would be aliquae or nesciō quae].

b. In a particular negative aliquis (aliquī) is regularly used, where in a universal negative quisquam (subst.) or ullus (adj.) would be required: as,—

iūstitia nunquam nocet cuiquam qui eam habet (Cic.), justice never does harm to anybody who possesses it. [alicui would mean to somebody who possesses it.]
sine aliquā metū, [you cannot do this] without some fear.
sine ūllō metū, [you may do this] without any fear.
cum aliiquid nōn habeās (Tusc. i. 88), when there is something you have not.

NOTE.—These pronouns are used in like manner in conditional and other sentences (§ 105. b): as,—

si quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit (Læl. 9), if any man was (ever) a sage, he was. dum praesidia ūlla fuērunt (Rosc. A. 126), while there were any armed forces (till they ceased to be).

si quid in tē peccāvi (Att. iii. 15, 4), if I have done wrong towards you [in any particular case (see a, above)].

c. Of the general indefinites, quīvīs and quīlibet (any you will), utervīs (either you will, of two), are used chiefly in affirmative clauses, quisquam and ullus (any at all) in clauses where a negative is either expressed or implied: as,—

cuivīs potest accidere quod cuquam potest, what can happen to any [one] man can happen to any man [whatever].
nōn cuivīs homīni contingit adire Corinthum, it is not every man’s luck to go to Corinth. [nōn cuquam would mean not any man’s.] minus habeō virīum quam vestrūm utervīs, I have less strength than either of you. [For the form utervīs, see § 83.] quidlibet modo aliiquid (Cic.), anything you will, provided it be something.
cūr cuquam misi prius, why did I send to anybody before [you]?
sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum, if any man is timorous, I am he. cum hauō cuquam in dubiō esset (Liv. ii. 3), when it was not a matter of doubt to any one.
sī tempus est ullum jūre hominis necandi (Milon. 9), if there is any occasion whatever, etc.

NOTE.—The use of these indefinites is very various, and must be learned from the Lexicon and from practice. The choice among them often depends merely on the point of view of the speaker, so that they are often practically interchangeable. The differences are (with few exceptions) those of logic, not of syntax.

d. The distributives quisque (every), uterque (each), and unus quisque (every single one), are used in general assertions. They are equivalent to a plural, and sometimes have a plural verb (cf. § 205. c. 2): as,—

bonus liber melior est quisque quō māior, the larger a good book is, the better (each good book is better [in the same measure] as it is larger). ambo exercītūs suās quisque abeunt domōs, both armies go away, every man to his home.

uterque utrīque erat exercitus in cōnspectū, each army was in sight of the other (each to each).
pōnite ante oculōs unumquemque rēgum, set before your eyes each of the kings.

e. Quisque is regularly placed in a dependent clause, if there is one: quō quisque est solertior, hoc docet irācundius (Rosc. Com. 31), the keener-witted a man is, the more impatiently he teaches (as each is so, etc.).

NOTE.—Quisque is generally post-positive. Thus, suum cuique, to every man his own.

f. Nēmō, no one, is used:—

1. As a substantive: as,—
nēmō fit repente turpissimus, no one suddenly becomes absolutely base.

2. As an adjective pronoun: as,—
vir nēmō bonus (Leg. ii. 41), no good man.

NOTE.—Even when used as a substantive, nēmō may take a noun in apposition: as,—
nēmō scriptor, nobody [who is] a writer.
§ 203. Alius and Alter.

7. Alius and Alter.

203. The expressions alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other, alius . . . alius, one . . . another, may be used in pairs to denote either division of a group or reciprocity of action: as,—

aliī gladiis adoriantur, aliī frāgmentīs saeptōrum (Sest. 79), some make an attack with swords, others with fragments of the railings.

arma ab aliīs posita ab aliīōs ērepta sunt (Marcel. 31), arms were laid down by some and were snatched from others.

duōbus Rosciōs Amerinīs quōrum alterum sedēre in accusātōrum subsellīis videō, alterum tria hūiusce praedīa possidēre audiō (Rosc. Amer. 17), two Rosci of Ameria, one of whom I see sitting on the benches of the prosecution; the other, I hear, is in possession, etc.

alterī dimicant, alterī victōrem timent (Fam. vi. 3), one party fights, the other fears the victor.

hi frātrēs alter alterum amant, these brothers love one another.

alius alium percontāmur, we ask each other.

a. Alius means simply other, another (of an indefinite number); alter, the other (of two), often the second in a series; cēterī and reliquī, all the rest, the others; alteruter, one of the two. Thus,—

quid aliud agis, what else are you doing (what other thing)?
cum etiam hi quibus ignōvisti, nōlint tē esse in aliōs misericordem (Lig. 15), when even those whom you have pardoned are unwilling that you should be merciful to others.

ūni epistulae respondi, veniō ad alteram (Fam. ii. 17, 6), one letter I have answered, I come to the other.

ūnus atque item alter, one and then [likewise] another. [Of an indefinite number, but strictly referring only to the second.]

alterum genus (Cat. ii. 19), the second class.

iccissem ipse mē potius in profundum ut cēterōs cōnservārem (Sestius, 45),
I should have rather thrown myself into the deep to save the rest.

hōrum utrō ātī nōlumus, alterō est utendum (Sestius, 92), whichever of the two we do not wish to have, we must take the other.

Servilius cōnsul, reliquīque magistrātūs (B. C. iii. 21), Servilius the consul and the rest of the magistrates.

cum sit necesse alterutrum vincere (Fam. vi. 3), when it must be that one of the two should prevail.

b. Alius and alter are often used to express one as well as another (the other) of the objects referred to: as,—

alter cōnsulum, one of the [two] consuls.

aliūd est maledicere, aliūd accusāre (Cic.), it is one thing to slander, another to accuse.
c. *Alius* repeated in another case, or with an adverb from the same stem, expresses shortly a double statement: as,—

*Alius aliud petit,* one man seeks one thing, one another (another seeks another thing).

*Alius aliā viā civitātem auxerunt* (Liv. i. 21), *they enlarged the State, each in his own way.*

*iūsīt aliōs alībi foderē* (Liv. xlix. 33), *he ordered different persons to dig in various places.*

**NOTE.** — *Alter* is often used, especially with negatives, in reference to an indefinite number where *one* is opposed to *all the rest* taken singly: as,—

*Qui ālterum incūsat probī eum ipsum sē intuēri oportet* (Pl. Truc. i 59), *he who accuses his neighbor of wrong ought to look at himself (the other, there being at the moment only two concerned).*

*dum nē sit tē dītiōr ālter* (Hor. Sat. i. 1. 40), *so long as another is not richer than you.*

*nōn ut magis ālter, amīcus* (Hor. Sat. i. 5. 33), *a friend such that no other is more so.*

**IV. VERBS.**

1. Verb and Subject.

**204.** A Finite verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person: as,—

ego stātuō, *I resolve.*

senātus dēcrēvit, *the senate ordered.*

silent lēgēs inter arma, *the laws are dumb in time of war.*

**NOTE.** — In verb-forms containing a participle, the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number (§ 186): as,—

ōrātiō est habita, *the plea was delivered.*

bellum exortum est, *a war arose.*

a. A verb having a relative as its subject takes the person of the expressed or implied antecedent: as,—

adsum qui fēci (AEn. ix. 427), *here am I who did it.*

b. The verb sometimes agrees in number, a participle in the verb-form in number and gender, with an appositive or predicate noun: as,—

amantium ērae amōris redintegrātiō est (Ter. Andr. 555), *the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*

nōn omnis error stultitia est dicenda (Div. ii. 90), *not every error should be called folly.*

Corinthus lūmen Graeciae extinctum est, *Corinth, the light of Greece, is put out.*
205. Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural: as,—

pater et avus mortui sunt, his father and grandfather are dead.

NOTE.—So rarely (by a construction according to the sense, § 182) when to the subject is attached an ablative with cum: as,—

dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur (Liv. xxi. 60), the general and several chiefs are taken.

a. When subjects are of different persons, the verb is in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third: as,—

si tū et Tullia valētis ego et Cicerō valēmus (Fam. xiv. 5), if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. [Notice that the first person is also first in order, not last, as by courtesy in English.]

NOTE.—In case of different genders a participle in a verb-form follows the rule for predicate adjectives; see § 187. b, c.

b. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives, or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular: as,—

quem neque fīdēs neque iūsūrandum neque illum misericordia repressit (Ter. Ad. 306), not faith, nor oath, nay, nor mercy, checked him.

Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit (Fam. v. 8), the Roman Senate and people understand. But,—neque Caesar neque ego habiti esse-mus (Fam. xi. 20), neither C. nor I should have been considered.

c. A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular: as,—

Senātus haec intelligit (Catil. i. 2), the Senate is aware of this.
ad hiberna exercitus redit (Liv. xxi. 22), the army returns to winter-quarters.

1. But the plural is often found with collective nouns when individuals are thought of: as,—

pars praedās aģēbant (Jug. 32), a part brought in booty.
cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs cōnicerent (B. G. ii. 6), when such a crowd was throwing stones.

NOTE.—The point of view may change in the course of a sentence: as,—
equitātum onnem . . . quem habēbat praemittit, quī videant (B. G. i. 15), he sent ahead all the cavalry he had, to see (who should see).

2. Quisque has very often a plural verb, but may be considered as in apposition with a plural subject implied (cf. § 202. d): as,—

sībi quisque habeant quod suum est (Plaut. Curc.), let every one keep his own (let them keep every man his own).
d. When a verb belongs to two or more subjects separately, it may agree with one and be understood with the others: as,—

intercēdit M. Antōniius et Cassius tribūnī plēbis (B. C. i. 2), Antony and Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.

3. Incomplete Sentences.

206. The subject of the verb is sometimes omitted. Thus:

a. A Personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted unless emphatic. Thus,—

loquor, I speak. But, ego loquor, it is I that speak.

b. An indefinite subject is often omitted.

This is usually a plural, as in dīcunt, ferunt, perhibent (they say); but sometimes singular, as in inquit (Tusc. i. 93), one says (referring to a class of reasoners just spoken of).

c. The verb is often omitted. Thus,—

1. Dīcō, facīō, agō and other verbs in familiar phrases: as,—

quōrum haec [spectant], what does this aim at?

ex uinge leōnem [cōgnōscēs], you will know a lion by his claw.

quid multa, what need of many words? (why should I say much?)

quid? quod, what of this, that, etc.? (what shall I say of this, that, etc.?)

[A form of transition.]

Aeolus haec contrā (Æn. i. 76), Æolus thus [spoke] in reply.

tum Cotta [inquit], then said Cotta.

dī melōrā [duint], Heaven forefend (may the gods grant better things)!

unde [venīs] et quō [tendis], where are you from and where bound?

2. The copula sum, very commonly in the indicative and infinitive, rarely (except by late authors) in the subjunctive: as,—

tū coniūnx (Æn. iv. 113), you [are] his wife.

omnia praeclāra rāra (Læl. 79), all the best things are rare.

potest incidere saepe contentiō et comparātiō dē duōbus honestīs utrum honestius (Of. i. 152), a comparison of two honorable actions, as to which is the more honorable. [Here, if any copula were expressed, it would be sit, but the direct question would be complete without any.]

accipe quae peragenda prius (Æn. vi. 136), hear what is first to be accomplished. [Direct: quae peragenda prius?]

Cf., for omission of a Subjunctive,—cum ille ferōciter ad haec [diceret] (Liv. i. 48), upon his replying with insolence to this, that, etc.

V.—PARTICLES.

1. Adverbs.

207. Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs.
§ 207. Adverbs.

Note 1.—For the derivation and classification of adverbs, see §§ 148, 149.

Note 2.—The proper functions of Adverbs, as petrified case-forms, is to modify Verbs: as, celeriter ire, to go with speed. It is from this use that they derive their name (adverbum, from ad, to, and verbum, verb; see § 163. f). They also modify adjectives, showing in what manner or degree the quality described is manifested: as, splendifer mendax, gloriously false. More rarely they modify other adverbs: as, nimis graviter, too severely.

Note 3.—Many adverbs, especially relative adverbs, serve as connectives, and are hardly to be distinguished from conjunctions (see § 25. h. note).

a. A Demonstrative or Relative adverb is often equivalent to the corresponding Pronoun with a preposition (see § 201. f): as,—

eō (= in ea) impōnit vāsa (Jug. 75), upon them (thither, thereon, on the beasts) he puts the camp-utensils.

eō militēs impōnere (B. G. i. 42), on them (thereon) he puts the soldiers.
apūd eōs quō (= ad quōs) sē contulit (Verr. iv. 38), among those to whom (whither) he resorted.
qui eum necasset unde ipse nātus esset (Rosc. Am. 71), one who should have killed his own father (him whence he had his birth).
ō miserās condiciōnēs administrandārum prōvinciārum ubi [= in quibus] severitās periculōsa est (Flacc. 87), oh! wretched terms of managing the provinces, where strictness is dangerous.

b. The adverbs propius, near; proximē, next (like the adjectives propior, proximus); postrīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after, are sometimes followed by the accusative (see § 261. a).

The adverbs palam, openly; procul, afar; simul, at the same time, are sometimes followed by the ablative (see § 261. b).

Note.—Prīdiē and postrīdiē are often used with the genitive (§ 223. e. n. 2). Clām, without the knowledge of, may take the accusative, the ablative, or the genitive (§ 261. c).

c. Many perfect participles used as nouns regularly retain the adverb which modified them as participles: as,—
praeclārē factum, a glorious deed (a thing gloriously done).

d. Very rarely adverbs are used with nouns which contain a verbal idea (cf. § 188. d): as,—

populus lātē rēx (AEn. i. 21), a people ruling far and wide.
hinc abitiō (Plaut.), a going away from here.
quid cōgitem dē obviam itīōne (Att. xiii. 50), what I think about going to meet [him]. [Perhaps felt as a compound.]

e. For adverbs used as adjectives, see § 188. e.

Note.—In some cases one can hardly say whether the adverb is treated as an adjective modifying the noun (as in § 188. e), or the noun modified is treated as an adjective (as in § 188. d).
2. Conjunctions.

Note.—For the classification of conjunctions, see §§ 154, 155.

208. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them: as, —

scriptum senātui et populō (Catil. iii. 10), written to the senate and people.

ut eās [partis] sānārēs et cōnfirmārēs. (Milon. 68), that you might cure and strengthen those parts.

neque meā prūdentīā neque hūmānis cōnsiliis fīręs (Catil. ii. 29), relying neither on my own foresight nor on human wisdom.

a. Conjunctions of Comparison (as ut, quam, tanquam, quasi) also commonly connect similar constructions: as, —

his igitur quam physicis potius crēdendum existimās (Div. ii. 37), do you think these are more to be trusted than the natural philosophers?

hominem callidīōrem vidi nēminem quam Phormīōnem (Ter.), a shrewder man I never saw than Phormio (cf. § 247. a).

ut nōn omne vinum sīc nōn omnis nātūra vetustāte coācēscit (Cato Major, 65), as every wine does not sour with age, so [does] not every nature.

Cf. pērge ut instituisti (Rep. ii. 22), go on as you have begun.

in mē quāsī in tyrannum (Philip. xiv. 15), against me as against a tyrant.

b. Two or more co-ordinate words, phrases, or sentences are often put together without the use of conjunctions (Asyndeton, § 346. c): as, —

omnēs di, hominēs, all gods and men.

summi, medii, infimi, the highest, the middle class, and the lowest.

liberi, servi, freemen and slaves.

1. Where there are more than two co-ordinate words, etc., a conjunction, if used at all, must be used with all (or all except the first): as, —

aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut īnūriā potentīōrum (B. G. vi. 13), by debt, excessive taxation, or oppression on the part of the powerful.

summā fidē et cōnstantiā et īustiāti, with perfect good faith, [and] consist-ency, and justice. [Not fidē cōnstantiā et īustiāti, as in English.]

2. But words are often so divided into groups that the members of the groups omit the conjunction (or express it), while the groups themselves express the conjunction (or omit it): as, —

propudium illud et portentum, L. Antōnīus insigne odium omnium homi-num (Phil. xiv. 8), that wretch and monster, Lucius Antonius, the abomination of all men.

utrunque ēgit graviter, auctōritāte et offensiōne animī nōn acerbā (Lael. 77), he acted in both cases with dignity, without loss of authority, and with no bitterness of feeling.
3. The enclitic -que is sometimes used with the last member of a series, even when there is no grouping apparent: as,

vōce vultū mōtūque (Brut. 110), by voice, expression, and gesture.
cūram cōnsilium vigilantiamque (Phil. vii. 20), care, wisdom, and vigilance.
multō sūdōrē labōrē vigilīsīque (Caecil. 72), with much fatigue, toil, and waking.
quōrum auctōritātem dignitātem voluntātemque dēfenderās (Fam. i. 7, 2), whose dignity, honor, and wishes you had defended.

c. Two adjectives belonging to the same noun are regularly connected by a conjunction: as,

multae et grāves causae, many weighty reasons.

d. Many words properly adverbs may be used correlativelly, and so become conjunctions, partly or wholly losing their adverbial force (see § 107). Such are,

cum ... tum, while ... so also (both ... and).
tum ... tum, now ... now.
modo ... modo, now ... now.
simul ... simul, at the same time ... at the same time (at once ... as well as).
quā ... quā, now ... now.
nunc ... nunc, now ... now.

Thus,

cum difficile est, tum nē aequum quidem (Lælius 26), not only is it difficult, but even unjust.
erumpunt saepe vitia amicōrum tum in ipsōs amīcōs tum in aliēnōs (Lælius 76), the faults of friends sometimes break out, now against their friends themselves, now against strangers.
modo ait modo negat (Ter. Eun. 714), now he says yes, now no.
simul grātiās agit, simul grātulātur (Q. C. vi. 7), he thanks him and at the same time congratulates him.
quā maris quā fēminās (Plaut. Mil. 1113), both males and females.

e. Two conjunctions of similar meaning are often used together, for the sake of emphasis or to bind a sentence more closely to what precedes: as, at vērō, but in truth, but surely, still, however; itaque ergō, accordingly then; namque, for; et-enim, for, you see, for of course (§ 156. d).

f. For conjunctions introducing subjunctive clauses, see Chap. V.

3. Negative Particles.

NOTE. — For the list of negative particles, see § 149. e.

209. In the use of the Negative Particles, the following points are to be observed: —
a. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative, as in English
(§ 150): as, nēmō nōn videt, everybody sees.
But a general negation is not destroyed —
1. By a following nē... quidem, not even, or nōn modo, not only:
as, —
numquam tū nōn modo ōtium, sed nē bellum quidem nisi nefārium con-
cupīstī (Catil. i. 25), not only have you never desired repose, but you
have never desired any war except one which was infamous.
2. By succeeding negatives each introducing a separate subordinate
member: as, —
eaque nesciēbant nec ubi nec quālia essent (Tusc. iii. 4), they knew not
where or of what kind these things were.
3. By neque introducing a co-ordinate member: as, —
nequeō satis mirari neque cōnicere (Ter. Eun. 547), I cannot wonder
enough nor conjecture.

b. The negative is frequently joined to some other word. Hence
the forms of negation in Latin differ from those in English in many
expressions. Thus, —
neque (nec) (not et nōn), and not, but not (neither . . . nor).
nec quisquam (not et nēmō), and no one (nor any one).
nūlli or neutrī crēdō (not nōn crēdō ūllī), I do not believe either
(I believe neither).
negō haec esse vēra (not dīcō nōn esse), I say this is not true (I deny
that these things are true).
sine ūllō periculō (less commonly cum nūllō), with nō danger (without
any danger).
nihil unquam audīvi iūcundius, I never heard anything more amusing
(nothing more amusing have I ever heard).

c. A statement is often made emphatic by denying its contrary
(Litotes): as, —
nōn haec sine nūmine divōm ēveniunt (Æn. ii. 777), these things do not
occur without the will of the gods.
haec nōn nimis exquirō (Att. vii. 18, 3), not very much, i.e. very little.

NOTE.—Compare nōnnūllus, nōnnēmō, etc. (§ 150. a).

d. The particle immō, nay, is used to contradict some part of a
preceding statement or question, or its form; in the latter case, the
same statement is often repeated in a stronger form, so that immō be-
comes nearly equivalent to yes (nay but, nay rather): as, —
causa igitur nōn bona est? immō optima (Att. ix. 7), is the cause then not
a good one? on the contrary, the best.
Questions.

210. Questions are either Direct or Indirect.

1. A Direct Question gives the exact words of the speaker: as, —
   *quid est? what is it?*

2. An Indirect Question gives the substance of the question, adapted to the form of the sentence in which it is quoted. It depends on a verb or other expression of asking, doubting, knowing, or the like: as, —
   *rogavit quid esset, he asked what it was.*  
   *nescio ubi sim, I know not where I am.*

Questions in Latin are introduced by special interrogative words, and are not distinguished by the order of words, as in English.

**Note.** — For the list of Interrogative Particles, see § 149. a.

a. A question of simple fact, requiring the answer yes or no, is formed by adding the enclitic -ne to the emphatic word: as, —
   *tūne id veritus es (Cic.), did you fear that?*
   *hicine vir usquam nisi in patria morietur (Milon. 104), shall this man die anywhere but in his native land?*

b. The interrogative particle -ne is sometimes omitted: as, —
   *patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentis (Cat. i. 1), do you not see that your schemes are manifest? (you do not see, eh?)*

**Note.** — In such cases no sign of interrogation appears except in the punctuation, and it is often doubtful whether the sentence is a question or an ironical statement.

c. When the enclitic -ne is added to a negative word,—as in nōnne,—an affirmative answer is expected. The particle num suggests a negative answer. Thus, —
   *nōnne animadvertis (N. D. iii. 89), do you not observe?*
   *num dubium est (Rosc. A. 107), there is no doubt, is there?*
d. The particle -ne often when added to the verb, less commonly when added to some other word, has the force of nōne: as,—

meministīne mē in senātū dicere (Cat. i. 7), don't you remember my saying in the Senate?

rectēne interpreter sententiam tuam (Tuscul. iii. 37), do I not rightly interpret your meaning?

NOTE.—This was evidently the original meaning of -ne; but in most cases the negative force was lost and -ne was used merely to express a question. So the English interrogative no? shades off into eh?

REMARK.—The enclitic -ne is sometimes added to other interrogative words: as, utrumne, whether; anne, or; quantane (Hor. Sat. ii. 3. 317), how big? quōne malō (id. 290), by what curse?

e. A question concerning some special circumstance is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative pronoun or adverb (§ 106), as in English: as,—

quid est quod iam amplius exspectēs (Cat. i. 6), what is there for you to look for any more?

quō igitur haec spectant (Fam. vi. 6), whither then is all this tending?

Icare, ubi es (Ov. M. viii. 232), Icarus, where are you?

REMARK.—A question of this form becomes an exclamation by changing the inflection of the voice: as, quālis vir erat! what a man he was! quot calamitātēs passi sumus! how many misfortunes have we suffered!

f. The particles nam (enclitic) and tandem may be added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs for the sake of emphasis: as,—

quisnam est, pray who is it? [quis tandem est? would be stronger.]

ubinam gentium sumus (Cat. i. 9), where in the world are we?

in quā tandem urbe hóc disputant (Milon. 7), in what city, pray, do they maintain this?

NOTE.—Tandem is sometimes added to verbs: as,—

ain tandem (Fam. ix. 21), you don't say so! (say you so, pray?)

itane tandem, quæsō, est (Ter. Heaut. 954), it's so, is it then?

itane tandem uxōrem dūxit Antiphō (Ter. Ph. 231), so then, eh? Antiphō's got married?

REMARK.—The form of Indirect Questions (in English introduced by whether, or by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) is in Latin the same as that of Direct; the difference being only in the verb, which in indirect questions regularly takes the Subjunctive (§ 334).

In indirect questions num loses its peculiar force (§ 210. e).

**Double Questions.**

211. A Double or Alternative Question is an inquiry as to which of two or more supposed cases is the true one.
In Double or Alternative Questions, utrum or -ne, whether, stands in the first member; an, anne, or; annōn, necne, or not, in the second; and usually an in the third, if there be one: as,—

utrum nescis, an prō nihilō id putās (Fam. x. 26), is it that you don't know, or do you think nothing of it?
quaerō servōsne an liberōs (Rosc. Am. 74), I ask whether slaves or free.
utrum hostemne an vōs an fortūnam utriusque populi ignōrātis (Liv. xxi. 10, 6), is it the enemy, or yourselves, or the fortune of the two peoples, that you do not know?

Remark.—Annōn is more common in direct questions, necne in indirect.

a. The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member; in which case an or -ne (anne, necne) may stand in the second: as,—

Gabinio dicam anne Pompēiō an utrique (Manil. 57), shall I say to Gabinius, or to Pompey, or to both?
sunt haec tua verba necne (Tusc. iii. 41), are these your words or not?

b. Sometimes the first member is omitted or implied, and an (anne) alone asks the question, —usually with indignation or surprise: as,—
an tū miserōs putās illōs (Tusc. i. 13), what! do you think those men wretched?

c. Sometimes the second member is omitted or implied, and utrum may ask a question to which there is no alternative: as,—

utrum in clārissimis est civibus is, quem . . . (Flacc. 45), is he among the noblest citizens, whom, etc.?

d. The following table exhibits the various forms of alternative questions:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question Form</th>
<th>Answer Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utrum . . . an . . . an</td>
<td>utrum . . . annōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— . . . an (anne)</td>
<td>—— . . . -ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne . . . an</td>
<td>-ne . . . necne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— . . . -ne, necne</td>
<td>-ne . . . -ne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question and Answer.

212. There is no one Latin word in common use meaning simply yes or no. In answering a question affirmatively, the verb or some other emphatic word is generally repeated; in answering negatively, the verb, etc., with nōn or a similar negative: as,—
valetne, is he well? valet, yes (he is well).
eratne tēcum, was he with you? nōn erat, no (he was not).
umquidnam novi there is nothing new, is there? nihil sānē, oh! nothing.

a. An intensive or negative particle, a phrase, or a clause is sometimes used to answer a direct question: thus,—

1. For yes:—
vērō, in truth, true, no doubt, yes. ita vērō, certainly (so in truth), etc.
etiam, even so, yes, etc. sānē quidem, yes, no doubt, etc.
ita, so, true, etc. ita est, it is so, true, etc.
sānē, surely (soundly), no doubt, doubtless, etc.
certē, certainly, most assuredly, unquestionably, etc.
factum, true (it was done), it's a fact, you're right, etc.

2. For no:—
nōn, not [so]. nūllō modō, by no means.
minimē, not at all (in the smallest degree, cf. § 209. e).
minimē vērō, no, not by any means; oh! no, etc.
nōn quidem, why, no; certainly not, etc.
nōn hercle vērō, why, gracious, no (certainly not, by Hercules)!

Examples are:—

aut etiam aut nōn respondēre (Academ. ii. 104), to answer (categorically)
yes or no.
estne ut fertur forma? sānē (Ter. Eun. 361), is [she] as handsome as they
say she is (is her beauty as it is said)? oh! yes.
fugisne hinc? ego vērō ac lubēns (Ter. And. 337), will you clear out from
here? indeed I will, and be glad to.
miser ergō Archēlaus? certē si iniusēs (Tuscul. v. 35), was Archelaus
wretched then? certainly, if he was unjust.
haec contemnitis? minimē (De Orat. ii. 295), do you despise these things?
not at all.
volucribusne et feris? minimē vērō (Tuscul. i. 104), to the birds and
beasts? why, of course not.
ex tui animi sententiā tū uxōrem habēs? nōn hercle, ex mei animi sen-
tentiā (De Orat. ii. 260), Lord! no, etc.

b. In answering a double question, one member of the alternative,
or some part of it, must be repeated: as,—
tūne an frāter erat, was it you or your brother? ego [eram], it was I.

REMARK.—From double (alternative) questions must be distinguished those
which are in themselves single, but of which some detail only is alternative. These
have the common disjunctive particles aut or vel (-ve). Thus,—

quae rō num iniusēs aut improbē fēcerit (Off. iii. 54), I ask whether he acted
unjustly or even dishonestly.

Here there is no double question. The only inquiry is whether the man did
either of the two things supposed, not which of the two he did,
CHAPTER II.—Construction of Cases.

Note.—The Cases of nouns express their relations to other words in the sentence. The most primitive way of expressing such relations is by mere juxtaposition of roots or stems. From this arises in time composition, the growing together of stems by means of which a complex expression arises with its parts mutually dependent. Thus such a complex as *armo-gero-* comes to mean *arm-bearing*; *fidi-cen-* *playing on the lyre.* Later, Cases are formed by means of suffixes to express more definitely such relations, and Syntax begins. But the primitive method of composition still continues to hold an important place even in the most highly developed languages.

Originally the family of languages to which Latin belongs had at least seven cases, besides the Vocative. But in Latin the Locative and Instrumental were lost except in a few words (where they remained without being recognized as cases) and their functions were divided among the others (§§ 224, 242).

The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative express the oldest forms of case-relations (Direct Cases, § 31 g. note). The Nominative is the case of the Subject, and the -s in which it generally ends is thought to be a demonstrative pronoun (§ 32, n. 2). The Vocative, usually without a termination, or like the Nominative (§ 33 a), perhaps never had a suffix of its own. The Accusative, most frequently formed by the suffix -m (doubtless another demonstrative), originally connected the noun loosely with the verb-idea, not necessarily expressed by a verb proper, but as well by a noun or adjective (see page 235, head-note).

The other cases were formed by combination with various pronominal suffixes, and at first probably expressed relations of place or direction (TO, FROM, AT, WITH: Indirect Cases, § 31 g. note). But these original meanings have become confused with each other, and in many instances the cases are no longer distinguishable either in form or meaning. Thus the Locative was for the most part lost from its confusion with the Dative and Ablative; and its function was often performed by the Ablative, which is freely used to express the *place where* (§ 258 f). To indicate relations of place more precisely, Prepositions (originally Adverbs) gradually became necessary. These by degrees rendered the case-endings useless, and so have finally superseded them in all modern languages derived from Latin. But in Latin a large and various body of relations was still expressed by case-forms. It is to be noticed that cases in their literal use tended to adopt the preposition, and in their figurative uses to retain the old construction. (See Ablative of Separation, § 243; Ablative of Place and Time, §§ 254, 256.)

The word *cāsus*, *case*, is a translation of the Greek *πτώσις*, *a falling away* (from the erect position). The term *πτώσις* was originally applied to the Oblique Cases (§ 31 g), to mark them as variations from the Nominative, which was called *ὁρθή* (*cāsus rectus*). The later name *Nominative* (*cāsus nominātivus*) is from *nominō*, and means the *naming case*. The other case-names (except *ablative*) are of Greek origin. The name *Genitive* (*cāsus genētivus*) is a translation of *γενέσις* [*ptōsias*], from *γένος* (*class*), and refers to the *class* to which a thing belongs. *Dative* (*cāsus datīvus*, from θέo) is translated from *δοσις*, and means the case of *giving*. *Accusative* (*accīsītivus*, from *accūsō*) is a mistranslation of *ātativus* (the case of *causing*), from *ātīa*, *cause*, and meant to the Romans the case of *accusing*. The name *Vocative* (*vocātivus*, from *vocō*) is translated from *κλαίσι* (the case of *calling*). The name *Ablative* (*ablātivus*, from *ablātus*, *auferō*) means *taking from*. This case the Greek had lost.
I.—GENITIVE.

Note.—The Genitive is regularly used to express the relation of one noun to another. Hence it is sometimes called the adjective case, to distinguish it from the Dative and the Ablative, which may be called adverbial cases. Its uses may be classified as follows:

1. Of Possession (§ 214).
2. Of Source developed into Material (§ 214. e).
4. Of the Whole, after words designating a Part (Partitive, § 216).

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS:

1. Of Possession (§ 214).
2. Of Source developed into Material (§ 214. e).
4. Of the Whole, after words designating a Part (Partitive, § 216).

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES:

1. Relative adjective (or Verbal) (§ 218. a, b).
2. Of Specification (later use) (§ 218. c).

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS:

1. Of Memory, Feeling, etc. (§§ 219, 221-23).
2. Of Accusing, etc. (Charge or Penalty) (§ 220).

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

213. A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive.

This relation is most frequently expressed in English by the preposition OF: as,—

libri Ciceronis, the books of Cicero.
talentum auri, a talent of gold.
talentum auri, a talent of gold.

vir summae virtūtis, a man of the greatest courage.
pars militum, a part of the soldiers.
cultus deorum, worship of the gods.
vacātiō laborīs, a respite from toil.
victor omnium gentium, conqueror of all nations.

In most constructions the genitive is either Subjective or Objective.

1. The Subjective genitive denotes that to which the noun limited belongs, or from which it is derived (§ 214).
2. The Objective genitive denotes that toward which an action or feeling is directed (§ 217 ff.).

This distinction is illustrated by the following example. The phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father’s love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive).

Note.—The genitive seems to have denoted originally that to which something belongs, and hence it was originally subjective. The objective genitive is a later development, through such expressions as mel laudārōres, my admirers, in which the admirers are first conceived as belonging to me, and afterwards felt as admiring me (cf. § 217. note). For this reason the distinction between the subjective and the objective genitive is very unstable and constantly lost sight of (cf. § 197. a).
214. The Subjective Genitive is used with a noun to denote (1) the Author or Owner, (2) the Source or the Material, (3) the Quality.

1. Possessive Genitive.

a. 1. The Possessive Genitive denotes the author or owner: as, —

libri Ciceronis, the books of (written by) Cicero.
Alexandri equus, Alexander's horse.

2. For the genitive of possession a possessive or derivative adjective is often used, — regularly for the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns (§§ 190, 197. a): as, —

liber meus, my book. [Not liber meī.]
aliēna pericula, other men's dangers. [But also aliōrum.]
Sullāna tempora, the times of Sulla. [Oftener Sullae.]

b. The noun limited is understood in a few expressions: as, —

ad Castoris [aedes], to the [temple] of Castor.
Hectoris Andromachē (Æn. iii. 319), Hector's [wife] Andromache.
Flaccus Claudi, Flaccus [slave] of Claudius.

c. The possessive genitive is often in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb: as, —

haec domus est patris mei, this house is my father's.
tūtēlae nostrae [eos] dūximus (Liv.), we held them [to be] in our protection.
compendī facere, to save (make of saving).
lucrī facere, to get the benefit of (make of profit).
iam mē Pompēī tōtum esse scīs (Fam. ii. 13), you know I am now all for Pompey (all Pompey's).

REMARK. — These genitives bear the same relation to the examples in § 213 that a predicate noun bears to an appositive (§§ 184, 185).

d. An infinitive or a clause, when used as a noun, is often limited by a genitive in the predicate: as, —

neque suī iūdici [erat] dēcernere (B. C. i. 35), nor was it for his judgment to decide (nor did it belong to his judgment).
cūiusvis hominis est errāre (Cic.), it is any man's [liability] to err.
negāvit mōris esse Graecōrum, ut in conviviō virōrum accumberent multifēres (Ver. ii. i. 66), he said it was not the custom of the Greeks for women to appear as guests (recline) at the banquets of men.
timidi est optāre necem (Ov. M. iv. 115), it is for the coward to wish for death.
stultī erat spērāre, suādere impudentis (Phil. ii. 23), it was folly to hope, effrontery to urge (it was the part of a fool, etc.).
sapiēntis (not sapiēns) est paucā loquī, it is wise (the part of a wise man) to say little.

REMARK.—This construction is regular with adjectives of the third declension instead of the neuter nominative (see the last two examples).

NOTE.—A derivative or possessive adjective may be used for the genitive in this construction, and must be used for the genitive of a personal pronoun: as,—
mentīri nōn est meum (not meī), it is not for me to lie.
hūmānum (for hominis) est errāre, it is man’s nature to err (to err is human).

2. Genitive of Material.
e. The genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (compare §§ 216, 244): as,—
talentum auri, a talent of gold.
flūmina lactis, rivers of milk.

NOTE.—This is strictly a genitive of source (cf. ex aurō factum, made [out] of gold, § 244. c).

f. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition (§ 183): as,—
nōmen īnsāniae (for nōmen īnsānia), the word madness.
oppidum Antiochiae (for oppidum Antiochia, the regular form), the city of Antioch. [A very wide use of this genitive, cf. e.]

g. For the genitive with the ablatives causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable īnstar, like; also with prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as, see § 223. e.

h. For the genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive, see § 298.

3. Genitive of Quality.
215. The genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective: as,—
vir summae virtūtis, a man of the highest courage. [But not vir virtūtis]
māgnae est delibārātōnis, it is an affair of great deliberation.
māgni formicā labōris, the ant [a creature] of great toil.
ille autem sui iūdici (Nep. Att. 9), but he [a man] of independent (his own) judgment.
Partitive Genitive.

Note.—Compare Ablative of Quality (§ 251). In expressions of quality, the genitive or the ablative may often be used indifferently: as, praestantī prūdentīā vir, a man of surpassing wisdom; màximī animī homō (Cic.), a man of the greatest courage. But in general the Genitive is thus used rather of essential, the Ablative of special or incidental characteristics. The Genitive of Quality was no doubt originally subjective.

a. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases ēius modī, cāius modī (equivalent to tālis, such; quális, of what sort).
b. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, etc. (Genitive of Measure): as, —

fōssa trium pedum, a trench of three feet [in depth].
mūrus sēdecim pedum, a wall of sixteen feet [high].

c. For Genitives of Quality used to express indefinitive value, see § 252. a.

4. Partitive Genitive.

216. Words denoting a Part are followed by the genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

a. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are —

1. Nouns or Pronouns: as, —

pars militum, part of the soldiers.
quis nostrūm, which of us (cf. e, below)?
nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left.

2. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like aliūs, etc.: as, —

alter cōnsulūm, one of the [two] consuls.
ūnus tribūnōrum, one of the tribunes (cf. c, below).
plūrīnum tōtiūs Galliāc equitātū valet (B. G. v. 3), is strongest in cavalry of all Gaul.
octāvus sapientūm (Hor.), the eighth wise man (eighth of the wise men).
Hispānōrūm aliī vigilant aliī student, of the Spaniards some are on the watch, others are eager.
māior frātrūm, the elder of the brothers.
animālīum fortīōra, the stronger [of] animals.

3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, used as nouns: as, —

tantum spati, so much [of] space.
aliquīd nummōrum, a few pence (something of coins).
id locī (or locōrum), that spot of ground.
id temporīs, at that time (§ 240. b).
plāna urbīs, the level parts of the town.
quid novī, what news (what of new)?
**Remark.**—The genitive of adjectives of the *third declension* is rarely used partitively. Thus—

nihil nova (gen.), nothing new; but
nihil memorabile (nom.), nothing worth mention. [Not nihil memorabilis.]

4. Adverbs, especially of Quantity and Place: as,—
satis pecūniae, money enough (enough of money).
parum oti, not much ease (too little of ease).
inde loci, next in order (thence of place).
tum temporis, at that point of time (then of time).
eō miseriārum (Sall.), to that [pitch] of misery.
ubinam gentium sumus, where in the world are we (where of nations)?

b. The poets and later writers often use the partitive genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case: as,—

sequimur tē sancte deōrum (Æn. iv. 576), we follow thee, O holy deity.
[For sancte deus.]

nigrae lānārum (Plin. H. N. viii. 193), black wools. [For nigrae lānae.]
ēlectī iuvenem (Liv. xxx. 9), chosen youths. [For ēlectī iuvenēs.]
cūntōs hominum (Ov.), all men. [For cūntōs hominēs, compare e.]

c. Cardinal numerals regularly take the Ablative with ē (ex) or dē instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also quīdam commonly, and other words occasionally: as,—

ūnus ex tribūnīs, one of the tribunes. [But also, ūnus tribūnōrum.]
minumus ex illīs (Jug. i), the youngest of them.
medius ex tribus (ib.), the middle one of the three.
quīdam ex militibus, certain of the soldiers.
hominem dē comitibus meis, a man of my companions.

d. Uterque, both (properly each), and quisque, each, with Nouns are used as adjectives in agreement, but with Pronouns always take a partitive genitive: as,—

uterque cōnsul, both the consuls; but, uterque nostrūm, both of us.
ūnus quisque vosstrūm, each one of you.

e. Numbers and words of quantity including the *whole* of any thing, take a case in agreement, and not the partitive genitive. So also words denoting a part when *only that part* is thought of. Thus,—
nōs omnēs, all of us (we all). [Not omnēs nostrūm.]
quot sunt hostēs, how many of the enemy are there?
cave inimicōs quī multī sunt, beware of your enemies, who are many.
multī militēs, many of the soldiers.
nēmō Rōmānus, not one Roman.
5. Objective Genitive.

The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

217. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the genitive of the object: as,—

- désiderium őti, longing for rest.
- vacatii müneris, relief from duty.
- grätia beneficii, gratitude for kindness.
- füga malorum, refuge from disaster.
- precatiö deorum, prayer to the gods.
- contentio honorum, struggle for office.
- opinio virtutis, reputation for valor.

Note. — This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase *odium Caesaris*, hate of Caesar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Caesar, as *odium*, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate (cf. § 213. note). Hence the expression of such ideas often varies; see a and c, below.

a. The objective genitive is sometimes replaced by a possessive or other derivative adjective (see § 197. a. 2): as,—

- mea invidia, my unpopularity (the dislike of which I am the object).
- meus laudator, my eulogist (one who praises me).
- caedes Clodiána (Cic.), the murder of Clodius (the Clodian murder 1).
- metus hostilis (Jug. 41), fear of the enemy (hostile fear).

Note. — These possessives really represent possessive genitives (see note above).

b. Rarely the objective genitive is used with a noun already limited by another genitive: as,—

- animi multarum rërurum percursio (Tusc. iv. 31), the mind’s traversing of many things.

c. A noun with a preposition is often used instead of the objective genitive: as,—

- odiurn in Caesarem, hate of Caesar. [Cf. *odium Caesaris*, note above.]
- merita ergă me (Cic.), services to me.
- auxilium adversus inimicōs (id.), help against enemies.
- impetus in me (id.), attack on me.
- excessus e vita (id.), departure from life. [Also, *excessus vitae*, Cic.]

Note. — So also in late writers the dative of reference (cf. § 226. b): as,—

- longō bellō matéria (Tac. II. i. 89), resources for a long war.

II. Genitive with Adjectives.

218. Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the objective genitive.

1 As we say, “The Nathan murder.”
These are called Relative Adjectives (adjectiva relativa) or Transitive Adjectives, and include the following:

a. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites: as,

ventus laudis, greedy of praise.
fastidiosus litterarum, disdaining letters.
iūris peritus, skilled in law. [So also the ablative, iūre, cf. § 253.]
sui oblitus, forgetful of himself.
ratōnis et orātionis expertes (Off. i. 50), devoid of sense and speech.
rei militaris imperitus, unskilled in military science.
vostri memor, mindful of you.
rationis at orationis expertes (Off. i. 50), devoid of sense and speech.
rei militaris imperitus, unskilled in military science.

b. Verbals in -āx (§ 164. l); also participles in -ns when used as adjectives, i.e. to denote a disposition and not a particular act: as,

iustum et tenācem prōpositī virum (Hor. Od. iii. 3), a man just and steadfast to his purpose.
circus capāx populi (Ov.), a circus big enough to hold the people.
eībī vīnīque capācissimus (Liv.), a very great eater and drinker (very able to contain food and wine).
si quem tūi amantiōren cōgnōvisti (Q. Fr. i. 1), if you have become acquainted with any one more fond of you.
multītūdō insolēns belli (B. C. ii. 36), a crowd unused to war.
sitiēns sanguinem, thirsting for blood (i.e. habitually bloodthirsty).

Note 1.—Participles in -ns, when used as participles, take the case regularly governed by the verb to which they belong: as,

Tiberius sitiēns sanguinem (Tac.), Tiberius [then] thirsting for blood.

Note 2.—Occasionally participial forms in -ns are treated as participles (see note 1) even when they express a disposition or character: as,

virtūs quam aliī ipsam temperantiam dicunt esse, aliī obtemperantem temperantiae praecptis et eam subsequentem (Tuscul. iv. 30), observant of the teachings of temperance and obedient to her.

c. The poets and later writers use the genitive with almost any adjective, to denote that with reference to which the quality exists (Genitive of Specification): as,

callidus rei militāris (Tac. H. ii. 31), skilled in soldiership.
apauper aquare (Hor. Od. iii. 30. 11), scant of water.
nōtus animī paternī (id. ii. 2. 6), famed for a paternal spirit.

fessi rērum (Aēn. i. 178), weary of toil.
integer vitae scelerisque pūręs (Hor.), upright in life, and unstained by
guilt.

NOTE 1.—For the Ablative of Specification, the prose construction, see § 253.
NOTE 2.—The Genitive of Specification is only an extension of the construc-
tion with relative adjectives. Thus callidus denotes knowledge; pauper, want;
pūrūs, innocence; and so these words in a manner belong to the classes under a.

REMARK.—Adjectives of feeling are followed by the apparent genitive animī
(really locative, cf. § 223. c): as,—
aeger animī, sick at heart.
cōfūsus animī, disturbed in spirit.

So by imitation—
sānus mentis et animī (Plaut. Trin. 454), sound in mind and heart.
audāx ingenii (late), bold in disposition.

1. Remembering and Forgetting.

219. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting take the Genitive of the object when they are used of a continued state of mind, but the Accusative when used of a single act: as,—

1. Genitive: —
recordāns superiōris trānsmissiōnis (Att. iv. 19), remembering your former
crossing.
animus meminit praeteritōrum (Div. i. 63), the soul remembers the past.
venit mihi in mentem illūs dieī, I bethink me of that day (it comes into
my mind of that day).
obliviscere caedis atque incendiorum (Cat. i. 6), turn your mind from
slaughter and conflagrations.
nec unquam obliviscar illūs noctis (Plancius 101), and I shall never for-
get that night.

2. Accusative: —
tōtam causam oblitus est (Bru. 217), he forgot the whole case.
pueritiae memoriam recordāri (Arch. 1), to recall the memory of childhood.

a. The Accusative is almost always used of a person or thing re-
membered by an eye-witness: as,—
memineram Paullum (Lal. 9), I remembered Paulus.

b. Recōrdor, recollect, recall, denotes a single act and is therefore
almost always followed by the Accusative: as,—
recordàre consensum illum theatrī (Phil. i. 30), recall that unanimous agreement of the [audience in the] theatre.
recordámini omnis civilis dissënsiônës (Cat. iii. 24), recall all the civil wars.

c. Verbs of reminding take with the accusative of the person a genitive of the thing; except in the case of a neuter pronoun, which is put in the accusative (cf. § 238. b).

Catilina admonēbat alium egéstâtis, alium cupidítâtis suae (Sall. Cat. 21), Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his cupidity.
unum illud monēre tē possum, I can remind you of this one thing.

So admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō, commonefio. But moneō with the genitive is found only in late writers (cf. § 238. b. note).

NOTE.—All these verbs often take de with the ablative, and the accusative of nouns as well as of pronouns is sometimes used with them: as,—

saepius tē admoneō de syngraphā Sittiaēnā (Fam. viii. 4, 5), I remind you again and again of the bond of Sittius.

officium vestrum ut vōs malō cōgātis commonēriōr (Plaut. Ps. 150), to be reminded of your duty.

2. Charge and Penalty.

220. Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the genitive of the charge or penalty: as,—

arguit mé furtī, he accuses me of theft.
pecūlātus damnātus (pecūniae públicae damnātus) (Flac. 43), con-
demned for embezzlement.

videō non tē absolutum esse improbitātis, sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis
(Ver. ii. i. 72), I see, not that you were acquitted of outrage, but that they were condemned for homicide.

a. Peculiar genitivcs, under this construction, are —
capitis, as in damnāre capitis, to sentence to death.
māiestātis [laesae], treason (crime against the dignity of the State).
repetundārūm [rērum], extortion (lit. of an action for claiming back money wrongfully taken).
vōtī, in damnātus or reus vōtī, bound [to the payment] of one’s vow; i.e. successful in one’s effort.
pecūniae (damnāre, iūdicāre, see note under 3, below).
düplī, etc., as in düpli condemnāre, condemn to pay twofold.

b. Other constructions for the charge or penalty are —

i. The ablative of price: regularly of a definite amount of fine, and often of indefinite penalties (cf. § 252. note): as,—

Frusinātēs tertia parte agri damnātī (Liv. x. 1), the people of Frusino con-
demned [to forfeit] a third part of their land.
vitia autem hominum atque fraudes damnis ignominiis vinculis verberibus exsiliis morte damnantur (De O. i. 194), but the vices and crimes of men are punished with fines, dishonor, chains, scourging, exile, death.

2. The ablative with de, or the accusative with inter, in idiomatic expressions: as, —

dē aleā, for gambling.
dē ambitū, for bribery.

inter sicāriōs, as an assassin (among the assassins).
dē vi et māiestātis damnātī (Philip. 1, 21), convicted of assault and treason.

3. The accusative with ad or in to express the penalty (late): as, —

ad mortem (Tac.), to death. ad (in) metalla, to the mines.

NOTE.—The origin of these genitive constructions is pointed at by pecūniāe damnāre (Aul. Gell. xx. r. 38), to condemn to pay money, in a case of injury to the person; quantae pecūniāe iūdicāti essent (id. xx. i. 47), how much money they were adjudged to pay, in a mere suit for debt; cōnfessi aeris ac dēbitī iūdicāti (ibid.), adjudged to owe an admitted sum due. These expressions show that the genitive of the penalty comes from the use of the genitive of value to express a sum of money due either as a debt or as a fine. Since in early civilizations all offences could be compounded by the payment of fines, the genitive came to be used of other punishments, not pecuniary. From this to the genitive of the actual crime is an easy transition, inasmuch as there is always a confusion between crime and penalty (cf. Eng. guilty of death).


221. Many verbs of Feeling take the genitive of the object which excites the feeling. Thus —

a. Verbs of pity, as miserēor and miserēscō, are followed by the genitive: as, —

misericūscite rēgis (Æn. viii. 573), pity the king.

miserēre animī nōn digna feren ties (id. ii. 144), pity a soul that endures unworthy things.

But miseror, commiseror, bewail, take the accusative: as, —

commūnem condicionem miserāri (Murena 55), bewail the common lot.

b. The impersonals miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet (or pertaesum est), take the Genitive of the cause of the feeling and the Accusative of the person affected: as, —

hōs hominēs infāmiāe suae neque pudet neque taedet (Verr. i. 35), these men are neither ashamed nor weary of their dishonor. [Cf. it repenteth him of the evil.]

mē quidem miseret parietum ipsōrum (Phil. ii. 69), for my part I pity the very walls.

mē civitātis mōrum piget taedetque (Sall. Jug. 4), I am sick and disgusted with the ways of the state.

decemvīrōrum vōs pertaesum est (Liv. iii. 67), you became tired of the decemvirs.
c. An infinitive, a clause, or the accusative (possibly nominative) of a neuter pronoun may be used with these impersonal verbs (except *miseret*) instead of the genitive of a noun: as,—

mē paenitet haec fēcisse, *I repent of having done this.*
nihil quod paenitēre possit (Cic.), *nothing that may cause repentance.*

d. *Miseret,* etc., are sometimes used personally with a neuter pronoun as subject: as,—
nōnne tē haec pudent (Ter. Ad.), *do not these things shame you?*

### 4. Interest and Rēfert.

**222.** The impersonals *interest* and *rēfert* take the genitive of the person (rarely of the thing) affected: as,—

Clōdi intererat Milōnem perire (Mil. 56), *it was the interest of Clodius that Milo should die.*

faciendum esse aliquid quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse viderētur (Jug. 111), *that something must be done which seemed to be more for their interest than his own.*

video enim quid mēa intersit, quid utrīusque nostrūm (Fam.vii. 23), *for I see what is for my good and for the good of us both.*

The subject of the verb is a neuter pronoun or a substantive clause.

a. Instead of the Genitive of a Personal Pronoun the corresponding Possessive is used in the ablative singular feminine after *interest* or *rēfert*: as,—

quid tua id rēfert? māgni (Ter. Ph. 723), *how does that concern you? much.* [See also the last two examples above.]

evhementer intererat vestrā quī patrēs estis (Plin. Ep. iv. 13), *it would be very much to your advantage, you who are fathers.*

b. The accusative with *ad* is used with *interest* and *rēfert* to express the thing with reference to which one is interested: as,—

māgni ad honōrem nostrum interest (Fam. xvi. 1), *it is of great consequence to our honor.*

rēfert etiam ad frūctūs (Varr. R. R. i. 16, 6) *it makes a difference as to the crop.*

**Note.**—Very rarely the Person is expressed by *ad* and the Accusative, or (with *rēfert*) by the Dative (probably a popular corruption): as,—

quid id ad mē aut ad meam rem rēfert (Plautus, Persa 513), *what difference does that make to me or to my interests?*

quid rēferat intrā nātūrae finēs vīventī (Hor. Sat. i. 1, 49), *what difference does it make to me who live within the limits of natural desire?*

So, nil rēferre dēdēcorī (Tac. Ann. xv. 65), *that it makes no difference as to the disgrace.*
5. Verbs of Plenty and Want.

223. Some verbs of Plenty and Want govern the genitive: as, —

quid est quod défensiónis indiget? (Rosc. Am. 34), what is there that needs defence?
satagit rērum suārum, he has his hands full with his own affairs.

NOTE.—But verbs of plenty and want more commonly take the ablative (see §§ 243. a, 248. c.), except egeō, indigeō, satagō.

6. Other Verbs.

a. The genitive sometimes follows potior, get possession of; as always in the phrase potiūrī rērum, to be master of affairs. Thus,—

illius rēgni potiūrī (Fam. i. 7, 5), to become master of that kingdom.
Cleanthēs sōlem domināri et rērum potiūrī putat (Acad. ii. 126), Cleanthēs thinks the sun holds sway and is lord of the universe.

But potior usually takes the ablative (see § 249).

b. Some other verbs rarely take the Genitive: —

1. By analogy with those mentioned in § 221: as, —

neque hūius sis veritus fēminae primāriae (Ter. Ph. 971), and you had no respect for this highborn lady.

2. As akin to adjectives which take the genitive: as, —

fastidit meī (Plaut. Aul. 245), he disdains me. [Cf. fastidiosus.]
studet tuī (quoted N. D. iii. 72), he is zealous for you. [Cf. studiosus.]

3. In imitation of the Greek: as, —

iūstitiāene prius mīrer, bellīne labōrum (Æn. xi. 126), shall I rather admire [his] justice or his toils in war?
neque ille sépositi eīceris nec longae invidit avenae (Hor. Sat. ii. 6. 84),
nor does he grudge his garnered peas, etc. [But cf. invidus, parcus.]
abstinētō īrārum (Hor. Od. iii. 27. 69), refrain from wrath (but cf. §§ 223, 243. f. Rem.).
labōrum dēcipitur (Hor. Od. ii. 13. 38), he is beguiled of his woes.
nec sermōnis fallēbar (Plaut. Ep. 239), nor did I miss the conversation.
mē labōrum levās (Plaut. Rud. 247), you relieve me of my troubles.

ca. The apparent Genitive animī (really Locative) is used with a few verbs of feeling and the like (cf. § 218. c. Rem.): as, —

Antiphō mē exerueiat animī (Ter. Ph. 187), Antipho tortures my mind (me in my mind).

animī pendēō (Pl. Merc. 127), I am in suspense.
mē animī fallit (Lucr. i. 922), my mind deceives me.
So, by analogy, désipiebam mentis (Pl. Epid. 138), I was out of my head.
IV. Peculiar Genitives.

A genitive occurs rarely in Exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (Genitive of Exclamation): as,—

di immortāles, mercimōnī lepīdī (Plaut. Most. 912), good heavens! what a charming bargain.

foederis heu tacitū (Prop. iv. 7. 21), alas for the unspoken agreement.

e. The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā,1 grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable instar, like; also with prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as: as,—

honōris causā, with due respect (for the sake of honor).

verbī grātiā, for example.

çıus lēgīs ergō, on account of this law.

equus instar montis (AEn. ii. 15), a horse like (the image of) a mountain.

laterum tenus (AEn. x. 210), as far as the sides.

Note 1.—Of these the genitive with causā is like that in nōmen ĵnsāniae (§ 214. f). The others are of various origin.

Note 2.—In prose of the Republican period prīdiē and postrīdiē are thus used only in the expressions prīdiē (postrīdiē) ěius diēī, the day before (after) that (cf. the eve, the morrow of that day). Tacitus uses the construction with other words: as, postrīdiē ĵnsideīārum, the day after the plot. For the accusative, see § 261. a. Tenus takes also the ablative (§ 260. e).

II.—DATIVE.

The Dative seems to be closely akin to the Locative (cf. oikō, at home, with oikē, to a house), and must have had the primary meaning of to or towards. But this local meaning appears in Latin only in the poets (§ 225. b. 3) and in some adverbial forms (as ēō, īlō, thither, cf. § 148. note, γ).

In Latin the Dative has two classes of derived meanings:—

1. The Dative denotes an object not as caused by the action, or directly affected by it (like the Accusative), but as reciprocally sharing in the action or receiving it consciously or actively. Thus in dedit puerō librum, he gave the boy a book, or fēcit mihi ĵnūrīam, he did me a wrong, there is an idea of the boy receiving the book, and of my feeling the wrong. Hence expressions denoting persons or things with personal attributes are more likely to be in the dative than those denoting mere things.2 See examples under § 224.

This difference between the Accusative and the Dative (i.e. between the Direct and the Indirect Object) depends upon the point of view implied in the verb or existing in the mind of the writer. Hence verbs of similar meaning (to an English mind) often differ in the case of their object (see § 227. a and 8).

2. The Dative is used to express the purpose of an action or that for which it serves (see § 233). This construction is especially used with abstract expressions, or those implying an action.

1 Compare the English for his sake, on my account.

2 So in Spanish the dative is used whenever a person is the object of an action; yo veo al hombre, I see [to] the man.
These two classes of Datives approach each other in some cases and are occasionally confounded, as in § 234 (cf. especially § 234. b).

The uses of the Dative, arranged practically, are the following: —

1. As INDIRECT OBJECT

   (general use):
   1. With Transitives (§ 225).
      1. Of Possession (with esse) (§ 231).
      1. Of Agency (with Gerundive) (§ 232).
   3. Of Purpose or End (predicate use) (§ 233).
   4. Of Fitness, etc. (with Adjectives) (§ 234).
   5. Of Reference (dativus commodi) (§§ 235, 236).

224. The Dative is used of the object indirectly affected by an action.

   These are the object denoted in English by the Objective with to or for. Thus, —

   dati librum puero, he gives a book to the boy.
   cedite tempori, yield to the occasion.
   provincia Ciceroni obtigit, the province fell by lot to Cicero.
   inimicis non credimus, we do not trust [to] our enemies.
   civitatis saluti consulite, consult for the safety of the State.
   sic mihi videtur, so it seems to me.
   indicavit mihi Pansa, Pansa has made known to me.
   hoc tibi spondeo, I promise [to] you this.

1. Indirect Object with Transitives.

225. The Dative of the Indirect Object with the Accusative of the Direct may be used with any transitive verb whose meaning allows (see § 177): as, —

   dō tibi librum, I give you a book.
   illud tibi affirmō (Fam. i. 7), this I assure you.
   commendō tibi ēius omnia negotia (Fam. i. 3), I put all his affairs in your hands.
   dabis profectō misericordiae quod iracundiae negavisti (Dei. 40), you will surely grant to mercy what you refused to wrath.
   litterās ā tē mihi stator tuus reddidit (Fam. ii. 17), delivered to me a letter.

   a. Many verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use (§ 177. note). These take either the Accusative with the Dative, or the Dative alone: as, —

   hanc pecūniam tibi creōdo, I trust this money to you. [Transitive.]
   in hāc rē tibi creōdo, I trust you in this. [Intransitive.]

   b. Certain verbs implying motion vary in their construction between the Dative of the Indirect Object and the Accusative of the End of Motion (§ 258. b). Thus—
1. Some verbs take the Accusative (with or without a preposition) instead of the Indirect Object, when the idea of Motion prevails (§ 258): as, —

litteras quās ad Pompēium scripsi (Att. iii. 8), the letter which I have written [and sent] to Pompey. [Cf. nōn quō habērem quod tibi scriberem (Att. iv. 4), not that I had anything to write to you.]
litterae exemplō Rōmam scriptae (Liv. xli. 16), a letter was immediately written [and sent] to Rome.
hostēs in fugam dat (B. G. v. 51), he puts the enemy to flight. [Cf. ut mē dem fugae (Att. vii. 23), to take to flight.]
cūr saepius ad mē litterās dedissēs (Fam. iv. 4), why you had several times written letters [addressed] to me.
nūllās eis praeterquam ad tā et ad Brūtum dedit litteras (id. iii. 7), I have given to them (the messengers) no letters except (addressed) to you, etc.
 omnēs rem ad Pompēium deferri volunt (id. i. 1), all wish the matter to be put in the hands of Pompey.
an iterum sē reddat in arma (Æn. x. 684), or should throw himself again into the fight (only poetic).

2. On the other hand, many verbs usually followed by the Accusative with ad or in, take the Dative when the idea of motion is merged in some other idea: as, —
nec quicquam quod nōn mihi Caesar dētulerit (Fam. iv. 13), and nothing which Caesar did not communicate to me.
mihi litterās mittere (Fam. vii. 12), to send me a letter.
eum librum tibi mīśī (id. vii. 19), I sent you that book.
Caṭōnem tuum mihi mīte (id. vii. 24), send me your Cato.
cūrēs ut mihi vehantur (id. viii. 4, 5), take care that they be conveyed to me.
cum alius alīī subsidium ferrent (B. G. ii. 26), while one lent aid to another.
quibus (cōpiēs rēx Deiotarōs) imperātōriōbus nostrīs auxiliā mitteret (Deiot. 22), with which (troops) king D. might send reinforcements to our generals.

3. In poetry the End of Motion is often expressed by the dative (see § 258. note 1).

C. For the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing after verbs of threatening and the like, see § 227. f.

D. Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: as, —
dōnat corōnās suīs, he presents wreaths to his men; or, dōnat suōs corōnīs, he presents his men with wreaths.
vincula exuere sībi (Ov. M. vii. 772), to shake off the leash (from himself). omnēs armīs exuīt (B. G. v. 51), he stripped them all of their arms.
āram sanguine adspersērī (N. D. iii. 88), to sprinkle the altar with blood.
ārae sanguinem adspersērī, to sprinkle blood upon the altar.
Such are donō, impertiō, induō, exuō, adspergō, īnspergō, circumdō, circumfundō, prohibeō, interclūdō, and in poetry accingō, īmpicō, and similar verbs.

NOTE 1.—Interdīcō, forbid, takes either (1) the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or (2) the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing: as,—

interdīxit histriōnibus scaenam (Suet. Dom. 7), he forbade the actors [to appear on] the stage (he prohibited the stage to the actors). [Cf. interdictum est mare Antiāti popūlō (Liv. viii. 14), the sea was forbidden to the people of Antiātium.]

fēminis (dat.) purpurae īsū interdīcēmus (Liv. xxxiv. 7), shall we forbid women the wearing of purple?
aquā et īgnī alicui interdicere, to forbid the use of fire and water.

NOTE 2.—The Dative with the Accusative is used in poetry with many verbs of preventing, protecting, and the like, which usually take the Accusative and Ablative. Interclūdō and arceō sometimes take the Dative and Accusative, even in prose: as,—

hīscē omnis āditus ad Sullam interclūdere (Rosc. Amer. 110), to shut these men off from all access to Sulla (close to them every approach). [Cf. uti frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet (B. G. i. 48), to shut Caesar off from grain and supplies.]

hunc (oestrum) arcēbis pecorī (Georg. iii. 154), you shall keep this away from the flock. [Cf. illum arcēvit Galliā (Phil. v. 37), he excluded him from Gaul.]

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite (Ecl. vii. 47), keep the summer heat from the flock.

e. Verbs which in the active voice take the accusative and dative retain the dative when used in the passive: as,—

haec nōbīs nūntiantur, these things are told us. [Active: haec [quīdam] nōbīs nūntiāt.]
Crassō divitiāe nōn invidentur, Crassus is not envied for his wealth. [Active: Crassō divitiās nōn invidet.]
decem talenta oppidānīs imperantur, ten talents are exacted of the townspeople. [Active: imperat oppidānīs decem talenta.]

2. Indirect Object with Intransitives.

226. The Dative of the Indirect Object may be used with any Intransitive verb whose meaning allows: as,—

cēdant arma togae (Phil. ii. 20), let arms give place to the gown.

Caesarī respondet, he replies to Caesar.
Caesarī respondētur, Caesar is replied to (see § 230).

credimus nūntiō, we believe the messenger.
nūntiō creditur, the messenger is believed.
respondi maximis criminibus (Phil. ii. 36), I have answered the heaviest charges.

ut ita cuique eveniat (id. 119), that it may so turn out to each.

**Note 1.**—Intransitive verbs have no Direct Object. The Indirect Object, therefore, in these cases stands alone (but cf. § 225. a).

**Note 2.**—Cēdō, yield, sometimes takes the Ablative of the thing along with the Dative of the person: as,—

cēdere alicui possessione hortōrum (Milon. 75), to give up to one the possession of a garden.

*a. Many phrases consisting of a noun with the copula sum or a copulative verb are equivalent to an intransitive verb and take a kind of indirect object (cf. § 235): as, —

auctor esse alicui, to advise or instigate one (cf. persuādeō).

 quis huic reī testis est (Quinc. 37), who testifies (is witness) to this fact?

is finis populātiōnibus fuit (Liv. ii. 30), this put an end to the raids.

b. The dative is sometimes used without a copulative verb in a sense approaching that of the genitive (cf. §§ 227. d, 235. a): as, —

lēgātus Caesarī, a lieutenant to Cesar (i.e. a man assigned to Cesar).

hērēs frātrī suō, his brother's heir (heir to his brother).

ministri sceleribus, agents of crime.

**Note.**—The cases in *a* and *b* differ from the constructions of § 227. note 2, and § 235 in that the dative is more closely connected in idea with some single word to which it serves as an indirect object.

### 3. Dative with Special Verbs.

Many verbs of apparently transitive meaning in English correspond to verbs intransitive in Latin. Thus: —

**227.** Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare,1 take the dative: as.—

cūr mihi invidēs, why do you envy me?

mihi parcit atque ignōscit, he spares and pardons me.

ignōscē patriō dolorī (Liv. iii. 48), excuse a father's grief.

sontibus opītulāri poterat (Fam. iv. 13), I was able to help the guilty.
	nōn omnibus servīō (Att. xiii. 49), I am not a servant to every man.

cum cēterīs tum mihi ipsī displicēō (Fam. iv. 13), I dissatisfy other people and myself too.

---

1 These include, among others, the following: adversor, crēdō, faveō, fidō, ignōscō, imperō, invadeō, Irāscor, sūscēnseō, resistō, noceō, parco, pāreō, placeō, servīō, studeō, suādeō (persuādeō), temperō, (obtemperō), dictō audīēns sum.
Dative with Special Verbs.

§ 227. nôn parcam operaē (id. xiii. 27), I will spare no pains.

sic mihi persuāsi (Cat. M. 78), so I have persuaded myself.

mihi Fabius ignoscere débèbit si minus ēius fāmae parcre vidēbor quam ante cōnsului (Tull. 3), Fabius will have to pardon me if I seem to spare his reputation less than, etc.

huic legiōnī Caesar cōnfidēbat máximē (B. G. i. 40), in this legion Caesar trusted most.

Note 1.—In these verbs the Latin retains an original intransitive meaning. Thus: invidēre, to envy, was originally to look askance at one; servīre is to be a slave to; suādēre is to make a thing pleasant (sweet) to one.

Note 2.—Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are—

praestō esse, be on hand (cf. adesse).
mōrem gerere, humor (cf. mōrigerāri).
grātum facere, do a favor (cf. grātificāri).
dictō audiēns esse, be obedient (cf. oboedīre).
cui fidēm habēbat (B.C. i. 19), in whom he had confidence (cf. cōn fidēbat).

So also many phrases where no corresponding verb exists. Such are—
bene (male, pulchrē, aegrē, etc.) esse, to be well (ill, etc.) off.
inīriām facere, do injustice to.
diem dicere, bring to trial (name a day for, etc.).
agere grātiās, to express one’s thanks.
habēre grātiām, to feel thankful.
re ferre grātiām, to repay a favor.
opus esse, be necessary.
damnum dare, inflict an injury.
acceptum (expēnum) ferre (esse), to credit (charge).
honōrem habēre, to pay honor to.

a. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative. Such are iuvō, adiuvō, help; laedō, injure; iubeō, order; dē ficiō, fail; dē lectō, please. Thus,—

hic pulvis oculum meum la edit, this dust hurts my eye. [Cf. multa oculīs nocent, many things are injurious to the eyes.]

b. Some verbs are used transitively with the Accusative or intransitively with the Dative without perceptible difference of meaning.

Such are adūlor (generally accusative), aemulor (rarely dative), comitor, dēspērō, praestōlor, medeor, medicor. Thus,—

adūlātus est Antōniō (Nep. Att. 8), he flattered Antony.
adūlāri Nerōnem (Tac. Ann. xvi. 19), to flatter Nero.

c. Some verbs are used transitively with the Accusative or in transitively with the Dative with a difference of meaning.¹

¹ See Lexicon under convenīō, cupiō, insistō, maneō, praevertō, recipiō, renūntiō, solvō, succēdō, caveō.
parti civium cōnsulunt (Off. i. 85), they consult for a part of the citizens.
cum tē cōnsuluissem (Fam. xi. 29), when I had consulted you.
metuēns pueris (Plaut. Am. II13), anxious for the children.
nec metuunt deōs (Ter. Hec. 772), they fear not even the gods. [So also
timeō.]

prospicere patriae (Cat. iv. 3), have regard for the State.
prospicere sēdēm senectūtī (Liv. iv.49), to provide a habitation for old age.

[So also prōvideō.]

NOTE.—Fidō and cōnfidō, trust, take either the Dative or the Ablative: as, —
legiōnis decimae qui quam māxīmē cōnfidēbat (B. G. i. 42), of the tenth
legion, in which he had the utmost confidence.
multum nāturā locī cōnfidēbant (B. G. i. 9), they had great confidence in
the strength of their position (the nature of the place).

d. Some verbal nouns—as insidiae, ambush; invidia, envy—
take the dative like the verbs from which they are derived: as, —
invidia consulī (Sall.), ill-will against the consul (cf. invideo).
obtemperātō legibus (Leg. i. 42), obedience to the laws (cf. obtemperō).
sibi ipsī respōnsiō (De Or. iii. 54), an answer to himself (cf. respondēo).

NOTE.—In these cases the dative depends immediately upon the verbal force
of the noun and not on any complex idea (cf. § 226, a and b).

e. The Dative is also used: —

1. With the impersonals libet (lubet), it pleases; licet, it is
allowed: as, —

quod mihi māxīmē lubet (Fam. i. 8, 3), what most pleases me.
quasi tibi nōn licēret (Fam. vi. 8), as if you were not permitted.

2. With verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male: as, —

mihi ipse numquam satisfaciō (Fam. i. 1), I never satisfy myself.
optimō virō maledicere (Deiot. 28), to speak ill of a most excellent man.
pulchrum est benefacere reiāpublicae (Sall. Cat. 3), it is a glorious thing to
benefit the State.

NOTE.—These are not real compounds, but phrases, and were apparently felt
as such by the Romans. Thus: —
satis officiō meō, satis illōrum voluntātī qui ā meō hoc petivērunt factum
esse arbitrābor (Verres v. 130), that enough has been done for, etc.

3. With the following: gratificor, gratulor, haerēō (rarely), nūbō,
permittō, plaudō, probō, studeō, supplicō, excellō: as, —

haerentem capītī corōnam (Hor. S. i. 10), a wreath clinging to the head.
Pompeō sē gratificāri putant (Fam. i. 1), they suppose they are doing
Pompey a service.
tibi permittō respondēre (N. D. iii. 4), I give you leave to answer.
gratulor tibī, mi Balbe (Fam. vi. 12), I congratulate you, my dear Balbus.
mihi plaudō ipse domī (Hor. S. i. 1. 66), I applaud myself at home.
cur tibi hoc non gratificer nescio (Fam. i. 10), why I should not gratify you in this I don't know.
cum inimici M. Fontei vobis ac populō Rōmānō minentur, amici ac pro-
pinqui supplicent vobis (Fonteius 35), while the enemies of M. Font-
etius are threatening you and the Roman people too, while his friends and relatives are beseeching you.
ut voluerint populō supplicare (Leg. Agr. ii. 18), when they wished to
make supplication to the people.

NOTE.—Miscēō and lungō sometimes take the dative (see § 248. a. Rem.).
Haereō usually takes the ablative, with or without in.

f. Many verbs ordinarily intransitive often have an Accusative of the
direct object along with the Dative of the indirect (cf. § 225. a): as,—
cui cum rēx crucem mīnitāretur (Tus. i. 102), when the king threatened
him with the cross.
imperat oppidānīs decem tālenta, he exacts of the townspeople ten talents.
omnia sibi ignōscre (Vell. ii. 30), to pardon one's self everything.
Crassō divitiās nōn invideō, I do not envy Crassus his wealth.

4. Dative with Compounds.

228. Most verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in,
inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and some with circum,
are followed by the dative of the indirect object: as,—

neque enim adsentior eīs (Lael. 13), for I do not agree with them.
tempestātī obsequī arīs est (Fam. i. 9), it is a point of skill to yield to the
weather.
omnibus nōgōtiīs nōn interfuit sōlum sed praeuit (id. i. 6), he not only had
a hand in all matters, but took the lead in them.
quantum nātūrā homīnis pecūdībus antecedēit (Of. i. 105), so far as man's
nature is superior to brutes.
nec unquam succumbet inimīcis (Dei. 36), he will never yield to his foes.
illīs libellīs nōmen suum inscribunt (Arch. 26), they put their own name
to those papers.
cur mīhi tē offers, āc meis commodīs officis et obstās (Rosc. A. 112), why
do you offer yourself to me, and then hinder and withstand my ad-
vantage?

NOTE 1.—In these cases the dative depends not on the preposition, but on
the compound verb in its acquired meaning. Hence if the acquired meaning
is not suited to an indirect object, the original construction of the simple
verb remains or some different construction arises. Thus in convocat suōs,
he calls his men together, the idea of calling is not so modified as to make an indi-
rect object appropriate. So hominem interfācerē, to make way with a man
(kill him). But in praefercere imperātōrem bellō, to put a man as commander-
in-chief in charge of a war, the idea resulting from the composition is suited to an
indirect object (see also a and c, and § 237. d).
NOTE 2.—Some of these verbs being originally transitive take also a direct object: as, né offerāmus nōs periculis (Off. i. 83), that we may not expose ourselves to perils.

NOTE 3.—The construction of § 228 is not different in its nature from that of §§ 225 and 226; but the compound verbs make a convenient group.

a. Some compounds of ad, ante, ob, with a few others, have acquired a transitive meaning, and take the accusative (cf. § 237. d):1 as,—

nōs oppūgnat (Fam. i. 1), he opposes us.

quis audeat bene comitātum aggredi (Phil. xii. 25), who would dare encounter a man well attended?

mūnus obīre (Lael. 7), to attend to a duty.

b. The adjective obvius and the adverb obviam with a verb take the dative: as,—

sī ille obvius ei futūrus nōn erat (Mil. 47), if he was not intending to get in his way.

mihi obviam vēnītī (Fam. ii. 16), you came to meet me.

c. When place or motion is distinctly thought of, the verbs mentioned in § 228 regularly take a noun with a preposition, instead of the dative: as, in visceribus inhaerēre (Tuscul. iv. 24), it remains fixed in the vitals.

hominī coniunctō mēcum (Tullius 4), to a man united to me.

convenit mihi cum adversāriō (Tullius 23), my adversary and I agree (it agrees to me with my adversary).

cum hōc concurrit ipse Eumenēs (Nep. Eum. 4, 1), with him Eumenes himself engages in combat (runs together).

quae ā cēterārum gentium mōre dissentiant (Fonteius 39), which differ from the custom of all other nations.

insertē oculōs in cūriam (Fonteius 43), fix your eyes on the senate-house.

ignis quī est ob ős offūsus (Univ. 49), the fire which is diffused before the sight.

obicitur contra īstōrum impetus Macedonia (Fonteius 44), Macedonia is set to withstand their attacks. [Cf. si quis vōbis error objectus (Caec. 5), if any mistake has been caused you. sē injectūrōs vōbis causam deliberandī (Caecina 4), that they would give you occasion for considering:]

in segetem flamma incidit (Æn. ii. 304), the fire falls upon the standing corn.

NOTE.—But the usage varies in different authors, in different words, and often in the same word in the same sense. The dictionary must be consulted for each verb.

229. Many verbs of taking away2 and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 243):3 as,—

1 Such verbs are aggredior, adeō, antecēdō, anteeō, antegredior, conveniō, ineō, obeō, offendō, oppūgnō, subeō, praecēdō.

2 The dative in these constructions represents the action as done to the object, and is thus more vivid than the ablative.

3 Such verbs are compounds of ab, dē, ex, and a few of ad.
§§ 229-31. Dative with Compounds.

mulierē ānulum dētrāxit, he took a ring from the woman.
bona mihi abstulistī, you have robbed me of my gains.
vitam adulēscēntibus vis aufert (C. M. 71), violence deprives young men of life.
nihil enim tībi dētrāxit senectūs (Fam. i. 5, b), for age has robbed you, etc.
nec mihi hunc errōrem extorquērī volō (C. M. 85), nor do I wish this error wrested from me.

a. The distinct idea of motion,—and, in general, names of things,—require the ablative with a preposition (§ 258. a): as, —

illum ex periculō ēripuit (B. G. iv. 12), he dragged him out of danger.

b. Sometimes the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing with a preposition are both used with the same verb: as, —

victōriam ēripī sībi ē manibus, that victory should be wrested from his hands (cf. § 243. b).

c. The dative is often used by the poets in constructions which would in prose require a noun with a preposition. So especially with verbs of contending (§ 248. b): as, —

contendis Homērō (Prop. i. 7, 3), you vie with Homer. [In prose: cum Homērō.]
placitōne etiam pūgnābis amōrī (Æn. iv. 38), will you struggle even against a love that pleases you?
tībi certat (Ecl. v. 8), vies with you. [tēcum.]
differt sermōnī (Hor. S. i. 4. 48), differs from prose. [ā sermōne, § 243.]
sōlstitium pecori dēfendite (Ecl. vii. 47), keep the noontide heat from the flock. [ā pecore.]
laterī abdidit ēnsem (Æn. vii. 553), buried the sword in his side. [in latere, § 260. a.]

[For the Dative instead of ad with the Accusative, see § 225. b. 3.]

230. The passive of intransitive verbs that govern the dative can be used only impersonally (§ 146. d). Such verbs retain the dative in this use (cf. § 225. e).

cui parcī potuit (Liv. xxiii. 12), who could be spared?
nōn modo nōn invidētur illī aetātī vērum etiam favētur (Off. ii. 45), that age (youth) is not only not envied, but is even favored.
temporī serviendum est (Fam. ix. 7), we must serve the exigency of the occasion (the time).

5. Dative of Possession.

231. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession: as, —
nominī cum deō similitūdō est (Cic.), man has a likeness to God (there is
to man, etc.).
quibus opēs nūllae sunt (Sall. Cat. 37), [those] who have no wealth.
est mihi domī pater (Ecl. iii. 33), I have a father at home.

Remark. — The Genitive or a Possessive with esse emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as, liber est meus, the book is mine (and no one's else); est mihi liber, I have a book (among other things). The latter is the usual form to denote simple possession, since habēō, have, generally signifies hold, often with some secondary meaning: as,—

legiōnem quam sēcum habēbat (B. G. i. 8), the legion which he kept with
him.
domiūs habēre libidinēs (De Or.), to keep the passions under control.

a. Compounds of esse take the dative (except abesse and posse):
as,—
deest mihi pecūnia, I lack money.
quid mihi proderit? in what will it help me (what will it profit me)?
b. After nōmen est, and similar expressions, the name is usually put in the dative by a kind of apposition with the person: as,—
cui Africānō fuit cōgnōmen (Liv. xxv. 2), whose (to whom) surname was
Africanus.
puerō ab inopia Egeriō inditum nōmen (Liv. i. 34), the name Egerius was
given the boy from his poverty.
c. The name may also be in apposition with nōmen; or in later
Latin in the genitive (cf. § 214. f): as,—
cui nōmen Arethūsa (Ver. iv. 118), [a fount] called Arethusa (to which is
the name Arethusa).
puerō nōmen est Marcus (Mārci), the boy's name is Marcus (to the
boy, etc.).
Q. Metellō Macedonīcī nōmen inditum est (Vel. Pat. i. 11), to Q. Metellus
the name of Macedonicus was given.

6. Dative of the Agent.

232. The Dative of the Agent is used with the gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests: as,—

haec vōbīs prōvinciā est dēfendenda (Man. 14), this province is for you to
defend (to be defended by you).
mihi est pugnandum, I have to fight (i.e. the need of fighting is to me;
compare mihi est liber, I have a book, § 231. Rem.).

Note. — This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or
Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 113, d. 1). But when a dative is expressed
governed by the verb itself, and rarely at other times, the agent is denoted by the
Ablative with ab (§ 246) to avoid ambiguity; as,—
quibus est a vobis consulendum (Leg. Man. 6), for whom you must consult (for whom it must be consulted by you).
rem ab omnibus vobis prōvidendam (Rabir. 4), that the matter must be attended to by all of you.
(Cf. isti principēs et sibi et cēteris populi Rōmānī unīversī auctōritātī pārendum esse fateantur (Leg. Man. 64), let these leading men admit that both by them and by everybody else the authority of the Roman people as a whole must be obeyed. [Here there was no danger of ambiguity.]
a. The dative of the agent is common after perfect participles (especially when used in an adjective sense), but rare after other parts of the verb: as, —
mihi dēliberātum et cōnstitutum est (Leg. Ag. i. 25), I have deliberated and resolved (it has been deliberated by me).
mīhi rēs tōta prōvīsa est (Verres iv. 91), the matter has been fully provided for by me.
sic dissimillimus bestolis communiter cibus quae rītur (N. D. ii. 123), so by very different creatures food is sought in common.
b. The dative of the agent is used by the poets and later writers after almost any passive verb: as, —
neque cernitur ūllī (Æn. i. 440), nor is seen by any.
fēlix est dicta sorōrī (Ov. Fast. iii.), she was called happy by her sister.
c. The dative of the person who sees or thinks is regularly used after videor, seem: as, —
vidētur mīhi, it seems (or seems good) to me.
dis alīter visum est (Æn. ii. 428), it seemed otherwise to the gods.
videor mīhi perspicere ipsīus animum (Fam. iv. 13), I seem (to myself) to see the soul of the man himself.

Note. — The verb probāre, approve (originally a mercantile word), takes a Dative of Reference (§ 235), which has become so firmly attached that it is retained with the passive, seemingly as Dative of Agent: as, —
haec sententia et illī et nōbīs probābātur (Fam. i. 7, 5), this view met both his approval and mine (was made acceptable both to him and to me).
mīhi ēgregiē probāta est ōrātiō tua (Tuscul. iv. 8), your discourse was very satisfactory to me.

7. Dative of the Purpose or End.

233. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End.

This construction, once apparently general in its use, remains in only a few constructions. Thus —
a. The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes (Dative of Service), often with another dative of the person or thing affected: 1 as, —

rei públicae cládií sunt (Jug. 85), they are ruin to the State (for a disaster). mágno úsui nostris fuit (B. G. iv. 25), it was of great service to our men (for great use).

tertiam actem nostris subsidíó misit (id. i. 52), he sent the third line as a relief to our men.

omnia deerant quae ad resciendás náves erant úsui (id. iv. 29), all things were wanting which were of use for repairing the ships.

evénit facile quod dis cordí esset (Liv. i. 39), that came to pass easily which was desired by the gods (was for a pleasure [lit. heart] to the gods).

**NOTE.** — The word frugi used as an adjective is a dative of this kind: as,—

cógis mé dicere inimicum frugi (Cic.), you compel me to call my enemy honest.

hominès satis forteś et plāné frugi (Verr. iii. 67), men brave enough and thoroughly honest.

(Cf. erō frugi bonae (Plaut. Pseud. 468), I will be good for something.)

b. The Dative of Purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions, and with freedom in poetry; as,—

receptarú canere, to sound a retreat.

locum castris capere, to select a site for a camp.

optāvit locum regni (Æn. iii. 109), he chose a place for a kingdom.

**NOTE.** — The construction of purpose or end is found in the dative of the Gerundive (§ 299. 6) and after Adjectives (§ 234).

8. Dative with Adjectives.

234. The dative is used after adjectives or adverbs, to denote that to which the given quality is directed, for which it exists, or towards which it tends.

---

1 The following characteristics have been observed in the use of the Predicate Dative (dative of Service): 1. the noun is semi-abstract; 2. it is so used only in the singular; 3. it is "used predicatively"; 4. generally with esse; 5. rarely qualified by an adjective; 6. or by a genitive or a phrase; 7. but few nouns are used in this way; 8. the use and its limitations appear to be governed by custom, not by any principle. It is common with about 40 nouns, and is found with 185 in all. Of these dōnō, mūnerī, vitiō, are not used with esse. The verbs with which it exists are habēō, dō, dīcō, dūcō, pōnō, vertō, with esse and its equivalents, as fieri, etc. The nouns most commonly found in this construction are, adīmentō, auxiliō, cordī, crīmini, cūrae, damnō, decorī, dēdecorī, dōnō, exemplō, exitīō, fraudī (damage), honōrī, indicīō, invidiae, impedimentō, laudī, lūdibrō, malō, morae, odīō, onerī, ōrnamentō, praedae, prae- sidiō, probrō, pudōri, receptul, remedīō, salūtī, subsidīō, terrōri, vitiō, voluptāti, úsui. — Roby's Latin Grammar, ii. xxxvii. seq.
§ 234. **Dative with Adjectives.**

*a.* The dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination,* and their opposites: as, —

 nihil est tam nātūræ aptum (Læl. 17), *nothing is so fitted to nature.*
 nihil difficile amantī putō (Or. 33), *I think nothing hard to a lover.*
 pompae quam pūgnae aptius (id. 42), *fitter for a procession than for battle.*

**rēbus** ipsis pār et aequālis ōrātiō (id. 123), *a speech equal and level with the subject.*

 castrīs idōneum locum dēligīt (B. G. i. 49), *a suitable place for a camp.*
 tribūnī nōbīs sunt amīcī (Q. Fr. i. 2), *the tribunes are friendly to us.*
 cupidīs rērum tālium odiōsum fortasse et molestum est carēre (Cat. Major 47), *to those who are desirous of such things, it is perhaps hateful and disagreeable to do without them.*

 nec eum ... aut invisum deō aut neglēctum ā deō iūdicēmus (Nat. D. ii. 167), *and let us not deem him either hateful to God or disregarded by God.*

 esse propitius potest nēminī (Nat. D. i. 124), *he can be gracious to nobody.*
 est hominum generī prosperus et salūtāris ille fulgor (Repub. vi. 17), *that radiance is favorable and beneficial to the race of men.*
 cētera rēs quae expetuntur opportūnae sunt singulae rēbus singulis (Læl. 22), *all other things that are sought after are suitable each to some particular thing.*

 māgnīs autem virīs prosperae semper omnēs rēs (Nat. D. ii. 167), *but to great men everything is always favorable.*

 sēdēs huic nostrō nōn importūna sermōnī (De Orat. iii. 18), *a place not unsuitable for this conversation of ours.*

 adversissimī nāvīgantībus ventī (B. C. iii. 107), *winds most adverse for those who sail.*

 sed nōn quicquid tībi audīre ūtile est, id mihi dicere necesse est (Offic. iii. 52), *but not everything that is useful for you to hear is necessary for me to say.*

 cui fundō erat affīnis M. Tullius (Tullius 14), *to which estate M. Tullius was next neighbor.*

 conveniēnter nātūræ vivere (Offic. iii. 13), *to live in accordance with nature.* (ὁμολογομένως τὸ φύσει).

 congruenter nātūræ (Finib. iii. 26), *in harmony with nature.*

**Note 1.** — So, also, in poetic and colloquial use, with *idem:* as, —

 invītum quī servat idem facit occīdentī (Hor. Ars. P. 467), *he who saves a man against his will does the same as one who kills him.*

**Note 2.** — Adjectives of *likeness* are often followed by *atque* (āc), *as.* So also the adverbs *aequē, pariter, similiter,* etc. The pronoun *idem* has regularly *atque* or a relative. *Thus,* —

 sī parem sententiam hīc habet āc formam (Plaut. Mil. 1251) *if he has sense equal to his beauty* (like as his beauty).
 tē suspicor eīsdem rēbus quībus mē ipsum commovērī (Cato Maj. 1), *I suspect you are disturbed by the same things by which I am.*
b. Adjectives of *fitness* or *use* take oftener the Accusative with *ad* to denote the purpose or end; but regularly the Dative of *persons*: as,—

aptus ad rem militārem, *fit for a soldier's duty.*
locus ad insidiās aptior (Mil. 53), *a place fitter for lying in wait.*
nōbis ūtile est ad hanc rem, *it is of use to us for this thing.*

c. Adjectives and nouns of *inclination* and the like may take the Accusative with *in* or *ergā*: as,—

cōmis in uxōrem (Hor. Ep. ii. 2), *kind to his wife.*
dīvina bonitās ergā hominēs (N. D. ii. 60), *the divine goodness towards men.*
dē benevolentiā quam quisque habeat ergā nōs (Offic. i. 47), *in regard to each man's good will which he has towards us.*
grātiōrem mē esse in tē (Fam. xi. 10), *that I am more grateful to you.*

d. Some adjectives of *likeness, nearness, belonging,* and a few others, ordinarily requiring the Dative, often take the Possessive Genitive.¹

Thus,—

quod ut ills proprium āc perpetuum sit ... optāre dēbētis (Leg. Man. 48), *which you ought to pray may be secure (his own) and lasting to him.*
fuit hoc quondam proprium populī Rōmānī (Manil. 32), *this was once the peculiar characteristic of the Roman people.*
id quod reō māximē necessārium est (Cæcil. 38), *a thing which is especially necessary for the defendant.*
cum utriquē sīs māximē necessārius (Att. ix. 7, A), *since you are especially bound to both.*
proāqutātor aecē utriusque necessārius (Quinctius 86), *an agent equally closely connected with both.*

*Note.* — The genitive in this construction is not objective like those above, but possessive (cf. § 214. a).

1. The Genitive is especially used with these adjectives when they are used wholly or approximately as nouns. Thus,—

Crēticus et ēlius aequālis Paeōn (Orat. 215), *the Cretic and its equivalent the Paeon.*
hī erant affīnēs istīū (Verr. ii. 36), *these were this man's fellows.*

2. After *similis, like,* the genitive is more common in early writers. Cicero uses the genitive of *living objects,* and either the genitive or dative of *things:* as,—

domīni similis es (Ter.) *you're like your master* (your master's like).*

¹ Such are aequālis, affinēs, amicus, cōgnātus, communēs, cōnsanguinēus, dispār, fāmilīaris, finitīmus, inimīcus, necessārius, pār, pecūlīaris, propinquus, proprius (regularly genitive), similis, superstes, vicīnus, alienus, contrarius, sacer.
§§ 234, 235. Dative of Reference. 233

ut deōrum similēs essēmus (Nat. D. i. 91), that we might be like the gods. simia quam similis turpissima bestia nōbis (Nat. D. i. 97, quoted from Enn.), how like us is that wretched beast the ape!
sī enim hoc illi simile sit, est illud huic (Nat. D. i. 90), for if this is like that, that is like this.

filius patri similis (Finil. v. 12), a son like his father.
est similis mālōrum suōm (Ter. Ad. 411), he's like his ancestors.

e. The adjectives propior, proximus sometimes, and the adverbs propius, proxime more commonly, take the accusative, as if prepositions, like prope (see § 261. a).

propius periculum (Liv. xxi. 1), nearer to danger.
proximē deōs accessit Clōdius (Milon. 59), Clodius has come very near the gods.
proximus Pompēium sēdēbam (Cic.), I was sitting next to Pompey.
proximus mare őceanum (B. G. iii. 7), nearest the ocean.

NOTE.—These words take also the ablative with ab¹ (cf. § 260. b).


235. The Dative is often required not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the sentence: as, —

tībi arās (Pl. Merc. 71), you plough for yourself.
rēs tuās tībi habē (formula of divorce), keep your goods to yourself.
laudāvit mihi frātrem, he praised my brother (out of regard for me; laudāvit frātrem meum would imply no such motive).
meritōs māctāvit honōrēs, taurum Neptūnō, taurum tībi, pulcher Apollō (Aen. iii. 118), he offered the sacrifices due, a bull to Neptune, a bull to thee, beautiful Apollo.
Cūriōnī nostrō tribūnātus conglaciat (Fam. viii. 6), our friend Curio's tribuneship is frozen up (the tribuneship is frozen up for Curio).

NOTE.—The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage (datīvus commodī aut incommodi), as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. The meaning of the sentence is complete without the dative, which is not, as in the preceding constructions, closely connected with any single word. Thus the Dative of Reference is easily distinguishable in most instances even when the sentence consists of only two words, as in the first example.

a. The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word: as, —

iter Poenis vel corporibus suis obstruerne (Cat. Maj. 75), to block the march of the Carthaginians even with their own bodies (to block, etc., for the disadvantage of, etc.).
sē in conspectum nautīs dedit (Verr. v. 86), he put himself in sight of the sailors (he put himself to the sailors into sight).

¹ This comes from their original meaning of off, as we say off Newport.
versatur mihi ante oculos (id. 123), it comes before my eyes (it comes to me before the eyes).

b. The dative is used of the person from whose point of view a situation or direction is defined.

This construction answers to the English as you go in, and the like. The person is commonly denoted indefinitely by a participle in the plural: as,—

oppidum primum Thessalae venientibus ab Æpirō (B. C. iii. 80), the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus (to those coming, etc.).

laevā parte sinum intrantibus (Liv. xxvi. 26), on the left as you sail up the gulf (to those entering).

est urbe egressis tumulus (Æn. ii. 713), there is, as you come out of the city, a mound (to those having come out).

c. The dative of reference is (by a Greek idiom) rarely modified by nōlēns, volēns, participles of nōlo, volō, or by some similar word: as,

ut quibusque bellum invítās aut cupientibus erat (Tac. An. i. 59), as each might receive the war reluctantly or gladly.

ut militibus labōs volentibus esset (Jug. 100), that the soldiers might assume the task willingly.

d. The dative of reference is used idiomatically without any verb in colloquial questions and exclamations: as,—

quō mihi fortūnam (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), of what use to me is fortune?
unde mihi lapidem (Hor. Sat. ii. 7. 116), where can I get a stone?
quō tibi, Tilli (Hor. Sat. i. 6. 24), what use for you, Tillius?

e. The dative of reference is sometimes used after Interjections: as,—

vae victis, woe to the conquered.
em tibi, there, take that (there, for you)! [Cf. § 236.]
hei mihi, ah, me!

10. Ethical Dative.

236. The Dative of the Personal Pronouns is used to show a certain interest felt by the person indicated: 1 as,—

quid mihi Celsus agit (Hor.), pray what is Celsus doing?
suō sibi servit patri (Plaut. Capt. Prol.), he serves his own father.
at tibi repente venit mihi Cōminius (Fam. ix. 2), but, look you, of a sudden comes to me Cōminius.

hem tibi talentum argenti (Pl. Truc. 60), hark ye, a talent of silver.
quid tibi vis, what would you have (what do you wish for yourself)?

This construction is called the Ethical Dative (datīvus ēthicus). It is really only a special case of the dative of reference.

1 Compare "I'll rhyme you so eight years together." — As You Like It.
REMARK. — To express FOR — meaning instead of, in defence of, in behalf of — the ablative with pró must be used: as, —

prō patriā morī (Hor. Od. iii. 2), to die for one's country.
prō rēge, lēge, gregē (prov.), for king, law, people.
egō ibō pró tē (Plaut. Most.), I will go instead of you.

III. — ACCUSATIVE.

NOTE. — The Accusative originally served to connect the noun loosely with the verb-idea, whether expressed by a verb proper or by a verbal noun or adjective. Probably its earliest use was to repeat the verb-idea as in the Cognate Accusative (run a race, fight a battle, see § 238). From this it would be a short step to the Factitative Accusative (denoting the result of an act, as in make a table, drill a hole, cf. § 175, note i). From this last could easily come the common accusative (of Affecting, break a table, plug a hole, see § 237). Traces of all these uses appear in the language, and the loose connection of noun with verb-idea is seen in the use of stems in composition1 (cf. p. 205, head-note).

The uses of the accusative may be classified as follows:

1. PRIMARY OBJECT:  
   1. Directly affected by the Action (§ 237).
   2. Effect of the Action  
2. TWO ACCUSATIVES:  
   1. Predicate Accusative (of Naming, etc.) (§ 239. a).
   2. Of Asking or Teaching (§ 239. c).
   3. Of Concealing (§ 239. d).
3. IDIOMATIC USES:  
   1. Adverbial (§ 240. a, b).
   2. Of Specification (Greek Accusative) (§ 240. c).
   3. Of Extent and Duration (§ 240. e).
   5. Subject of Infinitive (§ 240. f).

1 Direct Object.

237. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 177).

The accusative of the Direct Object denotes (a) that which is directly affected, or (b) that which is caused or produced by the action of the verb: as, —

(a) Brûtus Caesarem interfēcit, Brutus killed Cæsar.
(b) aedem facere, to make a temple. [Compare proelium pūgnāre, to fight a battle, § 238].

NOTE. — There is no definite line by which transitive verbs can be distinguished from intransitive. Verbs which usually take a direct object (expressed or implied) are called transitive, but many of these are often used intransitively or absolutely.

1 Compare armiger, armor-bearer, with arma gerere, to bear arms; fidicen, lyre-player, with fidibus canere, to (play on) sing to the lyre. Compare also hanc tāctio (Plaut.), the [act of] touching her, with hanc tāgere, to touch her.
Thus *timeō, I fear*, is transitive in the sentence *inimicum timeō, I fear my enemy*, but intransitive (absolute) in *nōū timēre, don't be afraid*. Again, many verbs are transitive in one sense and intransitive in another: as, *Helvētiōs superāvērunt Rōmānī, the Romans overcame the Helvetians*; but *nihīl superābat, nothing remained* (was left over). So also many verbs usually intransitive may be used transitively with a slight change in their meaning: as, *ridēs, you are laughing*; but *mē ridēs, you're laughing at me.*

*a.* The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes its subject in the passive, and is put in the nominative (§ 177. *a*): as,—

Brūtus Caesarem interfēcit, *Brutus killed Caesar.*

Caesar ā Brūtō interfectus est, *Cæsar was killed by Brutus.*

domum aedificat, *he builds a house.*

domus aedificātur, *the house is building* (being built).

*b.* Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing *feeling*, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive: as,—

meum cāsum lūctumque doluērunt (Ses. 145), *they grieved [at] my calamity and sorrow.*

śī nōn Acrisium risissent Iuppiter et Venus (Hor. O. iii. 16. 5), *if Jupiter and Venus had not laughed [at] Acrisius.*

ridētur ab omnī conventū (Hor. S. i. 7. 22), *he is laughed [at] by the whole assembly.*

*c.* Verbs of *taste, smell*, and the like take an accusative of the quality: as,—

vinum redolēns (Cic.), *smelling [of] wine.*

herbam mella sapiunt (Plin.), *the honey tastes [of] grass.*

Note.—These are properly Cognate Accusatives (§ 238).

*d.* Verbs of motion, compounds of *circum* and *trans*, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative (cf. § 228. *a*): as,

mortem obīre, *to die* (to meet death).

cōnsulātum ineunt (Liv. ii. 28), *they enter upon the consulship.*

nēminem convēnti (Fam. ix. 14), *I met no one.*

śī insulam adīsset (B. G. iv. 20), *if he should go to the island.*

transīrē flūmen (id. ii. 23), *to cross the river* (cf. § 239. *b*).

cīvēs qui circumstant senātum (Cat. i. 21), *the citizens who stand about the senate.*

*e.* The accusative is used after the impersonals *decet, délectat, iuvat, oportet, fallit, fugit, praeterit*: as,—

tē nōn praeterit (Fam. i. 8), *it does not escape your notice.*

ita ut vōs decet (Plaut. Most. 729), *so as befits you.*

mē pedibus délectat claudere verba (Hor. Sat. ii. 1. 28), *my delight is (it pleases me) to arrange words in measure.*

nec mē animī fallit (Lucr. i. 136), *nor does it escape my attention (elude me in mind).*
nisi me fallit, unless I am mistaken (unless it deceives me).
iūvit me tibi tuās litterās prōfuisse (Fam. v. 21), it pleased me that your
literary studies had profited you.

So after latet in poetry and post-classical prose: as, —

latet plērōsque (Plin. ii. 82), it is unknown to most persons.

Note 1.—These verbs are merely ordinary transitives with an idiomatic signification. Hence most of them are also used personally (cf. §§ 227. a, 239. d).

Note 2.—Decet and latet sometimes take the dative: as, —

hostīque propinquō Rōma latet (Sil. It. xii. 614), and Rome lies hidden
from the foe close by.
ita nōbīs decet (Ter. Ad. 928), thus it befits us.

Note 3.—Many verbs usually intransitive are sometimes used transitively from a similarity of meaning with other verbs that regularly take the accusative: as, —

multa gemēns ignōminiam (Georg. iii. 226), groaning much at the dis-
grace. [Cf. doleō, § 237. b.]
festināre fugam (AEn. iv. 575), to hasten their flight. [Cf. accelerō.]
comptōs ārīt crīnēs (Hor. Od. iv. 9. 13), she burned with love for his
well-combed locks. [Cf. adamō.]

f. In early and popular usage some nouns and adjectives derived from transitive verbs retain verbal force sufficient to govern the accusative: as, —

quid tibi hanc tāctō est (Plaut. Poen. 1308), what business have you to
touch her? [Cf. tangō.]
mīrabundī bestiām (Ap. Met. 4, 16), full of wonder at the creature. [Cf.
mīrōr.]
vitābundus castra (Liv. xxv. 13), trying to avoid the camp. [Cf. vítō.]

g. In early usage the impersonal gerundive with esse governs the accusative (§ 294. c): as, —

quam nōbīs ingrediendum sit (Cat. Major 6), which (road) we must enter
upon. [Here Cicero purposely uses an archaic construction.]
poenās in morte timendumst (Lucr. i. 111), we have to fear punishment in
dearth.

h. Many verbs ordinarily transitive may be used absolutely (p. 234, note), having their natural object in the ablative with dē: as, —

priusquam Pomponius dē ēius adventū cognōsceret (B. C. iii. 101), befor
Pomponius could learn of his coming. [Cf. ēius adventū cognītō
his arrival being discovered.]

i. For Accusative and Genitive after Impersonals, see § 221. b.
2. Cognate Accusative.

238. A neuter verb often takes the accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Signification. Thus,—

vitam tūtiōrem vivere (Hor.), to live a safer life.
tertiam iam aētātem hominum vivēbat (Cato M. 31), he was now living the third generation of men.
coīre sociētātem, to [go together and] form an alliance.
servītūtem servīre, to be in slavery.

a. The Cognate Accusative is often loosely used by the poets: as,—

huic errōri similem [errōrem] ïnsānīre (Hor. Sat. ii. 3. 62), to suffer a delusion like this.
saltāre Cycloōpa (Hor. Sat. i. 5. 63), to dance the Cyclops (represent in dancing).
Bacchānālia vivere (Juv. ii. 3), to live in revellings.
Amaryllīda resonāre (Ecl. i. 5), to re-echo [the name of] Amaryllis.
hāc laevit (Hor. Od. i. 22. 23), sweetly smiling.
uberba tuēns (Lucr. v. 34), looking fiercely. [Cf. Eng. "to look daggers."

NOTE.—In the last three examples the cognate accusative has an adverbial signification. See Adverbial Accusative, § 240. a.

b. A neuter pronoun or colorless noun or adjective is very common as cognate accusative (cf. §§ 148. d and 240. a). Thus,—

Empedoclēs multā alia peccat (Nat. D. i. 29), Empedocles commits many other slips.
ego illud assentior Theophrastō (De Or. 184), in this I agree with Theophrastus.

mul tum tē opīnīō iste fēsellit (Ver. ii. i. 88), you were much deceived in this expectation (this expectation deceived you much).

quid mē ista laedunt (Agr. ii. 32), what harm do those things do me?
sī ūrēdō aut grandō quippiam nocuit (N. D. iii. 86), if drought or hail has done any injury (has harmed at all).
hōc tē moneō, I give you this warning (cf. note below).
id laetor, I rejoice at this (cf. note).
quae homīnes arant, nāvigant, etc. (Sall. Cat. 2, 7), what men do in ploughing, sailing, etc.

So in many common phrases: as,—

si quid ille sē velit (B. G. i. 34), if he should want anything of him (if he should want him in anything).
numquid mē vis, can I do anything more for you? (there is nothing you want of me, is there?). [A common form of leave-taking.]

quid est quod, etc., why is it that, etc.?

So, — hoc erat quod (AEn. ii. 664), was it for this that, etc.?

Note. — In these cases substantives with a definite meaning would be in some other construction: as, —

in hōc cēdem peccat, he errs in this same point.

bonis rēbus laetārī, to rejoice at prosperity. [Also: in, dē, or ex.]

dē testāmentō monere, to remind one of the will. [Later: genitive, § 219. c.]

officiē admonēre, to remind one of his duty. [Also: dē officiō.]

c. A few verbs in isolated expressions take the accusative from a forcing of their meaning. Such expressions are: —

ferire foedus, to strike a treaty (i.e. to sanction by striking down a victim).

vincere iūdicium (spōnsōnem, rem, hōc), to prevail on a trial, etc. [As if the case were a difficulty to overcome; cf. vincere iter, AEn. vi. 688.]

terram nāvigāre (Finib. ii. 112), to sail over the land. [Perhaps quoted from a poet.]

aequor nāvigāre, to sail the sea. [As if it were trānsīre, § 237. d.]

maria aspera iūrō (AEn. vi. 351), I swear by the rough seas. [The accusative with verbs of swearing is chiefly poetic.]

noctēs dormīre, to sleep [whole] nights (to spend in sleep).

Note. — These accusatives are of various kinds. The last example approaches the cognate construction, cf. the second example under § 238.

3. Two Accusatives.

239. Some transitive verbs take a second accusative in addition to their Direct Object.

This second accusative is either (1) a Predicate Accusative or (2) a Secondary Object.

a. Predicate Accusative.

i. An accusative in the Predicate referring to the same person or thing as the Direct Object, but not in apposition with it, is called a Predicate Accusative (cf. § 185, head-note).

a. Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object: as, —

Ō Spartace, quem enim tē potius appellem (Phil. xiii. 22), O Spartacus, for what else shall I call you (than Spartacus)?

Cicerōnem cōnsulem creāre, to elect Cicero consul.

dictātōrem dicere, to name [a man] dictator (e.g. Quintus Fabius).
mē augurem nōmināvērunt (Philip. ii. 4), they nominated me for augur.
grātiās agēbat quod sē cōnsulem fēcisset (Cic.), he thanked him because he 
had made him consul (supported his candidacy).
hominem prae sē nēminem putāvit (Cic.), he thought nobody a man in com-
parison with himself.
ducem sē militibus tuīs praebuat (Vat. 33), he offered himself to your 
soldiers as a leader.
ominēs Catilīnas Acidīnōs postēa reddidit (Att. iv. 3), he has made all the 

Note 1.—The predicate accusative may be an adjective: as,—
hominēs ex ferīs et immānibus mītēs reddidit et mānsuētōs (Inv. i, 2), has 
made men from wild and barbarous [creatures] gentle and mild.

Note 2.—In changing from the active voice to the passive, the predicate 
accusative becomes predicate nominative (§ 185): as,—
rēx ab suis appellātur (B. G. vii. 4), he is called king by his [subjects].

b. Secondary Object.

2. The Accusative of the Secondary Object is used 
(along with the direct object) to denote something more 
remotely affected by the action of the verb.

b. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take 
(in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally gov-
erned by the preposition: as,—

Caesar Germanōs flūmen trāicit (B. C. i. 83), Caesar throws the Germans 
across the river.

Note 1.—But with these verbs the preposition is more commonly repeated, 
or sometimes the ablative is used: as,—

dōnec rēs suās trāns Halyn flūmen trāicerent (Liv. xxxviii. 25), till they 
should get their possessions across the river Halys.
(exercitus) Padō trāiectus Cremōnam (Liv. xxii. 56), the army was conveyed 
across the Po to Cremona (by way of the Po, § 258. 8).

Note 2.—The secondary object may be retained with a passive verb: as,—

Belgae Rhēnum trāducti sunt (B. G. ii. 4), the Belgians were led over 
the Rhine.

Note 3.—Sometimes the Secondary Object appears to become the subject of a 
passive verb; but this comes from a change of meaning, and the object is really 
Direct. See the Remark.

Remark.—The double construction indicated in b is possible only when the 
force of the preposition and the force of the verb are each distinctly felt in the 
compound, the verb governing the Direct, and the preposition the Secondary 
object.
Two Accusatives.

§ 239. But often the two parts of the compound become closely united to form a transitive verb of simple meaning. In this case the verb-element loses its power to govern the accusative, and the compound verb is transitive solely by virtue of its prepositional part. Thus used the compound can have but one accusative,—the same which was formerly the secondary object, but which now becomes the direct. So traiectō comes to mean either (1) to pierce (anybody) [by hurling] or (2) to cross (a river, etc.): as,—

(1) gladiō hominem traiectit, he pierced the man with a sword. [Here iaciō has lost all transitive force, and serves simply to give the force of a verb to the meaning of trāns, and to tell the manner of the act.]

(2) Rhodanum traiectit, he crossed the Rhone. [Here iaciō has become simply a verb of motion, and traiectīō is hardly distinguishable from trānseō.]

In these examples hominem and Rhodanum, which would be secondary objects if traiectīō were used in its primary signification, have become the direct objects. Hence in the passive construction they become the subjects and are put in the nominative. Thus,—

homō traiectus est gladiō, the man was pierced with a sword.
Rhodanus traiectus est, the Rhone was crossed.

The poetical traiectus lōra (Æn. ii. 273), pierced with thongs, comes from a mixture of two constructions:—

(1) eum traiectit lōra, he rove thongs through him,1 and
(2) eum traiectit loris, he pierced him with thongs.

In putting the sentence into a passive form, the direct object of the former (lōra) is irregularly kept, and the direct object of the latter (eum) is made the subject.

c. Verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object): as,

mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.
ōtium divōs rogat (Hor. Od. ii. 16. 1), he prays the gods for rest.
haec cum praetōrem postulābās (Tull. 39), when you demanded this of the prætor.
aedicis populum rogāre (Liv. vi. 42), to ask the people [to elect] aediles.
docère puerōs elementa, to teach children their A B C's.

NOTE 1.—Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, peto (ab), quaerō (ex, ab, dē), often postulo (ab), and occasionally others: as,—
pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt (B. G. ii. 13), they sought peace from the Romans.
quet quaesivit ex mē P. Appuleius (Phil. vi. 1), what Publius Appuleius asked of me.

NOTE 2.—With the passive of verbs of asking or teaching, the person or the thing may be used as subject (cf. d, note): as,—

Caesar sententiam rogātus est, Caesar was asked his opinion.
id ab eō fāgitābatūr (B. G. i. 71), this was urgently demanded of him.

1 Perhaps not found in the active, but cf. traiectō fāne (Æn. v. 488).
Remark.—The accusative of the thing may be retained with the passive of rogō, and of verbs of teaching, and occasionally with a few other verbs: as,—

fuerant hōc rogāū (Cæl. 64), they had been asked this.
poscor meum Laelapa (Ov. Met. vii. 771), I am asked for my Laelaps.
Cicerō per lēgātōs cūncta ēdōctus (Sall. Cat. 45), Cicero being informed of everything through the ambassadors.

But with most verbs of asking in prose the accusative of the thing becomes the subject-nominative, and the person is put in the ablative with a preposition: as,—

nē postulantur quidem vīrēs ā senectūte (Cat. M. 34), strength is not even expected of an old man (asked from old age).

d. The verb cēlō, conceal, may take two accusatives, and the usually intransitive lateō, lie hid, an accusative of the person (cf. § 237. c): as,—
nōn tē cēlāvi sērmōnem T. Ampī (Fam. ii. 16), I did not conceal from you the talk of T. Ampius.
nec latuēre doli frātrem Iūnōnis (ÀEn. i. 130), nor did the wiles of Jūno escape the notice of her brother.

Note.—All the double constructions indicated in c and d arise from the waver- ing meaning of the verbs. Thus doceō means both to show a thing, and to instruct a person; cēlō, to keep a person in the dark, and to hide a thing; rogō, to question a person, and to ask a question or a thing. Thus either accusative may be regarded as the direct object, and so become the subject of the passive (cf. c, note 2, above), but for convenience the accusative of the thing is usually called secondary.

4. Idiomatic Uses.

240. The Accusative has the following special uses:—

a. A neuter pronoun or adjective is used as cognate accusative with an adverbial force (Adverbial Accusative, cf. § 238. b): as,—

quid moror, why do I delay?
dulce loquentem (Hor. Od. i. 22. 24), sweetly speaking.
acerba tuēns (ÀEn. ix. 794), looking cruelly.
torvum clāmat (id. vii. 399), he cries harshly.

Note.—This use does not differ from the cognate accusative except that in some cases the connection of the accusative with the verb has faded out so that the words are real adverbs. But no fixed line can be drawn between these two constructions.

b. The accusative is found in a few adverbial phrases: as,—

Id temporis, at that time.
id (istūc) aetātis, at that age.
id (quod) genus, of that (what) sort (perhaps originally nominative).
meam vicem, on my part.
máximam partem, for the most part.
bonam partem, in a great measure.
virile secus, of the male sex (probably originally in apposition).
cētera, in other respects.
quod sī, but (as to which) if.
c. The so-called *synecdochical* or Greek accusative is used by the poets to denote the part affected: as,—

*caput nectentur* (Æn. v. 309), *their head shall be bound* (they shall be bound about the head).

*ārdentis œculōs suffectī sanguine et ignī* (id. ii. 210), *their glaring eyes bloodshot and blazing with fire* (suffused as to their eyes, etc.).

*nūda gentū* (id. i. 320), *bare to the knee.*

**Note.**—In many apparently similar expressions the accusative may be regarded as the direct object of a verb in the middle voice (§ III. a): as,—

*inūtile ferrum cingitur* (Æn. ii. 510), *he girds on the useless steel.*

*nodō sinūs collectā fluentis* (id. i. 320), *having her flowing folds gathered in a knot.*

*umerōs insternor pelle leōnis* (id. ii. 722), *I cover my shoulders with a lion's skin.*

*prōtīmus induitur faciem cultumque Diānae* (Ov. Met. ii. 425), *forthwith she assumes the shape and garb of Diana.*

d. The accusative is used in exclamations: as,—

"Ō fortūnātam rempūbicam, oh, fortunate republic!" [Cf. "Ō fortūnāta mors* (Philip. xiv. 31), oh, happy death! (§ 241. c)."

*mē miserum, ah, wretched me!"

"ēn quatuor ārās (Ecl. v. 65), lo, four altars!"

"ēllum (= ēn illum), there he is!"

"eccōs (= ecce eōs), there they are, look at them!"

"prō deūm fidem, good heavens (oh, protection of the gods)!"

"hócine saeclum (Ter. Ad. 304), oh, this generation!"

"huncine hominem (Verr. v. 62), this man, good heavens!"

"Ō mē infelīcem* (Milon. 102), oh, unhappy I!"

**Note 1.**—Such expressions depend upon some long-forgotten verb. The use of *-ne* in some cases suggests an original question, as in *quid? what? why? tell me.*

**Note 2.**—The omission of the verb has given rise to some other idiomatic accusatives. Such are:—

"salūtem (sc. dīcit) (in letters), greeting."

"quō mihi fortūnam, of what use is fortune?" [Here no verb is thought of.]

"unde mihi lapidem, where can I get a stone?"

"mē dius fidius (sc. adiuvet), so help me heaven (the god of faith)."

e. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative (see §§ 256, 257).

f. The subject of the infinitive mood is in the accusative. This is especially frequent after words of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (*verba sentiendī et déclārandī*, see § 272).

g. The accusative in later writers is sometimes used in apposition with a clause: as,—
244 Syntax: Construction of Cases. [§§ 240–42.

dēserunt tribunal ... manūs intentantēs, causām discordiāe et initium armōrum (Tac. Ann. i. 27), finally they abandon the tribunal shaking their fists,—a cause of dissension and the beginning of war.

NOTE.—This construction is an extension (under Greek influence) of a usage more nearly within the ordinary rules, such as,—

Eumenem prōdīdēre Antiochō, pācis mērcēdem (Sall. Ep. Mith.), they betrayed Eumenes to Antiochus, the price of peace. [Here Eumenes may be considered the price, although the real price is the betrayal.]

h. For the accusative of the End of Motion, see § 258; for that after postrīdē, proprior, etc., see § 261. a.

[For the Accusative with Prepositions, see § 152. a, c.]

IV.—VOCATIVE.

241. The Vocative is the case of direct address: as,—

Tiberine pater, tē sancte precor (Livy ii. 10), O, father Tiber, thee, holy one, I pray.

a. A noun in the nominative in apposition with the subject of the imperative mood is sometimes used instead of the vocative: as,—

audi tū, populus Albānus (Liv. i. 24), hear, thou people of Alba.

b. The vocative of an adjective is sometimes used instead of the nominative, where the verb is in the second person: as,—

cēnsōrem trabeāte salūtās (Pers. iii. 29), robed you salute the censor.

c. The nominative may be used in exclamations (cf. § 240. d): as,—

ēn dextra fidēsque (Aen. iv. 597), lo, the faith and plighted word!

d. The vocative mācte is used as a predicate in the phrase mācte estō (virtūte), success attend your (valor). Thus,—

iuberem te mācte virtūte esse (Liv. ii. 12), I should bid you go on and prosper in your valor.

NOTE.—As the quantity of the final e in mācte is not determinable, it may be that the word was an adverb, as in bene est, and the like. (See American Journal of Philology, Vol. I.)

V.—ABLATIVE.

242. The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions FROM, IN, AT, WITH, BY: as,—

liberāre metū, to deliver from fear.
caecus avāritiā, blind with avarice.
occisus gladiō, slain by the sword.
excultus doctrinā, trained in learning.
hōc ipsō tempore, at this very time.
NOTE.—The ablative form contains three distinct cases,—the Ablative proper, expressing the relation FROM; the Locative, IN; and the Instrumental, WITH or BY. This confusion has arisen partly from phonetic decay (§ 8), by means of which the three cases have become identical in form, and partly from the development by which they have approached one another in meaning. Compare, for the first, the like forms of the dative and ablative plural, the old dative in -ē of the fifth declension (§ 74. a), and the loss of the original -d in the ablative (§§ 36.f, 62. a); and, for the second, the phrases à parte dextrā, ON the right; quam ob causam, FROM which cause; ad fāmam, AT (in consequence of) the report.

The relation of FROM includes separation, source, cause, agent, and comparison; that of WITH or BY, accompaniment, instrument, means, manner, quality, and price; that of IN or AT, place, time, circumstance. It is probable that, originally, the idea of accompaniment had a separate case, which became confounded with the instrumental before Latin was separated from the kindred tongues.

The following are the uses of the Latin Ablative, classed according to the original cases which have been combined in it:

1. ABLATIVE (from):
   2. Of Source (participles of origin, etc.) (§ 244).
   3. Of Cause (gaudeō, dignus, etc.) (§ 245).
   4. Of Agent (with ab after Passives) (§ 246).
   5. Of Comparison (THAN) (§ 247).

2. INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE (with):
   2. Of Accompaniment (with cum) (§ 248. a).
   3. Of Object of the Deponents ùtor, etc. (§ 249).
   4. Of Degree of Difference (§ 250).
   5. Of Quality (with Adjectives) (§ 251).

3. LOCATIVE ABLATIVE (in, on, at):
   1. Of Place where (commonly with IN) (§ 254).
   2. Of Idomatic Expressions (§ 254. a).
   3. Of Time and Circumstance (§ 256).

1. Ablative of Separation.

243. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.

a. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, require the ablative: as,—

ocular sē privāvit (Fin. v. 87), he deprived himself of eyes.
lēgibus solūtus, relieved from the obligation of laws.
onī Gallīā interdicit Rōmānīs (B. G. i. 46), he (Ariovistus) bars the Romans from the whole of Gaul.
ei aquā et igni interdicitur (Vell. Pat. ii. 45), he is debaughed the use of fire and water.
voluptātibus carēre (Cat. Maj. 7), to lack enjoyments.
nōn egeo medicīnā (Læl. 10), I want no physic.
māgnō mē metū liberābis (Cat. i. 10), you will relieve me of great fear.
Ephorus calcāribus eget (Quint.), Ephorus needs the spur.
levamur superstitio ne, liberamur mortis metu (Fin. i. 63), we are relieved from superstition, we are freed from fear of death.

consilii et auctoritate orbari (Cato M. 17), to be bereft of counsel and authority.

b. Verbs compounded with a, ab, de, ex, take the simple ablative when used figuratively; but when used literally to denote separation or motion, they usually require a preposition (see § 258). Thus,—

connatu desistere (B. G. i. 8), to desist from the attempt.
desine communitibus locis (Acad. ii. 80), quit commonplaces.
abire magistratu, to leave one's office.
abstinere inuiri, to refrain from wrong.

But,—aberrare a proposito (Cic.), to wander from the point.
deprovincia decedere (Verr. ii. 48), to withdraw from one's province.
ab iure abire (id.), to go outside of the law.
ex civitate excessere (B. G. vi. 8), they departed from the state. [But cf. finibus suis excesserant (id. iv. 18), they had left their own territory.]

ā magnum dēmissum nōmen Iulō (En. i. 288), a name descended (sent down) from great Iulus.

Note.—For the Dative used instead of the Ablative of Separation, see § 229.

c. For the ablative of the actual place whence in idiomatic expressions, see § 258. a, and note 2.

d. Adjectives denoting freedom and want are followed by the ablative: as,

urbs nūda præsidiō (Att. vii. 13), the city naked of defence.
immūnis militiā (Liv. i. 43), free of military service.
plebs orba tribunis (Leg. iii. 9), the people deprived of tribunes.

Note.—Some adjectives of want take the genitive (see § 218. a).

e. Opus and usus, signifying need, are followed by the ablative: 1

as,

magistrātibus opus est (Leg. iii. 5), there is need of magistrates.
nunc viribus usus (En. viii. 441), now there is need of strength.

Note.—With these words the ablative of the perfect participle, with or without a noun, is often found (§ 292. b) as,—

opus est tua exprōmptā memoria atque astūtiā (Ter. And. 723), I must have your good memory and cleverness set to work.
propēratō opus erat (Mil. 49), there was need of haste.
factō usus est, it is desirable to do (there is need of the thing's being done).

Remark.—Frequently opus is in the predicate, with the thing needed in the nominative as subject: as,—

1 This construction is properly an instrumental one, in which opus and usus mean work and service, and the ablative expresses that with which the work is performed or the service rendered.
Ablative of Source and Material.

§§ 243, 244.

dux nobis et auctor opus est (Fam. ii. 6), we need a chief and responsible adviser (a chief, etc., is necessary for us).
si quid ipsi opus esset (B. G. i. 34), if he himself wanted anything (if anything should be necessary for him).
quae opus sunt (Cato R. R. 14, 3), things which are required.

f. Egeō and indigeō are often followed by the genitive (§ 223): as,—

nec quis auxili egeat (B. G. vi. 11), lest any require aid.
quae ad consolandum maioris ingenii et ad ferendum singularis virtutis indigent (Fam. vi. 4), [sorrows] which for their comforting need more ability, and for endurance unusual courage.

REMARK. — The Genitive is by a Greek idiom often used in poetry instead of the Ablative with all words of separation and want (§ 223. b. 3): as,—

abstinēō irārum (Hor. Od. iii. 27. 70), abstain from wrath.
operum solūūs (id. 17. 16), free from toils.
dēsine mollium querēlārum (id. ii. 9. 17), have done with weak complaints.

2. Ablative of Source and Material.

244. The Ablative with or without a preposition is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists.

These ablatives commonly take a preposition: as,—

1. Source: —

Rhēnus oritur ex Lēpontiīs (B. G. iv. 10), the Rhine rises in (from) the country of the Lepontii.
ab alīquō sermō oritur (Lælius 5), the conversation is begun by (arises from) some one.
cūius rationis vim atque utilitātem ex illō caelestī Epicūri volumine accēpimus (Nat. D. i. 43), of this reasoning we have learned the power and advantage from that divine book of Epicurus.
suāvitātem odōrum qui afflarentur e flōribus (Cato Major 59), the sweetness of the odors which breathed from the flowers.

2. Material: —
erat tōtus ex fraude et mendaiciō factus (Clu. 72), he was entirely made up of fraud and falsehood.
valvās māgnificentiorēs, ex aurō atque ebore perfectiōrēs (Verr. iv. 124), more splendid doors, more finely wrought of gold and ivory.
factum dē cautibus antrum (Ov. Met. i. 575), a cave formed of rocks.
templum dē marmore pōnam (Georg. iii. 13), I'll build a temple of marble.

Note 2. — In poetry the preposition is often omitted.

Note 2. — The Ablative of Material is a development of the Ablative of Source (cf. § 214).
a. Participles denoting birth or origin are followed by the Ablative of Source, generally without a preposition: ¹ as,—

Iove nātus et Māiā (N. D. iii. 56), son of Jupiter and Maia.
edite régibus (Hor. Od. i. i. 1), descendant of kings.
quō sanguine crētus (Æn. ii. 74), born of what blood.
genitae Pandione (Ov. Met. vi. 666), daughters of Pandion.

Remark.—A preposition (ab, dé, ex) is usually expressed with the name of the mother, and often with that of other ancestors: as,—
cum ex utrāque [uxōre] filius nātus esset (De Orat. i. 183), each wife
having had a son (when a son had been born of each wife).
Trōs est generātus ab illō (Ov. Fast. iv. 33), Tros was sprung from him.
ex mē hic nātus nōn est sed ex frātre meō (Ter. Ad. 40), this is not my son,
but my brother's (not born from me, etc.).
Belus et omnēs ā Bēlō (Æn. i. 730), Belus and all his descendants.

b. Rarely, the place of birth is expressed by the ablative of source: as,—
dēsiderāvit C. Felginātem Placentiā, A. Grānium Puteolīs (B. C. iii. 71),
he lost C. Felginas of Placentia, A. Granius of Puteoli.

Note.—The Roman tribe is regularly expressed by the ablative alone: as,—
Q. Verrem Rōmiliā (Verres i. 23), Quintus Verres of the Romilian tribe.

c. Some verbs may take the Ablative of Material without a preposition. Such are cōnstāre, cōn sistere, and continērī.² But with
cōnstāre, ex is more common. Thus:—
domūs amoenitās nōn aedificiō sed silvā cōnstābat (Nep. Att. 13), the
charm of the house consisted not in the buildings but in the woods.
ex animō cōnstāmus et corpore (Fin. iv. 19), we consist of soul and body.
vīta corpore et spirītū continētur (Marc. 28), life consists of body and spirit.

d. The Ablative of Material without a preposition is used with facere,
fierī, and similar words, in the sense of do with, become of: as,—
quid hoc homine faciātis (Ver. ii. i. 42), what are you going to do with this
man?
quid Tulliolā meā fiet (Fam. xiv. 4), what will become of my dear Tullia?
quid tē futūrum est (Ver. ii. 155), what will become of you?

e. The Ablative of Material with ex, and in poetry without a preposition, sometimes depends directly on a noun: as,—
nōn paуча pōcula ex aurō (Verr. iv. 62), not a few cups of gold.
scopulis pendentibus antrum (Æn. i. 166), a cave of hanging rocks.

¹ Such are nātus, satus, ēditus, genitus, ortus, prōgnātus, gene-
rātus, crētus, creātus, oriundus.
² The ablative with cōn sistere and continērī is locative in origin (cf. §
254. b).
§§ 244, 245. Ablative of Cause.

245. The ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause.\(^1\)

nimiō gaudió paene dēsipiēbam (Fam. ii. 9), I was almost wild from too much joy.

neglegentīā plectur (Lael. 85), we are chastised for negligence.
gubernātorīs ars utīlītāte nōn arte laudātur (Fam. i. 13), the pilot's skill is praised for its service, not its skill.
certīs dē causīs, for certain reasons.
ex vulnere aeger (Rep. ii. 38), disabled by (from) a wound.
mare a sōle lucet (Ac. ii. 105), the sea gleams in the sun (from the sun).
ex opportūnītāte locī (Jug. 48, 2), from the advantage of position.

a. Certain verbs and adjectives regularly take the ablative of cause without a preposition. These are: —

1. The adjectives dignus, indignus: as, —

vir patre avō māiōribus suīs dignissimus (Phil. iii. 25), a man most worthy of his father, grandfather, and ancestors.
tē omni honōre indignissimum iūdicat (Vatinius 39), he judges you entirely unworthy of every honor.

2. The verbs dignor, laborō (also with ex), exsiliō, exsultō, triumphō, lacrimō, ārdeō: as, —

haud equidem tāli mē dignor honōre (Æn. i. 335), I do not deem myself worthy of such an honor.
dolēō tē aliīs malīs labōrāre (Fam. iv. 3), I am sorry that you suffer with other ills.
ex aere aliēnō labōrāre (B. C. iii. 22), to labor under debt (lit., from another's money).

exsultāre laetitīā ac triumphāre gaudió coeptī (Clu. 14), she began to exult in gladness, and triumph in joy.
exsilīū gaudió (Fam. xvi. 16), I jumped for joy.
lacrimō gaudió (Ter. Ad. 409), I weep for joy.
dėlīctō dolēre (Læl. 90), to grieve for the fault.
ārdeō dolōre et īrā (Att. ii. 19), to be on fire with pain and anger.

Note 1. — For gaudeō and glōrior, see §§ 254. b.

\(^1\) The cause, in the ablative, is originally source, as is shown by the use of ab, dē, ex; but when the accusative with ad, ob is used, the idea of cause arises from nearness. Occasionally, however, it is difficult to distinguish between cause and means (which is the old Instrumental Case) or circumstance (which is either the Locative or the Instrumental).
Note 2. — Dignus and indignus sometimes take the genitive in colloquial usage and in poetry: as,—

cūram dignissimam tuae virtūtis (Balbus in Att. viii. 15), care most worthy of your noble character.
dignus salutis (Plaut. Trin. 1153), worthy of safety.
magnorum haud unquam indignus avorum (AEn. xii. 649), never unworthy my great ancestors.

Note 3. — For the construction of dignus and indignus with verbs, see § 320. f.

b. The motive which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative of cause; the object exciting the emotion often by ob or propter with the accusative: as,—

non ob praedam aut spoliandi cupidine (Tac. H. i. 63), not for booty or through lust of plunder.
amicitia ex se et propter se expetenda (Fin. ii. 83), friendship must be sought of and for itself.

Note. — But these constructions are often confused: as,—
pārēre légibus propter metum (Parad. 34), to obey the laws on account of fear. [Here metum is almost equivalent to "the terrors of the law," and hence propter is used, though the ablative would be more natural.]

c. The ablatives causā and gratiā, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement: as,—

eā causā, on account of this; quā gratiā (Ter. Eun. 99), for what purpose?
meā causā, for my sake; meā gratiā (Plaut.), for my sake.
ex meā et reipublicae causā, for my own sake and the republic's.
praedictionis causā (Nat. D. iii. 5), by way of prophecy.
exempli gratiā (verbī gratiā), for example.
sui purgandi gratiā, for the sake of clearing themselves.

Note. — But gratiā with possessives in this use is rare.

4. Ablative of Agent.

246. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with ā or ab: as,—

laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illis (Hor. Sat. i. 2. 11), he is praised by these, blamed by those.
ab animō tuo quidquid agitur id agitur ā tē (Tusc. i. 52), whatever is done by your soul is done by yourself.

1 This use of ob was originally mercantile; cf. ob decem minās, for the price of ten minae (see p. 131).
ā filiis in iūdicium vocātus est (Cat. Major 22), *he was brought to trial by his sons.*
cum ā cūncō cōnsēssū plausus esset multiplex datus (Cat. Major 64),
*when great applause had been given by the whole audience.*
ne virtūs ab audāciā vincerētur (Sest. 92), *that valor might not be over-
borne by audacity.*

NOTE.—This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action.

REMARK.—The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§ 248. c. 1). Thus —

occīsus gladiō, *slain by a sword;* but, occīsus ab hoste, *slain by an enemy.*

a. The ablative of the agent with ab is sometimes used after neuter verbs that have a passive sense: as,

perīre ab hoste, *to be slain by an enemy.*

b. The agent, when considered as instrument or means, is expressed by per with the accusative, or by operā with a genitive or possessive. Thus,

Caesar certior factus est ā lēgātīs, *Caesar was informed by the ambassadors (in person).* But,—

Caesar certior factus est per lēgātōs, *Caesar was informed by ambassadors* (*i.e.* by means of ambassadors).

elautae operā Neptūnī (Plaut. Rud. 699), *washed clean by the services of Neptune.*
nōn meā operā ēvēnit (Ter. Hec. 228), *it hasn't happened through me (by my exertions).*

NOTE 1.—An animal is usually regarded not as the agent, but as the means or instrument. Hence the simple ablative is used. But ab sometimes occurs. Thus,—

equō vehi, *to ride on horseback (be conveyed by means of a horse).* [Not ab equō.] But,—

Lūcānō cum sic lacerēris ab ursō (Mart. Ep. 8), *since you are thus mangled by a Lucanian bear.*

NOTE 2.—For the Dative of the Agent with the Gerundive, see § 232.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

247. The Comparative degree is followed by the ablative (signifying THAN): as,

Catō est Cicerōne eloquentior, *Cato is more eloquent than Cicero.*
quid nōbīs duōbus labōriōsīus est (Mil. 5), *what more burdened with toil than we two?*

1 This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, "Cicero is eloquent"; but starting from him we come to Cato, who is "more so than he."
vilius argentum est aurō, virtūtibus aurum (Hor. Ep. i. 1. 52), silver is less precious than gold, gold than virtue.

a. The comparative may be followed by quam, than. When quam is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (cf. § 208. a). The construction with quam is required when the first of the things compared is in any other case than the nominative or accusative. With those cases its use is optional. Thus,—

contionibus accommodātior est quam iūdiciīs (Clu. 2), fitter for popular assemblies than for courts.
misericordiā dignior quam contumēliā (Piso 32), more worthy of pity than of disgrace.

nōn callidior es quam hīc (Rosc. Am. 49), you are not more cunning than he.

Remark.—Relative pronouns having a definite antecedent never take quam in this construction, but always the ablative: as, —

rēx erat Aeneās nōbis, quō iūstiōr alter, etc. (Æn. i. 545), Æneas was our king, than whom no other was more righteous, etc.

Note.—The poets sometimes use the ablative of comparison where the prose construction requires quam: as,—

pāne egeō iam mellītīs potiōre placentīs (Hor. Ep. i. 10), I want bread better than honey-cakes.

b. The idiomatic ablatives opīniōne, spē, solitō, dictō, aequō, crēdibilī, and iūstō are used after comparatives instead of a clause: as,

gravius aequō (Sall.), more seriously than was right.

celerius opīniōne (Fam. xiv. 23), faster than one would think.
amnis solitō citātior (Liv. xxiii. 19), a stream swifter than its wont.
sērius spē omnium (Liv. xxvi. 26), later than all hoped (than the hope of all).

c. After the comparatives plūs, minus, amplius, longius without quam, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in its case: as,—

plūs septingentiā capti (Liv. xli. 12), more than 700 were taken.
plūs tertiā parte interfectā (Cæs.), more than a third part being slain.
spatium nōn amplius sexcentōrum pedum (id.), a space of not more than 600 feet.

Note.—The noun takes the case required by the context, without reference to the comparative, which is really in a sort of apposition, "seven hundred were taken [and] more."

d. Alīus is sometimes followed by the ablative in poetic and colloquial use; in formal prose it is followed by āc (atque), nisi, quam. Thus,

1 This has been thought to be an imitation of the Greek, but the construction is found also in Sanskrit, and is probably original.
nec quicquam aliud libertate communi (Iam. xi. 2), nothing else than the common liberty.
alius Lysippō (Hor.), another than Lysippus.
alium sapiente bonoque (Hor. Ep. i. 16. 20), other than the wise and good.
aliō ingeniō ae tu (Plaut.), of a different disposition from you.
erat historia nihil aliud nisi annalium confectio (De Or. ii. 52), history was nothing else but a compiling of records.
nil aliut nisi quod sibi placet (Plaut. Trin. 395), nothing else than what pleases him.

e. The comparative of an adverb is usually followed by quam, rarely by the ablative except in poetry. Thus,—
tempus tē citius quam ēratiō dēficeret (Rosc. Am. 89), time would fail you sooner than words. But,—
cur Sybaris olivum sanguine viperīnō cautius vitat (Hor. Od. i. 8. 9), why does Sybaris shun oil more carefully than viper’s blood?

6. Ablative of Manner.

Note.—Accompaniment, Manner, Means, and Instrument are denoted by the instrumental ablative (see p. 245), but some of these more commonly take the preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves never thought of any distinction. Thus in omnibus precibus orabant, they entreated with every [kind of] prayer, the ablative is properly that of means, but cannot be distinguished from manner.

248. The manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. Thus,—
cum celeritāte vēnit, he came with speed. But,—
summā celeritāte vēnit, he came with the greatest speed.
quid refert quā me ratiōne cōgātis (Lelius 26), what difference does it make in what way you compel me?

Note.—But cum is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective: as,—
quantō cum periculō id fecerit (B. G. i. 17), at what risk he did this.
nōn minōre cum taediō recubant (Plin. Ep. ix. 17, 3), they recline with no less weariness.

Remark.—With such words of manner as modō, pāctō, ratiōne, rītū, viā, and with stock expressions which have become virtually adverbs (as silentīō, infūriā), cum is very rare. Thus,—

apis Matiniae mōre modōque carmina singō (Hor. Od. iv. 2. 28), in the style and manner of a Matinian bee I fashion songs.

So in poetry the ablative of manner often omits cum: as,—
mōns aquae sequitur cumulō (Æn. i. 105), a mountain of water follows in a mass. [Cf. murmure (id. 124); rīmis (id. 123).]
7. Ablative of Accompaniment.

a. Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative, regularly with *cum*: as,—

- *cum coniugibus ac liberis vestris*, with your wives and children.
- *cum funditóribus sagittaríisque flúmen trángressi* (B. G. ii. 19), having crossed the river with the archers and slingers.
- *quaes supplicatiónis sì cum cétéris conserátor* (Catil. iii. 15), if this thanksgiving be compared with others.
- *quaes [lēx] esse cum téló vetát* (Milon. 11), the law which forbids [one] to go armed (be with a weapon).
- *si sécum suós édúxerit* (Catil. i. 30), if he leads out with him his associates. [For sécum, see § 99. e.]

**Note.**—The ablative is used without *cum* in military phrases, and here and there by early writers: as,—

- *subseqébatur omnibus cópiis* (B. G. ii. 19), he followed close with all his forces.
- *hóc praesidió profectus est* (Ver. ii. i. 86), with this force he set out.

**Remark.**—*Misceo* and *iungó*, with their compounds, and *confundó* may take either (1) the Ablative of Accompaniment with or without *cum*, or (2) sometimes the Dative: as,—

- *mixta dolóre voluptás* (B. Al. 56), pleasure mingled with pain.
- *cúius animum cum suó mísceat* (Lælius 81), whose soul he may mingle with his own.
- *flecéntque cruóri míscuit* (Ov. Met. iv. 140), and mingled tears with blood.
- Caesar *eas cohórtés cum suó exercitú coniunxit* (B. C. i. 18), Caesar united those cohorts with his own army.
- *aéř coniúncitus terrís* (Lucr. v. 562), air united with earth.
- *húmánó capítú cervícem equínam iungère* (Hor. A. P. 1), to join to a human head a horse's neck.

b. Words of Contention and the like require *cum*: as,—

- *armís cum hoste certáre*, to fight with the enemy in arms.
- *libenter haec cum Q. Catuló disputárem* (Leg. Man. 66), I should gladly discuss these matters with Quintus Catulus.

**Note.**—But words of contention may take the Dative in poetry (see § 229. c).

c. i. The Ablative is used to denote the *means or instrument* of an action: as,—

- *certántès púgnís, calíbús, ungúibus, morsú dënique* (Tuscul. v. 77), fighting with fists, heels, nails, and even teeth.
- *cum púgnís et calíbus concíus esset* (Verr. iii. 56), when he had been pummelled with their fists and heels.
meis labōribus interītū rempūblīcām liberāvī (Sulla, 33), by my toils I have saved the state from ruin.

multae istārum arborum meā manū sunt satae (Cat. Major 59), many of those trees were set out with my own hands.

2. The Ablative of Means is used with verbs and adjectives of filling, abounding, and the like: as,

- Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum (Univ. 9), God has filled the world with all good things.
- aggere et crātibus fōssās explent (B. G. vii. 86), they fill up the ditches with earth and fascines.
- tōtum montem hominibus complēvit (id. i. 24), he filled the whole mountain with men.
- opimus praeda (Ver. ii. 1. 132), rich with spoils.
- vita plēna et conferta voluptātibus (Sest. 23), a life filled and crowded with delights.
- Forum Appī differtum nautīs (Hor. Sat. i. 5. 4), Forum Appii crammed with bargemen.

**Remark.**—In poetry the Genitive is often used with these words by a Greek idiom. But compleō, impleō, plēnus and refertus often take the genitive in prose (cf. § 223). Thus,—

omnīa plēna lūctūs et maerōris fuērunt (Sest. 128), everything was full of grief and mourning.

ōllam dēnārīorum implēre (Fam. ix. 18), to fill a pot with money. [Here evidently colloquial, otherwise rare in Cicero.]

convivium vicīnōrum compleō (Cato Major 46, in the mouth of Cato), I fill up the banquet with my neighbors.

249. The deponents utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds,1 govern the ablative: as,

- ūtar vestrā benignitātē (Arch. 18), I will avail myself of your kindness.
- sagācitāte canum ad utilitātem nostrām abūtimur (N. D. ii. 151), we take advantage of the sagacity of dogs for our own benefit.
- ita mihi salvā rēpublicā vōbiscum perfruī līceat (Catil. iv. 11), so may I enjoy with you the state secure and prosperous.
- aurō hērōs potitur (Ov. Met. vii. 155), the hero takes the gold.
- Numidae plērumque lacte et ferīnā carne vescēbantur (Jug. 88), the Numidians fed mostly on milk and game.
- fungi inānī mūnere (Æn. vi. 885), to perform an idle service.

**Note.**—This is really an Ablative of Means and the verbs are really in the middle voice (§ 111. a). Thus utor signifies I employ myself, or avail myself by means of, etc. But these earlier meanings disappeared from the language, leaving the construction as we find it.

1 These are abūtor, deūtor, dēfungor, dēfruor, perfruor, perfungor.
a. Potior sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase potíri rērum, to get control or be master of affairs (§ 223. a): as,—

tōtius Galliae sēsē potīri posse spērānt (B. G. i. 3), they hope they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.

b. In early Latin, these verbs are oftentransitive, and take the accusative: as,—

ille patria potitur commoda (Ter. Ad. 871), he enjoys his ancestral estate.
sūnctus est officium (Ter. Ph. 281), he performed the part, etc.

NOTE.—The Gerundive of these verbs is used personally in the passive as if the verb were transitive (but cf. § 294. c): as,—

HērACLius omnia utenda ac possidenda trādiderat (Verr. ii. 46), he had given over everything to HērACLius for his use and possession (to be used and possessed).


250. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference: as,—

duōbus mīlibus plūrēs, two thousand more (more by two thousand).
quīnque mīlibus passuum distat, it is five miles distant (it stands off by five miles).
aliquot ante annis (Tuscul. i. 4), several years before.
aliquantō post suspēxit (Rep. vi. 9), a while after he looked up.
multō mē vigilāre ācrius (Cat. i. 8), that I watch much more sharply (more sharply by much).
nihilō erat ipse Cyclops quam ariēs prūdentior (Tuscul. v. 115), for the Cyclops himself was not a whit wiser than the ram.

REMARK.—This use is especially frequent with the ablatives quō...ēō (hōc); quantō...tantō (cf. § 106. c): as,—

quō minus cupiditātis, ēō plūs auctōritātis (Liv. xxiv. 28), the less greed, the more weight (by what the less, by that the more).
quantō erat gravior oppūgnātō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae mittēbantur (B. G. v. 45), the severer the siege was, the more frequently letters were sent.

NOTE.—To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of quō and ēō with a comparative even when they have ceased to be felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause: as,—

eōque mē minus paenitēt (Nat. D. i. 8), and for that reason I regret less, etc. (by so much the less I regret).

a. The Ablative of Comparison (§ 247) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference are often used together with the same adjective: as,—

multō divitior Crassō, much richer than Crassus.
10. Ablative of Quality.

251. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with a Modifier (either an adjective or limiting genitive).

This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality.

animō meliōre sunt gladiātōrēs (Catil. ii. 26), the gladiators are of a better mind.

quae cum esset civitās aequissimō īūre āc foedere (Arch. 6), as this was a city with perfectly equal constitutional rights.

mulierem eximīā pulchritūdine (Ver. ii. i. 64), a woman of extraordinary beauty.

Hortēnsius memoriā tantā fuit ut, etc. (Brutus, 301), Hortensius had so good a memory that, etc. (was of so great memory).

quam ēlātō animō est (Thēramēnēs) (Tuscul. i. 96), how lofty a spirit Theramenes displays.

Aristotelēs, vir summō ingeniō, scientiā, cōpiā (Tuscul. i. 7), Aristotle, a man of the greatest genius, learning, and gift of expression.

quam tenuī aut nūlla potius valētūdīne (Cato Major 35), what feeble health he had, or rather none at all!

dē Domitiō dixit versum Graecum ēdem sententiā (Deiot. 25), concerning Domitius he recited a Greek line of the same tenor.

Note.—The Ablative of Quality (like the Genitive of Quality) modifies a substantive by describing it. It is therefore equivalent to an adjective, and may be either attributive or predicate. In this it differs from other ablatives, which are equivalent to adverbs. Compare,—

mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman.

mulier māgnā pulchritūdine, a woman of great beauty, with—

mulier pulchritūdine Trōīam dēlevīt, by her beauty a woman destroyed Troy.

mulier excellēns pulchritūdine (§ 253), a woman preēminent in beauty.

a. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are often denoted by the Ablative (cf. § 215, note): as,—

capillō sunt prōmissō (B. G. v. 14), they have long hair.

ut capite opertō sit (Cato Major 34), to have his head covered (to be of covered head).

11. Ablative of Price.

252. The Price of a thing is put in the ablative: as,—

agrum vēndidit sēstertǐūm sex mīlibus, he sold the land for 6000 sestertii.

Antōnius rēgna addixit pecūnīā (Philip. vii. 15), Antony sold thrones for money.

logōs ridiculōs: qui cēnā poscit (Pl. Stich. 221), jokes: who wants them for (at the price of) a dinner?

māgnō illī ca cunctātiō stetit (Liv. ii. 36), that hesitation cost him dear.

Note.—To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty, § 220. b. i.
Syntax: Construction of Cases. [§ 252.

a. Certain adjectives of Quantity are used in the Genitive to denote indefinite value. Such are māgni, parvī, tantī, quantī, plurīs, minōris: as, —

est mihi tantī (Cat. ii. 15), it is worth the price (it is of so much).
meā māgni interest, it is of great consequence to me.
illud parvī réfert (Manil. 18), this is of small account.
Verrèsne tibi tantī fuit (Ver. ii. i. 77), was Verres of so much account to you?
tantōne minōris decumae vēniērunt (Verr. iii. 106), were the tithes sold for so much less?

ut tē redimās captum quam queās minimō: sī nequeās paululō, at quantī queās (Ter. Eun. 74), to ransom yourself, when captured, at the cheap- est rate you can; if you can't for a small sum, then at any rate for what you can.

NOTE.—These are really genitives of quality (§ 215. c).

b. The genitive of certain colorless nouns is used in the same way. Such are nihilī, nothing; āssis, a farthing; flocci (a lock of wool), a straw. Thus, —
nōn flocci faciō (Att. xiii. 50), I care not a straw.
utinam ego istic abs tē factum nihilī penderem (Ter. Eun. 94), oh! that I cared nothing for this being done by you!
egō nōn flocci pendere (Ter. Eun. 411), I did not care a straw.

c. With verbs of exchanging, either the thing taken or the thing given in exchange may be in the Ablative of Price. Such are: mutāre, commutāre, permutāre, vertere. Thus, —

fidem suam et religiōnem pecūniā commutāre (Cluentius 129), to barter his faith and conscience for money.
vertere fūneribus triumphōs (Hor. Od. i. 35. 4), to change the triumph to the funeral-train (exchange triumphs for funerals).

exsillium patriā sēde mutāvit (Q. C. iii. 7), he exchanged his native land for exile (he took exile in exchange for his native land).

vēlx amoenum saepe Lucretiēm mutāt Lycaeō Faunus (Hor. Od. i. 17. 1), nimble Faunus often changes Lyceus for Lucretillus. [He takes Lucre- tillus at the price of Lyceus, i.e. he goes from Lyceus to Lucretillus.]

NOTE.—With verbs of exchanging cum is often used, perhaps with a different conception of the action: as, —

ariēs ... cum croceō mutābit vellera lūtō (Ecl. iv. 44), the ram shall change his fleece for [one dyed with] the yellow saffron.

d. With verbs of buying and selling the simple ablative of price must be used, except in the case of tantī, quantī, plurīs, minōris: as, —


253. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done: as, —

virtūte praecēdunt (B. G. i. 1), they excel in courage.
claudus alterō pede (Nep. Ages. 8), lame of one foot.
linguā hasisantēs, vōce absonī (De Orat. i. 115), hesitating in speech, harsh in voice.
tanta cāritās patriae est, ut eam nōn sēnsū nostrō sed salūte ipsius mēti-
ānur (Tusc. i. 90), such is our love of country that we measure it not
by our own feeling, but by her own welfare.
sunt enim hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine (Offic. i. 105), for they are mer.
not in fact, but in name.
māior nātū, older; minor nātū, younger (cf. § 91. c).
infirmus mollisque nāturā (Lælius 75), weak and yielding by nature.
paulum aētāte progressi (Cat. Major 33), somewhat advanced in age.
corpore senex esse potuit animō nunquam erit (Cat. Major 38), he may
have been an old man in body, he never will be [old] at heart.
non solum rē et sententiā sed verbis quoque hōc interdictum ita esse
compositum (Cæcin. 86), this prohibition was so conceived not only in
substance and effect, but also in language.
homō meā sententiā prūdentissimus (Cæcin. 22), a man, in my opinion,
very wise.
equitātū pulsi erant (B. G. vii. 68), they had been beaten in the cavalry fight.

Note.—To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative
expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done. But as the Romans
had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the
ablative. Hence the ablative of specification is closely akin to that of manner, and to
many ablatives which have been developed from other fundamental ideas. Thus,—

meō iūre, with perfect right; but, meō modō, in my fashion.
meā sententiā, in my opinion; but also more formally, ex meā sententiā.

[Here the sense is the same, but the first ablative is specification; the
second, source.]

propīnquitāte coniōncētōs atque nāturā (Lælius 50), closely allied by
kindred and nature. [Here the ablative is not different in sense from
those above, but no doubt is a development of means.]
quī vincit vīribus (Lælius 55), who surpasses in strength. [Here it is
impossible to tell whether vīribus is the means of the superiority or
that in respect to which one is superior.]
neque enim ullā aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt (B. G. vii. 77), for on no
other terms did they carry on wars.

a. The Supine in -ū, used chiefly with adjectives, is equivalent to an
ablative of specification (cf. §§ 114. b, 303): as, —
mirābile dictū, marvellous to tell.

Note.—In this use of the supine, dative and ablative constructions have, no
doubt, been confounded.
13. Ablative of Place.

NOTE.—The Locative Case was originally used (literally) to denote the place where and (figuratively) to denote the time when (a development from the idea of place). But this case was preserved only in names of towns and a few other words, and the place where is usually denoted by the Ablative. In this construction the Ablative was, no doubt, used at first without a preposition, but afterwards it became associated with in in most cases.

254. The Ablative is used to denote the place where (usually with the preposition in, § 258. c).

a. The ablative of the place where is retained in many idiomatic expressions (cf. § 259. a) which have lost the idea of place: as,—

pendēmus animīs (Tusc. i. 96), we are in suspense of mind (in our minds).
socius periculis vōbiscum aderō (Jug. 85), I will be present with you, a companion in dangers.
premit altum corde dolōrem (Æn. i. 209), he keeps down the pain deep in his heart.

b. 1. Several verbs are followed by the locative ablative. These are:
acquiēscē, dēlectōr, laetōr, gaudeō, glōrior, nītor, stō, manēō,
fidō (cōnfidō), cōnsistō, contineōr. For dat. with (cōn)fidō, see § 227.

nōminibus veterum glōriantur (Orat. 169), they glory in the names of the ancients. [Also, dē divitiīs (in virtūte, circā rem, aliquid, haec) glōriāri.]
spē nīti (Att. iii. 9), to rely on hope.
prūdentīa fīdens (Off. i. 81), trusting in prudence.

2. The verbals frētus, contentus, and laetus take the locative ablative: as,—

frētus grātiā Brūtī (Att. v. 21), relying on the favor of Brutus.
laetus praedā, rejoicing in the booty.
contentus sorte, content with his lot. [Possibly abl. of cause.]

REMARK.—The ablative with the above verbs sometimes takes the preposition in (but fidō in is late): as,—
in quibus causa nītitur (Cæl. 25), on whom the case depends.
With several of these verbs the neuter accusative of pronouns is often found.


255. A noun or pronoun, with a participle,¹ may be put in the ablative, to define the time or circumstances of an action: as,—

¹ In this construction the noun was originally in the Locative Case, and denoted circumstance considered as place or time. Afterwards a participle was added to modify the noun, and the two words became fused in a single idea equivalent to that contained in a subordinate clause (cf. ab urbe conditā, from the founding of the city, lit. from the founded city). After the construction was established, other ablatives not locative no doubt became confounded with the real ablatives absolute,
vocātīs ad sc undique mercātōribus (B. G. iv. 20), having called to him the traders from all quarters (traders having been called).
quibus rebus cognītīs Caesar apud militēs contiōnātur (B. C. i. 7), having learned this, Caesar makes a speech to the soldiers.
āc si illō sublātō depelli ā vōbis omne periculum iūdicārem (Catil. ii. 3), and if I thought that with his removal (he being removed) all danger, etc.
nōndum hieme cōnfectā (B. G. vi. 3), the winter not yet over.
compressī cōnātūs nūllō tumultā publicē concitātō (Catil. i. 11), the attempts were put down without exciting any general alarm.
nē vōbis quidem omnibus rē etiam tum probatā (Catil. ii. 4), since at that time the facts were not yet proved even to all of you.
imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūniōne castrōrum (B. G. v. 15), while our men were off their guard and busy in the fortification of the camp.
fugātō omnī equitātū (B. G. vii. 68), all the cavalry being put to flight.
interfectō Indutiomarō (B. G. vi. 2), upon the death of Indutiomarus.

a. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction: 1 as, —

exiguā parte aestātīs reliquā (B. G. iv. 20), when but a small part of the summer was left (a small part of the summer remaining).
M. Messāla et M. Pisonē consulibus (id. i. 2), in the consulship of Messala and Piso (Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso being consuls). [The regular way of expressing dates, see § 259. e.]

b. A phrase or clause, used substantively, sometimes occurs as ablative absolute with a participle or an adjective: as, —

incertō quid peterent (Liv. xxviii. 36), as it was uncertain what they should aim at (it being uncertain, etc.).
compertō vānum esse formidinem (Tac. Ann. i. 66), when it was found that the alarm was groundless.

NOTE.—This construction belongs to later Latin.

c. A participle or an adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the ablative absolute without a substantive: as, —

cōnsultō et cōgitātō (Off. i. 27), on purpose and with reflection (the matter having been deliberated and thought on).
serēnō (Liv. xxxi. 12), under a clear sky (it [being] clear).
 nec auspicātō nec litātō (Liv. v. 38), with no auspices or favorable sacrifice.
tranquillō, ut aiunt, quilibet gubernātor est (Sen. Ep. 85, 29), in good weather, as they say, any man's a pilot.

1 The participle of esse, wanting in Latin (§ 119. a), is used in Sanskrit and Greek as in English.


262 Syntax: Construction of Cases. [§ 255.

d. The Ablative Absolute in its developed form often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. In such cases the noun is equivalent to a subject, and the other word to the predicate. So may be replaced:

1. Temporal clauses (§ 322. ff.): as, —

   patre interfecístō, [his] father having been killed. [This corresponds to cum pater interfecístus esset, when his father had been killed.]

   recentibus scleris cius vestigíis (Q. C. vii. 1. 1), while the traces of the crime were fresh. [ Cf. dum recentia sunt vestigía.]

2. Causal clauses (§ 321): as, —

   at eí qui Alesiae obsidebántur praeterítā dié quā auxilia suórum exspectáverant, cónsúmptó omní frúmentó, concílió coáctó consultábant (B. G. vii. 77), but those who were under siege at Alesia since the time, etc., had expired, and their grain had been exhausted, calling a council (see 5 below), consulted together. [ Cf. cum diès praeteríisset, etc.]

   Alexander, désprérātā pácē, ad reparandás vírēs intendit animum (Q. C. iv. 6, 1), Alexander, since he despaired of peace, devoted his energies to recruiting his forces. [ Cf. cum pácem désprérāret.]

3. Concessive clauses (§ 313): as, —

   at eó repugiánte fícbat (cónsul), immó véró eó fícbat magís (Milon. 34), but though he (Clodius) opposed, he (Milo) was likely to be elected consul; nay, rather, etc.

4. Conditional clauses (§ 304): as, —

   occurrébat eí, mancam et débilem prætúram futúram suam, cónsule Milónë (Milon. 25), it occurred to him that his praetorship would be maimed and feeble, if Milo were consul. [ si Milo cónsul esset.]

   quā (regióne) subáctā licébit décurrere in illud mare (Q. C. ix. 3), if this region is subdued, we shall be free to run down into that sea.

   quā quidem détráctā (Archias 28), if this be taken away.

5. Clauses of accompanying circumstance: as, —

   ego háec á Chrysogonó meá sponte, remótō Sex. Rosció, quaerō (Rosc. A. 130), of my own accord, without my own, without reference to Sextus Roscius (S. R. being put aside), I ask these questions of Chrysogonus.

   nec imperante nec sciente nec praesente domínō — (Milon. 29), without their master’s giving orders, or knowing it, or being present.

   Note.—As the English case absolute (the nominative) is far less common than the ablative absolute in Latin, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be rendered by a relative clause with when or while; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle in English. These changes may be seen in the following example: —


"At illi, intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs, atque occupatīs in munitione castrorum, subītō sē ex silvis circumcērunt; impetūque in eōs factō, qui erant in statione prō castrīs collocatī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duabusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus à Caesare, cum hae (perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē) consitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt, sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt." — CÆSAR, B. G. v. 15.

"But they, having paused a space, while our men were unaware and busied in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods; then making an attack upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, they fought fiercely; and, though two cohorts had been sent by Caesar as reinforcements, after these had taken their position (leaving very little space of ground between them), as our men were alarmed by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them, and got off safe."

[For the Ablative with Prepositions, see § 152.]

VI. — TIME AND PLACE.

1. Time.

256. Time when, or within which, is put in the Ablative; time how long in the Accusative: as, —

1. Ablative: —

constitūtā die, on the appointed day; primā luce, at daybreak.

quōtā hōrā, at what o'clock? tertia vigiliā, in the third watch.

tribus proximīs annis (Jug. ii), within the last three years.

2. Accusative: —

dīēs continuōs trigintā, for thirty days together.

cum triduum iter fecisset (B. G. ii. 16), when he had marched three days.

Note. — The ablative of time is locative in its origin (§ 254. head-note); the accusative is the same as that of the extent of space (§ 257). 

a. The Ablative of time within which sometimes takes in, and the Accusative of time how long, per for greater precision: as, —

in diēbus proximīs decem (Sall.), within the next ten days.

in brevi spatiō (Ov. Met. i. 411), within a brief space (of time).

lūdī per decem dīēs (Cat. iii. 20), games for ten days.

b. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative: as, —

militēs quīnque hōrīs proelium sustinuerant (B. C. i. 47), the men had sustained the fight five hours.

Note. — In this use the period of time is regarded as that within which the act is done, and it is only implied that the act lasted through the period.

2. Space.

257. Extent of space is put in the Accusative: as, —
Syntax: Construction of Cases. §§ 257, 258.

fossas quindecim pedes latas (B. G. vii. 72), trenches fifteen feet broad.
in omni vita sua quumque a recta conscientia transversum unguem non
oporet discedere (quoted in Att. xiii. 20), in all one's life, one should
not depart a nail's breadth from straightforward conscience.

NOTE.—This Accusative denotes the object through or over which the action
takes place, and is kindred with the Accusative of the End of Motion (cf. § 258).

a. Measure is often expressed by the Genitive of Quality (§ 215. b):
as,—

vallō pedum duodecim (B. G. ii. 30), in a rampart of twelve feet (in
height).

b. Distance when considered as extent of space is put in the Ac-
cusative; when considered as degree of difference, in the Ablative
(§ 250): as,—

quinque die̓rum iter abest (Liv. xxx. 29), it is distant five days' march.
trigintā mili̓bus passuum infrā eum locum (B. G. vi. 35), thirty miles below
that place (below by thirty miles).

3. Place from Which and End of Motion.

258. The place from which¹ is denoted by the Ablative
with ab, dé, or ex; the place to which (the End of Motion)
by the Accusative with ad or in: as,—

i. Place from which: —

ā septentrionē, from the north.
cum ā vōbis discēsserō (Cat. Maj. 79), when I leave you.
dē prōvinciā décédere, to come away from one's province.
dē monte, down from the mountain.
negotiātor ex Africā (Ver. ii. i. 14), a merchant from Africa.
influxit ē Graeciā rivulus (Rep. ii. 34), there flowed in a river from Greece.
ex Britannīā obsidēs miserunt (B. G. iv. 38), they sent hostages from Britain.
Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō (id. iv. 10), the Meuse (flows from) rises
in the Vosges mountains.
quās (nāvis) ex Pictonibus et Santōnīs reliquisque pācātus regionibus con-
venire iussērat (id. iii. 11), the ships which he had given orders should
collect from the [country of the] Pictones and the Santones and from
the other conquered regions.

¹ Originally all these relations were expressed with all these words by the cases
alone. The accusative denoted the end of motion as in a certain sense the object
of the action (cf. Rōmam petītī), and the ablative in its proper meaning of sepa-
ration denoted the place from which. The prepositions, originally adverbs, were
added to define more exactly the direction of motion, as in to usward, toward us,
and by long association became indispensable except as indicated above.
2. Place to which:—

ad fines Hycæniae penetrat (Q. C. vi. 4), he penetrates to the borders of Hycænia.

adibam ad istum fundum (Cæc. 82), I was going to that estate (cf. § 237. d).

in Africam navigavit, he sailed to Africa.

in Italiam prefectus, gone to Italy.

lēgātum in Treverōs mittit (B. G. iii. 11), he sends his lieutenant into the [country of the] Treveri.

in Piræa cum exissem (Att. vi. 9, 1), when I had landed at the Piræus.

[Admitted by Cicero himself to be wrong, the Piræus being a town (see b, below). The passage is discussed by him in Att. vii. 3.]

Note 1.—In poetry the end of motion is often expressed by the Dative (§ 225. b. 3): as,—

it clamor caelō (Æn. v. 451), a shout goes up to the sky.

Note 2.—With the name of a country, ad denotes to the borders; in, into the country itself. Similarly ab denotes away from the outside; ex, out of the interior. Thus ad Italiam pervēnit would mean, he came to the frontier, regardless of the destination; in Italiam, he went to Italy, i.e. to a place within it, to Rome, for instance. So ab Italīa prefectus est would mean, he came away from the frontier, regardless of the original starting-point; ex Italīa, he came from Italy, from within, as from Rome, for instance.

a. The names of towns or small islands from which, as also domus and rūs, are put in the Ablative without a preposition: as,—

Rōmā prefectus, having set out from Rome.

rüre reversus, having returned from the country.

Rōmā abesse, to be absent from Rome.

domō abire, to leave home.

Note 1.—With names of towns, etc., ab is often used, commonly to denote from the vicinity of: as,—

ut a Mutinā discēderet (Phil. xiv. 4), that he should retire from Mutina (which he was besieging).

erat a Gergoviā dēspectus in castra (B. G. vii. 45), there was from about G. a view into the camp.

profecti a domō (Liv. xl. 33), setting out from home.

loca quae a Brundisīō propius absunt (Att. viii. 14), places which are nearer to Brundisium (nearer from).

Note 2.—The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the place from which in certain idiomatic expressions: as,—

cēssisset patriā (Mil. 68), he would have left his country.

patriā pellere, to drive out of the country.

manū mittere, to emancipate (let go from the hand).

Note 3.—The poets often omit the preposition where it would be required in prose: as,—

mānis Acheronte remīssōs (Æn. v. 99), the spirits returned from Acheron.
b. The names of towns or small islands to which as also domus and rūs, are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,—

Rōmam rediit, he returned to Rome.
Dēlō Rhodum navigāre, to sail from Delos to Rhodes.
rṳs ἵβο, I shall go into the country.
domum itt, he went home. [So, suās domōs abire, to go to their homes.]

Note 1.—In this use domum may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive. When otherwise modified, domum requires the preposition in. Thus,—
domum rēgis (Dei. 17), to the king’s house. [But also in M. Laecae domum (Cat. i. 8), to M. Laca’s house.] But,—
in domum māgnam venire, to come into a large house.

Note 2.—With the names of towns, etc., ad may be used in the sense of towards, to the neighborhood of: as,—

ad Alesiam proficiscuntur (B. G. vii. 76), they set out for Alesia.
ad Alesiam perveniunt (id. vii. 79), they arrive at Alesia (come through to).
ad Athēnās navigāre, to set sail for Athens (landing in the harbor).

Note 3.—The general words, urbs, oppidum, insula require a preposition in either construction (to which or from which): as, ad urbem, ab urbe, ad urbem Rōmam, Rōmam ad urbem, ex urbe Rōmā.

Note 4.—Two or more nouns are sometimes expressed after one verb as limits of motion (see § 259. b).

Note 5.—The poets often omit the preposition with any noun: as,—

Ītaliam Lāviniaque vēnit litora (Æn. i. 2), he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.
finis Ītalōs mūtēre (id. iii. 440), you shall be allowed to reach the Italian boundaries.
terram Hesperiam veniēs (id. ii. 781), you shall come to the Hesperian land.

Remark.—The preposition is omitted with the supine in -um (§ 302) and in the following old phrases:—

exsequiās īre, to go to the funeral. īnifiās īre, to resort to denial.
pessum īre, to go to ruin. pessum dare, to ruin (cf. perdō).
vēnum dare, to sell (give to sale). [Hence vēndere.]
vēnum īre, to be sold (go to sale). [Hence vēnīre.]
forās (used as adverb), out: as, forās egredi, to go out of doors.

4. The Place Where.

c. 1. The place where is denoted by the Ablative with the preposition in (Locative Ablative): as,—

in hāc urbe vitam dēgit, he passed his life in this city.
sī in Gallīa remanērent (B. G. iv. 8), if they should stay in Gaul.
dum haec in Venetīs geruntur (id. iii. 17), while this was going on among the Veneti.

oppidum in īnsulā posītum (id. vii. 58), a town situated on an island.
2. But names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative Case.

This has in the first and the second declension singular the same form as the Genitive, in the plural and in the third declension the same form as the Dative or Ablative: as,—

Rhodi, at Rhodes (Rhodus).  Lanuvī, at Lanuvium.
Samī, at Samos.  Cypī, at Cyprus.
Tiburi or Tibure, at Tibur  Ćuribus, at Cures.
Philippis, at Philippi.  Capreis, at Capri (Capreae).

Remark.—Large islands, and all places when thought of as a territory and not as a locality are treated like names of countries: as,—

in Sicilīā, in Sicily.
in Ithacā lepores illātī moriuntur (Plin. H. N., cf. § 256. a), in Ithaca hares when carried there die. [Ulysses lived at Ithaca, would require Ithacae.]

Note 1.—With all names of places at, meaning near (not in), is expressed by ad or apud with the Accusative. In the neighborhood of may be expressed by circā with the Accusative; among, by apud with the Accusative. Thus,—

pūgna ad Cannās, the fight at Cannae.
conchas ad Cāiētam legunt (De Or. ii. 22), at Caieta (along the shore).
ad (apud) īnferōs, in the world below (near or among those below).
ad forēs, at the doors.  ad iānua, at the door.
. apud Graecōs, among the Greeks.  apud mē, at my house.
apud Solōs (Leg. ii. 41), at Soli.  circā Capuam, round about Capua.

Note 2.—In citing an author, apud is regularly used; in citing a particular work, in. Thus,—
apud Xenophōntem, in Xenophon.  But,—
in Xenophōntis Oeconomicō, in Xenophon's Oeconomicus.

d. The Locative Case is also preserved in the following common nouns:—

domī (rarely domui), at home.
bellī, militiae (in contrast to domī), abroad, in military service.
humī, on the ground:  rūrī, in the country.

These are used like names of towns, without a preposition. So also,—

herī (-e), yesterday.  vesperī (-e), in the evening.
īnfelici arborī (Liv. i. 26), on the ill-omened tree.
e. The locative domī may be modified by a possessive adjective or a limiting genitive; but, when it would be otherwise modified some other construction is used instead of the Locative. Thus,—

domī Caesaris, at Caesar’s house.
domī suae vel alienae, at his own or another’s house. But,—
in Mārci Crassi castissimā domō (Cælius 9), in the chaste home of Marcus Crassus. [Cf. ex Anniānā Milōnis domō, § 184. d.]

f. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in several constructions:—

1. Regularly in many indefinitely words, such as locō, parte: as,—
quibus locō positūs (De Or. iii. 153), when these are set in position.
quā parte victi erant (Att. ix. 11), on the side where they were beaten. But, exercitum castrīs continuit (B. G. i. 48), he kept his army in camp.
   [Here the construction is influenced by means.]

2. Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when tōtus is used): as,—
   mediā urbe (Liv. i. 33), in the middle of the city.
tōtā Siciliā (Verr. iv. 51), throughout Sicily (in the whole of Sicily). So,—
tōtā Tarračinā (De Or. ii. 240), in all Tarracina (cf. c. 2. Rem.).

3. Freely in poetry: as,—
litore curvō (Æn. iii. 16), on the winding shore.
antrō séclūsa relinquit (id. iii. 446), she leaves them shut up in the cave.
Æpirō, Hesperiā (id. iii. 503), in Epirus, in Hesperia.

g. The way by which is put in the ablative without a preposition: as,—

viā breviōre equitēs praemisl (Fam. x. 9), I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road.
Aegaeō mari trāīēcit (Liv. xxxvii. 14), he crossed by way of the Ægean Sea.
prōvehimur pelagō (Æn. iii. 506), we sail forth over the sea.

Note. — In this use the way by which is conceived as the means of passage.

5. Special Uses of Time and Place.

259. The following special uses require to be observed:—

a. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of time when, where in English the main idea is rather of place: as,—
pūgnā Cannēnsi (or apud Cannās), in the fight at Cannæ.
lūdīs Rōmānīs, at the Roman games.
omnibus Gallicīs bellīs, in all the Gallic wars.
§ 259. Special Uses of Time and Place.

b. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the accusative with ad, in, or sub is used. Such are the following:

\[\text{supplicatio decreta est in Kalendas Ianuarias, a thanksgiving was voted for the 1st of January.}\]
\[\text{convenerunt ad diem, they assembled at the [appointed] day.}\]
\[\text{ad vesperum, till evening; sub vesperum, towards evening.}\]
\[\text{sub idem tempus, about the same time.}\]
\[\text{sub noctem, at night-fall.}\]

\[\text{c. Time during which or within which may be expressed by the acc. or abl. of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral: as,}\]
\[\text{quinto die, within [just] four days (lit., on the fifth day). [The Romans counted both ends, see § 376. d.]}\]
\[\text{regnat iam sextum annum, he has reigned going on six years (he is reigning now the sixth year).}\]
\[\text{But also, — regnavit iam sex annos, he has already reigned for six years.}\]

d. Distance of time before or after anything is variously expressed:

\[\text{post (ante) tres annos, post tertium annum, tres post annos, tertium post annum, tribus post annis, tertio post annō (§ 250), three years after.}\]
\[\text{tribus annis (tertiō annō) post exsilium (postquam ejectus est), three years after his exile.}\]
\[\text{his tribus proximis annis, within the last three years.}\]
\[\text{paucis annis, a few years hence.}\]
\[\text{abhinc annōs tres (tribus annīs), ante hōs tres annōs, three years ago.}\]
\[\text{triennium est cum (tres anni sunt cum), it is three years since.}\]
\[\text{octāvō mēnse quam (see § 262, note 2), the eighth month after.}\]

e. In Dates the phrase ante diem (a. d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.

The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, often without a conjunction (§ 255. a): as, —

\[\text{is dies erat a. d. quintum Kalendas Aprilis L. Pisone A. Gabiniō consulibus (B. G. i. 6), that day was the 5th before the calends of April (March 28), in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius.}\]
\[\text{in a. d. v. Kal. Nov. (Cat. i. 7), to the 5th day before the calends of November (Oct. 28).}\]
\[\text{XV. Kal. Sextilis, the 15th day before the calends of August (July 18). [Full form: quintō decimō die antē Kalendas.]}\]

f. For at, meaning near (not in), see § 258. c. note 1.

Note. — For to and from with names of places, see § 258.
g. When motion to a place is implied in English, though not expressed, the accusative with or without a preposition must be used in Latin: as,—

coniūrātī in eūriam convēnērunt, *the conspirators met in the Senate-house, (came together into the Senate-house).

concilium domum suam convocāvit, *he called a council at his own house.

h. When two or more names of place follow a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction. Thus,—

quadriduō quō haec gesta sunt rēs ad Chrūsogonum in castra L. Sullae Volāterrās dēsētur (Rosc. A. 20), *within four days after this was done, the matter was reported to Chrysogonus IN Sulla's camp AT Volaterra.

VII.—USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

260. Some Prepositions are used with the Accusative, some with the Ablative,¹ and a few with both.

NOTE.—For the list of Prepositions, see § 152.

a. Verbs of placing, though implying motion, take the construction of the place in which.

Such are: pōnō and its compounds (except impōnō), locō, collocō, statuō, cōnstituō, etc.

qui in sēde ac domō collocāvit (Paradox. 25), *who put [one] into his place and home.

statuitur eques Rōmānus in Aprōnī convīviō (Verr. iii. 62), *a Roman knight is brought into a banquet of Apronius.

insula Dēlos in Aegaeō mari posita (Leg. Man. 55), *the island of Delos, situated in the Ægean Sea.

si in ūnō Pompēliō omnia pōnerētis (id. 59), *if you made everything depend on Pompey alone.

b. Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with ab (rarely ex), properly meaning from:² as,—

ā tergo, in the rear.

ā parte Pompēliānā, on the side of Pompey.

ā sinistrā, on the left hand. [Cf. hine, on this side.]

ex alterā parte, on the other side.

māgnā ex parte, in a great degree (from, i.e. in, a great part).

¹ The force lies strictly with the Case, and the preposition only indicates more clearly direction or place.

² Apparently the direction whence the sensuous impression comes.
§ 260, 261. Use of Prepositions.

260. c. **Super** in the sense of *concerning* takes the Ablative; in all other senses it takes the Accusative: as,—

hāc super rē (Cic.), *concerning this thing.*
super tāli causā missī (Nep. Paus. 4), *sent on such an errand.*
sed hāc rē super nīmis (Att. x. 8), *but more than enough on that point.*
super culmina tēctī (Æn. ii. 695), *above the house-top.*
super vallum præcipitāri (Jug. 58), *to be hurled over the rampart.*
super laterēs cōria įndūcuntur (B. C. ii. 10), *hides are drawn over the bricks.*
super Numidiam (Jug. 19), *beyond Numidia.*
super terrae tumulum (Legg. ii. 66), *on the mound of earth.*
super vinum (Q. C. viii. 4), *over [his] wine.*

**Note.** — The ablative is used in poetry with **super** in other senses: as,—

līgna super fōco lārgē repōnēns (Hor. Od. i. 9. 5), *piling logs generously on the fire.*

nocte super mediā (Æn. ix. 61), *after midnight.*

d. **Subter** takes the Accusative, except sometimes in poetry. Thus, subter togam (Liv.), *under his mantle.* But,—

subter lītore (Catull.), *below the shore.*

e. **Tenus** (which follows its noun) regularly takes the Ablative, but sometimes the Genitive (§ 223. e). Thus,—

Taurō tenus (Deiot. 36), *as far as Taurus.*
capulō tenus (Æn. ii. 553), *up to the hilt.*
Corcyrae tenus (Liv. xxv. 24), *as far as Corcyra.*

**Note.** — **Tenus** is frequently connected with the feminine of an adjective pronoun, making an adverbial phrase: as,—

hāc tēnus, *hitherto; quātēnus, so far as.*
dē hāc rē hāc tēnus, *so much for that* (about this matter so far).

261. Many words may be construed either as Prepositions or as Adverbs: thus,—

a. The adverbs prīdiē, postrīdiē, propius, proximē,\(^1\) usque—also (less frequently) the adjectives propior and proximus—may be followed by the Accusative (cf. §§ 207. b, 234. e): as,—

prīdiē Nōnās Īuniās (Cic.), *the day before the Nones of June (June 4).*
postrīdiē ḳūdōs (Att. xvi. 4), *the day after the games.*
ipse propior montem suōs collocat (Jug. 49), *he stations his men nearer the hill.*
proximē Pompēium sedēbam (Att. i. 14), *I sat next to Pompey.* [Cf. proximus Pompēium sedēbam.]

\(^1\) Cf. prope, § 152. a.
pars insulae quae est propius solis occasum (B. G. iv. 28), the part of the island which is nearer the west (sunset).

terminös usque Libyae (Just.), to the bounds of Libya.

Note.—Pridiē and postridiē take also the Genitive (§ 223. e. note 2). Proprior, propius, proximus, and proximē, take also the Dative, or the Ablative with ab. Usque is commonly followed by ad. Thus,—

propius Tiberi (Nep.), nearer the Tiber.
propius ab urbe (Plin.), nearer the city.
usque ad mare, to the sea.

b. The adverbs palam, procul, simul, may be used as prepositions and take the ablative (so perhaps intus, § 153, note) : as,—

rem crēditōrī palam populō solvit (Liv. vi. 14), he paid the debt in the presence of the people.
haud procul castrīs in modum mūnicīpiō exstrēctā (Tac. H. iv. 22), not far from the camp, built up like a town.
simul nōbis habitat barbarus (Ov. Tr. v. 10. 29), close among us dwells the barbarian.

Note.—But simul regularly takes cum; procul is usually followed by ab in classic use; and the use of palam as a preposition is comparatively late. Thus,—

procul ā mari, far from the sea.
nōbiscum simul, at the same time with ourselves.

c. The adverb clam is found with the Accusative or Ablative, rarely with the Genitive or Dative: as,—

clam mātrem suam (Plaut.), unknown to his mother.
clam mihi (id.), in secret from me.
clam patris (id.), without his father’s knowledge.
clam vōbis (B. C. ii. 32), without your knowledge.

d. Prepositions often retain their original meaning as adverbs.
So especially —

1. Ante and post in relations of time: as,—
quae paulō ante praecepta dedimus (Cic.), a little while ago, etc.
post tribus diēbus, three days after (cf. § 259. d).

2. Adversus, contrā, circiter, prōpe: as,—
adversus resistere, to hold out in opposition.
Aeolus haec contrā, thus Æolus in reply.
circiter pars quārta, about the fourth part.
prōpe examinātus, nearly lifeless.

3. In general those ending in -ā: as,—
forte fuit īūxtā tumulus, there happened to be a mound close by.

Note.—Clam and versus are by many excluded from the list of prepositions. [For the use of Prepositions in Composition, see § 170.]
262. Some prepositions or adverbs which imply Comparison are followed, like comparatives, by quam, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses.

neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit (Liv. xxxix. 10), nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.

post diem tertium quam dixerat (Mil. 44), the third day after he said it.

NOTE 1.—Such words are ante, prius, post, pridiē, postridiē; also magis and prae in compounds: as,—

Catō ipsé iam servīre quam pūgnāre māvult (Att. vii. 15), Cato himself by this time would rather be a slave than fight.

si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānō- rum imperia praēferre (B. G. i. 17), if they can no longer hold the chief rank in Gaul, [they] prefer the rule of Gauls to that of Romans.

NOTE 2.—The ablative of time (§ 256) is sometimes followed by quam in the same way: as,—

octāvō mēnse quam (Liv. xxi. 15), within eight months after, etc.

263. For a or ab with the Ablative of Agent, see § 246.

NOTE.—The following prepositions sometimes follow their nouns: ad, citrā, circā, contrā, dē, ē (ex), inter, lūxtā, penes, propter, ēltrā, tenus (regularly), and occasionally others: as,—

[ūsus] quem penes arbitrīum est et īus et nōrmā loquendi (Hor. A. P. 72),
custom, under whose control is the choice, right, and rule of speech.

cūius ā mē corpus est cremātum, quod contrā decuit ab illō meum (C. M. 84), whose body I burned [on the funeral pile], while on the contrary (lit. contrary to which) mine should have been burned by him.
Chapter III.—Syntax of the Verb.

I.—Moods and Tenses.

Note.—The Syntax of the Verb relates chiefly to the use of the Moods (expressing the manner in which the action is conceived) and the Tenses (expressing the time of the action). There is no difference in origin between mood and tense. The moods, except the infinitive, are only specialized tenses; and hence the uses of mood and tense frequently cross each other. Thus the tenses sometimes have modal significations (compare indicative in apodosis, § 311. c; future for imperative, § 269. f); and the moods sometimes express time (compare subjunctive in future conditions, § 307. b, and notice the want of a future subjunctive § 110. a).

The parent language, besides the imperative mood, had two distinct forms with modal signification: the Subjunctive, expressing an action as willed or vividly conceived; and the Optative, expressing an action as wished for or vaguely conceived.

Of these, the Subjunctive was developed from a Present Tense, by which an action continued in present time was represented as future: compare in English, the army marches to-morrow. Such an action came to be conceived on the one hand as command: compare the military order, the regiment will advance; and on the other as a possibility or a mere conception: compare anybody will understand that.

The Optative has had a similar development. It was originally a tense-form compounded with YA, and probably denoted past time (cf. Eng. should and would); but like the subjunctive, it has acquired the two meanings of conception and command.

It must not be supposed, however, that in any given construction either the subjunctive or the optative was deliberately used because it denoted conception or possibility. On the contrary, each construction has had its own line of development from more tangible and literal forms of thought to more vague and ideal; and by this process the mood used comes to have in each case a special meaning, which is afterwards habitually associated with it in that construction. Thus in English the expression I would do this has become equivalent to a mild command; while by analysis it is seen to be the apodosis of a present condition contrary to fact (§ 308): if I were you, etc. By further analysis, I would go is seen to have meant, originally, I should have wished (or I did wish) to go.

In Latin, the original subjunctive and the optative became confounded in form and meaning, and were merged in the present subjunctive. Then new tense-forms of the subjunctive were formed by composition; 1 and to these the original as well as the derived meanings of both moods became attached (see § 265). All the independent uses of the Latin subjunctive are thus to be accounted for.

The dependent uses of the subjunctive have arisen in every case from the employment of some independent subjunctive construction in co-ordination with a main statement. In time the two clauses have so grown together as to form a single

1 For the signification of these tense-endings, see pp. 120, 121.
§ 264. [The Indicative Mood.

compound sentence, and the subjunctive member is felt to have assumed subordinate relations toward the other clause. The original meaning of the mood has disappeared, and a new meaning has arisen by implication. Thus, misit légátos qui dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say (i.e. who would say in a supposed case). Similar processes may be seen in the growth of Apodosis. Thus, tolle banc opiniónem, lúctum sustuleris (remove this notion, you will have done away with grief: i.e. if you remove, etc.).

The infinitive is originally a verbal noun, modifying a verb like other nouns: voló vidére, lit. "I wish for-seeing": compare English what went ye out for to see? But in Latin it has been surprisingly developed, so as to have forms for tense, and some proper modal characteristics, and to be used as a substitute for other moods.

The other noun and adjective forms of the verb have been developed in various ways, which are treated under their respective heads below.

The proper verbal constructions may be thus classified:—

1. **Indicative:** Direct Assertion or Question (§ 264).

   1. Independent:
      a. Wish, Exhortation, Command, Question (§ 265).
      2. Purpose (with ut, nē) (§ 317).
      3. Result (with ut, ut nōn) (§ 319).
      4. Characteristic (Relative Clause) (§ 320).
      5. Time (with cum) (§ 325).
      6. Conditions (Future (less vivid)) (§ 307, b, c).
      7. Contrary to Fact (§ 308).
      8. Intermediate (Indirect Discourse) (§ 341).
      9. Indirect Questions or Commands (§§ 334, 339).

2. **Subjunctive:**

   1. Direct Commands (often subjunctive) (§ 269).
   3. Prohibitions (early or poetic use) (§ 269, note).

   a. Subject of esse and Impersonal verbs (§ 270).

3. **Imperative:**

   2. Indirect Discourse (with subject-accusative) (§ 272).

   a. Objective Constructions:
   1. Purpose (poetic or Greek use) (§ 273).
   2. Exclamation (with subject-accusative) (§ 274).

   b. Idiomatic Uses:
   1. Historical Infinitive (§ 275).

I.—Moods.

1. The **Indicative.**

264. The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions when there is no modification of the verbal idea except that of time.

a. The Tenses of the Indicative generally denote time, as present, past, or future, with reference to the speaker (§ 276 ff.).

1 Compare note on the development of syntaxis from parataxis, p. 164.
276

Syntax: The Verb. [§§ 264, 265.

NOTE.—Time thus denoted is often called absolute time. See uses of temporal clauses, § 323.

b. The Indicative is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the Subjunctive: as,—

longum est, it would be tedious [if, etc.].
satius erat, it would have been better [if, etc.].
persequi possum, I might follow up [in detail].

c. The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the Imperative (§ 269.f).

d. The indicative is used in some kinds of conditions (see §§ 306, 308).

e. The place of the indicative in narration is sometimes supplied by the Historical Infinitive (§ 275).

f. In Indirect Discourse a narrative clause has its verb in the Infinitive (see §§ 272, 336).

II. The Subjunctive.

265. The Subjunctive in general expresses the verbal idea with some modification\(^1\) such as is expressed in English by auxiliaries, by the infinitive, or by the rare subjunctive (§ 112. b).

The uses of the subjunctive are independent or dependent (cf. head-note, p. 274).

a. The Subjunctive is used independently to express—

1. An Exhortation, Concession, or Command (Hortatory, § 266).
2. A Wish (Optative, § 267).
3. A Question of Doubt or Deliberation (Deliberative, § 268).

NOTE.—These constructions (with the exception of some forms of Deliberative Subjunctive) are merely different phases of the same use.

REMARK.—In the conclusion (apodosis) of Conditional Sentences, the subjunctive is grammatically independent, though logically it depends on some condition expressed or implied (§ 304). The so-called Potential Subjunctive comes under this head (see § 311. a).

b. The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses to express—

\(^1\) These modifications are of various kinds, each of which has had its own special development (compare introductory note, p. 274). The subjunctive in Latin has also many idiomatic uses (see clauses of Result and Time), where the English does not modify the verbal idea at all, but expresses it directly; but in these cases the Latin merely takes a different view of the action, and has developed its construction differently from the English.
Hortatory Subjunctive.

1. Purpose (Final, § 317).
2. Result (Consecutive, § 319).
3. Characteristic (§ 320).
4. Time (Temporal, § 325).
5. Indirect question (§ 334).
6. Condition: future or contrary to fact (§§ 307. b, c, 308).

c. The subjunctive is also used with Particles of Comparison (§ 312), and in subordinate clauses in the Indirect Discourse (§ 336).

The Hortatory Subjunctive is used to express an exhortation, a command, a concession, or a condition.

The Present tense refers to future or indefinite time; the Perfect, to past time or completed future time; the Imperfect, to present or past time; the Pluperfect, to completed past time: as,—

hős latrönis interficiámus (B. G. vii. 58), let us kill these robbers.
caevant intemperantiam, meminerint verecundiae (Of. i. 122), let them shun excess and cherish modesty.
Epicurus hoc viderit (Ac. ii. 19), let Epicurus look to this.

NOTE.—The simple subjunctive of exhortation and command takes the present tense, less commonly the perfect. The Perfect represents an action as completed in future time; but in most cases is hardly to be distinguished from the Present. Other tenses are used in some varieties of this construction (see c. note 1 and e).

REMARK.—The negative particle used with the hortatory subjunctive is nē.

The Second Person is used only of an indefinite subject, except in prohibition, in early Latin, and in poetry (cf. § 269. b). Thus,—

iniūriās fortūnae, quās ferre nequeās, dēfugiendō relinquās (Tus. v. 118)
the wrongs of fortune, which you cannot bear, leave behind by flight.
exoriarē aliquis ultōr (Æn. iv. 625), rise, some avenger.
istō bonō ūtāre dum adsit, cum absit nē requirās (Cat. Maj. 33), use this blessing while it is present; when it is wanting, do not regret it.
nē cōnferās culpam in mē (Ter. Eun. 388), don't lay the blame on me.
nihil Ignōveris (Mur. 65), pardon nothing.
doceās iter et sacra òstia pandās (Æn. vi. 109), show us the way and lay open the sacred portals.

In Prohibitions addressed to a definite person, the perfect is more common than the present (cf. § 269. a): as,—
The hortatory subjunctive is especially used to express a Concession, sometimes with ut, nē, quamvis, quamlibet, or similar words (cf. § 313. a): as,—

fuerit aliis: tibi quandō esse coepit (Ver. ii. i. 37), suppose he was [so] to others, when did he begin to be to you?

ut ratiōnem Platō nullam afferret (Tusc. i. 49), though Plato adduced no reasons.

nēmō is unquam fuit: nē fuerit (Or. 101), there never was such a one [you will say]: granted (let there not have been).

nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est (Tus. ii. 14), granted that pain is not the greatest evil, at least it is an evil.

quamvis scelerāti illi fuissent (De Or. i. 230), however guilty they might have been.

quamvis comis in amicitias tuendīs fuerit (Fin. ii. 80), amiable as he may have been in keeping his friendships (let him have been as amiable as you please).

Note 1.—In this use the Present refers to future or indefinite time, the Imperfect to present or past time (the concession being impliedly untrue), the Perfect to past or completed future time, the Pluperfect to completed action in past time (the concession being usually untrue).

Note 2.—The Indicative is often used in concessions (see § 313).

Remark.—Concessions with si and its compounds belong to Protasis (see § 313. c); those with licet, to Substantive Clauses (see § 313. d).

§. The hortatory subjunctive may be used to denote a PROVISO (see § 314).

§. The Imperfect and Pluperfect of the hortatory subjunctive denote an unfulfilled obligation in past time: as,—

morērētur, inquiēs (Rab. Post. 29), he should have died, you will say.

potius diceret (Off. iii. 88), he should rather have said.

nē poposcissēs (Att. ii. 1), you should not have asked.

saltem aliquid dē pondere dētrāxisset (Fin. iv. 57), at least he should have taken something from the weight.

Remark.—This use of the subjunctive is carefully to be distinguished from its use in apodosis (potential, § 311. a). The difference is indicated by the translation, should or ought (not would or might).

Note.—In this use the Pluperfect differs from the Imperfect only in more clearly representing the time for action as momentary or as past.
The Subjunctive is used to express a Wish. The present tense denotes the wish as possible, the imperfect as unaccomplished in present time, the pluperfect as unaccomplished in past time. Thus,—

ita vivam (Att. v. 15), so may I live (as true as I live).
ne vivam si scio (id. iv. 16), I wish I may not live if I know.
di tē perduint (Dei. 21), the gods confound thee!
valeant, valeant, civēs mei; valeant, sint incolumēs (Mil. 93), farewell [he says], my fellow-citizens; may they be secure from harm.
di facerent sine patre forem (Ov. Met. viii. 72), would that the gods allowed me to be without a father (but they do not)!

a. The Perfect in this use is antiquated: as,—
male di tibi faxint (Plaut. Curc. 131), may the gods do thee a mischief.

b. The Optative Subjunctive is often preceded by the particles uti (ut), utinam, ū sī: as,—

ut pereat posītum rōbigine tēlum (Hor. Sat. ii. 1), may the weapon unused perish with rust.
falsus utinam vātēs sīm (Liv. xxii.), I wish I may be a false prophet.

utinam P. Clōdius vīveret (Mil. 103), would that Clodius were now alive.

utinam mē mortuum vidīsses (Q. Fr. i. 3), would you had seen me dead.

ā sī angulus ille accēdat (Hor. Sat. ii. 6. 8), oh! if that corner might only be added.

Note 1.—The subjunctive with uti, etc., was originally deliberative, meaning how may I, etc. (§ 268). The subjunctive with ū sī (poetical) is a protasis (§ 312 note); sī alone is sometimes used to express a wish in the same way: as,—
sī nunc sē nobīs ille aureus rāmus ostendat (Æn. vi. 187), if now that golden branch would only show itself to us!

Note 2.—The subjunctive of Wish without a particle is rarely found in the imperfect or pluperfect except by sequence of tenses in Indirect Discourse (§ 286): as,—

āc venerāta Cērēs ita culmō surgeret altō (Hor. Sat. ii. 2. 124), and Cēres worshipped [with libations] that so she might rise with tall stalk. [Direct: ētā surgās.]

c. Velim and vellem, and their compounds, with a subjunctive or infinitive, are often equivalent to an optative subjunctive: as,—
dē Menedēmō vellem vērum fuisset, dē rēgīnā velim vērum sit (Att. xv. 4), about Menedemus I wish it had been true; about the queen I hope it may be.
nōllem accidisset tempus (Fam. iii. 10), I wish the time never had come.
māllem Cerberum metuerēs (Tus. i. 12), I had rather have had you afraid of Cerberus (I should have preferred that you feared C.).

**Note.**—Vellīm, etc., in this use, are strictly apodoses with the protasis omitted (§ 311. b). The thing wished is really a substantive clause used as object of the verb of wishing (§ 331. b).

[For Concessive Subjunctive, see § 313; for Potential Subjunctive, see § 311.]

**3. Deliberative Subjunctive.**

**268.** The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing being done: as, —

quid hōc homine faciās? quod supplicium dignum libidini eīus inveniās
(Verr. ii. 40), what are you to do with this man? what fit penalty can you devise for his wantonness?
an ego nōn venīrem (Phil. ii. 3), what, should I not have come?
quid dīcerem (Att. vi. 3), what was I to say?
mihi umquam bonōrum praesidium défuturum putārem (Mil. 94), could I think that the defence of good men would ever fail me?
quis enim cēlāverit ignem (Ov. Her. xv. 7), who could conceal the flame?

**Remark.**—This use is apparently derived from the Hortatory Subjunctive: quid faciāmus? = faciāmus [falliquid], quid? let us do — what? Once established, it was readily transferred to the past: quid faceram? what am I to do?
quid facerem? what was I to do? Questions implying impossibility, however, cannot be distinguished from Apodosis (cf. § 311. a).

**Note.**—The Deliberative Subjunctive is sometimes called Dubitative. For tenses, see § 266.

**III. The Imperative.**

**269.** The Imperative is used in Commands and Entreaties: as, —

cōnsulite vōbis, prospicite patriae, cōnservāte vōs (Cat. iv. 3), have a care for yourselves, guard the country, preserve yourselves.
die Māre Tullī sententiam, Marcus Tullius, state your opinion.
tē ipsum concute, examine yourself.

vive, valēque (Hor. Sat. ii. 5. 110), farewell, bless you (live and be well)!
miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis (Æn. ii. 144), pity a soul bearing undeserved woes.

**Note.**—In Negative Commands (prohibitions) the Present Imperative with nē is used by early writers and the poets: as, —
nē timē (Plaut. Curc. 520), don't be afraid.
nimium nē crēde colōri (Ecl. ii. 17), trust not too much to complexion.
equǒ nē crēdite (Æn. ii. 48), trust not the horse.

[For the Future Imperative with nē in laws and formal precepts, see d. 3, below.]
Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose:

1. By ne with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive: as, —
   nē territus fueris (Tac. H. i. 16), don't be alarmed.
   nē vōs quidem iūdīcēs ei qui mē absolvīstis mortem timueritis (Tusc. i. 98), nor must you fear death, you judges that, etc.

2. By nōli with the infinitive: as, —
   nōli putāre (Fam. xiv. 2), do not suppose (be unwilling to suppose).
   nōlīte cōgere sociōs (Ver. ii. 1. 82), do not compel the allies.

Note. — The poets frequently use instead of nōli other words of similar meaning (cf. § 273. c): as, —
   parce piās scelērāre manūs (Æn. iii. 42), forbear to defile your pious hands.
   cētera mītē loquī (Hor. Epod. 13. 7), forbear to say the rest.
   fuge quae rere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), do not inquire.

3. By cave with or without ne (colloquially fac ne) with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive¹ (§ 266. b): as, —
   cave putēs (Att. vii. 20), don't think.
   cave dixeris, don't say so.
   cave faxis (Ter. Heaut. 187), don't do it.
   fac nē quid alīud cūrēs (Fam. xvi. 11), see that you attend to nothing else.

Note. — Other negatives sometimes take the place of nē: as, —
   nōn dubitāveris (Sen. Q. N. i. 3, 3), you must not doubt.
   nihil ignōveris (Mur. 65), grant no pardon (pardon nothing).

General Prohibitions addressed to no definite person are regularly expressed by the Present Subjunctive with nē (cf. c, below): as, —
   dēnique istō bonō ūtāre dum adsit: cum absit nē requi rās (Cat. Maj. 33),
   in short, use this good while present; when wanting, do not regret it.

Note. — The poets and early writers sometimes use the Present Subjunctive with nē in prohibitions not general: as, —
   molestus nē sis (Plaut. Most. 771), don't be troublesome.
   nē sis patruus mihi (Hor. Sat. ii. 3. 88), don’t be a [harsh] uncle to me.

The third person of the imperative is antiquated or poetical: —
   ollis salūs populi suprēma lēx estō, the safety of the people shall be their first law.
   iūsta imperia suntō, eisque cīvēs modestē pārentō (Læc. iii. 6), let there be lawful authorities, and let the citizens strictly obey them.

Note. — In prose the Hortatory Subjunctive is commonly used instead (§ 266) as,
   haec igitur lēx in amicitā sanciātur (Læc. 40), let this law then be laid down in case of friendship.

¹ In prohibitions the Subjunctive with ne is hortatory; that with cave is an object clause (originally hortatory, cf. § 331./f, Rem.).
The Future Imperative is used in commands, etc., where there is a distinct reference to future time; viz.,—

1. In connection with some form that marks a condition precedent (as a future, a future-perfect, or an imperative). Thus,—

Phyllida mitte mihi, meus est nātīlis, Iollā; cum faciam vitulā prō frūgibus ipse venītō (Ecl. iii. 76), send Phyllis to me, it is my birthday, Iollas; when I [shall] sacrifice a heifer for the harvest, come yourself; dic quibus in terris, etc., et Phyllida sōlus habētō (id. iii. 107), tell in what lands, etc., and have Phyllis for yourself.

2. With adverbs or other expressions of Time: as,—

crās petitō, dabitur (Pl. Merc. 769), ask to-morrow [and] it shall be given.

3. In general directions, as Precepts, Statutes, and Wills: as,—

cum valētūdīni cōnsulēris, tum cōnsulītō navigātiōni (Fam xvi. 4), when you have attended to your health, then look to your sailing.

is iūris civilis custōs estō (Leg. iii. 8), let him (the prētor) be the guardian of civil right.

Borea flante, nē arātō, sēmen nē iacītō (Plin. H. N. xviii. 77), when the north wind blows, plough not nor sow your seed.

The verbs scīō, mēmīnī, and habēō (in the sense of consider), regularly use the Future Imperative instead of the Present: as,—

filiolō mē auctum scītō (Att. i. 2), learn that I am blessed with a little boy.

sic habētō, mi Tīrō (Fam. xvi. 4), so understand it, my good Tiro.

dē pallā mēmēntō, amābō (Pl. Asin.), pray, dear, remember about the gown.

The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; and quīn (why not?) with the Present Indicative may have the force of a command: as,—

si quid acciderit novī, faciēs ut sciam (Fam. xiv. 8), you will let me know if anything new happens.

quin accipis (Ter. Heaut. 832)? here, take it (why not take it?).

8. Instead of the simple Imperative, cūrā, fac, or velim, followed by the subjunctive with or without ut (§ 331. f. r.) is often used, especially in colloquial language: as,—

cūrā ut Rōmae sis (Att. i. 2), take care to be at Rome.

fac cūrēs ut ērēs (Ter. Eun. 500), do try to induce [him].

fac ut valētūdīnem cūrēs (Fam. xiv. 17), see that you take care of your health. [Cf. rūs cō. fac, amābō (Ter. Eun. 533), I'm going into the country. Do, please.

domī adsitis facite (id. 506), be at home, do.

cum mihi velim mittās (Att. viii. 11), I wish you would send it to me.
IV. THE INFINITIVE.

NOTE.—The Infinitive is properly a noun denoting the action of the verb abstractly. It differs, however, from other abstract nouns in the following points: (1) it admits in many cases of the distinction of tense; (2) it is modified by adverbs, not by adjectives; (3) it governs the same case as its verb; (4) it is limited to special constructions.

The Latin Infinitive is the dativus locativus of such a noun and was originally used to denote Purpose; but it has in many constructions developed into a substitute for a finite verb. Hence the variety of its use.

In its use as a verb, the Infinitive may take a Subject-Accusative (§ 240. f), originally the object of another verb on which the Infinitive depended. Thus lūbō tē valēre is literally, I command you for being well (cf. substantive clauses, § 330).

1. Infinitive as Subject, etc.

270. The Infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be used with est and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative. Thus,—

1. Subject: as,—

dolēre malum est (Finib. v. 84), to suffer pain is an evil.
bellum est sua vitia nōsse (Att. ii. 17), it's a fine thing to know one's own faults.
pulchrum est benefacere rei publicae (Sall. Cat. 3), it is a noble thing to benefit the state.
mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs (En. i. 135), it is better to calm the troubled waves.
hōc facere illum mihi quam prōsit nescīō (Att. ii. 1 6), I don't know how his doing this benefits me.

2. In Apposition with the Subject: as,—

proinde quasi iniūriam facere id dēnum esset imperīō ūtī (Sall. Cat. 12), just as if this,—to commit injustice, were to use power. [Here facere is in apposition with id.]

3. Predicate Nominative: as,—

id est convenienter nātūrae vīvere (Finib. iv. 41), that is to live in conformity with nature. [Cf. ūtī in the last example.]

NOTE 1.—An infinitive may also be used as Direct Object in connection with a Predicate Accusative, or as Appositive with such Direct Object: as,—
istūc ipsum nōn esse cum fueris miserrimum putō (Tus. i. 12), for I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when one has been.

miserāri, invidēre, gestīre, laetāri, haec omnia morbōs Graeci appellant (Tuscul. iii. 7), to feel pity, envy, desire, joy,—all these things the Greeks call diseases.

Note 2.—An Appositive or Predicate noun used with an infinitive in any of these constructions is put in the Accusative, whether the infinitive has a subject expressed or not. Thus,—

nōn esse cupidum pecūnia (Parad. 51), to be free from desires (not to be desirous) is money in hand.

a. 1. The infinitive as subject is not common except with est and similar verbs. (See examples above.)

Note.—In this use the abstract idea expressed by the infinitive is represented as having some quality or belonging to some thing.

2. But occasionally, especially in less careful writers and in poetry, the infinitive is used as the subject of verbs which are apparently more active in meaning: as,—

quōs omnīs eadem cupere, eadem ōdisse, eadem metuere in ūnum coēgit (Jug. 31), all of whom the fact of desiring, hating, and fearing the same things has united into one.

ingenuās didicisse fidēlīter artēs ēmollit morēs (Ov. ex P. ii. 9. 48), faithfully to have learned liberal arts softens the manners.

posse loquī ēripitur (Ov. M. ii. 483), the power of speech is taken away.

nōn cadit invidēre in sapientem (Tuscul. iii. 21), the sage is not liable to envy (to envy does not fall upon the sage).

istūc nihil dolēre nōn sine māgnā mercēde contingit (Tuscul. III. 12), that apathy is not to be had except at great cost (does not fall to one’s lot).

b. The infinitive is used with many impersonal verbs and expressions, partly as subject and partly as complementary infinitive (§ 271).

Such are libet, licet, oportet, decet, placet, vīsum est, pudet, piget, necesse est, opus est, etc.

id primum in poētīs cernī licet (De Or. iii. 27), this may be seen first in poets.

reperīebat quid dīci opus esset (Bru. 215), he found what needed to be said.

haec praescrīpta servantem licet māgnīficē vīvere (Off. i. 92), one who observes these precepts may live nobly.

Cato negat iūs esse quī miles nōn sit pūgnāre cum hoste (Off. i. 37),

Cato says it is not right that one who is not a soldier should fight with the enemy.

necesse est morī (Tusc. ii. 2), it is necessary to die.

quid attinet gloriōse loquī nisi cōnstanter loquāre (Finib. ii. 89), what
good does it do to talk boastfully unless you speak consistently?
nōn lubet enim mihi déplôrāre vitam (Cato Major 84), for it does not
please me to lament my life.
neque mē vīxisse paenitet (id. 84), I do not feel sorry to have lived.
imā prīdem gubernāre mē taedēbat (Att. ii. 7, 4), I had long been tired of
being pilot.

NOTE 1.—These are not generally real cases of the infinitive used as subject,
but approach that construction.

NOTE 2.—For the subject of such infinitives, and for predicate nouns or
adjectives agreeing with the subject, see §§ 271. c, 272 a.

c. Rarely the infinitive is used exactly like the accusative of a
noun: as,—

beātē vivere aliī in aliō, vōs in voluptāte pōnitis (Finib. ii. 86), a happy
life different [philosophers] base on different things, you on pleasure.
quam multa . . . facimus causā amīcōrum, precārī ab indignō, supplicāre
etc. (Laelius 57), how many things we do for our friends' sake, ask
favors from an unworthy person, resort to entreaty, etc.
nihil explōrātum habeās, nē amāre quidem aut amārī (Laelius 97), you
have nothing assured, not even loving and being loved.

NOTE.—Many complementary and other constructions approach a proper
accusative use of the infinitive, but their development has been different from
that of the examples under c. Thus,—
avāritia . . . superbiam, crūdēlitātem, deōs neglegere, omnia vēnālia habēre
ēdocuit (Sall. Cat. 10), avarice taught pride, cruelly, to neglect the gods,
and to hold everything at a price.

2. Complementary Infinitive.

271. Verbs which imply another action of the same sub-
ject to complete their meaning take the infinitive without
a subject-accusative: as,—

hōc queō dicere (Cat. Maj. 32), this I can say.
mittō quaeere (Rosc. Am.), I omit to ask.
vereor laudāre praesentem (N. D. i. 58), I fear to praise a man to his
face (one who is present).
ōrō ut mātūrēs venire (Att. iv. 1), I beg you will make haste to come.
oblivisci non possum quae volō (Finib. ii. 104), I cannot forget that
which I wish.
dēsine mē id docēre (Tuscul. ii. 29), cease to teach me that.
audeō dicere, I venture to say.
loquī posse coepi (Cic.), I began to be able to speak.

Such are verbs denoting to be able, dare, undertake, remember, for-
get, be accustomed, begin, continue, cease, hesitate, learn, know how, fear,
and the like.
NOTE.—The mark of this construction is that no Subject of these infinitives is in general admissible or conceivable. But some infinitives usually regarded as objects can hardly be distinguished from this construction when they have no subject expressed. Thus volō dicere and volō mē dicere mean the same thing, I wish to speak; but the latter is object-infinitive, while the former is not apparently different in origin and construction from quō dicere (complementary infinitive), and again volō eum dicere, I wish him to speak, is essentially different from either.

a. Many verbs take either a subjunctive clause or a complementary infinitive, without difference of meaning. Such are verbs signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like (cf. § 331): as,—

student excellere (Of. i. 116), they aim to excel.
cum statuissem scribere ad tē aliiquid (Off. i. 4), when I had resolved to address something to you.
istum exhērēdāre in animō habēbat (Rosc. Am. 52), he had it in mind to deprive him of the inheritance.

NOTE 1.—With some of these verbs an infinitive with subject-accusative may be used as object, taking the place of a complementary infinitive. In this use the subject of the infinitive and that of the main verb are of course the same. Thus,—
cupiō mē esse clémentem (Cat. i. 4) = cupiō esse clemens, I desire to be merciful (cf. § 331. b, note).

NOTE 2.—Some verbs of these classes never take the subjunctive, but are identical in meaning with others which do: as,—

quōs tuēri dēbent dēserunt (Of. i. 28), they forsake those whom they should protect.
nōn lubet fugere aveō pūgnāre (Att. ii. 18, 3), I have no desire to run away, I'm anxious to fight.

b. Some verbs of these classes — iubeō and vetō regularly — may take (as object) the infinitive with a subject1 different from that of the main verb (see § 331. a): as,—
signa infrēri iubet (Liv. xlii. 59), he orders the standards to be advanced. Pompēius ... rem ad arma dēdūcī studēbat (B. C. i. 4), Pompey was anxious to have matters come to open war.

c. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after a complementary infinitive takes the case of the subject of the main verb: as,—
siērique studēbam ēius prūdentiae doctior (Lælius 1), I was eager to become more wise through his wisdom.

1 This construction, though in many cases different from the two preceding shades off imperceptibly into them. In none of the uses under § 271 is the infinitive strictly Subject or Object; but its meaning is developed from the original one of purpose (cf. § 273. a).
Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.

The Infinitive, with Subject-Accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (Indirect Discourse, § 336): ¹ as, —

dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri (B. G. i. 22), he says that the hill is held by the enemy. [Direct: mōns ab hostibus tenētur.]

Remark. — The Infinitive Clause may be —1. The Direct Object of the verb: as, Caesarem adesse nuntiavit, he reported that Caesar was present; 2. the Subject of the same verb in the passive: as, Caesarem adesse nuntium est, it was reported that Caesar was present; 3. the Predicate Nominative (or Appositive) with words like fama, rumor, etc.: as, rumor erat Caesarem adesse, there was a report that Caesar was present (cf. En. l. i. 295).

1. With certain impersonal verbs and expressions that take the infinitive as an apparent subject (§ 270. b), the personal subject of the action may be expressed —

1. By a dative, depending on the verb or verbal phrase: or,

2. By an accusative expressed as the subject of the infinitive. Thus,

rogant ut id sibi facere licat (B. G. i. 7), they ask that it be allowed them to do this.

si licet vivere eum quem Sex. Naevius nōn volt (Quinct. 94), if it is allowed a man to live against the will of Sextus Naevius (whom S. N. does not wish).

quid est tam secundum nātūram quam senibus ēmori (Cato Major 71), what is so much in accordance with nature as for old men to die?

extingui hominī suō tempore optābile est (id. 85), it is desirable for a man to die at the appointed time.

2. With licet regularly, and other verbs occasionally, a predicate noun or adjective following the infinitive may be in the dative: as, —

¹ The Infinitive may thus represent, in indirect discourse, a finite verb in direct discourse, admitting all the variations of the verb except number and person.
licuit esse ὀτίοσο Themistocli (Tuscul. i. 33), Themistocles might have been inactive (it was allowed to T. to be inactive).

mihi negligentē esse nōn licet (Att. i. 17), I must not be negligent. [But also negligentem.]
cur hīs esse liberōs nōn licet (Flacc. 71), why is it not allowed these men to be free?
nōn est stantibus omnibus necesse dicere (Marc. 33), it is not necessary for all to speak standing.

expedit bonās esse vōbis (Ter. Heaut. 388), it is for your advantage to be good.

mediocribus esse poētīs nōn hominēs nōn dī concessēre (Hor. A. P. 372), neither gods nor men have granted to ordinary men to be poets.

Note.—When the subject is not expressed, as being indefinite (one, anybody), a predicate noun or adjective must be in the accusative (cf. §§ 271. c. note): as,—

vel pāce vel bellō clārum fieri licet (Sall. Cat. 3), one can become illustrious either in peace or in war.

In poetry, by a Greek idiom, a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the indirect discourse sometimes agrees with the subject of the main verb: as,—

vir bonus et sapiēns ait esse parātus (Hor. Ep. i. 7), a good and wise man says he is prepared, etc. [In prose: ait sē esse parātum.]
sēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostēs (Æn. ii. 377), he found himself fallen among the foe. [In prose: sē esse dēlāpsum.]

4. Infinitive of Purpose.

273. In a few cases the Infinitive retains its original meaning of Purpose.

The infinitive is used after habeō, dō, ministrō, in isolated passages instead of a subjunctive clause: as,—

tantum habeō pollicēri (Fam. i. 5), so much I have to promise. [Here the more formal construction would be quod pollicēr.]

ut Iovī bibere ministrāret (Tusc. i. 65), to serve Jove with wine (to drink). meridie bibere datō (Cato R. R. 89), sīge (to) drink at noontide.

Parātus, suētus and their compounds (used as adjectives) take the infinitive, like the verbs from which they come: as,—

id quod parātī sunt facere (Quin. 8), that which they are ready to do.
adseque factī superārī (B. G. vi. 24), used to being conquered.
currū succēdere suētī (Æn. iii. 541), accustomed to being harnessed to the chariot.
cōpiās bellāre cōnsuetās (B. Afr. 73), forces used to fighting.
§ 273. [Infinitive of Purpose.

NOTE.—These words more commonly in prose take the gerund or gerundive construction (§ 296 ff.) either in the Dative, the Genitive, or the Accusative with ad. Thus,—

alendis libris suētī (Tac. Ann. xiv. 27), accustomed to supporting children. insuētus nāvigandi (B. C. iii. 49), unused to making voyages. corpora insuēta ad onera portanda (id. i. 78), bodies unaccustomed to carry burdens.

In poetry and later writers almost any verb may have the infinitive, after the analogy of verbs of more literal meaning that take it in prose: as,

furīt te reperiēre (Hor. Od. i. 15. 27), he rages to find thee. [A forcible way of saying eōpit (§ 271. a).]
saevit exstinguēre nōmen (Ov. M. i. 200), he rages to blot out the name. fuge quaerēre (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13) forbear to ask (cf. § 269. a. 2. note). parce scelerāre (AEn. iii. 42), forbear to pollute.

Many adjectives take the infinitive in poetry following a Greek idiom: as,—

dūrus compōnēre versūs (Hor. Sat. i. 4. 8), harsh in composing verse. cantārī dignus (Ecl. v. 54), worthy to be sung. [In prose: qui cantētur.] fortis trāctāre serpentīs (Hor. Od. i. 37. 26), brave to handle serpents. perītī cantāre (Ecl. x. 32), skilled in song. facilēs aurem praebēre (Prop. ii. 21. 15), ready to lend an ear. nescia vincī pectora (AEn. xii. 527), hearts not knowing how to yield. tē vidēre aegrōtī (Plaut. Trin. 75), sick of seeing you.

The poets and early writers often use the infinitive to express purpose when there is no analogy with any prose construction: as,—
lōricam dōnat habēre virō (AEn. v. 262), he gives the hero a breastplate to wear. [In prose: habendam.] filius tum introiit vidēre quid agat (Ter. Hecyra 345), the son then went in to see what, etc. [In prose: the supine visum.] nōn ferrō Libycōs populāre Penālēs venimus (AEn. i. 527), we have not come to lay waste with the sword the Libyan homes.

NOTE.—So rarely in prose writers of the classical period.

For the infinitive used instead of a substantive clause of purpose, see § 331. a—g.

NOTE.—For tempus est abīre, see § 298, note.

Rarely in poetry the infinitive is used to express result: as,—

fingit equum tenerā docilem cervīcī magistēr ĭre viam, etc. (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 64), makes the horse gentle so as to go, etc. hic levāre . . . pauperem labōribus vocātus audit (Hor. Od. ii. 18. 38), he when called, hears, so as to relieve, etc.
Syntax: The Verb. [§§ 273–75.]

NOTE.—These poetic constructions (c–g) were no doubt originally regular and belong to the Infinitive as a noun in the Dative or Locative case (p. 283, head-note). They had been supplanted, however, by other more formal constructions, and were afterwards restored through Greek influence.

In late or poetic usage the infinitive occasionally occurs as a pure noun limited by a possessive or other adjective: as,—

nostrum vivere (Pers. Sat. i. 9), our life (to live).
scire tuum (id. 27), your knowledge (to know).

5. Exclamatory Infinitive.

274. The Infinitive, with subject-accusative,¹ may be used in Exclamations (cf. § 240. d): as,—

tē in tantās aerumnās propter mē incidisse (Fam. xiv. 1), alas! that you should have fallen into such grief for me.
mēne inceptō dēsistere victam (Æn. i. 37), what! I beaten desist from my purpose?

NOTE.—The Present and the Perfect Infinitive are used in this construction with their ordinary distinction of time.

6. Historical Infinitive.

275. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the nominative: as,—

tum Catilina politiceri novās tabulās (Sall. Cat. 21), then Catiline promised abolition of debts (clean ledgers).
egō instāre ut mihi respondēret (Ver. ii. 188), I kept urging him to answer me.
pars cēdere, aliī insequī; neque signa neque ārdinis servāre; ubi quemque periculum cēperat, ibi resistere āc prōpulsāre; arma, tēla, equī, virī, hostēs atque civēs permixtī; nihil consiliō neque imperiō agī; fors omnīa regere (Jug. 51), a part give way, others press on; they hold neither to standards nor ranks; where danger overtook, there each would stand and fight; arms, weapons, horses, men, foe and friend, mingled in confusion; nothing went by counsel or command; chance ruled all.

NOTE.—This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact.

¹ This construction is elliptical; that is, the thought is quoted in Indirect Discourse, though no verb of saying, etc., appears, or perhaps is thought of (compare the French dire que). Passages like hancine ego ad rem nātam miseram mē memorābō (Plaut. Rud. 188)? point to the origin of the construction.
II.—TENSES.

NOTE.—The number of possible Tenses is very great. For in each of the three times, Present, Past, and Future, an action may be represented as going on, completed, or beginning; as habitual or isolated; as defined in time or indefinite (aoristic); as determined with reference to the time of the speaker, or as not itself so determined but as relative to some time which is determined; and the past and future times may be near or remote. Thus a scheme of thirty or more tenses might be devised.

But, in the development of forms, which always takes place gradually, no language finds occasion for more than a small part of these. The most obvious distinctions, according to our habits of thought, appear in the following scheme:—

1. DEFINITE (fixing the time of the action).  
   INCOMPLETE.  
   COMPLETE.  
   NARRATIVE.  
   PRESENT: a. *I am writing.*  
   b. *I have written.*  
   c. *I wrote.*  
   PAST:  
   d. *I was writing.*  
   e. *I had written.*  
   f. *I wrote.*  
   FUTURE:  
   g. *I shall be writing.*  
   h. *I shall have written.*  
   i. *I shall write.*

Most languages disregard some of these distinctions, and some make other distinctions not here given. The Indo-European parent speech had a Present tense to express *a* and *η*, a Perfect to express *δ*, an Aorist to express *θ*, a Future to express *γ* and *ι*, and an Imperfect to express *β*. The Latin, however, confounded the Perfect and Aorist in a single form (the Perfect *scripsi*), thus losing all distinction of form between *δ* and *θ* and probably in a great degree the distinction of meaning. The nature of this confusion may be seen by comparing *dixi*, *dicavi*, and *didici* (all Perfects derived from the same root, *Dic*), with *ēdeiça*, Skr. *adiksham*, ḍēdiēxā, Skr. *dideça*. Latin also developed two new forms, those for *e* (scripseroam) and *ζ* (scripseroō), and thus possessed six tenses, as seen in § 276.

The lines between these six tenses in Latin are not hard and fast, nor are they precisely the same that we draw in English. Thus in many verbs the form corresponding to *I have written* (*δ*) is used for those corresponding to *I am writing* (*α*) and *I write* (*η*) in a slightly different sense, and the form corresponding to *I had written* (*ε*) is used in like manner for that corresponding to *I was writing* (*β*). Again, the Latin often uses the form for *I shall have written* (*ζ*) instead of that for *I shall write* (*ι*). Thus *nōvi*, *I have learned*, is used for *I know*; *cōnstiterat*, *he had taken his position*, for *he stood*; *cōgnōverō*, *I shall have learned*, for *I shall be aware.*

1. TENSES OF INCOMPLETE ACTION.

I. Present (General Use).

276. The Present Tense denotes an action or state (1) as now taking place or existing; and so (2) as incomplete in present time, or (3) as indefinite, referring to no particular time, but denoting a general truth. Thus,—

senātus haec intelligit, cōnsul videt, hic tamen vivit (Cat. i. 2), the  
*Senate knows this, the consul sees it, yet this man lives.*

etiam nunc mē dūcere īsiūs dictūs postulās (Ter. And. 644), *even now you are expecting*, etc.
tibi cōncēdō meās sēdēs (Divin. i. 104), I give you my seat (an offer which may or may not be accepted).

exspectō quid velis (Ter. And. 34), I await your pleasure (what you wish).

tū aēctōnem īnstituís, ille aciēm īnstruīt (Mur. 22), you arrange a case, he arranges an army. [The present is here used of regular employ-

ment.]

minōra di nelegunt (Nat. D. iii. 86), the gods disregard trifles. [Of a general truth.]

obsequium amīcōs, vēritās odium parīt (Ter. And. 68), flattery gains friends, truth hatred. [General truth.]

a. The Present, with expressions of duration of time, especially iam diū, iam dūdum, denotes an action continuing in the present, but begun in the past (cf. § 277. b): as,—

iam diū īgnōro quid agās (Fam. vii. 9), for a long time I have not known what you are doing.

tē iam dūdum hortor (Catil. i. 12), I have long urged you.

patimur iam multōs annōs (Verr. v. 126), we suffer now these many years.

[The perfect would imply, we no longer suffer.]

annī sunt octō cum ista causa versātur (Clu. 82), it is now eight years that this case has been in hand.

annum iam audīs Cratippum (Off. i. 1), for a year you've been a hearer of Cratippus.

Note 1.—In this use the present is commonly to be rendered by the perfect in English. The difference in the two idioms is that the English states the beginning and leaves the continuance to be inferred, while the Latin states the continuance and leaves the beginning to be inferred. Compare: he has long suffered (and still suffers) with h: still suffers (and has suffered) long.

Note 2.—Similarly the Present Imperative with iam dūdum indicates that the action commanded ought to have been done or was wished for long ago (cf. the Perfect Imperative in Greek): as,—

iam dūdum sūmite poenas (Āen. ii. 103), exact the penalty long delayed.

b. The Present sometimes denotes an action attempted or begun in present time, but never completed at all (Conative Present, cf. § 277. c): as,—

iam iamque manū tenet (Āen. ii. 530), and now, even now, he attempts to grasp him.

dēnsōs fertur in hostis (id. ii. 511), he starts to rush into the thickest of the foe.

dēcernō quinquāgintā diērum supplicātiōnēs (Phil. xiv. 29), I move for fifty days' thanksgiving. [ Cf. senātus dēcēvit, the senate ordained.]

c. The Present, especially in colloquial language and poetry, is often used for the Future: as,—

īmusne sēssum (De Or. iii. 17), shall we take a seat? (are we going to sit?)
§ 276.

Present Tense.

293

haud mūtō factum (Ter. And. 40), I do not wish to change it (I am not trying to change).

quod si fit perēō funditus (id. 244), if this happens, I am utterly undone. 
hodiē uxōrem dūcis (id. 321), are you to be married to-day?

abīn hinc in malam rem (id. 317), will you be off? go and be hanged!

si perēō homīnim manibus perissē iuvābit (En. iii. 606), if I perish, it will be pleasant to perish at the hands of men (cf. § 307. a, note).

equid mē adiuvas (Clu. 71), won’t you give me a little help?
in iūs vocō tē. nōn eō. nōn īs (Pl. As. 480)? I summon you to the court.

I won’t go. You won’t?

NOTE.—Eō and its compounds are especially frequent in this use. (Cf. where are you going to-morrow? and the Greek eliteral in a future sense.)

REMARK.—For other uses of the Present in a future sense, see under Conditions (§ 307), cum (§ 328), antequam (§ 327. a), dum (§ 328), and the Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 268).

2. Historical Present.

d. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect (Historical Present): as,—

affertur nūntius Syrācūsās; currītur ad praeūrīum; Cleomenēs, quamquam nox erat, tamen in público esse nōn audēt; includīt sē domi (Verr. v. 92), the news is brought to Syracuse; they run to headquarters; Cleomenes, though it was night, does not venture to be abroad; he shuts himself up at home.

NOTE.—This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repraesentātīō).

3. Present with dum.

e. Dum, while, regularly takes the Present Indicative in reference to past events.

In translating, the English imperfect must generally be used. Thus,—

haec dum aguntur, interēā Cleomenēs iam ad Elōri litus pervēnerat (Verr. v. 91), while this was going on, Cleomenes meanwhile had come down to the coast at Elorum.

hoc dum nārrat, forte audīvī (Ter. Heaut. 272), I happened to hear this while she was telling it.

NOTE.—A past tense with dum (usually so long as) makes the time emphatic by contrast. But a few irregular cases of dum with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended. Thus,—

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. Maj. 79), while I was with you, you couldn’t see my soul. [Here the time when he was alive is contrasted with that after his death.]
coorta est pūgna, pār dūm cōnṣtābant ērdīnēs (Liv. xxii. 47), a conflict began, well matched as long as the ranks stood firm.

But,—dūm oculōs hostium certāmēn āverterat (id. xxxii. 24), while the struggle kept the eyes of the enemy turned away.
dūm unum ascendere gradum cōnātus est, vēnit in periculum (Mur. 55), while he attempted to climb one step [in rank] he fell into danger.

f. The present is regularly used in quoting writers whose works are extant: as,—

Epicūrus vērō ea dīcit (Tus. ii. 17), but Epicurus says such things.
apud illum Ulixēs lāmentātūr in vulnere (id. 49), in him (Sophocles)
Ulysses bewails over his wound.
Polyphēnum Homērus cum ariete colloquement facit (Tuscul. v. 115),
Homer brings in (makes) Polyphemus talking with his ram.

4. Imperfect.

277. The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as continued or repeated in past time: as,—

hunc audiēbant anteā (Man. 13), they used to hear of him before.
Sōcrateīs ītā cōnsēbat itaque disseruit (Tusc. i. 72), Socrates thought so (habitually), and so he spoke (then).
prūdēns esse putābātūr (Lālius 6), he was (generally) thought wise.

[The perfect would refer to some particular case, and not to a state of things.]
iamque rubēscēbat Aurōra (Aēn. iii. 521), and now the dawn was blushing:
āra vetus stābat (Ov. M. vii. 1), an old altar stood there.

Note.—The Imperfect is a descriptive tense and denotes an action conceived as in progress or a state of things as actually observed. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus rēx erat and rēx fuit may often be used indifferently; but the former describes the condition while the latter only states it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English Preterite. Thus:—

Aedui graviter ferēbant, neque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant (B. G. v. 6), the Āedui were displeased, and did not dare, etc.

[Here the Imperfects describe the state of things.] But,—
id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus (id. v. 4), Indutiomarus was displeased, etc. [Here the Perfect merely states the fact.]
aedīficia vicōisque habēbant (id. iv. 4), they had buildings and villages.

Remark.—The Imperfect represents a present tense transferred to past time. Hence all the meanings which the present has derived from the continuance of the action, belong also to the imperfect in reference to past time (see details below).

a. The Imperfect is used in descriptions: as,—
erant omnīnō itinera duo ... mōns altissimus impendēbat (B. G. i. 6),
there were in all two ways ... a very high mountain overhung.
§ 277.]

**Imperfect Tense.**

b. With *iam diū, iam dūdum*, and other expressions of duration of time, the Imperfect denotes an action continuing in the past but begun at some previous time (cf. § 115. a. 2): as,—

iam dūdum flēbam (Ov. M. iii. 656), *I had been weeping for a long time.*
copiās quās diū comparābant (Fam. xi. 13), *the forces which they had long been getting ready.*

**Note.**—In this construction the Imperfect is rendered by the English Pluperfect. Compare the Present in similar phrases (§ 276. a).

c. The Imperfect sometimes denotes an action as begun (*Inceptive Imperfect*), or as attempted or only intended (*Conative Imperfect*) (cf. § 276. b): as,—

in exsilium ēiciēbam quem iam ingressum esse in bellum vidēbam (Cat. ii. 14), *was I sending (i.e. trying to send) into exile one who I saw had already gone into war?*

hunc īgitur diem sibi prōpōnēns Milo, cruentis manibus ad illa augusta centuriārum auspicia veniēbat (Mil. 43), *was Milo coming (i.e. was it likely that he would come), etc.?*

si licītum esset veniēbant (Ver. v. 129), *they were coming if it had been allowed* (they were on the point of coming, and would have done so if, etc.).

**Note.**—To this head may be referred the imperfect with *iam*, denoting the *beginning* of an action or state: as,—

iamque arva tenēbant ūltima (Æn. vi. 477), *and now they were just getting to the farthest fields.*

d. The Imperfect is sometimes used to express a surprise at the *present* discovery of a fact already existing: as,—

Ō tú quoque hic aderās (Ter. Ph. 858), *oh! you are here too.*
ehem pater mi, tu hic erās (Plaut.), *what! you here, father?*
āh miser! quantā labōrābās Charybdi (Hor. Od. i. 27. 19), *unhappy boy, what a whirlpool you are struggling in [and I never knew it]?*

e. The Imperfect is often used in dialogue by the comic poets where later writers would employ the Perfect: as,—

ad amicum Calliclem quoī rem aībat mandāsse hic suam (Plaut. Trin. 956), *to his friend Callicles, to whom, he said, he had intrusted his property.*

praesāgībat animus frūstrā mē ire quom exībam domō (Plaut. Aul. 222), *my mind mistrusted when I went from home that I went in vain.*

**Note.**—So also, in conversation, the imperfect of verbs of saying (cf. as *I was a-saying*): as,—

at medīci quoque, ita enim dīcēbās, saepe falluntur (Nat. D. iii. 15), *for that was what you were saying just now.*

haec mihi fere in mentem veniēbant (id. ii. 67, 168), *this is about what occurred to me, etc.* [In a straightforward narration this would be vēnērunt.]
For the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis contrary to fact, see § 308. b.

The Imperfect with negative words often has the force of the English auxiliary could or would: as,—

itaque (Dámocles) nec pulchrōs illōs ministrātōrēs adspiciebat (Tuścul. v. 62), therefore he could not look upon those beautiful slaves. [In this case did not would not express the idea of continued prevention of enjoyment by the overhanging sword.]

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cato Major 79), for, you know, while I was with you, you could not see my soul. [Here the Perfect would refer only to one moment.]

For the Epistolary Imperfect, see § 282.

5. Future.

The Future denotes an action or state that will occur hereafter.

a. The Future sometimes has the force of an Imperative (see § 269. f).

b. The Future is often required in a subordinate clause in Latin where in English futurity is sufficiently expressed by the main clause: as,—

cum aderīt vidēbit, when he is there he will see (cf. § 325. c).
sānābimur sī volēmus (Tuśc. iii. 13), we shall be healed if we wish (cf. § 307. a).

II. THE TENSES OF COMPLETED ACTION.

1. Perfect.

The Perfect denotes an action either as now completed (Perfect Definite), or as having taken place at some undefined point of past time (Historical or Aoristic Perfect). Thus,—

(1) ut ego fēcī, qui Graecās litterās senex didicī (Cat. Maj. 26), as I have done, who have learned Greek in my old age.
diūtūnī silenti finem hodiernus diēs attulit (Marc. 1), this day has put an end to my long-continued silence.

(2) tantum bellum extrēmā hieme apparavit, ineunte vēre suscēpit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcit (Man. 35), so great a war he made ready for at the end of winter, undertook in early spring, and finished by midsummer.

Note.—The distinction between these two uses of the perfect, which is represented by two forms in most other Indo-European languages, was almost if not wholly lost to the minds of the Romans. It must be noticed, however, on account of the marked distinction in English (see also § 115. c).
§ 279.]

Perfect Tense.

a. The perfect is sometimes used emphatically to denote that a thing or condition of things that once existed no longer exists: as,—

fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pública virtūs (Cat. i. 3), there was once such virtue in this commonwealth.

habuit, non habet (Tusc. i. 87), he had, he has no longer.

filium habeō . . . immō habui; nunc habeam necne incertumst (Ter. Heaut. 92), I have a son, no, I had one; whether I have one now or not is uncertain.

fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium (Æn. ii. 325), we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is no more.

b. The Indefinite Present, denoting a customary action or a general truth (§ 276), often has the Perfect in a subordinate clause referring to time antecedent to that of the main clause: as,—

qui in compedibus corporis semper fuērunt, etiam cum solūtī sunt tardius ingrediuntur (Tusc. i. 75), they who have always been in the fetters of the body, even when released move more slowly.

haec morte effugiuntur, etiam si nōn ēvēnērunt, tamen quia possunt ēvenire (id. 86), these things are escaped by death even if they have not [yet] happened, etc.

simul āc mihi collabitum est, praestō est imāgō (N. D. i. 108), as soon as I have taken a fancy, the image is before my eyes.

NOTE. — This use of the perfect is especially common in the protasis of general conditions in present time (§ 309. e).

c. The perfect is sometimes used of a general truth, especially with negatives (Gnomic Perfect): as,—

qui studet contingere mētā multa tūlit fēcitque (Hor. A. P. 412), he who aims to reach the goal, first bears and does many things.

nōn aeris acervus et auri dēdūxīt corpore fēbrēs (id. Ep. i. 2, 47), the pile of brass and gold removes not fever from the frame.

NOTE. — The gnomic perfect strictly refers to past time; but its use implies that something which never did happen in any known case, never does happen, and never will (cf. the English “Faint heart never won fair lady”); or without a negative that what has once happened will always happen under similar circumstances.

d. The Perfect is often used in expressions containing or implying a negation, where in affirmation the Imperfect would be preferred: as,—

dīcēbat melius quam scripsit Hortēnsius (Or. 132), Hortēnsius spoke better than he wrote. [Here the negative is implied in the comparison: compare the use of quisquam, ulla, etc. (§ 202. c), and the French ne after comparatives and superlatives.]

e. The completed tenses of some verbs are equivalent to the incomplete tenses of verbs of kindred meaning.
Such are the preteritive verbs ódi, I hate; meminí, I remember; növi, I know; cónsuévi, I am accustomed,\(^1\) with others used preteritively, as vēnerat (= aderat, he was at hand, etc.) (see § 143, note). Thus,—

qui diēs aestūs máximōs efficere cónsuévit (B. G. iv. 29), which day generally makes the highest tides (is accustomed to make).

cǔius splendor obsolēvit (Quinct. 59), whose splendor is now all faded (has become old).

**Remark.**—Many other verbs are occasionally so used: as,—
dum oculōs certāmen āverterat (Liv. xxxii. 24), while the contest had turned their eyes (kept them turned). [Here āverterat = tenēbat.]

---

2. Pluperfect.

280. The Pluperfect is used (1) to denote an action or state completed in past time; or (2) sometimes to denote an action in indefinite time, but prior to some past time referred to: as,—

(1) locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostri castrīs dēlēgerant (B. G. ii. 18), this was the nature of the ground which our men had chosen for a camp.

Viridovix summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant (id. iii. 17), Viridovix held the chief command of all those tribes which had revolted.

(2) neque vērō cum aliquid mandāverat cōnsectum putābat (Cat. iii. 16), but when he had given a thing in charge he did not look on it as done.

quae si quandō adepta est id quod ei fuerat conecpitum, tum fert alacritātem (Tusc. iv. 35), if it (desire) ever has gained what it had [previously] desired, then it produces joy.

a. For the Epistolary Pluperfect, see § 282.

---

3. Future Perfect.

281. The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future: as,—

ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs (De Or. ii. 65), as you sow (shall have sown), so shall you reap.

carmina tum melius cum vēnerit ipse canēmus (Ecl. ix. 67), then shall we sing our songs better, when he himself has come.

si illius insidiae clāriōcēs hāc lūce fuerint tum dēnique obsecrabō (Mil. 6), when the plots of that man have been shown to be as clear as daylight, then, and not till then, shall I conjure you.

---

\(^1\) Cf. dētestor, reminiscor, scīō, soleō.
ego certē meum officium praestiterō (B. G. iv. 25), I at least will have done my duty (i.e. when the time comes to reckon up the matter, I will be found to have done it, whatever the event).

Remark.—The Future Perfect is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, and may even be used instead of the Future, from the fondness of the Latins for representing an action as completed: as,—

quid inventum sit paulō post viderō (Acad. ii. 76), what has been found out I will see presently.
qui Antōnium oppresserit bellum taeterrimum confecerit (Fam. x. 19),
whoever crushes (shall have crushed) Antony will finish (will have finished) a most loathsome war.

Note.—For the future perfect in future conditions, see § 307. c.

III. Epistolary Tenses.

282. In Letters, the Perfect Historical or the Imperfect may be used for the present, and the Pluperfect for any past tense, as if the letter were dated at the time it is supposed to be received: as,—

neque tamen, cum haec scribēbam, eram nescius quantis oneribus premerēre (Fam. v. 12), nor while I write this am I ignorant under what burdens you are weighed down.
ad tuās omnēs [epistulas] rescripseram pridē (Att. ix. 10), I [have] answered all your letters yesterday.
cum quod scriberem ad tē, nihil habērem, tamen hās dedī litterās (Att. ix. 16), though I have nothing to write you, still I write this letter.

Note.—In this use these tenses are called the Epistolary Imperfect and Pluperfect. The epistolary tenses are not used with any uniformity, but only when attention is particularly directed to the time of writing. (So especially scribēbam, dabam, etc.).

IV. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

283. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Independent Clauses denote time in relation to the time of the speaker. The Present always refers to future (or indefinite) time, the Imperfect to either past or present, the Perfect to either future or past, the Pluperfect always to past.

284. In Dependent Clauses the tenses of the Subjunctive were habitually used in certain fixed connections determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together.
300 Syntax: The Verb. §§ 285, 286.

Note.—The tenses of the Subjunctive were originally used in Dependent clauses (as in Independent), each with its own time in relation to the point of view of the speaker; but in consequence of the natural tendency of language to refer all the parts of a complex sentence to one time,—namely, that of the speaker,—the connections in which these tenses were used became fixed. Hence the rules for the Sequence of Tenses. These are by no means rigid, but allow many varieties, as is natural from their origin.

Sequence of Tenses.

285. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent clauses follow special rules for the sequence of tenses.

With reference to these rules all tenses when used in Independent clauses are divided into two classes,—primary and secondary.

1. Primary. The primary tenses include all forms that express present or future time. These are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

Note.—The Perfect Definite is sometimes treated as primary, but see § 287 a.

2. Secondary. The secondary tenses include all forms that refer to past time. These are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Historical Infinitive.

Note 1.—To these may be added certain forms less commonly used in Independent Clauses. Such are: (1) Primary: Present Infinitive in Exclamations; (2) Secondary: Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations (see § 287 a. note).

Note 2.—For the Historical Present, see § 287 e; for the Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis, see § 287 g.

286. The following is the general rule for the sequence of tenses.

In complex sentences a Primary tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect: as,—

scribit ut nós moneat, he writes to warn us.
scribet ut nós moneat, he will write to warn us.
scribe (scribitō) ut nós monocás, write that you may warn us.
scirpisit ut nós monēret, he wrote to warn us.
scirbit quasi oblitus sit, he writes as if he had forgotten.
scirpisit quasi oblitus esset, he wrote as if he had forgotten.
rogō quid factūrus sis, I ask what you are going to do.

Note.—The beginner must observe that the rule affects only the tenses of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses. The tenses of the other moods and those of the Subjunctive in independent constructions (as in apodosis contrary to fact, § 308) are not affected by the sequence of tenses. (But cf. §§ 338 a. note 2, 339. note 2.)
§§ 286, 287. Sequence of Tenses.

Remark.—In applying the rule for the sequence of tenses, observe (1) whether the main verb is (a) primary or (b) secondary, (2) whether the dependent verb is to denote completed action (i.e. past with reference to the main verb) or incomplete (i.e. present or future with reference to the main verb). Then—

(a) If the leading verb is primary, the dependent verb must be in the Present if it denotes incomplete action, in the Perfect if it denotes completed action.

(b) If the leading verb is secondary, the dependent verb must be in the Imperfect if it denotes incomplete action, in the Pluperfect if it denotes completed action. Thus,—

he writes (primary) to warn (incomplete) us, scribit ut nōs moneat.
I ask (primary) what you were doing (now past), rogō quid fēcēris.

Notice that the Future Perfect denotes action completed (at the time referred to), and hence is represented in the Subjunctive by the Perfect or Pluperfect. Thus,—

I ask what you will have accomplished, rogō quid perfecēris.
he asked what he would have accomplished, rogāvit quid perfecisset.

287. In the Sequence of Tenses some special points are to be noted:—

a. The Perfect Indicative is ordinarily a secondary tense, but allows the primary sequence when the present time is clearly in the writer’s mind. Thus,—

ut satis esset praesidī prōvisum est (Cat. ii. 26), provision has been made that there should be ample guard. [Secondary sequence.]
addīxi hominem in quō satisfacere exterīs nātionibus possētis (Verr. i. 2),
I have brought a man in whose person you can make satisfaction to foreign nations. [Secondary sequence.]
est enim rēs iam in eum locum addūctā, ut quamquam multum intersit inter eōrum causās qui dimicant, tamen inter vīctōriās nōn multum interfutūrum putem (Fam. v. 21, 3), for affairs have been brought to such a pass that, though there is a great difference between the causes of those who are fighting, still I do not think there will be much difference between their victories. [Primary sequence.]
ca adhibita doctrina est quae vel vitiōsissimam nāturam excolere possit (Q. Fr. i. 1, 7), such instruction has been given as can train even the faultiest nature. [Primary sequence.]

Note.—The Perfect Infinitive in exclamations follows the same rule: as,—
adeōn rem redīsse patrem ut extimēscam (Ter. Ph. 153), to think that things have come to such a pass that I should dread my father.

b. After a primary tense the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly used to denote any past action. Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent,—

I. A Perfect Definite: as,—
nōn dubitō quin omnēs tuī scripserint (Fam. v. 8), I do not doubt that all your friends have written. [Direct statement: scripsērunt.]
quārē nōn ignōrō quid accidat in ūltimīs terrīs, cum audierim in Ítaliā querēlās civium (Q. Fr. i. 1, 33), therefore I know well what happens at the ends of the earth, when I have heard in Italy the complaints of citizens. [In a direct statement, audīvī.]

2. A Perfect Historical: as,—
me āutem hīc laudat quod retulerim, nōn quod patefēcerim (Att. xii. 21),
me he praises because I brought the matter [before the senate], not because I brought it to light. [Direct statement: retulīt.]

3. An Imperfect: as,—
sī forte ceciderint tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopēs amīcorum (Læl. 15, 53), if by chance they fall (have fallen), then one can see how poor they were in friends. [Direct question: quam inopēs erant?]
quī status rērum fuerit cum hās litterās dedī scire poteris ex C. Tidiō Strabōnē (Fam. xii. 6), what the condition of affairs was when I wrote this letter, you can learn from Strabo. [Direct question: quī erat?]
quam cīvitātī cārus fuerit maerōre fūneris indicātum est (Lælius 11), how dear he was to the State has been shown by the grief at his funeral.
[Direct question: quam cārus erat?]
ex epīstulis intellegī licet quam frequēns fuerit Platōnis auditor (Or. 15), it may be understood from his letters how constant a hearer he was of Plato. [Direct question: quam frequēns erat?]

NOTE.—Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent, not only a Perfect Definite or a Perfect Historical of a direct statement or question, but an Imperfect as well. This comes from the want of any special tense of the subjunctive to express continued action after a primary tense. Thus, mīrō quid fēcerit may mean (1) I wonder what he has done, (2) I wonder what he did (hist. perf.), or (3) I wonder what he was doing.

c. In clauses of Result, the Perfect subjunctive is very often (the Present rarely) used after secondary tenses: as,—
Hortēnsiūs ārdēbat dicendi cupiditāte sic ut in nūllum unquam flagrantius studium viderim (Bru. 302), Hortēnsius was so hot with desire of speaking that I have never seen a more burning ardor in any man.
Siciliam Verrēs per triennium īta vēxāvit ac perdīdit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nūllum modo possit (Ver. i. 12), for three years Verres so racked and ruined Sicily, that she can in no way be restored to her former state. [Here the Present is used in describing a state of things actually existing.]
videor esse cōnsecūtus ut nōn possit Dolābella in Ítaliā pervenire (Fam. xii. 14), I seem to have brought it about that Dolabella cannot come into Italy.

REMARK.—This construction emphasizes the result; the regular construction subordinates it.

NOTE.—There is a special fondness for the Perfect Subjunctive to represent a Perfect Indicative. Thus,—
Thorius erat ita non superstitionis ut illa plūrima in sua patria et sacrificia et fāna contemneret; ita non timidus ad mortem ut in acie sit ob rem publicam interfectus (Finib. ii. 63), Thorius was so little superstitious that he despised [contemnebat] the many sacrifices and shrines in his country; so little timorous about death that he was killed [interfectus est] in battle, in defence of the State.

Zēnō nūllō modo is erat qui nervōs virtūtis inciderit (cf. § 279. d); sed contrā qui omnia in una virtūte pōneret (Acad. i. 35), Zeno was by no means one to cut the sinews of virtue; but one, on the contrary, who made everything depend on virtue alone. [incidit ... pōnēbat.]

erant enim nōbis perirāti, quasi quicquam de nostra salutē dēcrēvissemus quod nōn idem illis cēnussēmus aut quasi útilius rei publicae fuerit eōs etiam ad bestiārum auxilium confugere quam vel ēmori vel cum spē vivere (Fam. ix. 6, 3), for they were very angry with us, just as if we had voted for anything in regard to our own preservation which we had not advised them also, or as if it were more advantageous to the state for them to fly for help to brutes than either to die or to live in hope. [Without quasi, dēcrēverāmus and fuit would have been used.]

d. A general truth after a past tense follows the sequence of tenses:

ex his quae tribuisset sibi quam mūtabilis esset reputābat (Q. C. iii. 8), from what she (Fortune) had bestowed on him, he reflected how constant she is. [Direct: mūtabilis est.]

ibi quantum vim ad stimulandōs animōs ira habēret appāruit (Liv. xxxiii. 37), here it appeared what power anger has to goad the mind. [Direct: habet.]

NOTE.—In English the original tense is more commonly kept.

e. The Historical Present (§ 276. d) is sometimes felt as a primary, sometimes as a secondary tense. Accordingly it is followed by either the primary or the secondary sequence, more commonly by the secondary. Thus,—

rogat ut cūret quod dīxisset (Quinc. 18), he asks him to attend to the thing he had spoken of.

castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre posset (B. G. i. 8), he strengthens the forts that he might more easily keep them off.

NOTE.—After the historical present, cum temporal with the subjunctive must follow the secondary sequence.

f. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in conditions contrary to fact (§ 308) are not affected by the sequence of tenses: as,—

quia tāle sit, ut vel si ignōrārent hominēs, etc. (Finib. ii. 49), because it is such that even if men were ignorant, etc.

g. The Imperfect Subjunctive in present conditions contrary to fact (§ 308) is regularly followed by the secondary sequence: as,—
Syntax: The Verb. [§§ 287, 288.

si aliis consules essent, ad tē potissimum, Paulle, mitterem, ut eōs mihi quam amicissimōs redderēs (Fam. xv. 13), if there were other consuls, I should send to you, Paulus, in preference to all, that you might make them to friendly me as to possible.

si eōs dicerēs miserēs quibus moriendum esset, nēmīnem excipereś (Tusc. i. 9), if you called those wretched who must die, you would except no one.

h. The Present is sometimes followed by a secondary sequence, seemingly because the writer is thinking of past time (Synesis): as,—

sed si rēs cōget, est quidam tertium, quod neque Seliciō nec mihi displicebat; ut neque iacere rem paterēmur, etc. (Fam. i. 5. a), but if the case shall demand, there is a third [course] which neither Selicius nor myself disapproved, that we should not allow, etc. [Here Cicero is led by the time of displicēbat.]

sed tamen ut scribēris haec tibi scribō (Fam. xiii. 47), but yet that you may know, I write thus. [As if he had used the common epistolary imperfect scribēbam (§ 282).

cūius praeceptī tanta vis est ut ea nōn homini cuipiam sed Delphicō deō tribuerētur (Leg. i. 58), such is the force of this precept, that it was ascribed not to any man, but to the Delphic god. [The precept was an old one.]

Note.—The rules for the sequence of tenses must not be regarded as inflexible. They were often disregarded by the Romans themselves, either from carelessness or purposely for one reason or another.

i. When a clause depends upon one already dependent, the sequence becomes secondary as soon as the time is thrown back into the past by any form that represents past time: as, —

sed tamen quā rē acciderit ut ex meis superiōribus litteris id suspicārēre nesciō (Fam. ii. 16), but yet how it happened that you suspected this from my previous letter, I don't know.

tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecis nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā vince-rēmur (Nat. D. i. 8), we seem to have advanced so far that even in fulness of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks.

But,—beāte vixisse videor quia cum Scipione vixerim (Laelius 15, I seem to have lived happily in that I have lived with Scipio (who had just died).

Note.—For the application of this rule to Indirect Discourse, see § 336. B. note.

V. Tenses of the Infinitive.

288. The tenses of the Infinitive denote present, past, or future time, relatively to the time of the verb on which they depend: as,—

nostrōs nōn esse inferiorēs intellexit (B. G. ii. 8), he ascertained that our men were not inferior. [Direct: sunt.]
§ 228. Tenses of the Infinitive.

quam Iūnō fērta rerris magis omnibus coluisse (Æn. i. 15), which Juno
is said to have cherished above all lands. [Direct: colēbat.]
spērant sē māximum frūctum esse captūrōs (Lcel. 79), they hope they shall
receive the greatest advantage. [Direct: capiēmus.]

a. After past tenses of verbs of necessity, propriety, and possibility
(as potuī, dēbuī, and oportuī) the present infinitive must be ren-
dered by the Perfect infinitive in English: as,—
seīre potuit (Milo, 46), he might have known.
qui vidēbatur omnīnō morī nōn dēbuisse (Arch. 17), who seemed [one
that] ought not to have died at all.

b. For the tenses of the infinitive in Indirect Discourse, see § 336. A.
c. Except in indirect discourse, the Present is the only tense of the
infinitive in common use. It has no distinct reference to time. Thus,—
est adulēscens maiōrēs nātū verērī (Of. i. 122), it is [the duty] of a youth
to reverence his elders.

d. After verbs of wishing, necessity, and the like,¹ the Perfect Passive
infinitive is often used instead of the Present: as,—
nōllem factum, I regret it (I could wish it not done). [The Latin form of
apology.]
domestica curā tē levātum [esse] vōlō (Q. F. iii. 9), I wish you relieved
of household care.
quod iam pridem factum esse oportuīt (Cat. i. 5), which ought to have been
done long ago (cf. a, above).

NOTE.—The participle in this case is rather in predicate agreement (with or
without esse) than used to form a strict perfect infinitive, though the full form can
hardly be distinguished from that construction; cf. mātūrātō opus est, there is
need of haste (I. 392. 8) and I pray thee have me excused.

REMARK.—In early and late Latin, and in poetry, rarely in good prose, the
Perfect Active infinitive is also used instead of the Present, and even after other
verbs than those of wishing and the like: as,—

commisisse cave (Hor. A. P. 168), he is cautious of doing.
haud equidem premendō alium mē extulisse velim (Liv. xxii. 59), I would
not by crushing another exalt myself.
sunt qui nōlīnt tetigisse (Hor. Sat. i. 2), there are those who would not
touch.
statim vīcisse dēbeō (Rosc. Am. 73), I ought to win my case (I must be
regarded as having won it).
nōllem dīxisse (Ver. iv. 43), I would not say

e. After verbs of feeling the Perfect infinitive is used, especially by
the poets, to denote a completed action.

¹ Chiefly vōlō, nōlō, mālō, oportet, dect.
So also with satis est, satis habeō, melius est, contentus sum, and in a few other cases where the distinction of time is important. Thus,—

nōn paenītēbat intercapēdinem scribendi fēcisse (Fam. xvi. 21), I was not sorry to have made a respite of writing.
pudet mē nōn praestitisse (id. xiv. 3), I am ashamed not to have shown.
sunt quōs curriculō pulverem Olympicum collēgissequi uivat (Hor. Od. i. 1. 3), there are those who delight, etc.
quīēsse erit melius (Liv. iii. 48), it will be better to have kept quiet.
nil ego si peccem possum nescisse (Ov. Her. xvii. 47), if I should do wrong, I cannot have done it in ignorance (am not able not to have known).

f. The Future infinitive is often expressed by fore (or futūrum esse) ut with the subjunctive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem (cf. §§ 302. Rem., 332. e). Thus,—

spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs (Tus. i. 82), I hope that will be our happy lot.

II.—NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

The several Noun and Adjective forms associated with the verb are employed as follows:—

1. Participles:
   a. Present and Perfect
   b. Future
   c. Gerundive

2. Gerund or Gerundive:
   1. Former Supine (in -um), with Verbs of Motion (§ 301).
   2. Latter Supine (in -ū), chiefly with Adjectives (§ 303).

1. Attributive (§ 291 and a).
2. Simple Predicate (§ 291. b).
5. Descriptive (Indirect Discourse) (§ 292. e).

1. Periphrastic with esse (§ 293. a).
2. Gerundive with ful (= Pluperfect Subjunctive) (§ 293. c).

1. As Descriptive Adjective (§ 294. a).
2. Periphrastic with esse (§ 294. b).
3. Of Purpose with certain verbs (§ 294. d).

2. Dative, with Adjectives (of Fitness), Nouns, Verbs (§ 299).
3. Accusative, with certain Prepositions (§ 300).
4. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions (§ 301).

1. Former Supine (in -um), with Verbs of Motion (§ 302).
2. Latter Supine (in -ū), chiefly with Adjectives (§ 303).

289. The Participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an Adjective; but has a partial distinction of tense, and may govern a case.
§ 289. Distinctions of Tense in Participles.

Note.—Thus the participle combines all the functions of an adjective with some of the functions of a verb. As an adjective, it limits substantives, and agrees with them in gender, number, and case (§ 186). As a verb, it has distinctions of time (§ 290), and often takes an object.

1. Distinctions of Tense.

290. Participles denote time as present, past, or future with respect to the time of the verb in their clause.

Thus the Present Participle represents the action as in progress at the time indicated by the tense of the verb, the Perfect as completed, and the Future as still to take place.

a. The Present Participle has several of the special uses of the Present Indicative. Thus it may denote:

1. An action continued in the present but begun in the past (§ 276. a): as,—

quaerenti mihi iamdiu certa rēs nūlla veniēbat in mentem (Fam. iv. 13),
though I had long sought, no certain thing came to my mind.

2. Attempted action (§ 276. b): as,—

C. Flāminiō restītū agrum Picentem dividentī (Cat. M. 11), he resisted Flāminiō when attempting to divide the Picene territory.

3. Futurity or Purpose (§ 276. c): as,—

Eurypylum seitantem oracula mittimus (Æn. ii. 114), we send Eurypylus to consult the oracle.

b. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a Present.

Such are, regularly, ratus, solitus, veritus; commonly, fissus, ausus, secūtus, and occasionally others, especially in later writers. Thus,—

cohortātus militēs docuit (B. C. iii. 80), encouraging the men, he showed.
frātus dixisti (Mur. 62), you spoke in a passion.
oblitus auspicia (Phil. i. 31), forgetting the auspices.
insidiās veritus (B. G. ii. 11), fearing ambuscade.
imperīō potitus (Liv. xxi. 2), holding the command.
ad pūgnam congressī (id. iv. 10), meeting in fight.
rem incrēdībilem rati (Sall. Cat. 48), thinking the thing incredible.

c. The Latin has no Present Participle in the passive. The place of such a form is supplied usually by a clause with dum or cum, rarely by the participle in -dus (cf. p. 314, foot-note): as,—

nullīs evidentibus causīs obiēre dum calceantur mātūtinō duo Caesarēs (Plin. N. H. vii. 181), from no obvious cause two Caesars died while having their shoes put on in the morning.
mēque ista dēlectant cum Latinē dīcuntur (Academ. i. 18), those things please me when they are spoken in Latin.
crucibus adfixī aut flammandī (Tac. Ann. xiv. 44), crucified or set on fire (in flames).

NOTE.—The constructions with dūm and cum are often used when a particle might be employed: as,—
dic, hospes, Spartae, nōs tē hic vidīsсе iacentēs, dūm sanctīs patriae lēgibus obsequīmur, tell it, stranger, at Sparta, that you saw us lying here obedient to our country’s sacred laws. [Here dūm obsequīmur is a translation of the Greek present participle πειθόμενοι.]
dūm [Ulixēs] sibi, dūm sociīs rēditum parat (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 21), Ulysses, while securing the return of himself and his companions. [In Greek: ἀράντόμενος.]

a. The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice. The deficiency is supplied—

1. In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning: as,—
nam singulās [nāvēs] nostri cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt (B. G. iii. 15), for our men having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding.

2. In other verbs, either by the ablative absolute with a change of voice (§ 255. d, note) or by a clause (especially with cum or dūm): as,—
itāque convocātīs centuriōnibus militēs certōrēs facit (B. G. iii. 5), and so, having called the centurions together, he informs the soldiers (the centurions having been called together).
cum vēnisset animadvertit collem (id. vii. 44), having come (when he had come), he noticed a hill.

NOTE.—The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 135. b).

2. Adjective Use.

291. The Present and Perfect participles are used sometimes as attributive, nearly like adjectives: as,—
cum antiquissimam sententiam tum comprobātam (Div. i. 11), a view at once most ancient and well approved.
signa nunquam fere ēmentientia (id. 15), signs hardly ever deceitful.
auspiciis ūtuntur coāctis (id. 27), they use forced auspices.

a. Participles often become complete adjectives, and may be compared or used as nouns. Thus,—
quō mulieri esset rēs cautior (Cācina 11), that the matter might be more secure for the woman.
in illis artibus praestantissimus (De Orat. i. 217), pre-eminent in those arts.
sibi indulgentēs et corpori déservientēs (Leg. i. 39), the self-indulgent, and slaves to the body (indulging themselves and serving the body).

rectē facta paria esse débent (Parad. 22), right deeds (things rightly done) ought to be like in value (see § 207. c).

male parta male dilābuntur (Phil. ii. 65), ill got, ill spent (things ill-acquired, etc.).

cōnsuēctūdō valentīs (De Or. ii. 186), the habit of a man in health.

b. Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by esse or a copulative verb (see §§ 186. b, 176. a): as, —

Gallia est divīsa (B. G. i. 1), Gaul is divided.
locus qui nunc saeupts est (Liv. i. 8), the place which is now enclosed.
vidētis ut senectus sit operōsa et semper agēns aliquid et mōliēns (C. M. 26), you see how busy old age is, always aiming and trying at something.
nēmō adhuc convenire voluit cui fuerim occupātus (Cato Major 32), nobody hitherto has [ever] wished to converse with me, to whom I have been "engaged."

REMARK.—From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive, — the participle of completed action with the incomplete tenses of esse developing the idea of past time: as, interfectus est, he was (or has been) killed, lit., he is having-been-killed (i.e. already slain).

In the best writers (as Cicero), the perfect participle, when used with fuī, etc., retains its proper force; but in later writers the two sets of tenses (as amāitus sum or fuī) are often used indiscriminately to form the tenses of the perfect system in the passive: as, —

[łēgēs] cum quae lātæ sunt tum vērō quae prōmulgātæ fuērunt (Sest. 55), the laws, both those which were proposed, and those which were published. [The proposal of the laws was a single act: hence lātæ sunt is a compound perfect. The publishing, or posting, was a continued state, which is indicated by the participle prōmulgātæ, and fuērunt is the perfect of the copula.]

arma quae fīxa in parietibus fuerant, humī inventa sunt (Div. i. 74), the arms which had been fastened on the walls were found upon the ground. [Cf. occupātum sunt et fuērunt (Off. i. 57), are and have been engaged. The difference between this and arma quae, etc., is, that occupātus in this sense is used only as an adjective.]

3. Predicate Use.

292. The Present and Perfect participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or clause would be usual.

In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances. Thus, —
volventēs hostilia cadāvera amicum reperiebant (Sall. Cat. 61), while
rolling over the corpses of the enemy they found a friend. [Time.]
paululum commorātus, signa canere iubet (Sall. Cat. 59, 1), after delaying
a little while, he orders to give the signal. [Time.]
longius prōsequi veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit (B. G. v. 52), because he
feared to follow further, he came to Cicerō. [Cause.]
quō sciret laxās dare iussus habēnās (Æn. i. 63), who might know how to
give them loose rein when bidden. [Occasion.]
damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat (B. G. i. 4), if condemned, punish-
ment must overtake him. [Condition.]
salūtem Ínspērantibus reddidisti (Marc. 21), you have restored a safety
which we did not hope. [Concession.]
Dardanius caput ecce puer dētētus (Æn. x. 133), the Trojan boy with
his head uncovered. [Description.]
nec trepidēs in úsum poscentīs aevi paucā (Hor. Od. ii. 11. 5), be not
anxious for the needs of age that demands little. [Characteristic.]
incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs petēbant (B. C. iii. 93), in headlong flight
they made for the highest mountains. [Manner.]
militēs sublevātī alīi ab allīs māgnum partem itinerīs cōnscīerent (B. C. i.
68), the soldiers helped up by each other, etc. [Means.]
hoc laudānās, Pompeius idem īūrāvit (B. C. iii. 87), approving this, Pom-
pey took the same oath. [Attendant circumstance.]
aut sedēns aut ambulāns disputābam (Tuscul. i. 7), I conducted the di-
cussion either sitting or walking. [Circumstance.]

REMARK.—These uses are especially frequent in the ablative absolute (§ 255. d).
A co-ordinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle: as,—

instructōs ordīnēs in locum aequum dēdūcit (Sall. Cat. 59), he draws up
the lines, and leads them to level ground.
ut hōs trānsdūctōs necāret (B. G. v. 5), that he might carry them over and
put them to death.

NOTE 1.—A participle with a negative often expresses the same idea which in
English is given by without and a verbal noun: as,—
miserum est nihil prōficiēntem angī (N. D. iii. 14), it is wretched to vex
oneself without effecting anything.

NOTE 2.—Acceptum and expēnsum as predicates with fērre and
referre are book-keeping terms: as,—
quās pecūniās fērēbat eis expēnsās (Verr. ii. 170), what sums he charged
to them

a. A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the partici-
ple and not the noun contains the main idea: ¹ as,—
ante conditam condendamvē urbem (Liv. Pref.), before the city was built
or building.

¹ Compare the participle in indirect discourse in Greek (Goodwin's Greek
Grammar, § 280); and the English, "'Twas at the royal feast for Persia won"
(Dryden), i.e. for the conquest of Persia.
illī libertātem civium Rōmānōrum imminūtam non tule-runt; vōs vitam ēreptam neglegētis (Manil. 11), they did not endure the infringement of the citizens' liberty; will you disregard the destruction of their life? post hominēs nātōs (Brutus, 224), since the creation of man. iam ā condītā urbe (Phil. iii. 9), even from the founding of the city.

b. The perfect participle with a noun in agreement, or in the neuter as an abstract noun, is used in the ablative with opus, need (cf. § 243. e): as, —

opus factō est viāticō (Plaut. Trin. 887), there is need of laying in provision.
mālūrātō opus est (Liv. viii. 13), there is need of haste.

NOTE.—The omission of the noun in agreement gives rise to complex constructions: as, —

quid opus factōst, what must be done? [A mixture of quid opus est fieri? and quō factō opus est ?]

c. The perfect participle with habeō (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the continued effect of the action of the verb: 1 as, —

fīdem quam habent spectātam iam et diū cōgnitam (Div. C. 11), my fidelity, which they have proved and long known.
cohortēs in aciē lxxx. cōnstitūtās habēbat (B. C. iii. 89), he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle.
nefāriōs ducēs captōs iam et comprehēnsōs tenētis (Catil. iii. 16), you have captured and hold in custody the infamous leaders, etc.

d. A verb of effecting or the like may be used in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb to express the action of that verb more forcibly: as, —
praefectōs suōs multi missōs fēcērunt (Ver. iii. 134), many discharged their officers (made dismissed).
hic trānsāctum reddet omne (Plaut. Capt. 345), he will get it all done (restore it finished).
ademptum tibi iam fāxō omnem metum (Ter. Haut. 341), I will relieve you of all fear (make it taken away).
illam tibi incēnsam dabō (Ter. Ph. 974), I will make her angry with you.

NOTE.—Similarly volō (with its compounds) and cupiō, with a perfect participle without esse (cf. § 288 d. note): as, —
mē excūsātum volō (Ver. ii. 1. 103), I wish to be excused (I want myself excused, cf. I pray thee have me excused).
qui te conventum cupit (Plaut. Curc. 304), who wants to meet you (wants you met).

1 The perfect with have, in modern languages of Latin stock, has grown out of this use of habeō.
e. After verbs denoting an action of the senses the present participle in agreement with the object is nearly equivalent to the infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 336), but expresses the action more vividly: as,—

ut eum nēmō unquam in equō sedentem viderit (Verr. v. 27), so that no one ever saw him sitting on a horse. [Cf. Tusc. iii. 31.]

Note.—The same construction is used after faciō, indūco, and the like, with the name of an author as subject: as,—

Xenophōn facit Socratem disputantem (N. D. i. 31), Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.

4. Future Participle.

293. The Future Participle (except futūrus and ventūrus) is rarely used in simple agreement with a noun, except by later writers.

a. The future participle is chiefly used with esse (which is often omitted) in the active periphrastic conjugation (see § 129): as,—

morere, Dēgōrā, nōn enim in caelum adscēnsūrus es (Tus. i. 111), die, for you are not likely to rise to heaven.
spērat adolēscēns diū sē victūrum (Cat. Maj. 68), the young man hopes to live long (that he shall live long).
neque petītūrus unquam cōnsulātum vidēretur (Off. iii. 79), and did not seem likely ever to be a candidate for the consulship.

b. By later writers and the poets the future participle is also used in simple agreement with a substantive to express:

1. Likelihood or certainty: as,—

ausus est rem plūs fāmæ habitūram (Liv. ii. 10), he dared a thing which would have more repute.

2. Purpose, intention, or readiness: as,—

cum leō rēgem invāsūrus incurreret (Q. C. viii. 1), when a lion rushed on to attack the king.
rediit bellī cāsum dē integrō tentātūrus (Liv. xvii. 62), he returned to try the chances of war anew.
dispersōs per agrōs militēs equitibus invāsūris (id. xxxi. 36), while the horse were ready to attack the soldiers scattered through the fields. [A rare use of the Ablative Absolute.]
si petītūrus abīs (Æn. ii. 675), if you are going away to perish.

3. Apodosis: as,—

dedit mihi quantum māximum potuit, datūrus amplius si potuisset (Plin. Ep. iii. 21), he gave me as much as he could, ready to give me more if he had been able.
c. With past tenses of *esse*, the future participle is often equivalent to the pluperfect subjunctive (see § 308. d).

5. Gerundive (Future Passive Participle).

**Note.**—The participle in -dus, commonly called the Gerundive, has two distinct uses:—

1. Its predicate and attribute use as participle or adjective (§ 294).
2. Its use with the meaning of the gerund (§ 296). This may be called its gerundive use.

294. The gerundive when used as a Participle or an Adjective is always passive, denoting *necessity* or *propriety*.
In this use of the gerundive the following points are to be observed (*a*-d).

a. The gerundive is sometimes used, like the present and perfect participles, in simple agreement with a noun: as,—

fortem et cōnservandum virum (Mil. 104), *a brave man, and worthy to be preserved*.

b. The most frequent use of this form is with *esse* in the second (*passive*) periphrastic conjugation (see § 129): as,—

nōn agitanda rēs erit (Verr. v. 179), *will not the thing have to be agitated?*

c. The neuter of the gerundive1 is occasionally used impersonally with an object. The object is in the case regularly governed by the verb. Thus,—

agitandumst vigiliās (Pl. Tr. 869), *I have got to stand guard.*
via quam nōbis ingressendiōdum sit (Cat. Maj. 6), *the way we have to enter.*

**Note.**—This use is regular with verbs which take their object in the dative or ablative: as,—

lēgibus pārendum est, *the laws must be obeyed.*
ütendum exercitātiōnibus modicīs (Cat. Maj. 36), *we must use moderate exercise.*

d. After verbs signifying to give, deliver, agree for, have, receive, undertake, demand2 a gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express purpose: as,—

---

1 Sometimes called Nominative of the Gerund. Compare Greek verbal in *-tēs* (Goodwin’s Grammar, § 281).
2 Such verbs are accipiō, addōtō, attribuō, conducō, curō, dēnōtō, dēposcō, dō, dividō, dōnō, dēcō, dēcoeō, ferō, habeō, locō, mandō, obiciō, permittō, petō, pōnō, praebēō, prōpōnō, relinquō, rogō, sus- cipliō, trādō, voveō.
redemptor qui columnam illam condüxerat faciendum (Div. ii. 47), the contractor who had undertaken to make that column. [The regular construction with this class of verbs.]
aedem Castoris habuit tuendum (Ver. ii. 1. 150), he had the temple of Castor to take care of.
návēs atque onera diligenter adservanda cūrābat (id. v. 146), he took care that the ships and cargoes should be kept.

II.—GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

295. The Gerund expresses an action of the verb in the form of a verbal noun. As a noun the gerund is itself governed by other words; as a verb it may take an object in the proper case. Thus,—

ars bene disserendī et vēra āc falsa diìūdicandī (De Or. ii. 157), the art of discoursing well, and distinguishing the true and false.

REMARK.—The nominative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive. Thus in the example above, the verbal nouns discoursing and distinguishing, if used in the nominative, would be expressed by the infinitives disserere and divīdicāre.

296. When the Gerund would have an object in the accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, and takes the case which the gerund would have had: as, —

parātōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda (B. G. i. 5), readier to undergo all dangers. [Here subeunda agrees with pericula, which is itself governed by ad. The construction with the gerund would be, ad subeundum pericula; ad governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative pericula.]

exercendae memoriae grātēa (C. M. 38), for the sake of training the memory. [Here the gerund construction would be memoriam exercendi grātiā.]

plerisque in rēbus gerendis tarditās odiōsa est (Phil. vi. 7), in the conducting of most business, sloth is odious.

1 The gerundive construction is probably the original one. The participle in -dus seems to have had a present passive force (as in ante condendam urbem (§ 292. a), rotundus, volvenda diēs (Verg.), flammāndī (Tac.), § 290. c) from which the idea of necessity was developed through that of futurity, as in the development of the subjunctive (see p. 274). Cōnsiliōn urbīs dēlendae would have meant a plan of a city being destroyed [in process of destruction], then about to be destroyed, then to be destroyed, then a plan of destroying the city, the two words becoming fused together as in ab urbe conditā.
NOTE.—In this use the gerund and the gerundive are translated in the same way, but have really a different construction. The Gerundive is a passive participle, and agrees with its noun, though in translation we change the voice, just as we may translate *vigiliiæ agitantæ sunt* (guard must be kept) by *I must stand guard.* The Gerund is the neuter of the gerundive used impersonally, but retaining the verbal idea sufficiently to govern an object, as in *agitantum vigilant* ($§$ 294. c). It may therefore be considered as a noun (cf. *opus est maturatō,* § 292. b) with a verbal force (cf. *hanc tāctō,* p. 235, foot-note). See p. 314, foot-note.

The following examples illustrate the parallel constructions of gerund and gerundive:

- Gen. consilium *{urbanem capiendi} a design of taking the city.*
- Dat. dat operam *{agrōs colendō} he attends to tilling the fields.*
- Acc. veniunt ad *{mihi pārendum} they come {to obey me.*
- Abl. terit tempus *{scribendē epistulās} he spends time in writing letters.*

REMARK.—In the gerundive construction the verbs *ūtor, fruor,* etc., are treated like transitive verbs governing the accusative, as they do in early Latin ($§$ 249. b): as,—

*expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendas voluptātēs* (Off. i. 25), *riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures* (for enjoying pleasures).

297. The Gerund and the Gerundive are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns.

1. Genitive.

298. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives either as *subjective* or *objective* genitive: as,—

- neque consiliī habendi neque arma capiendi spatū datō (B. G. iv. 14), *time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms.* [Objective.]
- nec conservandae quidem patriae causā (Of. i. 159), *not even for the sake of saving the country.* [Originally subjective genitive.]
- vivendi finis est optimus (Cat. Maj. 72), *it is the best end of living.* [Subjective.]
- nōn tam commūtandārum rērum quam ēvertandārum cupidōs (Off. ii. 3), *desirous not so much of changing as of destroying the state.* [Objective.]

NOTE.—In a few phrases the Infinitive is used with nouns which ordinarily have the genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive. Thus *tempus est ablīre, it is time to depart,*
**Remark.** — The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used (especially in early and late Latin) as a predicate genitive. When so used it often expresses purpose: as,—

quae ēs vertereae repūblicae solent esse (Verr. ii. 132) things which generally tend to the overthrow of the commonwealth.

si arborum trunci dēiciendī operis essent missae (B. G. iv. 17), in case trunks of trees should be sent down [with the object] of overthrowing the work. [Pred. gen. like quās suī commodī fecerat (v. 8).]

Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitātis (Tac. Ann. ii. 59), he sets out for Egypt to study old times.

nē id assentandī magis quam quō habeam grātum facere existumes (Ter. Ad. 270), for fear you should think that I do it more for the sake of flattery than because, etc.

a. The genitive of the gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially suī) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object: as,—

ēius videndi cupidus (Ter. Hec. 372), eager to see her (eager for a seeing of her).

rēiciendī trium iūdicium potestās (Ver. ii. 77), the power of challenging three jurors (of the rejecting of three jurors).

suī colligendī facultās (B. G. iii. 6), the opportunity to recover themselves.

**Note.** — This construction undoubtedly arose from the fact that the gerund, with the noun (or adjective) on which it depends, was conceived as a compound noun (or adjective) governing an objective genitive (cf. § 217. b). Thus suī colligendī facultās would be literally, a chance of a recovering of theirs. This construction is easily distinguished from that of the gerundive by the fact that the gerund does not agree with the substantive in gender and number.

b. In genitive constructions the Gerund and Gerundive are about equally common.

c. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with causā or grātiā to denote purpose (see § 318).

**Note.** — This is merely a special use under the main head of § 298.

---

**2. Dative.**

299. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after adjectives¹ which take the dative and rarely after nouns (§ 234. a): as,—

---

¹ The dative of the gerund and gerundive occurs most commonly after the adjectives accommodātus, aptus, ineptus, bonus, habilis, idōneus, pār, fūtilis, inūtīlis. But the accusative with ad is common with most of these (cf. § 234. b).
genus armorum aptum tegendis corporibus (Liv. xxxii. 10), a sort of armor suited to the defence of the body.

tē sociām studēō scribendīs versibus esse (Lucr. i. 25), I desire that thou (Venus) be my partner in writing verses.

reliqua tempora dēmetendīs frūctibus et percipiendīs accommodāta sunt (Cat. Maj. 70), the other seasons are fitted to reap and gather in the harvest.

perferendīs militum mandātīs idōneus (Tac. Ann. i, 23), suitable for carrying out the instructions of the soldiers.

a. The dative is used in a few expressions after verbs: as,

diem praestitit operī faciendō (Ver. ii. i. 148), he appointed a day for doing the work.

praesesse agrō colendō (Rosc. Am. 50), to take charge of cultivating the land.

esse solvendō, to be able to pay (to be for paying).

Note.—This construction is a remnant of a more general use of the dative of the gerund and gerundive.

b. The dative is also used in certain legal phrases after nouns meaning officers, offices, elections, etc., to indicate the function or scope of the office, etc.: as,

comitia cōnsulibus rogandīs (Div. i. 33), elections for nominating consuls.

triumvir colōnīs dēdūcundīs (Jug. 42), a triumvir for planting colonies.

triumviri repūblicae cōnstituendae (title of the Triumvirate), triumvirī (a commission of three) for settling the government.

3. Accusative.

300. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the prepositions ad, inter, circā, ob (and rarely in and ante); most frequently after ad, denoting Purpose (cf. § 318. b): as,

mé vocās ad scribendum (Or. 34), you summon me to write.

vivis nōn ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōnfirmandam audāciōm (Cat. i. 4),

you live, not to put off, but to confirm your daring.

nactus aditūs ad ea cōnanda (B. C. i. 31), having found means to undertake these things.

inter agendum (Ecl. ix. 24), while driving.

Note.—The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object, the Ablative of the gerund very rarely. The Gerundive is used instead ($ 296).

1 Such are praesesse, operam dare, diem dicere, locum capere.
4. Ablative.

301. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used (1) to express Manner,¹ Means, Cause, etc.; and (2) after Comparatives; and (3) after the prepositions ab, de, ex, in, and (rarely) prō and cum: as,—

(1) multa pollicendō persuādet (Jug. 46), he persuades by large promises.

Latinō loquendō cuivis pār (Bru. 128), equal to any man in speaking Latin.

nullīs virtūtīs praeceptīs trādendī (Off. i. 5), without delivering any precepts of virtue (by delivering no precepts).

his īpsīs legendīs (Cat. M. 21), by reading these very things.

obscurām atque humilem concriendō ad sē multitūdīnem (Liv. i. 8), calling to them a mean and obscure multitude.

(2) nūllum officium referendā grātiā magīs necessāriūm est (Off. i. 47), no duty is more important than repaying favors.

(3) in ē gerendā versāri (Cat. M. 17), to be employed in conducting affairs.

Note.—The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is also very rarely used with verbs and adjectives: as,—

Appius nōn abstitit continuandō magistrātum (Liv. ix. 34), Appius did not desist from continuing his magistracy.

Remark.—The gerund is often found co-ordinated with nominal constructions, and sometimes even in apposition with a noun: as,—

(1) in forō, in cūrīā, in amīcōrum periculis pulsāndīs (Phil. vii. 7), in the forum, in the senate-house, in defending my friends in jeopardy.

(2) ad ēs diversissīmās, pārendum atque imperandum (Liv. xxi. 3), for the most widely different things, obeying and commanding.

III.—SUPINE.

Note.—The supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§ 71. a), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in -um is the accusative of the end of motion (§ 258. b, Rem.). (2) The form in -ū is usually dative of purpose (§ 233), though probably the ablative has been confused with it.

302. The Former Supine (in -um) is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. Thus,—

---

¹ In this use the ablative of the gerund is, in later writers nearly, and in mediaeval writers entirely, equivalent to a present participle: as, cum ūnā diērūm flēndō sēdīssēt, quīdam miles generōsus īuxta eam equitāndō vēnīt (Gesta Romanorum, 66 [58]), as one day she sat weeping, a certain knight came riding by. (Compare § 301, fifth example.) From the gerund used as ablative of manner come the Italian and Spanish forms of the present participle (as mandando, esperando), the true participial form becoming an adjective in those languages.
quid est, imusne sessum? etsi monitum venimus te, non flagitatum (De O. iii. 17), how now, shall we be seated? though we have come to remind, not to entreat you?
nuptum dare (collocāre), to give in marriage.
vēnērunt questum iniūriās (Liv. iii. 25), they came to complain of wrongs.

Remark.—The supine in -um is especially common with eō; and with the passive infinitive irī forms the future infinitive passive. Thus,—

fuēre civēs qui rempublicam perditum ērent (Sall. Cat. 36), there were citizens who went about to ruin the republic (cf. § 258, b, Rem.)
nōn Grāis servītum mātribus ūbō (Aēn. ii. 786), I shall not go to be a slave to the Grecian dames.
sī scīset sē trucidātum irī (Div. ii. 22), if he (Pompey) had known that he was going to be murdered. [For the more usual form of the future infinitive, see § 147. c.]

303. The Latter Supine (in -ā)1 is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns fās, nefās, and opus, and rarely with verbs, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted: as,—

ō rem nōn modo visū foedam, sed etiam auditū (Phil. ii. 63), a thing not only shocking to see, but even to hear of.

quaerunt quid optimum factū sit (Ver. ii. 1. 68), they ask what is best to do.
hūmānum factū aut inceptū (Ter. Andr. 236), a human thing to do or undertake.

sī hoc fās est dictū (Tusc. v. 38), if this is lawful to say.

vidētis nefās esse dictū miseram fuisse tālem senectūtem (Cato. M. 13), you see it is a sin to say that such an old age was wretched.
pudet dictū (Agric. 32), it is shame to tell.

Note.—The latter supine is thus in appearance an ablative of specification (§ 253), but see § 302, head-note.

Remark.—The supine in -ā is found especially with such adjectives as indicate an effect on the senses or the feelings, and those which denote ease, difficulty, and the like. But with facilīs, difficilīs, iucundus, ad with the gerund is more common. Thus,—

nec visū facilis nec dictū adfābilis ūlli (Aēn. iii. 621), he is not pleasant for any man to look at or address.

dificilīs ad distinguendum similitūdō (De O. ii. 212), a likeness difficult to distinguish.

With all these adjectives the poets often use the Infinitive in the same sense: as,—

facilēs aurem praebeō (Prop.), indulgent to lend an ear.

1 The only latter supines in common use are audītū, dictū, factū, inventū, memorātū, nātū, visū. In classic use this supine is found, in all, in twenty-four verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.
Chapter IV. — Conditional Sentences.

Note. — The Conditional Sentence differs from other compound sentences in this, that the form of the main clause (Apodosis) is determined in some degree by the nature of the subordinate clause (Protasis), upon the truth of which the whole statement depends. Like all compound sentences, however, the Conditional Sentence has arisen from putting together two independent statements, which in time became so closely united as to make one modified statement. Thus — Speak the word: my servant shall be healed is an earlier form of expression than If thou speak the word, etc.

The Conditional Particles were originally independent pronouns: thus si, if, is a weak demonstrative of the same origin as sic, so (si-ce like hi-ce, see footnotes at pp. 65, 67), and has the primitive meaning of in that way, or in some way.

In its origin the Condition was of two kinds. Either it was assumed and stated as a fact, or it was expressed as a mild command. From the first have come all the uses of the Indicative in protasis; from the latter all the uses of the Subjunctive in protasis. The Apodosis has either (1) the Indicative, expressing the conclusion as a fact; and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, expressing it originally as future — and hence more or less doubtful — or (2) the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive expressing it as futūrum in praeteritō,1 and so unfulfilled in the present or past. Thus ridēs, mālōre cachinnō concutitur, you laugh, he shakes with more boisterous laughter, is the original form for the Indicative in protasis and apodosis; si ridēs originally means merely you laugh in some way or other, and so, later, if you laugh. So rogēs Aristōnem, neget, ask Aristo, he would say no, is the original form of the subjunctive in protasis and apodosis; si rogēs would mean ask in some way or other. In si rogāres, negāret, the Imperfect rogāres transfers the command of rogēs to past time,2 with the meaning suppose you had asked, and si would have the same meaning as before; while negāret transfers the future idea of neget to past time, and means he was going to deny. Now the stating of this supposition at all gives rise to the implication that it is untrue in point of fact, — because, if it were true, there would ordinarily be no need to state it as a supposition: for it would then be a simple fact, and as such would be put in the indicative.3 Such a condition or conclusion — originally past, meaning suppose you had asked [yesterday], he was going to deny — came to express an unfulfilled condition in the present; suppose (or if) you were now asking, he would [now] deny just as in English ought, which originally meant owed,4 has come to express a present obligation.

1 The futūrum in praeteritō is a tense future relatively to a time absolutely past. It denotes a future act transferred to the point of view of past time, and hence is naturally expressed by a past tense of the Subjunctive: thus dixisset, he would have said = dictūrus fuit, he was about to say [but did not]. As that which looks towards the future from some point in the past has a natural limit in present time, such a tense (the imperfect subjunctive) came naturally to be used to express a present condition purely ideal, that is to say, contrary to fact.

2 Compare potius diceret, he should rather have said (§ 266. e).

3 There are, however, some cases in which this implication does not arise: as, deciēns centēna dedissent, nil erat in loculis (Hor. Sat. i. 3. 15), if you'd given him a million, there was nothing in his coffers.

4 "There was a certain lender which ought him five hundred pieces." — Tyndale's N. T.
Conditional Sentences may be classified as follows:

1. **Simple Present or Past Conditions**, nothing implied as to fulfilment (§ 306).
   \[\begin{array}{l}
   a. \text{More vivid (§ 307).} \\
   b. \text{Less vivid (§ 307).}
   \end{array}\]

2. **Future Conditions**:
   \[\begin{array}{l}
   a. \text{More vivid (§ 307).} \\
   b. \text{Less vivid (§ 307).}
   \end{array}\]

3. **Conditions Contrary to Fact**:
   \[\begin{array}{l}
   a. \text{Present (§ 308).} \\
   b. \text{Past (§ 308).}
   \end{array}\]

4. **General Conditions**:
   \[\begin{array}{l}
   a. \text{Indefinite Subject (§ 309. a).} \\
   b. \text{Repeated Action (§ 309. b, c).}
   \end{array}\]

5. **Implied Conditions**:
   \[\begin{array}{l}
   a. \text{Protasis Disguised} \\
   b. \text{Protasis Omitted}
   \end{array}\]

   \[\begin{array}{l}
   1. \text{Potential Subjunctive (§ 311. a).} \\
   2. \text{Subjunctive of Modesty (§ 311. b).}
   \end{array}\]

1. **Protasis and Apodosis**.

304. A complete conditional sentence consists of two clauses, the Protasis and the Apodosis.

The clause containing the *condition* is called the Protasis; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the Apodosis: as, —

\[\text{si qui exire volunt [Protasis], cônivère possum [Apodosis] (Cat. ii. 27), if any wish to depart, I can keep my eyes shut.}\]

\[\text{si est in exsilió [Protasis], quid amplius postulâtis [Apodosis] (Lig.13), if he is in exile, what more do you ask?}\]

**Note.** — It should be carefully noted that the Protasis is the *dependent clause*.

a. The Protasis is regularly introduced by the conditional particle *si* (if) or one of its compounds.

**Note.** — These compounds are *sin, nisi, etiamsi, etsi, tametsi, tamenetsi* (see Conditional and Concessive Particles, § 155. c, g). An Indefinite Relative, or any relative or concessive word, may also serve to introduce a conditional clause (see § 316).

b. The Apodosis is often introduced by some correlative word or phrase: as, *sic, ita, tum, eâ condiciônë*, etc. Thus, —

\[\text{ita enim senectüs honesta est, si sé ipsa défendit (Cat. Maj. 38), on this condition is old age honorable, if it defends itself.}\]

\[\text{si quidem mé amâret, tum istúc prôdesset (Ter. Eun. 446), if he loved me, then this would be profitable.}\]

**Note.** — In this use *sic* and *eâ condiciônë* are rare.
c. The Apodosis is the principal clause of the conditional sentence, but may at the same time be subordinate to some other clause, and so be in the form of a Participle, an Infinitive, or a Phrase: as,—

sepultūra quoque prohibitura, ni regum humārum iussisset (Q. C. viii. 2), intending also to deprive him of burial, unless the king had ordered him to be interred.

quod si praeterērā nēcō sequatur, tamen sē cum sōlo decimā légionē itūrum [esse] (B. G. i. 40), but if no one else would follow, he would go with the tenth legion alone.

si quōs adversum prōelium commoveret, hōs reperire posset (id.), if the loss of a battle alarmed any, they might find, etc.

Note.—When the Apodosis itself is in Indirect Discourse, or in any dependent construction, the verb of the Protasis is regularly in the Subjunctive (as in the first two of the above examples, see § 337).

d. Conditions are either (1) Particular or (2) General.

1. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.

2. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

2. Classification.

305. The principal or typical Forms of conditional sentences may be exhibited as follows:—

a. Simple Conditions, with nothing implied as to fulfilment.

1. Present, nothing implied. Present Indicative in both clauses.

si adest, bene est, if he is [now] here, it is well.

2. Past, nothing implied. Some past tense of the Indicative in both clauses.

si aderat, bene erat, if he was [then] here, it was well.

si adfuit, bene fuit, if he has been here, it has been well.

b. Future Conditions (necessarily as yet unfulfilled).

1. More vivid.

(a) Future Indicative in both clauses.

si aderit, bene erit, if he is (shall be) here, it will be well.

(β) Future Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative in apodosis (condition thought of as completed before conclusion begins).

1 Cf. the Greek forms: — a. 1. ei πράσει τούτο, καλῶς ἔχει. 2. ei ἔπρασε τούτο, καλῶς ἔχειν. eī ἔπραζε τούτο, καλῶς ἔχειν.

b. 1. εἶ ν πράσιν τούτο, καλῶς ἔχει. 2. ei πράσιν τούτο, καλῶς ἔχειν. d. 1. εἶ ν τις κλέπτη, κολάζεται. 2. ei τις κλέπτη, ἐκολάζετο.
si adfuerit, bene erit, *if he is* (shall have been) *here, it will* [then] *be well* (but it will not begin to *be well* until he actually is here).

2. Less vivid.

(a) Present Subjunctive in both clauses.

si adsit, bene sit, *if he should be* (or were to be) *here, it would be well.*

(β) Perfect Subjunctive in protasis, Present Subjunctive in apodosis (condition thought of as completed before conclusion begins).

si adfuerit, bene sit, *if he should have been* *here, it would then be well.*

c. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

1. Present, *contrary to fact.* Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

si adesset, bene esset, *if he were* [now] *here, it would be well* (but he is not here).

2. Past, *contrary to fact.* Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

si adfuisset, bene fuisset, *if he had* [then] *been here, it would have been well* (but he was not here).

d. GENERAL CONDITIONS. Usually not differing in form from Particular Conditions (*a, b, and c*); but sometimes distinguished in the cases following: —

1. Present General Condition (Indefinite Time).

(a) Present Subjunctive second person singular in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis.

si hóc dicās, crēditur, *if any one* [ever] *says this, it is always* believed.

(β) Perfect Indicative in protasis, Present in apodosis.

si quid dixit, crēditur, *if he* [ever] *says anything, it is always* believed.

2. Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time).

(a) Imperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis.

si quid diceret, crēdēbatūr, *if he* [ever] *said anything, it was always* believed (= whatever he said was always believed).

(β) Pluperfect Indicative in protasis, Imperfect in apodosis.

si quid dixerat, crēdēbatur, *if he* [ever] *said anything, it was always* believed.

**Remark.** — The use of tenses in Protasis is very loose in English. Thus *if he is alive now* is a PRESENT condition, to be expressed in Latin by the Present Indicative; *if he is alive next year* is a FUTURE condition, expressed in Latin by the Future Indicative. Again, *if he were here now* is a PRESENT condition contrary to fact, and would be expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive; *if he were to see me thus* is a FUTURE condition less vivid to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive; and so too, *if you advised him, he would attend* may be future less vivid.

306. In the statement of present and past conditions whose falsity is not implied, the present and past tenses of the Indicative are used in both Protasis and Apodosis. Thus,—

si tū exercitusque valētis, bene est (Fam. v. 2), if you and the army are well, it is well. [Present Condition.]

haec igitur, si Rōmae es; sīn abes, aut etiam sī ades, haec negotia sīc sē habent (Att. v. 18), this, then, if you are at Rome; but if you are away—or even if you are there—these matters are as follows. [Present.]

sī qui magnīs ingeniīs in ēo genere exstītērunt, nōn satis Graecōrum glōriae responderērunt (Tuscul. i. 3), if any men have appeared of great genius in that branch, they have failed to compete with the glory of the Greeks. [Past Condition.]

accēpī Rōmā sine epistulā tuā fasciculum litterārum in quō sī modo valuisti et Rōmae fuisti Philotimī dūcē esse culpam nōn tuam (Att. v. 17), I have received from Rome a bundle of letters without any from you, which, provided you have been well and at Rome, I take to be the fault of Philotimus, not yours. [Mixed: Past condition and present conclusion.]

quās litterās, sī Rōmae es, vidēbis puēsne reddendās (Att. v. 18), as to this letter, if you are at Rome, you will see whether in your opinion it ought to be delivered. [Mixed: Present and Future.]

sī nēmō impetrāvit adroganter rogō (Ligarius 30), if no one has succeeded in obtaining it, my request is presumptuous. [Past and Present.]

a. In these conditions, the apodosis need not always be in the Indicative; but may assume any form, according to the sense. Thus,—

si placet . . . videāmus (Cato M. 15), if you please, let us see. [Hortatory.]

fuērit hōc cēnsōris, sī īudicābat (Div. i. 29), suppose it was the censor's duty, if he judged it false. [Hortatory Subjunctive.]

sī nōndum satis cernitis, recordāmini (Milon. 61), if you do not yet see clearly, recollect. [Imperative.]

sī quid habēs certius, velim scire (Att. iv. 10), if you have any trustworthy information, I should like to know it. [Subjunctive of Modesty, § 311. b.]

Note.—Although the form of these conditions does not imply anything as to the truth of the supposition, the sense or the context may of course have some such implication: as,—

nōlite, sī in nostrō omnium fēlētū nūllam lacrīmam aspēxistis Milōnis, hōc minus eī parcere (Milon. 92), do not, if amid the weeping of us all you have seen no tear [in the eyes] of Milo, spare him the less for that.
petimus ā vobis, iūdices, si qua divīna in tantis ingeniiis commendātiō dēbet esse, ut eum in vestram accipiātis sidem (Archias 31), we ask you, judges, if there ought to be anything in such genius to recommend it to us as by a recommendation of the gods, that you receive him under your protection.

In these two passages, the protasis really expresses cause: but the cause is put by the speaker in the form of a non-committal condition. His hearers are to draw the inference for themselves. In this way the desired impression is made on their minds more effectively than if an outspoken causal clause had been used.

4. Future Conditions.

307. Future Conditions may be more or less vivid.

1. In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the result.

2. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed.

a. In the more vivid future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis: as, —

sānābimur si vōlēmus (Tus. iii. 13), we shall be healed if we wish.
quod si legere aut audire volētis... reperīetis (Cato M. 20), if you will [shall wish to] read or hear, you will find.

Note. — In English the protasis is usually expressed by the Present Indicative, rarely by the future with SHALL. Often in Latin the Present Indicative is found in the protasis of a condition of this kind (cf. § 276. c) as, —

si vincimus, omnia nōbīs tūta crunt; sīn metū cēsserimus, cadae illa adversa fient (Sall. Cat. 58, 3), if we conquer, all things will be safe for us; but if we yield through fear, those same things will become hostile.
sī pereō hominum manibus periisse iuvabit (Æn. iii. 606), if I perish, it will be pleasant to have perished at the hands of men.

b. In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis: as, —

haec si tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat (Cat. i. 19),
if your country should thus speak with thee, ought she not to prevail?
quod si quis deus mihi largiātur... valde recūsem (Cat. Maj. 83), but if some god were to grant me this, I should stoutly refuse.
Remark.—The present subjunctive sometimes stands in protasis with the future in apodosis from a change in the point of view of the speaker.\footnote{It often depends entirely upon the view of the writer at the moment, and not upon the nature of the condition, whether it shall be stated vividly or not; as in the proverbial “If the sky falls, we shall catch larks,” the impossible condition is ironically put in the vivid form, to illustrate the absurdity of some other supposed condition stated by someone else.}

c. If the conditional act is regarded as \textit{completed} before that of the apodosis begins, the Future Perfect is substituted for the Future Indicative in protasis, and the Perfect Subjunctive for the Present Subjunctive: as, —

-\textit{si cum potuerō, nōn vēnerō, tum erit inimicus} (Att. ix. 2), but if I do not come when I can, he will be unfriendly.
-\textit{si nōn fēceris ignōscam} (Fam. v. 19), if you do not do it, I will excuse you.

Remark.—The Future Perfect is very often used in the apodosis of a future condition: as, —

vehementer mihi grātum fēceris, si hunc adolēscentem hūmānitāte tuā comprehenderis (Fam. xiii. 15), you will do (will have done) me a great favor, if you receive this young man with your usual courtesy.

d. Any form denoting or implying future time may stand in the apodosis of a future condition. So the Imperative, the particles in \textit{-dus} and \textit{-rus}, and verbs of \textit{necessity}, \textit{possibility}, and the like: as, —

-\textit{alius finis cōnstituendus est} si prius quid máximē reprehendere Scipio solitus sit dixerō (Læl. 59), another limit must be set if I first state what Scipio was wont most to find fault with.
-\textit{si mē præcéperit fātum, vos mandāsse mementō, if fate cuts me off too soon, do you remember that I ordered this} (Q. C. ix. 6, 26).
-\textit{nisi oculis videritis insidiās Milōnī à Clōdiō factās, nec dēprecātūrī sumus nec postulātūrī} (Milon. 6), unless you see with your own eyes the plots laid against Milo by Clodius, I shall neither beg nor demand, etc.
-\textit{nōn possum istum accusāre si cupiam} (Ver. iv. 87), I cannot accuse him if I should desire to.

e. Rarely the Perfect Indicative is used in apodosis with a Present or even a Future in protasis, to represent the conclusion rhetorically as \textit{already accomplished}: as, —

-\textit{si hōc bene fixum in animō est, vīcistis} (Liv. xxi. 44), if this is well fixed in your minds, you have conquered. [For you will have conquered.]
-\textit{si eundem [animō] habueritis, vicimus} (id. 43), if you shall have kept the same spirit, we have conquered.

f. A future condition is frequently thrown back into past time, without implying that it is contrary to fact (§ 308). In such cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used: as, —
nōn poterat nisi vellet (B. C. iii. 44), was not able unless he wished. tumulus appāruit . . . sī lūce palam īrētur hostis praeventūrus erat (Liv. xxii. 24), a hill appeared . . . if they should go openly by light, the enemy would prevent. [The first two appear like ind. disc., but are not. An observer describing the situations as present ones would say potest sī velit (etc., see d), and no ind. disc. would be thought of. The only difference between these and the third is that in them the forms in d are used instead of the subjunctive.]

Caesar sī peteret . . . nōn quicquam prōficeret (Hor. Sat. i. 3. 4), if even Caesar were to ask he would gain nothing. [Here the construction is not contrary to fact, but is simply sī petat nōn prōficiat, thrown into past time.]

5. Conditions Contrary to Fact.

308. In the statement of a supposition known to be false, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis.¹ The imperfect refers to Present Time, the pluperfect to Past: as,—

quae sī exsequī nequarem, tamen mē lectulus oblectāret meus (Cat. Maj. 38), if I could not [now] follow this (an active life), yet my couch would afford me pleasure. [Present.]
nisi tū amīsīssēs, nuncquam recēpissem (id. 11), unless you had lost it, I should not have recovered it. [Past.]
si meum cōnsilium auctōritāsque valuisset, tū hodiē egērēs, nōs liberi essēmus, rēspūlica nōn tot ducēs et exercītūs amīsisset (Phil. ii. 37), if my judgment and authority had prevailed [as they did not], you would this day be a beggar, we should be free, and the republic would not have lost so many leaders and armies. [Mixed Present and Past.]
qui nisi revertisset, in eō conclāvī ci cubandum fuisset, quod proxīma nocte cruērit: ruīnā igitur oppressus esset; at id neque sī fātum fuerat effugisset, nec sī nōn fuerat in eum cāsum incīdisset (Div. ii. 20), if it had been decreed by fate, he would not have escaped, etc. [The apodosis of fuerat is not effugisset, but the whole conditional sentence of which effugisset is the apodosis; the real protasis of effugisset is revertisset (cf. § 311. d).]

a. In conditions contrary to fact the Imperfect often refers to past time, both in protasis and apodosis, especially when a repeated or continued action is denoted, or when the condition if true would still exist: as,—

---

1 The implication of falsity, in this construction, is not inherent in the Subjunctive; but comes from the transfer of a future condition to past time. Thus the time for the happening of the condition has, at the time of writing, already passed; so that, if the condition remains a condition, it must be contrary to fact. So past forms implying a future frequently take the place of the subjunctive in apodosis in this construction (see d, below, and head-note, p. 320),
hic si mentis esset suæ, ausus esset édúcere exercitum (Pis. 50), if he were of sane mind, would he have dared to lead out the army? [Here esset denotes a continued state, past as well as present.]
nón concidissent, nisi illud receptáculum classibus nostrís patéret (Verr. ii. 3), [the power of Carthage] would not have fallen, unless that station had been open to our fleets. [Without the condition, patēbat.]

REMARK.—This use necessarily arises from the fact that the pluperfect is equivalent to a future perfect in praeterito, and so represents the action as completed and momentary, rather than as continuing.

b. In the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact the Past tenses of the Indicative may be used to express what was intended, or likely, or already begun: as,—

si licitum esset mātrēs veniēbant (Verr. v. 129), the mothers were coming if it had been allowed (see § 305. c. 2).
in amplexīs filiæ ruēbat, nisi licitōres obstītissent (Tac. A. xvi. 32), he was about rushing into his daughter’s arms, unless the licensors had opposed.
iam tūta tenēbam, nī gens crudēlis ferrō invāsisset (Aēn. vi. 358), I was just reaching a place of safety, had not the fierce people attacked me.

NOTE.—In such cases the apodosis may be regarded as elliptical. Thus,—
mātrēs veniēbant (et vēnissent) si licitum esset, the matrons were coming (and would have kept on) if it had been allowed. [So with paene, prope, etc.]

REMARK.—In this use, the imperfect indicative corresponds in time to the imperfect subjunctive, and the perfect or pluperfect indicative to the pluperfect subjunctive.

c. Verbs and expressions denoting necessity, propriety, possibility, duty,1 when used in the Apodosis of a condition contrary to fact are regularly put in the Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect Indicative instead of the Subjunctive: as,—

si ita putāset certe optābilius Milōnī fuit (Milon. 31), if he had thought so, surely it would have been preferable for Milo.
si Rōmae privātus esset hōc tempore, tamen erat dēligendus (Manil. 50), if he (Pompey) were at this time a private citizen at Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.
quod esse caput dēbēbat si probāri posset (Fin. iv. 23), what ought to be the main point if it could be proved.
nam nōs dēcēbat lugēre (Tuscul. i. 115), for it would befit us to mourn.

1 Such are possum, decet, oportet, dēbeo, and the Second Periphrastic Conjugation. Observe that all these expressions contain the idea of futurity (cf. note above). Thus, decet mē [hodīē] ire crās, means it is proper for me [to-day] to go to-morrow; and, dēcēbat mē [herī], ire hodiē, it was proper for me [yesterday] to go to-day, usually with the implication that I have not gone as I was bound to.
NOTE 1.— In this construction it is only the thing necessary (etc.) that is conditioned, and not the necessity itself. If the necessity itself is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used as with other verbs. The difference is often imperceptible, but may be seen in the following example:—

quid facere potuisset nis tum consul fuisset? consul autem esse qui potuit nisi eum vitae cursum tenuisset a pueritiae (Rep. i. 10), what could I have done if I had not then been consul; and how could I have been consul if I had not followed that course of life from boyhood.

NOTE 2.—This construction is sometimes carried still further in poetry: as,—

si non alium iactaret odorem, laurus erat (Georg. ii. 133), it were a laurel, but for giving out a different odor.

d. The participle in -urus with eram or fuī may take the place of an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis of a condition contrary to fact: as,—

quid enim futūrum fuit [= fuisset], si ... (Liv. ii. 1), what would have happened if, etc.

neque ambigitur quin ... id factūrus fuerit, si ... (id.), nor is there any question he would have done it if, etc. [Direct: fecisset.]

ex quo intellegi potest quam acūtī nātūrā sint, qui haec sine doctrinā erēditūrī fuerint (Tusc. i. 48), hence it may be understood how keen they are by nature, who, without instruction, would have believed this. [Here the condition is contained in the words sine doctrinā.]

adeō parāta sēdītō fuit, ut Othōnem raptūrī fuerint, nī incerta noctis timuissent (Tac. H. i. 26), so far advanced was the conspiracy that they would have seized upon Otho, had they not feared the hazards of the night. [In a main clause: rapuissent nī timuissent.]

NOTE.—This construction is regularly used when the apodosis is itself a dependent clause requiring the subjunctive, and also in Indirect Discourse. In Indirect Discourse fuisset replaces eram or fuī (see § 337).

e. The Present and Perfect subjunctive are sometimes used in poetry in the protasis and apodosis of conditions contrary to fact: as,—

ni comes admonēat, inruat (Æn. vi. 293), had not his companion warned him, he would have rushed on.

ni faciat, maria ac terrās ferant (id. i. 58), unless he did this, they would bear away sea and land.

NOTE.—This is probably a remnant of an old construction. Its use puts the condition in a vivid form,—as if possible at any moment in the future though not now true.

6. General Conditions.

309. General Conditions (§ 304. d) have usually the same forms as Particular Conditions. But they are sometimes distinguished in the following three cases:—
a. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in the second person singular, to denote the act of an Indefinite Subject (you = any one). Here the Indicative of a general truth may stand in the apodosis: as,—

mēns prope uti ferrum est: si exercēās conteritur; nisi exercēās, rūbī-ginem contrahit (Cato de Mor.), the mind is very like iron: if you use it, it wears away; if you don't use it, it gathers rust.

virtūtem necessāriō glōria, etiamsi tū id nōn agās, cōnsequitur (Tusc. i. 91), glory necessarily follows virtue, even if that is not one's aim.

si prohibita impūne trānscederis, neque metus ultra neque pudor est (Tac. A. iii. 54), if you once overstep the bounds with impunity, there is no fear nor shame any more.

si cēderēs placābilis (Tac. Ann.), [he was] easily appeased if one yielded.

b. In later writers (not in Cicero), the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in protasis, with the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis, to state a repeated or customary action in past time: as,—

accūsātōres, si facultās incideret, poenīs adficiebantur (Tac. A. vi. 30), the accusers, whenever opportunity offered, were visited with punishment.

c. In a general condition in present time, the protasis often takes the Perfect, and the apodosis the Present Indicative. For past time, the Pluperfect is used in the protasis, and the Imperfect in the apodosis. Thus,—

si quōs aliqua membrōrum parte inūtilēs nōtāverunt, necāri iubent (Q. C. ix. 1, 25), if they [ever] mark any infirm in any part of their limbs, they [always] order them to be put to death. [Present.]

si ā persequendō hostēs deterrēre nequīverant ab tergō circumveniēbant (Jug. 50), if [ever] they were unable to prevent the enemy from pursuing, they [always] surrounded them in the rear. [Past.]

d. In all other cases, general suppositions—including those introduced by Indefinite Relatives—are not distinguished in form from Particular Conditions.

7. Condition Disguised.

310. In many sentences properly conditional, the Protasis is not expressed by a conditional clause, but is stated in some other form of words or implied in the nature of the thought. Thus,—

a. The condition may be implied in a Clause or in a Participle, Noun, Adverb, or some other word or phrase. Thus,—

facile mē paterer—illō ipsis iūdice quaerente—prō Sex. Rosciō dicere (Rosc. Amer. 85), I should readily allow myself to speak for Roscius if that very judge were conducting the trial. [Present contrary to fact: si quaereret, etc.]
§ 310.]

**Condition Disguised.**

nōn mihi, nisi admonītō, vēnisset in mentem (De O. ii. 180), *it would not have come into my mind unless* [I had been] reminded. [Past contrary to fact: nisi admonītus essem.]

nulla alia gēns tantā mole clādīs nōn obruta esset (Liv. xxii. 54), *there is no other people that would not have been crushed by such a weight of disaster.* [Past contrary to fact: si alia fuisset.]

eūmō unquam sine māgnā spē immortālitātis, sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem (Tusc. i. 32), *no one, without great hope of immortality, would ever expose himself to death for his country.* [Present contrary to fact: nisi māgnam spem habēret.]

quid hunc paucōrum annōrum accēssiō iuvāre potuisset (Lel. 11), *what good could the addition of a few years have done him* (if they had been added)? [Past contrary to fact: si accēssisset.]

quī igitur mihi ferārum laniātus oberit nihil sentienti (Tuscul. i. 104), *what harm will the mangling by wild beasts do me if I don't feel anything* (feeling nothing)? [Future more vivid: si nihil sentiam.]

incitāta semel prōclive lābuntur (Tusc. iv. 42), *if once given a push, they slide down rapidly.* [Present General: si incitāta sunt.]

b. The condition may be contained in a Wish (optative subjunctive), or expressed as an Exhortation or Command (hortatory subjunctive,¹ or imperative): as, —

utīnam quidem fuisset molestus nōbis nōn esset (Fam. xii. 3), *I wish I had been [chief]: he would not now be troubling us* (i.e. if I had been). [Optative Subjunctive.]

nātūram expellās furcā, tamen usque recurret (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 24) *drive out nature with a pitchfork, still she will ever return.* [Hortatory.]

rogēs enim Aristōnem, neget (Fin. iv. 69), *for ask Aristotle, he would deny.* manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria (Cato M. 22), *old men keep their mental powers, only let them keep their zeal and diligence* (§ 266. d). [Hortatory.]

tolle hanc opinōnem, lūctum sustuleris (Tusc. i. 30), *remove this notion, and you will have done away with grief.* [Imperative.]

NOTE.—The so-called concessive subjunctive with ut and nō is really hortatory, and often has the force of protasis (§ 313. a): as,—

ut enim rationem Platō nullam afferret, ipsā auctoritāte mē frangeret (Tusc. i. 49), *even if Plato gave no reasons, [still] he would overpower me, etc.*

c. Rarely the condition takes the form of an independent clause: as,—

ridēs: māiore cachinnō concutitur (Juv. iii. 100), *you laugh; he shakes with louder laughter* (= if you laugh, he shakes).

---

¹ This usage is probably the origin of the use of the subjunctive in Protasis; the subjunctive being used first as in § 266, while the conditional particle is a form of an indefinite pronoun (see head-note, p. 320).
commovē: sentiēs (Tusc. iv. 54), stir him up [and] you'll find, etc.
dē paupertāte agitur: multī patientēs pauperēs commemorantur (Tusc. iii. 57), we speak of poverty; many patient poor are mentioned.

d. The condition is often contained in a Relative Clause (see § 310).

REMARK.—For the use of a participle as APODOSIS, see § 304. c.

8. Condition Omitted.

311. The Protasis is often wholly omitted, but may be inferred from the course of the argument. Thus, —

poterat Sextilius impūne negāre: quis enim redargueret (Fin. ii. 55), Sex-
tilius might have denied with impunity; for who would prove him wrong (if he had).

REMARK.—Under this head belongs the so-called POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

a. The Potential Subjunctive is used to denote an action not as actually performed, but as possible.

In this use the Present and the Perfect refer without distinction to the immediate future; the Imperfect to past time. The second person is common, indicating an Indefinite Subject (cf. § 309. a). Thus, —

hic quaerat quispiam (N. D. ii. 133), here some one may ask.
assimilāre fretō possīs (Ov. M. v. 6), you might compare.
ut aliquis fortasse dīxerit (Of. iii. 97), as one may perhaps say.
forsitan haec illī mīrentur (Verr. iv. 124), they may perchance marvel at these things.
tum in lectō quōque vīderēs susurrōs (Hor. Sat. ii. 8. 77), then on each couch you might hear whisperings.

NOTE 1.—The Present is sometimes used for the Imperfect: as,—
migrantīs cernās (Ān. iv. 401), you might have seen them moving.

NOTE 2.—The Pluperfect is rare in this construction. Its place is supplied by the Imperfect.

putāssēs ēīus lūctūs aliquem finem esse dēbēre (Sen. Dial. 6, 13), you would have thought there ought to be some end to his grief.

NOTE 3.—The subjunctive with forsitan does not differ in meaning from the Potential Subjunctive, but is really an Indirect Question (§ 334. g).

REMARK.—The potential subjunctive is strictly an apodosis with omitted protasis. Sometimes the protasis may be easily supplied, but often none is present to the mind of the speaker. So also the Subjunctive of Modesty (b, below).

II. SUBJUNCTIVE OF MODESTY.

b. The Subjunctive is used in cautious, modest, or hypothetical statements (coniunctīvus modestiāe). This use is especially common in a polite wish, with velim or vellem. Thus, —
§ 311.]  

Condition Omitted.

pāce tuā dixerim (Mil. 103), I would say by your leave.

haud sciam an (Lælius 51), I should incline to think.

tū velim sic existimēs (Fam. xii. 6), I should like you to think so.

vix ausim crēdere (Ov. M. vi. 561), I should hardly dare believe.

vellem adesset M. Antōnīus (Phil. i. 16), I could wish Antony were here. 

[Here vellem implies an unfulfilled wish in present time; volō or nōlō would express a peremptory wish.]

haec erant fere quae tība nōta esse vellem (Fam. xii. 5), this is about what I should like you to know. [Here vellem is simply velim transferred to past time on account of erat (epistolary), by sequence of tenses, and does not imply an impossible wish.]

III. VERBS OF NECESSITY.

c. The Indicative of verbs signifying necessity, propriety, and the like, may be used in the apodosis of implied conditions, either future or contrary to fact: as, —

longum est ea dicere, sed ... (Ses. 12), it would be tedious to tell, etc.

[Future.]

illud erat aptius, aequum cuique concēdere (Fin. iv. 2), it would be more fitting to yield each one his rights.

quantō melius fuerat (Off. iii. 94), how much better it would have been.

quod centra decuiit ab illō meum [corpus cremāri] (Cat. Maj.), whereas on the other hand mine ought to have been burnt by him.

ipsum enim expectāre māgnun fuit (Phil. ii. 103), would it have been a great matter to wait for the man himself?

nam nōs deēbat domum lugēre ubi esset aliquis in lūcem ēditus (Tusc. i. 115), for it were fitting to mourn the house where a man has been born (but we do not).

nunc est bibendum ... nunc Saliāribus ōrnāre pulvīnar deōrum tempus erat dapibus sodālēs (Hor. Od. i. 37. 1), i.e. it would be time (if it were for us to do it, but it is a public act).

REMARK.—Notice that, in this construction, the Imperfect indicative refers to present time; the Pluperfect to simply past time, like the perfect. Thus oportēbat means it ought to be [now], but is not; oportuerat means it ought to have been, but was not.

NOTE.—In many cases it is impossible to say whether a protasis was present to the mind of the speaker or not (see third example above).

9. Complex Conditions.

d. Either the protasis or the apodosis may be a complex idea in which the main statement is made with expressed or implied qualifications. In such cases the true logical relation of the parts is sometimes disguised: as, —
334 Syntax: Conditional Sentences. [§§ 311, 312.

si quis hōrum dixisset ... si verbum dē rēpublicā fēcisset ... multa plūa
dixisse quam dixisset putārētur (Rosc. Am. 2), if any of these had
spoken in case he had said a word about politics, he would be thought
to have said much more than he did say. [Here the apodosis of
dixisset is the whole of the following statement (si ... putārētur),
which is itself conditioned by a protasis of its own: si verbum, etc.].
quod si in hōc mundō fieri sine deō nōn potuit nē in sphaerā quidem
eōsdem mōtūs sine divīnō ingeniō potuisset imitāri (Tusc. i. 63), now
if that cannot be done in this universe without divine agency, no more
could [Archimedes] in his orrery have imitated the same revolutions
without divine genius. [Here si potuīt (a protasis with nothing im-
plied) has for its apodosis the whole clause which follows, but potuisset
has a contrary-to-fact protasis of its own implied in sine ... ingeniō.]
peream male si nōn optimum erat (Hor. Sat. ii. 1. 6), confound me (may I
perish wretchedly) if it wouldn't be better. [Here peream is apodosis
to the rest of the sentence, while the true protasis to optimum erat,
contrary to fact, is omitted.]

10. Particles of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted).

312. The particles of Comparison — tamquam, tamquam
si, quasi, ācsi, utsi, velutsi, veluti, and poetic ceu (all meaning
as if), and quam si (than if) — take the Present or Perfect
Subjunctive, unless the sequence of tenses requires the
Imperfect or Pluperfect. Thus,—
tamquam clausa sī Asia (Fam. xii. 9), as if Asia were closed.
tamquam si claudus sīm (Plant. Asin. ii. 4, 21), just as if I were lame (i.e. just
as it would be if I should be lame).
ita hōs [honōrēs] petunt, quasi honestō vīxerint (Jug. 85), they seek them
(offices) just as if they had lived honorably.
quasi vērō non speciē visa īūdicentur (Acad. ii. 58), as if so forth these visible
things were not judged by their appearance.
similiter facis āc si mē rogēs (N. S. iii. 3), you do exactly as if you asked me.
aequē āc si mea negotiā essent (Fam. xiii. 43), as much as if it were my
own business.
velut si coram adesset (B. G. i. 32), as if he were present in person.
ceu cētera nusquam bella forent (Æn. ii. 438), as if there were no fighting
elsewhere. [But sometimes with indic. in poetry, as Æn. v. 88.]

RemarK. — The English idiom would lead us to expect the Imperfect and
Pluperfect Subjunctive with these particles; but the point of view is different in
the two languages. Thus the second example above is translated just as if I were
lame,— as if it were a present condition contrary to fact; but it really means just
as [it would be] if I should [at some future time] be lame, and so is a less vivid
future condition requiring the present subjunctive. Similarly quasi honestō
vīxerint, as if they had lived honorably, is really as [they would do in the future]
if they should have lived honorably, and so requires the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 307. c.).
NOTE.—These subjunctive clauses are really future conditions with apodosis implied in the particle itself. Thus in tamquam si claudus sim the protasis is introduced by si, and the apodosis implied in tamquam.

11. Concessive Clauses.

313. The particles of Concession (meaning although, granting that) are the following: quamquam, quamlibet, quamvis, quantum vis, ut, nē, cum, licet, etsi, tametsi, etiamsi.

Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative. Thus,—

a. Quamvis, ut, and nē take the Subjunctive (§ 266. c): as,—

quamvis ipsī infantēs sint, tamen ... (Or. 76), however incapable of speaking they themselves may be, yet, etc.

ut nēminem alium rogasset (Mil. 46), even if he had asked no other.

nē sit sāne summum dolor: malum certē est (Tuscul. ii. 14), suppose pain is not the greatest evil, still it surely is an evil.

NOTE.—Quamvis means literally, as much as you will. Thus in the example above, let them be as incapable as you will, still, etc. The subjunctive with quamvis and nē is hortatory; that with ut is of uncertain origin.

b. Licet (properly a verb) takes a Substantive clause in the Subjunctive (§ 331. c): as,—

licet omnes in mē terrōrēs periculaque impendeant (Rosc. Am. 31), though all terrors and perils should menace me.

NOTE.—The subjunctive with licet is by the sequence of tenses necessarily limited to the Present and Perfect tenses.

c. Etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, even if, take the same constructions as bī (§ 305): as,—

etsī abest māturītās (Fam. vi. 18), though ripeness of age is wanting.

etsī nunquam dubium fuit (id. v. 19), although it has never been doubtful.

etsī statueram (id. v. 5), though I had determined.

etsī nihil aliud abstulissetis (Sull. 90), even if you had taken away nothing else.

etiamsī quod scribas nōn habēbis, scribītō tamen (Fam. xvi. 26), even if you [shall] have nothing to write, still write.

sed ea tametsī vōs parvi pendēbātis (Sall. Cat. 52), but although you regarded those things as of small account.

d. Cum concessive takes the Subjunctive (see § 326): as,—

cum mīhi nōn omnīnō excidisset (Fam. v. 13), though it had not entirely vanished [from my mind].
Syntax: Conditional Sentences.  §§ 313, 314.

Note.—In early Latin cum (quom) concessive usually takes the Indicative: as,—

nil quom est nil dēhit tamen (Ter. Eun. 243), while I have nothing, still nothing is wanting. [See also § 326, note 3.]

e. Quamquam introduces an admitted fact and takes the Indicative: as,—

quamquam ruit ipse suis clādibus—pestem dēnūntiat (Phil. xiv. 8), though he is breaking down under his disasters, still he threatens all with destruction.

f. Quamquam more commonly means and yet, introducing a new proposition in the indicative: as,—

quamquam haec quidem tolerābilla vidēbantur, etsi, etc. (Mil. 76), and yet these, in truth, seemed now bearable, though, etc.

g. The poets and later writers frequently use quamvis and quamquam like etsī, connecting them with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to the nature of the condition. Thus,—

quamquam moverētur (Liv. xxxvi. 34), although he was moved.
Polliō amat nostram, quamvis est rūstica, mūsam (Ecl. iii. 84), Pollio loves my muse, though she is rustic.
quamvis pervēnerās (Liv. ii. 40), though you had come.

Note.—Even Cicero occasionally uses quamquam with the Subjunctive:

quamquam nē id quīdem suspicīōnem coitiōnis habuerit (Planc. 53), though not even that raised any suspicion of a coalition.

h. The Relative pronoun qui is often used with the Subjunctive to express concession (see § 320. e).

i. Concession is often expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle (§ 266): as,—

sit clārus Scipiō, ōrnetur eximiā laude Āfricānus, habeātur vir ēgregius Paullus . . . erit profectō inter hōrum laudēs aliqüid locī nostrae glōriae (Catil. iv. 21), let Scipio be renowned, let Africanus be honored with especial praise, let Paulus be regarded as a remarkable man, [still] there will surely be some room for my glory amid the praises of these men.


314. Dum, modo, dummodo, or tantum, introducing a Proviso, takes the Subjunctive: as,—

ōderint dum metuant (Off. i. 97), let them hate, if only they fear.
valētūdō modo bona sit (Brut. 64), provided the health is good.
dummodo inter mē atque tē murus intersit (Cat. i. 10), provided only the wall (of the city) is between us.
a. In a negative proviso nē is used, with or without modo, etc.: as,
modo nē sit ex pecudum genere (Of. i. 105), provided [in pleasure] he be not of the herd of cattle.
id faciat saepe, dum nē lassum fiat (Cato R. R. v. 4), let him do this often, provided he does not get tired.
dummodo ca (severitās) nē variētur (Q. Fr. i. 1), provided only it (strictness) be not allowed to swerve.
tantum nē noceat (Ov. M. ix. 21), only let it do no harm.

Note.—The Subjunctive with modo is hortatory (§ 266. d); that with dum and dummodo, a development from the use of the Subjunctive with dum in temporal clauses, § 328 (compare the colloquial, so long as my health is good, I don't care).

b. The Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle sometimes expresses a proviso (see § 266. d): as, —
sint Maecēnātēs, nōn deerunt, Flaccē, Marōnēs (Mart. viii. 56, 5), so there be Maecenasēs, Virgīls will not be lacking.

Note.—For a clause of Result expressing proviso, see § 319. b.

13. Use of Sī and its Compounds.

315. The uses of some of the more common Conditional Particles may be stated as follows: —

a. 1. Sī is used for affirmative, nisi (nī) and sī nōn for negative conditions. With nisi (generally unless) the apodosis is stated as universally true except in the single case supposed, in which case it is (impliesly) not true. Thus, —

nisi Conōn adest maerō, unless Conon is here, I mourn (i.e. I am always in a state of grief except in the single case of Conon's presence, in which case I am not).

With sī nōn (if not) the apodosis is only stated as true in the (negative) case supposed, but as to other cases no statement is made. Thus, —
sī Conōn nōn adest maerō, if Conon is not here, I mourn (i.e. I mourn in the single case of Conon's absence, nothing being said as to other cases in which I may or may not mourn).

Note.—It often, however, makes no difference in which form the statement is made.

2. Nī is an old form surviving in a few conventional phrases and reappearing in poets and later writers.

Sometimes nisi sī, except if, unless, occurs: as, —
nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longiōrēs epistulās scribere, nisi sī quis ad mē plūra scritpsit (Fam. xiv. 2), except in case one writes more to me.

b. Nisi vērō and nisi forte regularly introduce an objection or exception ironically, and take the Indicative: as, —
nisi vērō L. Caesar crūdēlior vīsus est (Cat. iv. 13), unless indeed L. Caesar seemed too cruel.
nisi forte volumus Epicūrēorum opiniãoem sequi (De Fato, 37), unless to be sure we choose to follow the notion of the Epicureans.

NOTE. — This is the regular way of introducing a reductio ad absurdum in Latin. Nīsi alone is sometimes used in this sense: as,—
nisi ānum hōc faciam ut in puteō cēnam coquant (Plaut. Aul. 363), unless I do this one thing, [make them] cook dinner in the well.

c. Sīve (seu)... sīve (seu), whether... or, introduce a condition in the form of an alternative. They may be used with any form of condition, or with different forms in the two members. Often also they are used without a verb. Thus,—

nam illō locō libentissimiē soleō ītī, sīve quid mēcum ipse cōgitō, sīve quid aut scribō aut legō (De Leg. ii. 1), for I enjoy myself most in that place, whether I am thinking by myself, or am either writing or reading.

NOTE. — Sīve... seu and seu... sīve are late or poetic.

d. Nīsi is often used loosely by the comic poets in the sense of only: as,—

ecce autem dē integrō: nīsi quidquid est volō scire (Ter. Ad. 153), but there it is again; only whatever it is I want to know it.
CHAPTER V. — Dependent Constructions.

I. — RELATIVE CLAUSES.

The Relative, being in origin a weak demonstrative (or possibly, in some cases, an interrogative), may be used indifferently with either the indicative or the subjunctive. A simple relative, introducing a merely descriptive fact, takes the Indicative, as any demonstrative would do. Thus, tellus quae fuerat rudis. But many relative constructions take the subjunctive to indicate a closer logical connection between the relative clause and the main clause.

These constructions have grown up from the future meaning of the subjunctive, each with its own special development. In general they are of two kinds, which are not, however, very distinct in meaning: 1. clauses where the implied logical connection is that of Purpose; 2. clauses which express more or less distinctly some Characteristic of the antecedent. Of these last the most common is the ordinary clause of Result. Besides these two classes, however, there are general relatives of Protasis, in which the indefinite relatives whoever, whenever, etc., are regarded as conditional expressions, equivalent to, if any one, if at any time, etc. 1

Dependent Relative Clauses may be thus classified:

2. Clauses of PURPOSE (Final Clauses) (§ 317).
3. Clauses of CHARACTERISTIC, including —
   a. Simple Result (Consecutive Clauses) (§ 319).
   b. Clauses of Characteristic (including cause and hindrance) (§§ 320, 321).
   c. Clauses of Time (§ 322 ff.).


316. A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb may be treated as a conditional clause and take any of the constructions of Protasis 1 (§ 305): as,

qui enim vitiiis modum apponiit, is partem suscipit vitiiorum (Tusc. iv. 42),
he who [only] sets a limit to faults, takes up the side of the faults.
[= si quis apponiit.]

quicquid potuit, potuit ipsa per se (Agr. i, 20), whatever power she had,
she had by herself. [= si quid potuit.]

quod qui faciet, non aegritudine solum vacabit, sed, etc. (Tusc. iv. 38),
and he who does [shall do] this, will be free not only, etc. [= si quis
faciet.]

quisquis hic venerit vapidabit (Plaut. Am. 153), whoever comes here
shall get a thrashing. [= si quis venerit.]

1 As in the Greek ὅς ἄν, ὅταν, etc.; and in statutes in English, where the phrases if any person shall and whoever shall are used indifferently.
philosophia, cui quī pāreat, omne tempus aetātis sine molestiā possit dēgere (Cat. Maj. 2), philosophy, which if anyone should obey, he would be able to spend his whole life without vexation. [≡ sī quis pāreat.]

quaecumque causa vōs hūc attulisset, laetāre (De O. ii. 15), I should be glad, whatever cause had brought you here (i.e. if any other, as well as the one which did). [≡ sī ... attulisset.]

NOTE.—The relative in this construction is always Indefinite in meaning, and usually in form.

a. The special constructions of General Conditions are sometimes found in Conditional Relative Clauses: viz.,—

1. The Second Person Singular of the Subjunctive in the protasis with the Indicative of a general truth in the apodosis (§ 309. a) : as,—

   bonus sēgnior fīt, ubi negleggās (Jug. 31), a good man becomes less diligent when you don't watch him.

2. In later writers the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the protasis and the Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 309. b) : as,—

   quōcumque sē intulisset, vicīriam sēcum trahēbat (Liv. vi. 8), wherever he advanced, he carried victory with him.

3. The Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative in the protasis and the Present or Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 309. c) : as,—

   cum ad villam vēnī, hoc ipsum nihil agere mē dēlectāt (De O. ii. 24), whenever I come to the villa, this very doing nothing delights me (when ever I have come, etc.). [Present General Condition.]

   cum rosam viderat, tum įncipere vēr arbitrābātur (Verr. v. 27), whenever he saw (had seen) a rose, then he thought spring was beginning. [Past General Condition.]

2. Clauses of Purpose.

NOTE.—The Subjunctive clause of Purpose has arisen either from the original future meaning of the subjunctive, or from its hortatory use. Either affords a satisfactory analysis. If developed from the hortatory subjunctive, the Subjunctive of Purpose has come through a kind of indirect discourse construction (for which see § 340). Thus māsit lēgātōs quī dicerent means either he sent ambassadors who would say (future use), or, he sent ambassadors who should say, i.e. let them say (cf. hortatory subjunctive in past tenses, § 266. e, and hortatory clauses in Indirect Discourse, § 339).

As ut (uti) is of relative origin, the construction with ut is the same as that of relatives. That with nē is, no doubt, in origin, a hortatory subjunctive.

317. A clause expressing purpose is called a Final Clause.
Final clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** (**uti**), negative **nē** (**ut nē**), or by a Relative pronoun or adverb.

Final clauses may be divided into Pure, Relative, and Substantive.

1. Pure Clauses of Purpose are introduced by **ut** (**uti**) or **nē**. They express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

2. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the Relative pronoun **qui**, or by the Relative adverbs **ubi**, **unde**, **quō**, etc. The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose are introduced by **ut** (**uti**), negative **nē**. They differ from Pure final Clauses in having the construction of a substantive. (For Substantive Clauses of Purpose, see § 331.)

Examples of Pure and Relative clauses of purpose are:

- ab arātō abduxerunt Cincinnātum, **ut** dictator esset (Fin. ii. 12), they brought Cincinnatus from the plough that he might be dictator.
- **nē** qua **ēius** adventūs procul significātō **fīat** (B. G. vi. 29), that no sign of his arrival may be made at a distance.
- **ut nē** sit impūne (Mil. 31), that it be not with impunity.
- scribēbat **ōrātiōnēs** quās **alī** ċīrēnt **quīs** **dīcērent** (Bru. 206), he wrote speeches for other men to deliver.
- nihil habēō **quod** scribām, I have nothing to write.
- eō extinctō **fore** unde dīcērēm nēminem (Cat. Maj. 12), that when he was dead there would be nobody from whom (whence) I could learn.
- huic **nē** **ubi** cōnsisteret quidem contrā tē locum reliquistī (Quinct. 73), you have left him no ground even to make a stand against you.
- habēbam **quō** cōnfigurēm (Fam. iv. 6), I had [a retreat] whither I might flee.

**Note.** — The Relative in this construction is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding demonstrative. Thus **quī** = **ut** **is** (etc.), **ubī** = **ut** **ibī**, and so on (cf. § 319. note).

2. Sometimes the relative or conjunction has a correlative in the main clause: as,

- lēgum idcirco omnēs servi sumus, ut liberī esse possīmus (Clu. 146), for this reason we are all subject to the laws, that we may be free.
- eō cōnsīliō . . . **ut** (regularly), with this design, that, etc.
- eā causā . . . **nē**, for this reason, lest, etc.
- hoc cōnsīliō **ut** montium tegēruntur altitūdine (Nep. Milt. 5), with this purpose, that they might be protected by the height of the mountains.
b. The ablative quō (= ut eō) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative: as,—

libertāte ūsus est, quō impūnius dicāx esset (Quinc. n), he took advantage of liberty, that he might bluster with more impunity (by which the more easily).

Note 1.—So quōminus (= ut eō minus) introduces a subjunctive clause after verbs of hindering (see § 331. e).

Note 2.—Occasionally quō introduces final clauses which do not contain a comparative: as,—

quō sibi (exercitum) fidum faceret (Sall. Cat. n), in order to make the army devoted to himself.

c. The Principal clause, on which a final clause depends, is often to be supplied from the context. Thus,—

āc nē longum sit ... iūssimus (Cat. iii. 10), and not to be tedious, we ordered, etc. [Strictly, in order not to be tedious, I say, we ordered.]
sed ut ad Dionyśium redeāmus (Tusc. v. 63), but to return to Dionysius.
sed ut eōdem revertar, causa haec fuit timōris (Fam. vi. 7), but, to return to the same point, this was the cause of fear.
satis inconsiderātī fuit, nē dicam audācīs (Phil. xiii. 12), it was the act of one rash enough, not to say daring.

Remark.—By a similar ellipsis the subjunctive is used with nēdum (sometimes nō), still less, not to mention that: as,—

nēdum ... salvi esse possimus (Clu. 95), much less could we be safe.

nēdum īstī ... nōn statim cōnquisītūrī sint aliquid sceleris et flagiti (Leg. Ag. ii. 35), far more will they hunt up at once some sort of crime and scandal.

nēdum in mari et viā sit facile (Fam. xvi. 8), still less is it easy at sea, and on a journey.

quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs fatigant; nē illī corruptīs mōribus victoriae temperārent (Sall. Cat. n), for prosperity overmasters the soul even of the wise; much less did they with their corrupt morals put any check on victory.

Note.—With nēdum the verb itself is often omitted: as,—
aptius hūmānitātī tuae quam tōta Peloponνnēsus, nēdum Patrae (Fam. vii. 28, 1), safer for your refinement than all Peloponnēsus, to say nothing of Patra.

Remark.—Clauses of Purpose are sometimes rendered in English by that, or in order that, with may or might; but more frequently by the Infinitive with to. For negatives, see § 319. d. r.

318. The Purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive as in English (§ 273).

The sentence, they came to seek peace, may be rendered—
§ 318. 
Clauses of Purpose; of Result.

(1) vēnerunt ut pācem peterent. [Final clause with ut (§ 317).]
(2) vēnerunt qui pācem peterent. [Final clause with Relative (§ 317).]
(3) [vēnerunt ad petendum pācem.] (Not found with transitive verbs (§ 300, note), but cf. ad pārendum senātūr.) [Gerund with ad (§ 300).]
(4) vēnerunt ad petendum pācem. [Gerundive with ad (§ 300).]
(5) vēnerunt pācem petendi causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerund with causā (§ 298. c.).]
(6) vēnerunt pācis petendae causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerundive with causā (§ 298. c.).]
(7) vēnerunt pācem petitūrī. [Future participle (§ 293. b): not in Cicero.]
(8) vēnerunt pācem petitūm. [Former supine (§ 302).]

These forms are not used indifferently, but —

a. The usual way of expressing purpose is by ut (negatively nē), unless the purpose is closely connected with some one word, in which case a relative is more common. Thus,—

Arria gladium dedit marītō ut sē interficeret, Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself (that he might kill himself).

Arria gladium dedit marītō quō sē interficeret, Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself with (with which he might, etc.).

b. The Gerund and Gerundive constructions of purpose are usually limited to short expressions, where the literal translation of the phrase, though not the English idiom, is nevertheless not harsh or strange.

c. The Supine is used to express purpose only with verbs of motion, and in a few idiomatic expressions (§ 302).

d. The Future Participle used to express purpose, is a late construction of inferior authority (§ 293. b).

3. Clauses of Result.

NOTE.—The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. The clause of CHARACTERISTIC is a development peculiar to Latin, and has its origin in the potential use of the subjunctive (§ 311. a). A Protasis was, perhaps, originally implied, though this is not necessary to the analysis. The difference between the Subjunctive in such clauses and the Indicative of simple description is that the subjunctive expresses what would happen in a supposed case, while the indicative states what does or did in fact take place. The most common and obvious use of this construction is to express a quality or characteristic of an indefinite antecedent (either expressed or implied). Thus, is [Epicurus] quī pōnēt summum bonum in voluptāte would mean, literally, a man who would (in any supposable case) make the highest good consist in pleasure. This serves to express a characteristic of the indefinite person referred to by is, making him one of a class; while is quī pōnēt would mean the man (Epicurus) who in fact does, etc. So, nōn sum itā hebes ut itā dicam would mean, literally, I am not dull in the manner (degree) in which I should say that. Since in these characteristic clauses the quality often appears in the form of a supposed result, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic: as,—
tantis terror omnēs occupāvit ut etiam ipse rēx ad flūmen perlūgērit, so
great panic seized all that the king himself fled to the river.

319. A clause that expresses Result is called a Con-
secutive Clause.

Consecutive Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by
ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a Relative (pronoun or
adverb).

Consecutive Clauses may be divided into Pure, Relative,
and Substantive (cf. § 317).

1. Pure Clauses of Result are introduced by ut or ut nōn. — They
express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

2. Relative Clauses of Result are introduced by the Relative pro-
noun quī, or by the Relative adverbs ubi, unde, quō, etc. The
antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

3. Substantive Clauses of Result are introduced by ut or ut nōn.
They differ from Pure consecutive clauses in having the construction of
a substantive. (For Substantive Clauses of Result, see § 332.)

Examples of Pure and Relative Clauses of Result are, —

1. Tanta vis probitātis est ut eam in hoste diligāmus (Lael. 29), so great is
the power of goodness that we love it even in an enemy.

2. Nam est innocentia affectīō tālis animī, quae noceat nēmīnī (Tus. iii. 16),
for innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.

3. Sunt aliae causae quae planē efficiant (Top. 59), there are other causes
such as to bring to pass.

4. Nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere (Tuscul.
i. 43), there is no swiftness which can compare, etc.

NOTE.—The Relative in this construction is equivalent to ut with the corre-
sponding demonstrative. Thus, quī = ut is (etc.), ubi = ut ibi, and so on (cf.
§ 317. note).

REMARK.—Clauses of Result are often introduced by such correlative words
as tam, tālis, tensusquae, ita, sic, adeo, usque 60, which belong to the main
clause.

a. A negative result is regularly expressed by ut or quī with nōn,
nēmō and similar negatives (not nē). Thus,—

 multis gravibusque vulneribus confectus ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset
(B. G. ii. 25), used up with many severe wounds so that he could no
longer stand.

 nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere (Cato Major 24),
nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.

NOTE.—When the result implies an effect intended (not a simple purpose), ut
nē or nē is sometimes used as being less positive than ut nōn: as,—
Clauses of Result.

§ 319. [librum] ita corrigás nō mihi noceat (Fam. vi. 7), correct the book so that it may not hurt me.

b. Frequently a clause of result is used in a restrictive sense, and so amounts to a Proviso (cf. § 314) : as,

hoc est ita ātule ut nē plānē illūdāmur ab accusātoribus (Rosc. Am. 55), this is so far useful that we are not utterly mocked by the accusers (i.e. useful only on this condition, that, etc.).
nihil autem molestum quod nōn désiderēs (Cato Major 47), but nothing is troublesome which (= provided that) you do not miss.

c. The subjunctive with the Relative quōminus (= ut eō minus) may be used, to express a result, after words of hindering or refusing (cf. § 317. b, note 1) : as,

nec aētās impedit quōminus agri colendi studia teneāmus (Cat. Maj. 60), nor does age prevent us from retaining an interest in tilling the ground.

d. A clause of result is introduced by quīn after general negatives, where quīn is equivalent to quī (quae, quod) nōn; so also after negative clauses of hindrance, resistance, doubt, hesitation, and the like. Thus, —
nihil est illōrum quīn [= quod nōn] ego illī dīxerim (Plaut. Bac. iii. 9), there is nothing of this that I have not told him.
nōn dubitō quīn, I do not doubt that (cf. the Eng., I do not doubt but that).
‘aegrē (vix) abstinui quīn . . . , I hardly refrained from, etc.
nihil impedit quīn . . . , there is nothing to prevent, etc.
abesse nōn potest quīn (Or. 233), it cannot be but that.

REMARK.—It is to be observed that the constructions of Purpose and Result in Latin are precisely alike in the affirmative (but see sequence, § 287. c), but that in the negative Purpose takes nē, Result ut nōn, etc. Thus, —
custōditus est nē effugeret, he was guarded in order that he might not escape.
custōditus est ut nōn effugeret, he was guarded so that he did not.

So in Purpose clauses nē quis, nē quid, nē āllum, nē quō, nāquandō, nēcubi, etc., are almost always used; in Result clauses, ut nēmō, ut nīhil, ut nūllum, etc., Thus,

ita multi sunt imbēcilli senēs ut nūllum offici mūnum exsequi possint (Cat. Major 35), many old men are so feeble that they cannot perform their duties to society.
qui summum bonum sīc instituit ut nīhil habeat cum virtūte coniūnctum (Offic. i. 5), who has so settled the highest good that it has nothing in common with virtue.
cernere nē quis eōs neu quis contingere posset (AEn. i. 413), that no one might see them, no one touch them.
nē quandō liberis prōscriptōrum bona patria reddantur (Rosc. Amer. 145),
lest at some time the patrimony of the proscribed should be restored to
their children.

ipse ne quō inciderem reverti Formiās (Att. viii. 3, 7), that I might not
come upon him anywhere.

dispositūs explōrātoribus nēcubi Rōmāni cōpiās trānsdūcerent (B. G. vii. 35),
having stationed scouts here and there lest the Romans should lead their
troops across anywhere.

tū tamen eās epistolās concerpitō nēquando quid ēmānet (Att. x. 12, 3),
lest anything ever leak out.

The clause of Result is sometimes expressed in English by the Infinitive with TO
of so-as-to or an equivalent; as,—
	tam longe aberam ut nōn viderem, I was too far away to see (so far that I
did not see; cf. § 320. c).  

NOTE. — Result is never expressed by the Infinitive in Latin except by the poets
in a few passages (§ 273. Rem.).

4. Clauses of Characteristic.

320. A relative clause with the Subjunctive is often
used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, where
there is no idea of Result (see § 319. head-note)

This construction is especially common where the antecedent is
otherwise undefined. Thus,—

neque enim tū is es, quī nesciās (Fam. v. 12), for you are not such a one,
as not to know.

multa dīcunt quae vix intellegant (Finib. iv. 2), they say many things
which (such as) they hardly understand.

pāci quae nihil habitūra sīt insidiārum semper est cōnsulendum (Off. i. 35),
we must always aim at a peace which shall have no plots.

unde agger comportāri posset, nihil erat reliquum (B. C. ii. 15), there was
nothing left, from which an embankment could be got together.

a. A relative clause of characteristic is used after general expre-
sions of existence or non-existence, including questions implying a
negative.

So especially with sunt quī, there are [some] who; quis est quī,
who is there who? Thus,—

sunt quī discessūm animī corpel putent esse mortem (Tus. i. 18), there
are some who think that the departure of soul from body constitutes death.
erant quī Helvidiām miserārentūr (Ann. xvi. 29), there were some who
pitted Helvidius. [Cf. est cum (§ 322. Rem.).]

quis est quī id nōn māximis efferat laudibus (Læl. 24), who is there that
does not extol it with the highest praise?
But cf. ille consul cui ... fuit (Cat. iv. 1. 2).

**NOTE.**—These are sometimes called Relative Clauses with an Indefinite Antecedent, but are to be carefully distinguished from the Indefinite Relative in *protasis* (§ 319).

b. A relative clause of characteristic may follow *ūnus* and *sōlus*:

as,—

nil admirāri prope rēs est ūna sōlaque quae possit facere et servāre bēatum (Hor. Ep. i. 6. 1), to wonder at nothing is almost the sole and only thing that can make and keep one happy.

sōlus es cūius in victoriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus (Deiotar. 34), you are the only man at whose victory no one has fallen unless armed.

c. A clause of result or characteristic with *quām ut, quām qui* (rarely with *quām* alone), may be used after comparatives: as,—

māiorēs arborēs caedēbant quām quās ferre miles posset (Liv. xxviii. 5), they cut larger trees than what a soldier could carry (too large for a soldier to carry).

Canachi signa rigidiōra sunt quām ut imitentur vēritātem (Brut. 70), the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature (stiffer than that they should).

**NOTE.**—This construction corresponds to the English *too ... to*.

d. A relative clause of characteristic is used in expressions of Restriction or Proviso (cf. § 319. b): as,—

quod sciam, so far as I know.

Cātonis ārātiōnēs, quās quidem invēnerim (Brut. 65), the speeches of Cato, at least such as I have discovered.

servus est nēmō, quī modo tolerābīli condiciōne sīt servītūtis(Cat. iv. 16), there is not a slave, at least in any tolerable condition of slavery.

e. A relative clause expressing *cause* or *concession* takes the subjunctive (§§ 313. b, 321. b): as,—

virum simplicem quī nōs nihil cēlet (Or. 230), oh! guileless man, who hides nothing from us! [Causal.]

peccāsse mihi videor quī ā tē discēsserim (Fam. xvi. 1), I seem to myself to have done wrong because I have left you. [Causal.]

egomet quī sérō Graecās litterās attigissem tamen complūrēs Athēnēs diēs sum commorātus (De O. i. 82), I myself though I began Greek literature late, yet, etc. (lit. [a man] who, etc.). [Concessive.]

**NOTE i.**—In this use the relative is equivalent to *cum is*, etc. It is often preceded by *ut, utpote, or quippe*: as,—

nec cōnsul, ut quī id ipsum quaeśisset, moram certāmini fēcit (Liv. xlii. 7), nor did the consul delay the fight, since he had sought that very thing (as [being one] who had sought, etc.).

ea nōs, utpote quī nihil contemnēre soleāmus, non pertimēscēbāmus (Att. ii. 24, 4), as being men who are accustomed to despise nothing.
convivia cum patre nōn inībat, quippe quī nē in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō venīret (Rosc. Am. 52), since he did not even come, etc.

NOTE 2.—The Relative of Cause or Concession is merely a variety of the Characteristic construction. The quality expressed by the subjunctive is connected with the action of the main verb either as cause on account of which (SINCE) or as hindrance in spite of which (ALTHOUGH).

f. Dignus, indīgnus, aptus, idōneus, take a clause of result with a relative (or rarely with ut): as,—

digna in quibus ēlāborārent (Tuscul. i. 1), (things) worth spending their toil on (worthy on which they should, etc.).
digna rēs est ubi tū nervōs intendās tuōs (Ter. Eun. 312), the affair is worthy of your stretching your sinews (worthy wherein you should, etc.).

indignus erās quī facerēs inīūriam, it was beneath you to do a wrong (you were unworthy who should, etc.).
idōneus quī impetret (Manil. 57), fit to obtain.

indignī ut redimerēmur (Liv. xxii. 59), unworthy to be ransomed.

NOTE.—With these words the poets often use the Infinitive: as,—
dignum nōtāri (Hor. Sat. i. 3, 24), worthy to be stigmatized.

sōns rīvō dare nōmen idōneus (Hor. Ep. i. 16, 12), a source fit to give a name to a stream.

aetās mollis et apta regī (Ov.), a time of life soft and easy to be guided.

5. Causal Clauses.

NOTE.—Causal clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of Cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument, or in the connecting particles.

321. The Causal Particles quod, quia, and quoniam take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another: as,—

1. Indicative:—
cum tībi agam grātiās quod mē vivere coēgisti (Att. iii. 3), when I may thank you that you have forced me to live.

quia postrēma aedificātam est (Ver. iv. 119), because it was built last.

quoniam dē utilitāte diximus, dē efficiendi ratione (Or. Part. 95), since we have spoken of its advantage, let us speak of the method of effecting it.

2. Subjunctive:—
mīhi grātulābāre quod audīssēs mē mean prīstinām dignitātem obtinēre (Fam. iv. 14, 1), you congratulated me because [as you said] you had heard, etc.
themístocles quod somnum capere nón posset (Tusc. iv. 44). themístocles used to walk about at night because [as he said] he could not sleep.

mea máter fráta est quia nón redierim (Plaut. Cistell. 101), my mother is angry because I didn't return.
nón quoniam hoc sit necesse (Ver. ii. 1. 24), not that this is necessary.

NOTE 1.—The Subjunctive in this use depends on the principle of Intermediate Clauses (§ 341. d).

NOTE 2.—Under this head what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the Subjunctive (§ 341. d. Rem.) : as,—

gla = laeta vénisset (Plaut. Mil. 387), I seemed (in my dream) glad because my sister had come.

So with quod even a verb of saying may be in the Subjunctive: as,—

gredit quod sē oblitum nesció quid diceret (Off. i. 40), he returned because he said he had forgotten something.

NOTE 3.—The Subjunctive with quia is rare. The causal particle quando takes the Indicative: as,—

quando ita vis, dī bene vortant (Plaut. Trin. 573), since you so wish, may the gods bless the undertaking.

REMARK.—Nón quod, nón quia, nón quoniam, introducing a reason expressly to deny it, take the Subjunctive. Nón quō and nón quīn introduce a Result clause, but with nearly the same meaning (§ 341. d. Rem.). Thus,—
pugilés ingemiscunt, nón quod doleant, sed quia omne corpus intenditur (Tusc. ii. 56), boxers groan not because they are in pain, but because, etc.
nón quia philosophia percipi nón posset (id. i. 1), not that philosophy cannot be acquired.

nón quoniam hoc sit necesse (Ver. ii. 1. 24), not that this is necessary.
nón quīn ēnitendum sit (De O. ii. 295), not that pains must not be taken.

a. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, etc., take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see § 336).

b. A Relative, when used to express cause, regularly takes the Subjunctive (see § 320. e).

c. Cum causal takes the Subjunctive (see § 326).

NOTE.—In early Latin cum causal takes the Indicative (§ 326. note 3).

6. Relations of Time.

NOTE.—Temporal clauses are introduced by particles which are almost all of relative origin. They are construed like other relative clauses, except where they have developed into special idiomatic constructions. (For list of Temporal Particles, see p. 124.)

322. The particles ubi, ut, cum, quando, either alone or compounded with -cumque, may be used as Indefinite Relatives, and have the constructions of protasis (cf. § 316). Thus,—
cum id malum esse negăs (Tusc. ii. 29), when you (the individual disputant) deny it to be an evil. [Present, nothing implied (cf. § 306).]

quod profectō cum mē nūlla vis cōgerat, facere nōn audērem (Phil. v. 51), which I would surely not venture to do, as long as no force compelled me. [Present, contrary to fact: cf. § 308.]

cum videās eōs . . . dolōre nōn frangit (Tus. D. ii. 66), when you see that those are not broken by pain, etc. [General condition: cf. § 309. a.]

id ubi dīxisset, hastam in finēs eōrum ēmitėbat (Liv. i. 32), when he had said this, he used to cast the spear into their territories. [Repeated action: see § 309. b.]

cum rosam viderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrabātur (Verr. v. 27), whenever he had seen a rose he thought spring had begun. [Past general condition: cf. § 309. c.]

REMARK.—The phrases est cum, fuit cum, etc., are used in general expressions like est quī, sunt quī (§ 320. a): as,—

āc fuit quidem cum mihi quoque initium requiēscendi fore iūstum arbitrārer (De Or. i. 1), and there was a time when I thought a beginning of rest would be justifiable on my part.

323. Temporal clauses have two uses: 1 —

1. They themselves define (with reference to the time of the speaker) the time of the clause on which they depend.

2. They describe by its circumstances the time of the main clause, which is defined not by them, but by the main clause itself.

Thus, in: When did the Emperor Frederick die? He died while the people were still mourning the death of his father, the time of the main clause, he died, is definitely fixed by the temporal clause, while the people, etc., as is seen by the fact that the temporal clause answers the question, when did he die? But in: The Emperor Frederick died while the people were still mourning the death of his father, the time of the main clause is not defined by the temporal clause, but is regarded as sufficiently definite in itself (or from the context). The temporal clause is added to describe that time by the circumstances of the people's grief.

These two sorts of temporal clauses the Romans distinguished by means of the mood, invariably using the Indicative in the first and the Subjunctive in the second. They commonly also used the particles and the tenses in accordance with this division.

1. POSTQUAM, UBI, ETC.

324. The particles postquam (posteāquam), ubi, ut (ut prīmum, ut semel), simul atque (simul āc, or simul alone) take the Indicative (usually in the perfect or the historical present): as,

1 The terms Absolute and Relative Time naturally applied to these two uses have been abandoned in this book because they have given rise to misapprehension and have often been used by learners as pigeon-hole expressions to conceal a want of knowledge of the subject.
militēs postquam victōriam adeptī sunt, nihil reliqui victīs fēcēre (Sall. Cat. 11), when the armies had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.

posteāquam forum attigistī (Fam. xv. 16), since you came to the forum.

ubi omnēs idem sentiēre intellēxit (B. G. iii. 23), when he understood that all agreed (thought the same thing).

Catilina ubi eōs convēnisse vidēt sēcēdit (Sall. Cat. 20), when Catiline sees they have come together, he retires.

quod (sc. āgmen) ubi pėrgere vident (Q. C. v. 3, 18), and when they see that it is advancing.

Pompeius ut equītātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē exēssit (B. C. iii. 94), when Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the army.

simul ac persēnsit (Æn. iv. 90), as soon as he perceived.

Note.—These particles are appropriated to time defined, and take the historical tenses in accordance with the distinction set forth in § 323. When they take the descriptive tenses (see a, below), they do not describe the time by its circumstances, but still define it, referring it to a then-existing state of things (Imperfect) or the then-existing result of a completed action (Pluperfect).

a. These particles less commonly take the Imperfect or Pluperfect indicative. The Imperfect in this case denotes a state of things; the Pluperfect, an action completed in past time. Thus,—

postquam instrūctī utrimque stābant, duces in medium prōcedunt (Liv. i. 23), when they stood in array on both sides, the generals advance into the midst.

P. Africānus posteāquam bis cōnsul et cēnsor fuerat (Div. in Cēc. 69), when Africanus had been (i.e. had the dignity of having been) twice consul and censor.

postquam id difficilīus visum est, neque facultās perīciendi dābātur, ad Pompeium trānsīrunt (B. C. iii. 60), when this seemed too hard, and no means of effecting it were given, they passed over to Pompey.

post diem quintum quam barbarī īterum male pūgnāverant (= victī sunt), lēgātī ā Bocchō veniunt (Jug. 110), the fifth day after the barbarians were beaten the second time, envoys come from Bocchus.

haec iuventūtem, ubi familiārēs opēs dēfēcerant, ad facinora incendebant (Sall. Cat. 13), when their inherited resources had given out.

ubi perīcula virtūte prōpulerant (id. 6), when they had dispersed the dangers by their valor.

b. Rarely some of these particles seem to take the subjunctive:
as,—

posteāquam māximās aedificāssēt ornāssētque clāssēs (Manil. 9), having built and equipped mighty fleets (after he had, etc.). [But the more approved editions have posteā cum.]
II. CUM TEMPORAL

325. Cum (quom), TEMPORAL, meaning when, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Subjunctive, other tenses in the Indicative. Thus,—

cum servili bellō premerētur (Manil. 30), when she (Italy) was under the load of the Servile War.
cum id nūntiātum esset, māturat (B. G. i. 7), when this had been reported, he made (makes) haste.
cum occīditur Sex. Roscius, ibidem fuērunt servi (Rosc. A. 120), when Roscius was slain, the slaves were on the spot.

nempe eō [lituō] regionēs dirēxit tum cum urbem condidit (Div. i. 30), he traced with it the quarters [of the sky] at the time he founded the city.

[For examples with the Future, see c below.]

NOTE.—The Present takes the Indicative, because present time is generally, from its very nature, defined in the mind; and it is only when the circumstances are described as causal or adversative (see below, § 326), that the Subjunctive is used. The Perfect takes the Indicative as the tense of narration, as with post-quam, etc. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are, from their nature, fitter to describe than to define the time.

a. Cum, temporal, sometimes takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative to indicate a definite past time: as,—

res cum haec scribēbam erat in extremum adducta discrimen (Fam. xii. 6), at the time I write (epistolary) the affair has been brought into great hazard.

quem quidem cum ex urbe pellēbam, hoc prōvidēbam animō (Cat. iii. 16), when I was trying to force him (conative imperfect) from the city, I looked forward to this.

fulgentēs gladiōs hostium videbant Decii cum in aciem eōrum inruēbant (Tusc. ii. 59), the Decii saw the flashing swords of the enemy when they rushed upon their line.

tum cum in Asia rēs māgnās permulti āmiserant (Man. 19), at that time, when many had lost great fortunes in Asia.

NOTE.—The distinction explained in § 323 is unknown to early Latin. In Plautus quom always has the Indicative unless the Subjunctive is required for some other reason.

b. When the clauses are inverted, so that the logical temporal clause becomes the main clause, and the main clause becomes the temporal clause, the Indicative must be used with cum: as,—

dieās nondum decem intercesserant, cum ille alter filius infāns necātur (Clu. 28), ten days had not yet passed, when the other infant son was killed. [Instead of, when ten days had not yet passed, etc.]

iamque īux apparebat cum prōcēdit ad militēs (Q. C. vii. 8, 3), and day was already dawning when he appears before the soldiers.
hōc facere nocētū apparēbant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in públicum prōcurrērunt (B. G. vii. 26), they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran out into the streets.

c. To denote future time cum takes the Future or Future Perfect Indicative: as,—

nōn dubitābō dare operam ut té videam, cum tē satis commodē facere poterō (Fam. xiii. 1), I shall not hesitate to take pains to see you, when I can do it conveniently.

longum illud tempus cum nōn erō (Att. xii. 18), that long time when I shall be no more.

cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs (Fam. v. 7), when you come (shall have come), you will find out.

III. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE.

326. Cum CAUSAL or CONCESSIVE takes the Subjunctive: as,—

cum sōlitūdō . . . insidiārum et metūs plēna sit (Fin. i. 66), since solitude is full of treachery and fear. [Causal.]

cum iniētō nōn amplius duōbus milibus habuisset (Sall. Cat. 56), though at the start he had had not more than two thousand. [Concessive.]

cum prīmi ordinēs . . . concedissent, tamen ācerrīmē reliqui resistēbant (B. G. vii. 61), though the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously. [Concessive.]

Note 1.—Cum in these uses is often emphasized by ut, utpote, quippe, præsertim: as,—

nec reprehendō: quippe cum ipse īstam reprehēnsiōnem nōn fugērim (Att. x. 3), I find no fault: since I myself did not escape that blame.

Note 2.—These causal and concessive relations are merely variations of the idea of time. The attendant circumstances are regarded as the cause of the action, or as tending to hinder it (cf. quī causal and concessive, § 320. e). .

Note 3.—In early Latin cum (quom) causal and concessive usually takes the Indicative: as,—

quom tua rēs distrahitur, utinam videam (Plaut. Trin. 573), since your property is torn in pieces, oh! that I may see, etc. [See also § 313. d, note.] .

Remark.—Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when.

a. Cum in the sense of quod, on the ground that, frequently takes the Indicative: as,—

grātulor tibi cum tantum vālēs apud Dolābellam (Fam. ix. 14), I congratulate you that you are so strong with Dolabella.

Remark.—This use of the indicative appears to be a colloquial relic of the old Indicative construction with cum (see note 3, above).
b. Cum... tum, signifying both... and, usually takes the Indicative; but when cum approaches the sense of while or though, it may have the Subjunctive (§ 326). Thus,—

cum multa non probò, tum illud in pròmis (Fin. i. 18), while there are many things I do not approve, there is this in chief. But,—
cum réstòta ficta sit pueriliter, tum nè efficit quidem quod vult (ib.), while the whole thing is childishly got up, he does not even make his point (accomplish what he wishes).

IV. ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM.

327. Antequam and priusquam, before, have in narration the same construction as cum temporal (§ 325): as,—

antequam tua Is légi litteras (Att. ii. 7), before I read your letter.
neque ante dimístit eum quem fidem dedit adulescéns (Liv. xxxix. 10), she did not let the young man go till he pledged his faith.
antequam homínès nefarii dé meo adventú audire potuissent, in Macedoniam pérréxi (Planc. 98), before those evil men could learn of my coming, I arrived in Macedonia.

Note.—The idea of purpose regularly requires the subjunctive: as,—nunquam prius discéssit quam ad finem sermó esset perduéctus, i.e. he waited for the conversation to be finished.

a. Antequam and priusquam, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive: as,—

priusquam dé cèteris rébus responderé, dé amicitia paúca dicam (Phil. ii. 3), before I reply to the rest, I will say a little of friendship.
nón défatiébor antequam illórum ancipítès viás percéperó (De Or. iii. 145), I shall not weary till I have traced out their doubtful ways.
antequam veniát litterás mítte (Ag. ii. 53), before he comes, he will send a letter.

b. In a few cases the Subjunctive of protasis is found with antequam and priusquam (cf. § 309. a): as,—

in omnibus negotiis priusquam aggrediére, adhibenda est praeparátio diligéns (Offic. i. 73), in all undertakings before you proceed to action, careful preparation must be used.

V. DUM, DÔNEC, AND QUOAD.

328. Dum, dônec, and quoad, implying purpose, doubt, or futurity, take the Subjunctive, otherwise the Indicative.

1. Subjunctive: as,—
exspectás fortasse dum dícat (Tus. ii. 17), you are waiting perhaps for him to say (till he say).
irātīs subtrahendi sunt eō in quōs impetum cōnuntur facere dum sē ipsī
colligant (Tusc. iv. 78), till they come to their senses (collect-

§ 328, 329. Substantive Clauses.

Aeneān morandō sustinuit dum genitor prōtēctus abīret (Æn. x. 800), he
kept Æneas in check till his father could get away in safety.

et dūxit longē dōnec curvātā coērent inter sē capitā (id. xi. 860), and drew
it (the bow) until the curved tips touched.

Epaminōndās exercēbātur plūrimum luctandō ad eum finem quoad stāns
complectī posset atque contendere (Nep. Epam. 2), Epaminondas
trained himself in wrestling so far as to be able to grapple standing
and fight (in that way).

2. Indicative (cf. a, below): as, —

hoc fēcī dum lieuit, intermīsī quoad nōn lieuit (Phil. iii. 33), I did this so
long as it was allowed, I discontinued it so long as it was not.
causās innecete morandī dum pelago dēsaevit hiemps (Æn. iv. 51), weave
excuses for delay until the storm upon the sea hath spent its rage.
dōnec redīt silentium fuit (Liv. xxiii. 31), there was silence till he
returned.

quoad potuit restitit (Cat. Major 11), he resisted as long as he could.

NOTE 1.—Quamdiū takes the Indicative only: as, —

sē oppidō tam diū tenuit quamdiū in provinciā Parthī fuērunt (Fam. xii.
19), he kept himself within the town so long as the Parthians were in
the province.

NOTE 2.—For dum and dummodo introducing a proviso, see § 314.

a. Dum in the sense of while usually takes the Present Indicative
to indicate a continued action in past time, if that time is not contrasted
with any other (§ 276 e. and note): as, —

dum haec geruntur (B. G. i. 46), while this was going on.

NOTE.—Dum, dōnec, and quoad in later writers sometimes take the Sub-

junctive when the classical usage would require the Indicative: as, —
nec obstiūt falsīs dōnec tempore āc spatīō vānēscere at (Tac. Ann. ii. 82),

nor did he contradict the falsehoods until they died out from lapse of
time.

nihīl sānē trepidābant elephanti dōnec continentī velut ponte agerentur
(Liv. xxi. 28), the elephants showed no alarm whatever so long as
they went over the continuous bridge, as it were.

REMARK.—With all temporal particles the Subjunctive is often found depending
on some other principle of construction. (See Intermediate Clauses below,
p. 378.)

II.—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

329. A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive

Clause.
A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

Note.—Many ideas which in English take the form of an abstract noun may be rendered by a substantive clause in Latin. Thus, *he demanded an investigation*, may be *postulābat ut quaestīō habēretur*. The common English expression FOR with the infinitive also corresponds to a Latin substantive clause: as, *it remains for me to speak of the piratic war*, *reliquium est ut dē bellō dicam pirāticō*.

Remark.—When a Substantive Clause is used as Subject, the verb to which it is subject is called *impersonal*, and the sign of the construction in English is the so-called *expletive* *IT*.

Substantive Clauses are classified as follows:

1. **Infinitive Clauses**:
   
   a. Infinitive clause as Subject (§ 270).
   

2. **Subjunctive Clauses**:
   
   (ut, nē, quō, quīn, quōminus).

3. **Indicative Clause** with *quod*:
   
   - Fact, Specification, Feeling.

4. **Indirect Questions**:
   
   Subjunctive, introduced by Interrogative Word.

### 1. Infinitive Clauses.

#### 330. A. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative may be used as the *subject* of *sum* and of many impersonal verbs (see § 270).

B. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative is used as the *object*:

1. Of all verbs and expressions of *knowing*, *thinking*, *telling*, and *perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*) (§ 272).

   mē spērō liberātum [esse] metū (Tusc. ii. 67), *I trust I have been freed from fear*.

   dicit montem ab hostibus tenērī (B. G. i. 22), *he says that the height is held by the enemy*.

   negat üllōs patère portūs (Liv. xxviii. 43), *he says that no ports are open*.

---

1 The accusative with the infinitive is found with about 80 verbs and verbal phrases, the most common being: (1) accipīō, affīrmō, animadvertō, arbitror, audiō, cēnseō, cōgitō, dīcō, disputō, doceō, existimō, fāma est, fato, intellegō, meminī, nārrō, negō, putō, recordor, rūmō est, sentiō, spērō, suspicor, trāditur, vērum est, videō, vidētur; (2) iubeō, vetō, patior, cōgō, sinō; (3) cupiō, volō, nōlō, mālo; (4) decet, iuvat, aequum est, oportet, opus est, placet, fās est, nefās est, interest.
2. Of *iubeō* and *vetō*, and rarely of other verbs of commanding, requesting, admonishing, and the like (§ 331. a). Thus,—

vetuère [bona] reddi, vetuère in públicum redigi (Liv. ii. 4), they forbade the return of the goods (that they be returned), etc.

Labienum iugum montis adscendere iubet (B. G. i. 21), he orders Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill.

3. Sometimes of verbs of wishing (§ 331. b): as,—

iūdicem mē esse nōn doctōrem volō (Or. 117), I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.

Remark.—The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative, though not strictly a Clause, is equivalent to one, and may be treated as such.

a. If the main verb is changed to the Passive, either —

1. The subject of the infinitive (like other objects of active verbs) becomes nominative, and the infinitive is retained (Personal Construction): as,—

mōns dicitur ab hostibus tenēri, the mountain is said to be held by the enemy.

Labienus iugum montis adscendere iubet, Labienus is ordered to ascend the ridge of the hill.

2. The passive is used impersonally, and the clause retained as its subject (Impersonal Construction):—

dicitur montem ab hostibus tenēri, it is said that the mountain is held by the enemy.

nūntiatur pirātārum nāvēs esse in portū (Verr. v. 87), it is told that the ships of the pirates are in port.

b. 1. Verbs of saying, thinking, etc., may take in the Passive either the Personal or the Impersonal construction. But the Personal construction is more common and is regularly used in the tenses of incomplete action. Thus,—

beātē vixisse videor (Lælius 15), *I seem to have lived happily.*

Epaminondas fidibus praeclārē cecinisse dicitur (Tuscul. i. 4), Epaminondas is said to have played excellently on the lyre.

multi idem factūri esse dicuntur (Fam. xvi. 12), many are said to be about to do the same thing. [Active: dicunt multōs factūros (esse).]

primi trāduntur arte quādam verba vinxisse (Or. 40), they first are related to have joined words with a certain skill.

putātur est esse cōnstitūtus ex marmore (Archias 22), he is thought to have been set up in marble.

Bibulus audīebatur esse in Syriā (Att. v. 18), *it was heard that Bibulus was in Syria* (Bibulus was heard, etc.). [Direct: Bibulus est.]

cētera illyricī legiōnēs secūtārae sperābantur (Tac. Hist. ii. 74), *the rest of the legions of Illyricum were expected to follow.*
Syntax: Dependent Constructions. [§ 330.

vidēmur enim quīētūri fuisset nisi essēmus lascissitī (De O. ii. 230), it seems that we should have kept quiet if we had not been molested (we seem, etc.). [Direct: quīēvissēmus ... nisi essēmus lascissītī.]

2. Iūbeō and vetō always take the personal construction of the passive: as,—

īüssus es renūntiārī cōnsul (Phil. ii. 79), you were under orders to be declared consul.

Nōlānī mūrōs portāsque adīre vetītī sunt (Liv. xxiii. 16), the men of Nola were forbidden to go to visit the walls and gates.

c. In the compound tenses of verbs of saying, etc., the impersonal construction is more common, and with the gerundive is regular: as,—

trāditum est etiam Hōmerūm caecum fuisset (Tus. v. 114), it is a tradition, too, that Homer was blind.

ubi tyrannus est, ibi nōn vītōsām, sed dicendum est plānē nūllam esse rempublicam (Rep. iii. 43), where there is a tyrant, it must be said, not that the Commonwealth is evil, but that it does not exist at all.

d. The poets and later writers extend the personal use of the passive to verbs which are not properly verba sentiendi, etc.: as,—

colligō domīnae placuisse (Ov. Am. ii. 6, 61), it is gathered [from this memorial] that I pleased my mistress.

e. The Infinitive with a subject may depend on any word implying speech or thought, though not strictly a verb of saying, etc. (see § 336, note 2).

f. Verbs of promising, hoping, expecting, threatening, swearing, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse, contrary to the English idiom: as,—

minātur sēsē abīre (Plaut. Asin. 604), he threatens to go away. [Direct: abēō, I am going away.]

ex quibus spērānt sē māximum frūctum esse captūros (Læl. 79), from which they hope to gain the utmost advantage. [Direct: capīēmus.]

quem inimicissīmum futūrūm esse prōmittō ac spondēō (Mur. 90), who I promise and warrant will be the bitterest of enemies. [Direct: erit.]

dolor fortūtūdinem sē dēbilitātūrum minātur (Tusc. v. 76), pain threatens to wear down fortitude. [Direct: dēbilitābō.]

Note.—These verbs, however, often take a simple Complementary Infinitive (§ 271). So regularly in early Latin (except spērō). Thus,—

pollicentur obsidēs dare (B. G. iv. 21), they promise to give hostages.

[Compare the Greek aorist infinitive after similar verbs].

prōmīsi dōlium vīnī dare (Plaut. Cistel. 542), I promised to give a jar of wine.
Substantive Clauses of Purpose.

2. Clauses of Purpose.

NOTE.—Clauses of Purpose may be used substantively¹ (1) as the Object of verbs of admonishing, etc. (§ 331); (2) as the Subject of these same verbs in the passive (§ 331. b), as well as of certain impersonal verbs and verbal phrases (§ 331. i); (3) in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative, etc.

331. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative ne) are used as the object of all verbs denoting an action directed toward the future.²

Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. Thus,—
monet ut omnēs suspicēnēs vītē (id. 20), he warns him to avoid all suspicion.
te rogō atque ōrō ut eum iuves (Fam. xiii. 66), I beg and pray you to aid him.
hīs ut conquirērent imperāvit (B. G. i. 28), he ordered them to search.
persuādet Cāstīcō ut rēgnum occupāret (B. G. i. 3), he persuades Čāsticus to usurp royal power.

a. Iubeō, order, and vētō, forbid, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative (§ 330. B. 2): as,—
līberos ad sē addūcē iūssit (B. G. ii. 5), he ordered the children to be brought to him.
ab opere lēgātōs discēdere vētērāt (B. G. i. 20), he had forbidden the lieutenants to leave the work.

NOTE 1.—Some other verbs of commanding, etc., occasionally take the Infinitive: as,—
haec facere imperātum est, orders were given to do this.
rēs monet cāvēre (Sall. Cat. 52), the occasion warns us to be on our guard.

b. Verbs of wishing take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. The Infinitive is more common when the subject remains the same; the Subjunctive, when it changes. Thus,—

1. Subject of dependent verb same as that of main verb:
quōs nōn tam ulcīseī studeō quam sānāre (Cat. ii. 17), whom I do not care so much to punish as to cure.

2. Subject of dependent verb different from that of main verb:
cupīō ut impetret (Plaut. Capt. 102), I wish he may get it.
māllem Čerberum metuerēs (Tus. i. 12), I would rather you feared Čerberus.

¹ See p. 362, foot-note 1.
² Such Verbs or verbal phrases are ld agō, ad ld veniō, caveō (nē), cēnseō, cogō, concēdō, cōnstituō, curō, dēcernō, ēdicō, fāgītō, hortor, imperō, instō, mandō, metuō (nē), moneō, negōtium dō, operam dō, ōrō, persuādeo, pētō, postulō, praeceptō, precor, prō-nūntiō, quaerō, rogō, scīscō, timeō, vereor (nē), videō, volō.
**Syntax: Dependent Constructions.**

**§ 331.**

**NOTE.**—**Volo** and *cupio*, however, tend to take the Accusative and Infinitive rather than the Subjunctive, even when the subject changes. When it remains the same, the subject-accusative is rarely found. Thus,—

\[
\text{vim volumus exstingui} \text{(Sestius 92), we wish violence to be put down.}
\]

\[
tē tua frūtī virtūte cupīmus \text{(Brutus 331), we wish you to reap the fruits of your virtue.}
\]

\[
iūdicem mē esse, nōn doctōrem volō \text{(Orat. 117), I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.}
\]

\[
cupiō mē esse clēmentem \text{(Cat. i. 4), I desire to be merciful. [But regularly, cupiō esse clēmēns (see § 271. a).]}
\]

**c. Verbs of permitting** take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. **Patio**r takes regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; so often *sīno*. Thus,—

\[
\text{permīsit ut partes faceret} \text{(De O. ii. 366), permitted him to make divisions.}
\]

\[
\text{concedānt ut boni viri fuerint} \text{(Lælius 18), let them allow them to have been good men.}
\]

\[
\text{nūllō sē implicārī negōtiō passus est} \text{(Lig. 3), he suffered himself to be entangled in no business.}
\]

\[
\text{vinum importārī nōn sinunt} \text{(B. G. iv. 2), they do not allow wine to be imported.}
\]

**d. Verbs of determining, decreeing, resolving, bargaining, take either**

the Subjunctive or the Infinitive: as,—

\[
\text{cōnstituerant ut L. Bestia quernerētur} \text{(Sall. Cat. 43), they had determined that Lucius Bestia should complain.}
\]

\[
\text{proelīō supersēdēre statuit} \text{(B. G. ii. 8), he determined to refuse battle.}
\]

\[
\text{de bonis rēgis quae reddī cēnsuerant} \text{(Liv. ii. 5), about the king’s goods, which they had decreed should be restored.}
\]

\[
\text{decernit ut cōnsulēs dēlectum habeant} \text{(Sall. Cat. 34), decrees that the consuls shall hold a levy.}
\]

\[
\text{ēdictō nē quis iniuṣṣū pūgnāret} \text{(Liv. v. 19), having commanded that none should fight without orders.}
\]

\[
\text{pāctō ut victōrem rēs sequerētur} \text{(id. xxviii. 21), having bargained that the property should belong to the victor.}
\]

**NOTE 1.**—Different verbs of these classes with the same meaning vary in their construction. For verbs of **bargaining** with the Gerundive, see § 294. d.

**NOTE 2.**—Verbs of **decrewing** and **voting** often take the Infinitive of the Second Periphrastic conjugation: as,—

\[
\text{Rēgulus captivōs reddendōs [esse] nōn cēnsuit} \text{(Off. i. 39), Regulus voted that the captives should not be returned. [He said, in giving his formal opinion: captivī nōn reddendi sunt.]}
\]

**§ i. Verbs of caution and effort** take the Subjunctive with ut. But **cōnor, try**, commonly takes the complementary Infinitive. Thus,—

\[
\text{cūrā ut quam primum intel·legam} \text{(Fam. xiii. 10), let me know as soon as possible (take care that I may understand).}
\]
Substantive Clauses of Purpose.

§ 331. 

dant operam ut habeant (Sall. Cat. 41), they take pains to have (give their attention that, etc.).

impellere ut Caesar nominaretur (id. 49), to induce them to name Caesar (that Caesar should be named).

si transire conarentur (B. G. i. 8), if they should try to cross.

NOTE 1. — Cónor si also occurs (as B. G. i. 8; cf. miror si, etc., § 333 b, Rem.).

NOTE 2. — Ut nē occurs occasionally with verbs of caution and effort (cf. § 317): as,—
cūrē et prōvidē ut nēquid ei dēsit (Att. ii. 3), take care and see that he lacks nothing.

2. Verbs denoting an effort to hinder take either (1) a Subjunctive clause with quōminus or nē, or (2) the Infinitive: as, —
nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus... (Tusc. i. 91), death does not prevent the wise man from, etc.
nē facerem impedivit (De Fat. i), prevented me from doing.
obstitisti nē transire cópiac possent (Verr. v. 5), you opposed the passage of the troops (opposed lest the troops should cross).
prohibet accédere (Cæc. 46), prevents him from approaching (to approach).

NOTE. — For verbs of hindering negatived (not to hinder), see § 332. g.

7. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive,¹ with nē affirmative and nē nōn or ut negative. Thus,—
timeō nē Verres fēceerit (Verr. v. 3), I fear that Verres has done, etc.
nē animum offendor et verēbatur (B. G. i. 19), he feared that he should hurt the feelings, etc.
órātor metuō nē languēscat senectūte (Cat. Major 28), I fear the orator grows feeble from old age.
vereor ut tibi possim concédere (De O. i. 35), I fear [that] I cannot grant you.
naud sānē periculum est nē nōn mortem optandam putet (Tus. v. 118),
there is no danger that he will not think death desirable.

NOTE. — In this use nē is commonly to be translated by that or lest, ut and nē nōn by that not.

REMARK. — The particle ut is often omitted with some verbs of the above classes. So generally after verbs of wishing, necessity, permission; after dic, fac, and frequently in Indirect Discourse after verbs of commanding and the like. Thus,—
volo amēs (Att. ii. 10), I wish you to love, etc.
nē ipsum amēs oportet (Fin. ii. 85), you ought to love me.

¹ With verbs of Fearing the subjunctive with nē is hortatory in origin: timeō nē accidat is literally I fear, let it not happen. The subjunctive with ut may have been either hortatory or deliberative,— I fear, let it happen, or I fear; how may it happen? = I hope it will happen, but I fear it will not.
fac diligās (Att. iii.), do love.
dic exeat, tell him to go out.

Mnēsthea vocat, classem aptent socii (Æn. iv. 289), he calls Mnestheus
[and orders that] his comrades should make ready the fleet (cf.
§ 339).

NOTE.—Similarly nē is omitted after cave in Prohibitions (cf. § 269. a).

With any verbs of the above classes the poets may use the Infinitive
instead of an object clause: as,—

hortāmur fāri (Æn. ii. 74), we urge [him] to speak.

nē quaerē docēri (id. vi. 614), seek not to be told.
temptat praevertere (id. i. 721), she attempts to turn, etc.

h. A Substantive clause of Purpose used as the object of a verb
becomes the subject when that verb is put in the Passive. Thus,—

imperātum est ut iter facerent, it was ordered that they should march.

permīssum est ut irent, permission was given that they should go.

mihi persuādētur ut exeam, I am persuaded to go out (it is persuaded to
me).

i. The impersonals licet and oportet take as subject either a
Substantive clause of Purpose, or an Infinitive with or without subject-
accusative. Thus,—

licet mē ire, it is allowed me to go.

querāmur licet (Cæc. 41), we are allowed to complain.

sint enim oportet (Tus. i. 12), they must exist.

NOTE 1.—The Subjunctive with oportet omits ut, except in later writers
(see § 331. f. Rem.).

NOTE 2.—Licet may take the Subjunctive, usually without ut, to denote con-
cession (see § 313. b).

NOTE 3.—Licet may take (1) the Subjunctive; (2) the Simple Infinitive;
(3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; or (4) the Dative and the Infinitive.
Thus, I may go is licet eam, licet ire, licet mē ire, or licet mihi ire.

3. Clauses of Result.

NOTE.—Clauses of Result may be used substantively,1 (1) as the object of
facīō, etc. (§ 332); (2) as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well
as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§ 332. a, d); (3) in apposition with another
substantive, or as predicate nominative, etc. (see § 332. f).

1 In all these cases the clause is not strictly subject or object. The main verb
originally conveyed a meaning complete in itself, and the result clause was merely
appended. This is seen by the frequent use of ita and the like with the main verb
(ita accidit ut, etc.). In like manner purpose clauses are only apparently subject
or object of the verb with which they are connected.
§ 332. Substantive Clauses of Result with ut (negative ut non) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort.¹

Such are especially faciō and its compounds (efficiō, conāficīō, etc.). Thus,—

efficiam ut intellegātis (Cluent. 7), I will make you understand (lit. effect that you, etc.). [So, faciam ut intellegātis (id. 9).]
commeātūs ut portāri possent efficiēbat (B. G. ii. 5), made it possible that supplies could be brought.
quae libertās ut laetior esset régis superbia fēcerat (Liv. ii. 1), the arrogance of the last king had made this liberty more welcome.
ēvincunt instândō ut litterae darentur (id. 4), by insisting they gain their point,—that letters should be sent. [Here ēvincunt = efficiunt.]

a. Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the Subject of the following:—

1. Of passive verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort: as,—
impetrātum est ut in senāti recitārentur (litterae) (B. C. i. 1), they succeeded in having the letter read in the senate (it was brought about that, etc.).

2. Of Impersonals meaning it happens, it remains, it follows, it is necessary, it is added,² and the like: as,—

accidit ut esset lūna plēna (B. G. iv. 29), it happened to be full moon (it happened that it was, etc.). [Here ut esset is subject of accidit.]
reliquum est quārtā virtūs ut sit ipsa frugalitās (Tus. D. iii. 17), it remains that the fourth virtue is thrift. [So also restat.]
sequitur ut doceam (N. D. ii. 81), the next thing is to show (it follows that I should show).

NOTE. — In poetry the infinitive sometimes occurs.

3. Of est in the sense of it is the fact that, etc. (mostly poetic): as, est ut virō vir lātius ōrdinet arbusta (Hor. Od. iii. 1. 9), it is the fact that one man plants his vineyards in wider rows than another.

b. A result clause, with or without ut, frequently follows quam, after a comparative (but see § 336. c, note 2): as,—

perpessus est omnia potius quam indicāret (Tusc. ii. 52), he endured all rather than betray, etc.

¹ Verbs and phrases taking an ut-clause of result as subject or object are accēdit, accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, cōsequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, fit, fierī potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mūnum est, necesse est, prope est, rēctum est, relinquītūr, reliquum est, restat, tanti est, tantum abest, and a few others.
² See the impersonals in the list above.
c. A result clause, with or without ut, is often used elliptically, in exclamatory questions. The question may be introduced by the interrogative -ne. Thus,—

quamquam quid loquor? tē ut ulla rēs frangat (Cat. i. 22), yet why do I speak? [the idea] that anything should bend you!

egone ut tē interpellem (Tusc. ii. 42), what, I interrupt you?

ego tē vidēre nōluerim (Q. Fr. i. 3), I unwilling to see you?

REMARK.—The Infinitive, in exclamations (§ 274), usually refers to something actually occurring; the Subjunctive, to something contemplated.

d. The phrase tantum abest, it is so far [from being the case], regularly takes two clauses of result with ut: one is substantive, the subject of abest; the other is adverbial, correlative with tantum. Thus,—

tantum abest ut nostra mīrēmur, ut usque eō difficilēs āc mōrōsi simus, ut nōbis nōn satisfaciat ipse Dēmosthēnēs: (Or.104), so far from admiring my own works, I am difficult and captious to that degree, that not Demosthenes himself satisfies me. [Here the first ut-clause is the subject of abest (§ 332. a); the second, a result clause, after tantum (§ 319); and the third, after usque 66.]

e. The expressions facere ut, committere ut with the subjunctive, often form a periphrasis for the simple verb: as,—

invitus fēcī ut Flāminium ē senātū cīcērem (Cat. Maj. 42), it was with reluctance that I expelled Flaminius from the senate.

NOTE.—With this may be compared fore ut for the future infinitive (§ 288. f).

f. Rarely, a thought or an idea is considered as a result, and is expressed by the subjunctive with ut instead of the accusative and infinitive (§ 336. i). In this case a demonstrative usually precedes: as,—

praeclārum illud est, ut ēōs ... amēmus (Tusc. iii. 73), this is a noble thing, that we should love, etc.

vērisimile nōn est ut ille antepōneret (Verres iv. 11), it is not likely that he preferred.

g. A Relative clause of Result with quīn is used after verbs or other expressions of hindering and the like when these are negated. Thus,

facere nōn possum quīn ... (Att. xii. 27), I cannot avoid, etc.
nihil praetermisi quīn scribam ... (Q. F. iii. 3), I have left nothing undone to write.

ut nūlla rē impedirer quīn (Att. iv. 2), that I might be hindered by nothing from, etc.

nōn hūmāna ulla neque divina obstant quīn (Sall. Ep. Mith. 17), no human or divine laws prevent, but that, etc.
Substantive Clauses of Result.

§ 332.]

NOTE 1.—The negative may be expressed (as in the examples above) or merely implied (as in quis impedit quin eam, who (i.e. nobody) hinders me from going?).

REMARK.—This usage is found especially with the phrase non dubitō, I do not doubt, and similar expressions: as,—

non dubitatībat quin ei crēderēmus (Att. vi. 2), he did not doubt that we believed him.
illud cave dubitēs quin ego omnia faciam (Fam. v. 20), do not doubt that I will do all.

quis ignōrat quin (Flacc. 64), who is ignorant that, etc.?

neque ambiguitur quin Brūtus pessimō pūblico id factūrus fuerit si prōrum rēgum alicui rēgnum extorsisset (Liv. ii. 1), nor is there any question that Brutus, if he had wrested the kingdom from any one of the former kings, would have done it with the worst results to the state. [Direct statement: fēcisset.]

NOTE 2.—Non dubitāō, in the sense of I do not hesitate, commonly takes the Infinitive, but sometimes quin with the subjunctive. Thus,—

nec dubitāre illum appellāre sapientem (Lælius 1), and not to hesitate to call him a sage.
dubitandum non existimāvit quin proficiscērētur (B. G. ii. 2), he did not think he ought to hesitate to set out.

h. Some verbs and expressions may be used either as verbs of saying or as verbs of commanding, effecting, and the like. These take as their object either a Substantive clause of Purpose or Result or an Infinitive with subject accusative, according to the sense. Thus,—

sequitur igitur esse causās immutābiles (Fat. 28), it follows directly that there are unalterable causes. [Result clause, the regular construction with sequeor when used of a logical sequence.]
laudem sapientiae statuō esse maximam (Div. v. 13), I hold that the glory of wisdom is the greatest.

statuant ut decem milia hominum mittantur (B. G. vii. 21), they resolve that 10,000 men shall be sent. [Purpose clause, cf. § 331. d.]

rēs ipsa monēbat tempus esse (Att. x. 8), the thing itself warned that it was time. [Cf. monēre ut, warn to do something.]
fac mihi esse persuāsum (N. D. i. 75), suppose that I am persuaded of that. [Cf. facere ut, accomplish that.]
hōc volunt persuādēre, non interire animōs (B. G. vi. 13), they wish to convince that souls do not perish.

huic persuādet uti ad hostēs trānseat (B. G. iii. 18), persuades him to pass over to the enemy.

NOTE.—The infinitive with subject accusative in this construction is Indirect Discourse, and is to be distinguished from the simple infinitive sometimes found with these verbs instead of a subjunctive clause.
4. Indicative with *Quod*.

333. A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of *quod* causal with the Indicative.

The clause in the Indicative with *quod* is used when the statement is *regarded as a fact*: as,—

alterum est vitium, *quod* quidam nimirum studium cónferunt (Off. i. 19), *it is another fault that some bestow too much zeal*, etc. [Here ut cónferant could be used, meaning that some *should* bestow; or the accusative and infinitive, meaning *to bestow* (abstractly); *quod* makes it a fact that men *do* bestow, etc.]

inter inanimum et animal hóc máximé interest, *quod* animal agit aliquid (Ac. ii. 37), *this is the chief difference*, etc., that an animal *aims at* something.

*quod* rédíit nóbis mirábilé vidétur (Of. iii. 111), *that he* (Regulus) *returned seems wonderful to us.*

vetus illud Catônís admodum scítum est, qui mirári sé æiebat *quod* nón ridéreret haruspex haruspícem cum vidisset (Div. ii. 51), *'tis an old and shrewd saying of Cato, that he wondered a soothsayer did not laugh when he looked another in the face.* [Here ridéreret is in the subjunctive as being a subordinate clause of indirect discourse: see § 336.]

**Note.**—Like other substantive clauses, the clause with *quod* may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

*a.* In colloquial language, the clause with *quod* sometimes appears as an *accusative of specification*, corresponding to the English *whereas* (cf. § 326. *a*): as,—

*quod* dé domó scribis (Fam. xiv. 2), *as to what you write of the house.*

*quod* mihi dé nostró statú gratulárís, minímé mirámur te tuis praecláris operibus laetári (Att. i. 5), *as to your congratulating me on our condition, no wonder you are pleased with your own noble works.*

*b.* Verbs of *feeling* and the expression of feeling take either *quod*, *quia* (Causal), or the accusative and infinitive (Indirect Discourse): as,—

*quod* scribis ... gaudeó (Q. F. iii. 1), *I am glad that you write.*

fació libenter *quod* eam nón possum praeteríre (Leg. i. 63), *I am glad that I cannot pass it by.*

*quae* perfecta esse vehementer laetor (Rosc. A. 136), *I greatly rejoice that this is finished.*

**Remark.**—*Miror* and similar expressions are sometimes followed by a clause with *si*.1 This is apparently substantive, but really protasis (cf. § 331. *e*. i. note 1). Thus,—

---

1 Cf. the Greek ᾧ μας εἰ,
§§ 333, 334. **Indirect Questions.**

Indirect qui quemquam amicum habere potuit (Læl. 54), I wonder if he could ever have a friend. [Originally, If this is so, I wonder at it.]

5. **Indirect Questions.**

**Note.**—An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an Interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. In grammatical form, exclamatory sentences are not distinguished from interrogative (see the third example below).

**334.** An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive: as, —

quid ipse sentiam expōnām (Div. i. 10), **I will explain what I think.**

[Direc: quid sentiō?]  

id possēstne fieri cōnsuluit (id. 32), he consulted whether it could be done.  

[Direc: potestne?]  

quam sīs audāx omnēs intellēgere potuērunt (Rosc. Am. 87), all could understand how bold you are. [Direc: quam es audāx!]

doleam necne doleam nihil interest (Tusc. ii. 29), it is of no account whether I suffer or not. [Double question.]

ingat mē quid sentiam, he asks me what I think. [Cf. rogat mē sentientiam, he asks me my opinion.]

hoc dubium est, uter nostrūm sit verēcundior (Academ. ii. 126), this is doubtful, which of us two is the more modest.

incerti quātenus Volerō exercēret victōriam (Liv. ii. 55), uncertain how far Volerō would push victory. [As if, dubitantēs quātenus, etc.]

**Note.**—An Indirect Question may be the subject of a verb (as in the fourth example), the direct object (as in the first), the secondary object (as in the fifth), an appositive (as in the sixth).

The use of tenses in Indirect Question is illustrated by the following examples: —

dicō quid faciam, I tell you what I am doing.

dicō quid facturus sim, I tell you what I will do.

dicō quid fecerim, I tell you what I did (have done, was doing, had done).

dixi quid facerem, I told you what I was doing.

dixi quid fecissem, I told you what I had done.

dixi quid factūrus essem, I told you what I would do (was going to do).

dixi quid factūrus fuerim, I told you what I would have done.

a. Indirect Questions referring to future time take the subjunctive of the First Periphrastic conjugation: as, —

prospiciō qui concursūs futūri sint (Div. in Cæc.), I foresee what throngs there will be [Direc: quī erunt?]

quid sit futurum crās, fugē quaeerere (Hor. Od. i. 9), forbear to ask what will be on the morrow. [Direc: quid erit or futūrum est?]
NOTE.—This periphrastic future avoids the ambiguity which would be caused by using the present subjunctive to refer to future time in such clauses.

b. The Deliberative Subjunctive (see § 268 and examples) remains unchanged in an Indirect Question, except sometimes in tense: as,—

[quæritur] utrum Carthāgō diruātur, ar Carthāginiēnsibus reddātur (De Inv. i. 17), [the question is] shall Carthage be destroyed, or restored to the Carthaginians.

nec quisquam satis certum habet, quid aut spēret aut timeat (Liv. xxi. 7), nor is any one well assured what he shall hope or fear. [Here the future participle with sit could not be used.]

incertō quid pēterent aut vītārent (Liv. xxviii. 36), since it was doubtful (abl. abs.) what they should seek or shun.

c. In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (accusative of anticipation): as,—

nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit (Fam. viii. 10), you know how slow Marcellus is. [For nōstī quam tardus sit Mārcellus. Cf. I know thee who thou art.]

 Cf. potestne igitur éārum rérum quārē futūrae sint ùlla esse praesēnsiō (Div. ii. 15), can there be, then, any foreknowledge as to those things, why they will occur? [A similar use of the objective genitive.]

REMARK.—In some cases the Object of anticipation becomes Subject by a change of voice, and an apparent mixture of relative and interrogative construction is the result: as,—

quīdam saepe in parvā pecūniā perspicciuntur quam sint levēs (Læl. 63), it is often seen, in a trifling matter of money, how unprincipled some people are (some people are often seen through, how unprincipled they are).

quemadmodum Pompēium oppūgnārent ā mē indicāti sunt (Leg. Ag. i. 5), it has been shown by me in what way they attacked Pompey (they have been shown by me, how they attacked).

d. Indirect Questions often take the Indicative in early Latin and in poetry: as,—

nōn reputat quid labōris est (Plaut. Am. 172), he does not consider what a task it is.

vīneam quō in agrō consērī oportet sic observātō (Cato R. R. 6), in what soil a vineyard should be set you must observe thus.

e. A few interrogative expressions are used parenthetically in an indefinite sense and do not take a subjunctive. Such are—

nesciō quis (and kindred forms), I know not who, somebody or other, etc.

mīrum (nimīrum) quam, marvellously (marvellous how).

mīrum quantum, tremendously (marvellous how much).

immāne quantum, monstrously (monstrous how much).

sānē quam, immensely. valdē quam, enormously.
Examples are:—

qui istam nesció quam indolentiam māgnopere laudant (Tus. iii. 12), who
greatly extol that freedom from pain, whatever that is.

mirum quantum profuit (Liv. ii. 1), it helped prodigiously.

ita sātō nesció quō contingisse arbitror (Fam. xv. 13), I think it happened
so by some fatality or other.

nam suōs valdē quam paucōs habet (Fam. xi. 13), for he has uncommonly
few of his own.

sānē quam sum gavisus (id.), I was immensely glad.

vinō et lucernīs Mēdus acinacēs immāne quantum discrepat (Hor. Od. i. 27.
5), is monstrously at variance.

f. An indirect question is occasionally introduced by si in the sense
of whether (like if in English, cf. § 333. b. Rem.): as,—

circumfunduntur hostēs si quem aditum reperire possent (B. G. vi. 37),
the enemy pour round [to see] if they can find entrance.

visam si domi est (Ter. Heaut. 118), I will go see if he is at home.

Note.—This is strictly a Protasis, but usually no Apodosis is thought of, and
the clause is virtually an Indirect Question.

g. Forsit, forsitan, forsan, fortasse, fortasse an, perhaps, are
often followed by the Subjunctive: as,—

forsitan quaerātis qui ēste terror sit (Rosc. Am. 2), you may perhaps in-
quire what this alarm is.

Note.—The Subjunctive Clause in this case was originally an Indirect Questi-
on. Thus, it would be a chance whether, etc. Fortasse is also followed by the
Infinitive with Subject Accusative in Plautus.

III.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Note.—The use of the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse
(ōrātīō obliqua) is a comparatively late form of speech, developed in the Latin
and Greek only, and perhaps separately in each of them. It is wholly wanting in
Sanskrit and Zend, but some forms like it have grown up in English and German.

The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other
person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause,
the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well
as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the verb is
necessarily conformed to the new relation of persons.

The construction of the Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports
of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express
what any one—whether the speaker or some one else—says, thinks, or perceives,
whenever that which is said, thought, or perceived is capable of being expressed in
the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be said, etc., can also be
reported indirectly as well as directly.

The use of the Infinitive in the main clause undoubtedly comes from its use as
a case-form to complete or modify the action expressed by the verb of saying, etc.,
and its object together. This object in time came to be regarded as, and in fact
to all intents became, the subject of the infinitive. A transition state is found in Sanskrit, which, though it has no indirect discourse proper, yet allows an indirect predication after verbs of saying and the like, by means of a predicative apposition, in such expressions as, "The maids told the king [that] his daughter [was] bereft of her senses."

The simple form of indirect statement with the accusative and infinitive was afterwards amplified by introducing dependent or modifying clauses; and in Latin it became a common construction, and could be used to report whole speeches, etc., which in other languages would have the direct form. (Compare the style of reporting speeches in English, where only the person and tense are changed, as is also occasionally the case in Sanskrit.)

The use of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses in Indirect Discourse probably came from regarding the statements contained in them as not absolutely true, but as conditioned upon the trustworthiness of the original speaker; that is, as Apodosis with an implied Protasis (if we may believe the speaker, or the like). So the French conditional is often equivalent to "it is said": as, aint il aurait à peu près doublé, "it is said to have nearly doubled," lit. "would have doubled," i.e. if we should believe the report. Cf. in German, Er soll krank sein, "he is said to be sick," lit., "he ought to be sick, unless the story is false."

The Subjunctive standing for hortatory forms of speech in Indirect Discourse is simply the usual hortatory subjunctive, with only a change of person and tense (if necessary), as in the reporter's style, and in Sanskrit.

335. A Direct Quotation gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer.

An Indirect Quotation adapts the words of the speaker or writer to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted.

Remark.—The term Indirect Discourse (òratiō obliqua) is used in two senses. In the wider sense it includes all clauses—of whatever kind—which express the words or thought of any person indirectly; that is, in a form different from that in which the person said the words or conceived the thought. In the narrower sense the term Indirect Discourse is restricted to those cases in which some complete proposition is cited in the form of an Indirect Quotation, which may be extended to a narrative or an address of any length, as in the speeches reported by Caesar and Livy. In this book the term is used in the restricted sense.

I. Formal Indirect Discourse.

336. I. Verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving,1 govern the Indirect Discourse.

---

1 Such are: (1) knowing, sció, cognōscō, compertum habeo, etc.; (2) thinking, putō, existimō, arbitrō, etc.; (3) telling, dicō, nūntiō, referō, pollicēor, prōmittō, certiōrem faciō, etc.; (4) perceiving, sentiō, comperiō, videō, audiō, etc. So in general any word that denotes thought or mental and visual perception or their expression may govern the Indirect Discourse.
2. In the Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All Subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. Thus,—

spērō mē liberātum [esse] de metū (Tusc. ii. 67), I trust I have been freed from fear.

[dicit] esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās plūrimum valeat (B. G. i. 17), he says there are some, whose influence most prevails. [In direct discourse: sunt nōnnūlli . . . valet.]

nisi iūrāssēt, scelus sē factūrum [esse] arbitrabātur (Ver. ii. 1. 123), he thought he should incur guilt, unless he should take the oath. [Direct: nisi iūrāverō, faciam.]

Stōcī negant quidquam [esse] bonum, nisi quod honestum sit (Fin. ii. 68), the Stoics assert that nothing is good but what is right. [The verb negō is used in preference to dicō with a negative.]

Note 1.—In the statement of all speech or thought, the Romans tended to use the Indirect Discourse, etc., with verbs of the classes mentioned, but: inquam, said I (etc.), is appropriated to the Direct Discourse except in poetry.

Note 2.—The verb of saying, etc., is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence: as,—

cōnsulis alterius nōmen invisum civitāti fuit: nimum Tarquinīōs rēgnō adsuēsse; initiōm a Priscō factūm; rēgnāsse dein Ser. Tullium, etc. (Liv. ii. 2), the name of the other consul was hateful to the state; the Tarquins (they thought) had become too much accustomed to royal power, etc. [Here invisum implies a thought, and this thought is added in the Indirect Discourse.]

ōrantēs ut urbibus saltem—iam enim agrōs dēplorātōs esse—open senātus ferret (Liv. xvi. 6), praying that the senate would at least bring aid to the cities—for the fields [they said] were already given up as lost.

Note 3.—Verbs of promising, hoping, expecting, threatening, swearing, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse (see § 330.f, and note).

1. Subject Accusative.

a. 1. The Subject of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse must regularly be expressed, even if it is wanting in the direct: as,—

ōrātor sum, I am an orator; dicit sē esse ōrātōrem, he says he is an orator.

Note.—But the subject is often omitted, if easily understood: as,—

ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit (B. G. iv. 27), he said he pardoned their rashness.

rogāvi pervēnissentne Agrigentum: dīxit pervōnisse (Verr. iv. 27), I asked whether they (the curtains) had come to Agrigentum; he answered that they had.
Remark.—After a relative, or quum (than), if the verb would be the same as that of the main clause, it is usually omitted, and its subject is attracted into the accusative: as,—

tē suspicor eisdem rēbus quibus mēipsum commovēri (Cat. Maj. 1), I suspect that you are disturbed by the same things as I.

2. When the verb of saying, etc., becomes passive, the construction may be either Personal or Impersonal.

Note 1.—For rules in regard to the choice between these constructions, and for examples, see § 330. a-d.

Note 2.—An Indirect Narrative begun in the personal construction may be continued with the Infinitive and Accusative.

2. Subordinate Clauses.

b. A subordinate clause merely explanatory or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative: as,—

quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrāri (Cat. iii. 21), who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?

cūius ingeniō putābat ea quae gesserat posse celebrāri (Arch. 20), by whose genius he thought that those deeds which he had done could be celebrated. [Here the fact expressed by quae gesserat, though not explanatory, is felt to be true without regard to the quotation: quae gessisset would mean, what Marius claimed to have done.]

Note.—It often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he shall use the Indicative or Subjunctive in such clauses (cf. §§ 340–342).

c. Clauses introduced by a relative which is equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction are not properly subordinate, and hence take the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (see § 180. f) as,—

Mārcellus requīsīvīsse dicitur Archimēdem illum, quem cum audīset interfectum permolestē tulisse (Ver. iv. 131), Mārcellus is said to have sought for Archimedes, and when he heard that he was slain, to have been greatly distressed.

ūnumquemque nostrām censent philosophi mundī esse partem, ex quō [= et ex cō] illud nālūrā cōnsequī (Fin. iii. 64), the philosophers say that each one of us is a part of the universe, from which this naturally follows.

Note 1.—Really subordinate clauses occasionally take this construction: as,—

quemadmodum si nōn dedātur ob ses pro ruptō sē foedus habitūrum, sic deditam inviolatām ad suōs remissurum (Liv. ii. 13), [he says] as in case the hostage is not given up he shall consider the treaty as broken, so if given up he will return her unharmed to her friends.
Tenses in Indirect Discourse.

336. A. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying, etc., by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced. Thus, —

- cadō, I am falling: dicit sē cadere; he says he is falling.
- cadēbam, I was falling: dixit sē cecidisse; he said he was falling,
- cecideram, I had fallen: dixit sē cāsūrum [esse], he said he should have fallen.
- ceciderō, I shall have fallen: dixit fore ut ceciderit [rare], he said he should have fallen.
- cecidero, I shall have fallen: dixit fore ut ceciderit [rare], he said he should have fallen.

Note 1. — All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct. But sometimes continued or repeated action in past time is expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse, and is often called the Imperfect Infinitive (so regularly after memini): thus, —

tē memini dīcere, I remember that you said. [Direct: dīcēbās.]

Note 2. — For various ways of expressing the Future Infinitive, see § 147. c.

4. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

336. B. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 286). They depend for their sequence on the verb of saying, etc., by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced.
Thus in the sentence, *dixit sē Rōmam itūrum ut cōnsulem vidēret*, *he said he should go to Rome in order that he might see the consul, vidēret* follows the sequence of *dixit* without regard to the Future Infinitive, *itūrum [esse]*, on which it directly depends.

**Note 1.**—This rule applies not only to the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, but also to that which stands for the imperative, etc. (see examples in § 339), and to that in questions (§ 338).

**Note 2.**—A subjunctive depending on a Perfect Infinitive is commonly in the Imperfect or Pluperfect, even if the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a primary tense (cf. § 287 i). Thus,—

Tarquinium dixisse ferunt tum exsulantem sē intellēxisse quōs fidōs amicōs habuisset (Lael. 53), *they tell us that Tarquin said that then in his exile he had found out what faithful friends he had had.* [Here the main verb of saying, ferunt, is primary, but the time is carried back by dixisse and intellēxisse, and the sequence then becomes secondary.]

tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecis nē verbōrum quidem copiā vince-
remus (Nat. D. i. 8), *we seem to have advanced so far that even in fulness of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks.*

*a.* The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are often used in dependent clauses of the Indirect Discourse even when the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a secondary tense: as,—

*dicēbant ... totidem Nerviōs (pollicēri) qui longissimē absīunt* (B. G. ii. 4),

*they said that the Nervii, who live farthest off, promised as many.*

**Note 1.**—This construction comes from the tendency of language to refer all time in narration to the time of the speaker (*Repraesentātiō*). In the course of a long passage in the Indirect Discourse the tenses of the subjunctive often vary, sometimes following the Sequence, and sometimes affected by *Repraesentātiō*. Examples may be seen in B. G. i. 13, vii. 20, etc.

**Note 2.**—Certain constructions are never affected by *Repraesentātiō*. Such are the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive with *cum* temporal, *antequam*, and *priusquam*.

5. Conditions in Indirect Discourse.

337. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows:—

1. The Protasis, being a *subordinate clause*, is always in the Sub-

   *junction.

2. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

*a.* The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future con-

   *ditions* (§ 307. 6) becomes the Future Infinitive. Thus there is no dis-

   *tinction between more or less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.*
Examples of conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are:


(dixit) si ipse populo Römānō nōn prae scriberet quemadmodum suō iūre utečtur, nōn oportēre sēscī a populo Römānō in suō iūre impediri (B. G. i. 36), he said that if he did not dictate to the Roman people how they should use their rights, he ought not to be interfered with by the Roman people in the exercise of his rights. [Direct: sī nōn prae scribō . . . nōn oportet.]

praedicāvit . . . sī pāce ulti velint, iniquum esse, etc. (B. G. i. 44), he asserted that if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unfair, etc. [Direct: sī volunt . . . est. Present tense kept by Repraesentātiō (§ 336. B. a, note 1).]

2. Simple Past Condition (§ 306).

nōn dīcam nē illud quidem, sī māximē in culpā fuerit Apollōnius, tamen in hominēm honestissimae civitātis honestissimum tam graviter animadvertī causā indicātā nōn oportuisset (Verres v. 20), I will not say this either, that, even if Apollonius was greatly in fault, still an honorable man ought not to have been punished so severely, etc. [Direct: sī fuit . . . nōn oportuit.]


Aedui sē obsidēs reddītūrum nōn esse, neque eīs . . . bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis pende rent: sī id nōn fecissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī ablūtūrum (B. G. i. 36), he said that he would not give up the hostages to the Aedui, but would not make war upon them if they observed the agreement, etc., and paid tribute yearly; but if they should not do this, the name of brothers to the Roman people would be far from aiding them. [Direct: reddam . . . inferam . . . sī manēbunt . . . pendent: sī nōn fecerint . . . aberit.]

(dixit) quod si praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum (B. G. i. 40), but if nobody else should follow, still he would go with the tenth legion alone. [Direct: sī sequētur . . . ibō. Present tense by Repraesentātiō.]

id Damācēs ut audīvit, sēniō, sī in turbam exīsset ab homine tam necessā riō sē relictum, futūrum [esse] ut cēterī consilium sequantur (Nep. Dat. 6), if it should get abroad that he had been abandoned by a man so closely connected with him, everybody else would follow his example. [Direct: sī extierit . . . sequentur.]

(dixērunt) nisi mē civitāte expulerissent, obtinēre sē nōn posse licentiam cupiditātūm suārum (Att. x. 4), they said that unless they drove me out of the state, they could not have free play for their desires. [Direct: nisi (Cicerōnem) expulerimus, obtinēre nōn poterimus.]

b. In changing a Condition contrary to fact (§ 308) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice.
1. The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense.

2. The Apodosis, if *active*, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in *-ûrus* with *fuisse*.

3. If the verb of the Apodosis is *passive* or has no supine stem, the periphrasis *futûrum fuisse ut* (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.

4. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes Perfect Infinitive.

Examples are:

nec së superstitem filiae futûrum fuisse, nisi spem ulciscendae mortis ëius in auxilió commilitónum habuisset (Liv. iii. 50), and that he should not now be a survivor, etc., unless he had had hope, etc. [Direct: nôn superstes essem, nisi habuissem.]

illud Asia cògiet, nûllam a së neque bellî externî neque discordiárüm domesticárüm calamítatêm abfutûram fuisse, si hòc imperiô nôn tenerér-tur (Q. Fr. i. 1, 34), let Asia (personified) think of this, that no disaster, etc., would not be hers, if she were not held by this government. [Direct: abessem, si nôn tenerer.]

quid inimicitíarüm créditis exceptûrum fuisse, sì insontès lacessíssem (Q. C. vi. 10, 18), what enmities do you think I should have incurred if I had wantonly assailed the innocent. [exceptíssem... sì lacessíssem.]

invitum sê dicere, nec dictûrum fuisse, nì càritás reî publicae vinceret (Liv. ii. 2), that he spoke unwillingly and should not have spoken (at all), did not love for the commonwealth prevail? [Direct: nec dixíssem... nì vinceret.]

quôrum sì actás potuisset esse longinquior, futûrum fuisse ut omnibus perfectís artibus hominum vita erudírâtur (Tuscul. iii. 69), if life could have been longer, human existence would have been embellished by every art in its perfection. [Direct: erudìta esset.]

si Cn. Pompéius privátus esset, tamen erat dêlìgendus (Manil. 50), if P. were a private citizen, still he ought to be chosen, would become dêligendum fuisse.

**Note 1.**—In Indirect Discourse Present Conditions contrary to fact are not distinguished in the *apodosis* from Past, but the *protasis* may keep them distinct.

**Note 2.**—The periphrasis *futûrum fuisse ut* is sometimes used from choice when there is no necessity for resorting to it.

**Note 3.**—Very rarely the Future Infinitive is used in the Indirect Discourse to express the Apodosis of a Present Condition contrary to fact. Only four or five examples of this use occur in classic authors: as,—

Titurius clâmábat si Caesar adesset neque Carnútês, etc., neque Eburô-nês tantâ cum contemptiône nostra ad castra ventûrós esse (B. G. v. 29), Titurius cried out that if Cæsar were present, neither would the Carnutes, etc., nor would the Eburones be coming to our camp with such contempt. [Direct: si adesset... venirent.]
6. Questions in Indirect Discourse.

338. A Question in the Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

A real question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, in the Infinitive. Thus,—

quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possēssīōnēs venīret (B. G. i. 44), what did he want? why did he come into his territories? [Real question. Direct: quid vīś? cūr venīs?]
num recentium inūriārum memoriam [se] dépōnerē posse (id. i. 14), could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs? [Rhetorical Question. Direct: num possūm?]
quem signum daturum fugientibus? quem ausūrum Alexandrō succēdere (Q. C. iii. 5), who will give the signal on the retreat? who will dare succeed Alexander? [Rhetorical. Direct: quis dabit ... audēbit.]

Note 1.—No sharp line can be drawn between the Subjunctive and the Infinitive in questions in the Indirect Discourse. Whether the question is to be regarded as rhetorical or real often depends merely on the writer's point of view. Thus,—

utrum partem rēgni petītūrum esse, an tūtum ēreptūrum (Liv. xlv. 19), will you ask part of the regal power (he said), or seize the whole?
quid tandem praeṭorī faciendum fuisset (id. xxxi. 48), what, pray, ought a prētor to have done?
quid repente factum [esse] cūr, etc. (id. xxxiv. 54), what had suddenly happened, that, etc.?

Note 2.—Questions coming immediately after a verb of asking are treated as Indirect Questions and take the Subjunctive (see § 334). This is true even when the verb of asking serves also to introduce a passage in the Indirect Discourse. The question may be either real or rhetorical. See quaesīvit, etc. (Liv. lviii. 15).

Note 3.—For the use of tenses, see § 336. B, note 1.

a. A Deliberative Subjunctive in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect: as,—
cūr aliqūōs ex suīs āmittēret (B. C. i. 72), why (thought he) should he lose some of his men? [Direct: cūr āmīttam?]

7. Commands in Indirect Discourse.

339. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse: as,—

reminiscētur veteris incommodi (B. G. i. 13), remember (said he) the ancient disaster. [Direct: reminiscere.]
finem faciat (id. 20), let him make an end. [Direct: fac.]
ferrent open, adiuvarent (Liv. ii. 6), let them bring aid, let them help.

Remark. — This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the hortatory and the optative subjunctive as well.

Note 1. — Though these subjunctives stand for independent clauses of the direct discourse, they follow the rule for the sequence of tenses, being in fact dependent on the verb of saying, etc. (cf. §§ 386, 336, B, note 1).

Note 2. — A Prohibition in the Indirect Discourse is regularly expressed by nē with the Subjunctive, even when nōli with the Infinitive would be used in the Direct: as,

nē perturbārentur (B. G. vii. 29), do not (he said) be troubled. [Direct: nōlite perturbāri. But sometimes nōllet is found in Ind. Disc.]

The following example illustrates some of the foregoing principles in a connected address:

Indirect discourse.

Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi ēös Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscērētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni, et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō īnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnō operē virtūtis tribueret, aut ipsōs déspercēret: sē īta ā patribus māiōrībusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendenter, aut insidiīs niterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus ībi cōnstituissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et internecione exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.—B. G. i. 13.

Direct discourse.

Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis facerit, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi ēös tū cōnstituēris atque esse voluēris: sin bellō persequi perseverābīs, remīniscēre [inquit] et veterīs incommodī populi Rōmānī, et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō īnum pāgum adortus es, cum ēi qui flūmen trānsierant suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae māgnō operē virtūtis tribueris, aut nōs déspēxēris: nōs īta ā patribus māiōrībusque nostrīs didīcimus, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendēmus, aut insidiīs nitāmus. Quārē nōli committere, ut hic ī locus ībi cōnstitūmus ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et internecione exercitūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prōdat.

II. Intermediate Clauses.

340. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive, (1) when it expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer (Informal Indirect Discourse), or (2) when it is an integral part of a Subjunctive clause or equivalent Infinitive \(^1\) (Attraction).

\(^1\) See note at head of Indirect Discourse, p. 369.
1. Informal Indirect Discourse.

341. A subordinate clause takes the subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. Thus:—

a. In subordinate clauses in formal indirect discourse (§ 336) ; but also in Informal Indirect Discourse in the following cases (b—d) :—

b. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse: as,—

animal sentit quid sit quod deceat (Of. i. 14), an animal feels what it is that is fit.

hunc sibi ex animō scrūpulum, quī sē diēs noctēsque stimulet ac pungat, ut ēvellātis postulat (Rosc. Am. 6), he begs you to pluck from his heart this doubt that goads and stings him day and night. [Here the relative clause is not a part of the Purpose expressed in ēvellātis, but is an assertion made by the subject of postulat.]

c. When the main clause of a quotation is merged in the verb of saying, or some modifier of it: as,—

si quid dē hīs rebus dicere vellet, fēcī potestātem (Catil. iii. 11), if he wished to say anything about these matters, I gave him a chance.

tulit dē caede quae in Appiā viā facta esset (Milon. 15), he passed a law concerning the murder which (in the language of the bill) took place in the Appian Way.

nisi restituisset statuās, vehementer eīs mīnātur (Verr. ii. 162), he threatens them violently unless they should restore the statues. [Here the main clause, “that he will inflict punishment,” is contained in mīnātur.]

eis auxiliīm suum pollicitus sī ab Sūvis prēmerentur (B. G. iv. 19), he promised them his aid if they should be molested by the Suevi. [= pollicitus sē auxiliīm lātūrum, etc.]

prohibītō tollendi, nisi pāctus esset, vim adhibēbat pāctiōnī (Ver. iii. 37), the forbidding to take away unless he came to terms gave force to the bargain.

d. When a reason or an explanatory fact is introduced by a relative or by quod (rarely quia) (see § 321).1 Thus,—

Pætus omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisser mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. i. 12)

Pætus presented me all the books which (he said) his father had left.

REMARK.—Under this head even what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the Subjunctive. So also with quod even the verb of saying may be in the Subjunctive. Here belong also nōn quia, nōn quod, introducing a reason expressly to deny it. (See § 321. Rem. and note 2.)

1 This usage probably originates in Apodosis, the condition being the supposed truth of the speaker, the main subject. (See Indirect Discourse, Note, p. 370.)
2. Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction).

342. A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause: 1 as,—

imperat, dum rēs adiūdicētur, hominem ut adservent: cum iūdicātum sit, 
ad sē adducant (Verr. iii. 55), he orders them, till the affair should be 
decided, to keep the man; when he is judged, to bring him to him.

etenim quis tam dissolūtō animō est, qui haec cum videat, tacēre āc negle-
gere possit (Rosc. Am. 32), for who is so reckless of spirit, that, when 
he sees these things, he can keep silent and pass them by?

mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in contiōne ēōs qui sīnt in proeliiis interfecti 
(Or. 151), it is the custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized 
who have been slain in battle. [Here laudārī is equivalent to ut 
laudentur.]

a. But a dependent clause may be closely connected grammatically 
with a Subjunctive or Infinitive clause, and still take the Indicative, if 
it is not regarded as a necessary logical part of that clause: as,—

quōdam modō postulat ut, quemadmodum est, sīc etiam appellētur, tyran-
nus (Att. x. 4), in a manner he demands that as he is, so he may be 
called, a tyrant.

si mea in tē essent officia sōlum tanta quanta magis ā tē ipsō prae dicārī 
quam ā mē ponderārī solent, verēcundius ā tē ... peterem (Fam. ii. 6), 
if my good services to you were only so great as they are wont rather to 
be called by you than to be estimated by me, I should, etc.

nātūra fert ut ēis faveāmus quī eadem pericula quibus nōs perfūntī sumus 
ingrediuntur (Muren. 4), nature prompts us to feel friendly towards those 
who are entering on the same dangers which we have passed through.

nē hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, suōs circumvenire possent 
(B. G. ii. 8), lest the enemy, because they were so strong in numbers, 
should be able to surround his men.

NOTE.—The use of the Indicative in such clauses sometimes serves to empha-
size the fact, as true independently of the statement contained in the subjunctive 
or infinitive clause. But in many cases no such distinction between the Indicative 
and Subjunctive is perceptible.

1 The Subjunctive in this use is in a manner of the same nature as the Sub-
junctive in the main clause. A dependent clause in a clause of Purpose is really a 
part of the purpose, as is seen from the use of should and other auxiliaries in English. 
In a Result clause this is less clear, but the result construction is a branch of the 
characteristic, to which category the dependent clause in this case evidently belongs, 
when it takes the Subjunctive.

It is often difficult to distinguish between Informal Indirect Discourse and the 
Integral Part. Thus in imperāvit ut ea fīrent quae opus essent, essent 
may stand for sunt, and then will be Indirect Discourse, being a part of the thought, 
but not a part of the order; or it may stand for erunt, and then will be Integral 
Part, being a part of the order itself.
Syntax: Important Rules.

Important Rules of Syntax.

1. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case (§ 183).

2. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (§ 186).

3. A Relative pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands (§ 198).

4. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in number and person (§ 204).

5. Superlatives (more rarely comparatives) denoting order and succession—also mediúm, ceterus, reliquus—usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant (§ 193).

6. The Personal Pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in -ım being used partitively, and that in -i oftenest objectively (§ 194. b).

7. The Reflexive pronoun (sé), and usually the corresponding possessive (suus), are used in some part of the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause (§ 196).

8. The Possessive Pronouns are used instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun: (1) always instead of the possessive genitive, (2) rarely instead of an objective genitive (§ 197. a).

9. A Possessive representing a genitive may have a genitive in apposition (§ 197. c).

10. Adverbs are used to modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (§ 207).

11. A question of simple fact, requiring the answer YES or NO, is formed by adding the enclitic -ne to the emphatic word (§ 210. a).

12. When the enclitic -ne is added to a negative word,—as in nónne,—an affirmative answer is expected. The particle num suggests a negative answer (§ 210. c).

13. The subject of a finite verb is in the NOMINATIVE (§ 173. a).

14. A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the GENITIVE (§ 213).

15. The Subjective Genitive is used with a noun to denote (1) the Author or Owner, (2) the Source or the Material, (3) the Quality (§ 214).

16. Words, denoting a Part are followed by the genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs (Partitive Genitive, § 216).

17. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the genitive of the object (Objective Genitive, § 217).

18. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites; verbals in -āx, and participles in -ns when used as adjectives, govern the Genitive (§ 218. a, b).

19. Verbs of remembering, forgetting, take the Genitive of the object when they are used of a continued state of mind, but the Accusative when used of a single act (§ 219).
20. Verbs of *accusing, condemning,* and *acquitting* take the Genitive of the Charge or Penalty (§ 220).

21. The Dative is used of the object indirectly affected by an action (*Indirect Object,* § 224).

22. Most verbs meaning to *favors, help, please, trust,* and their contraries; also, to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare,* take the Dative (§ 227).

23. Most verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae,* *pro, sub,* *super,* and some with *circum,* are followed by the Dative of the indirect object (§ 228).

24. Many verbs of *taking away,* and the like take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 229).

25. The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession (§ 231).

26. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests (§ 232).

27. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected (§ 233. a).

28. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness, nearness, service, inclination,* and their opposites (§ 234. a).

29. The Dative is often required, not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the sentence (*Dative of Reference,* § 235).

30. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 237).

31. A neuter verb often takes an accusative of kindred meaning (§ 238).

32. Verbs of *naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing,* and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object (§ 239. a).

33. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition (§ 239. b).

34. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two Accusatives, one of the *person,* and the other of the *thing* (§ 239. c).

35. The subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative (§ 173. 2).

36. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (§ 240. e).

37. The Vocative is the case of direct address (§ 241).

38. Words signifying *separation or privation* are followed by the Ablative, with or without a preposition (*Ablative of Separation,* § 243).

39. *Opus* and *úsus,* signifying *need,* are followed by the Ablative (§ 243. e).

40. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to denote the *source* from which anything is derived or the *material* of which it consists (§ 244).
41. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express cause (§ 245).
42. Dignus and indignus, contentus, laetus, praeditus, etc., take the Ablative (§ 245. a).
43. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is put in the Ablative with à or ab (§ 246).
44. The Comparative degree is followed by the Ablative (signifying THAN) (§ 247).
45. The Comparative may be followed by quam, than. When quam is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (§ 247. a).
46. The manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative, usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun (§ 248).
47. Accompaniment is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with cum (§ 248. a).
48. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action (§ 248. c. 1).
49. The deponents, ētor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative (§ 249).
50. With comparatives and words implying comparison the Ablative is used to denote the degree of difference (§ 250).
51. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with a modifier, usually an adjective or limiting genitive (§ 251).
52. The price of a thing is put in the Ablative (§ 252).
53. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done (§ 253).
54. A noun or a pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the Ablative, to define the time or circumstances of an action (Ablative Absolute).
An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the ablative absolute construction (§ 255 and a).
55. Time when, or within which, is put in the Ablative; time how long in the Accusative (§ 256).
56. The place from which is denoted by the Ablative with ab, dé, or ex; the place to which (the end of motion), by the Accusative with ad or in (§ 258. c).
The names of towns or small islands from which, as also domus and rūs, are put in the Ablative without a preposition (§ 258. a).
The names of towns or small islands to which, as also domus and rūs, are put in the Accusative without a preposition (§ 258. d).
57. The place where is denoted by the Ablative with the preposition in (Locative Ablative); but names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative Case (§ 258. c).
The Locative Case is also preserved in domi, bellī, militiae, humi, foris, rūfī, terrā marique (§ 258. d).
58. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with est and similar verbs (1) as the subject, (2) as in apposition with the subject, or (3) as a predicate nominative (§ 270).

59. The Infinitive, without a subject accusative, is used with verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning (Complementary Infinitive, § 271).

60. The Infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (Indirect Discourse, see § 272).

61. The Infinitive is often used in narrative for the Imperfect Indicative, and takes a subject in the Nominative (Historical Infinitive, § 275).

62. Sequence of Tenses. In complex sentences, a primary tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive; a secondary tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect (§ 286).

63. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time as present, past, or future with respect to the time of the verb on which they depend (§ 283).

64. Participles denote time as present, past, or future with respect to the time of the verb in their clause (§ 290).

65. The Gerund and the Gerundive are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns (§ 297).

For particulars see §§ 298-301.

66. The Former Supine (in -um) is used after verbs of motion to express Purpose (§ 302).

67. The Latter Supine (in -ū) is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns fās, nefās, and opus, and rarely with verbs, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted (§ 303).

68. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used to express an exhortation, a command, a concession, or a condition (§ 266).

69. The Subjunctive is used to express a wish. The present tense denotes the wish as possible, the imperfect as unaccomplished in present time, the pluperfect as unaccomplished in past time (Optative Subjunctive, § 267).

70. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or an impossibility of the thing being done (Deliberative Subjunctive, § 268).

71. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by nē with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive, (2) by nōli with the Infinitive, (3) by cave with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (§ 269. a).

72. The Potential Subjunctive is used to denote an action not as actually performed, but as possible (§ 311. a).

73. Dum, modo, dummodo, and tantum, introducing a Proviso, take the Subjunctive (§ 314).

74. Final clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by ut (utī), negative nē (ut nē), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb) (§ 317).
75. Consecutive clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut non), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb) (§ 319).

76. Dignus, indignus, aptus, and idoneus, take a clause of result with a relative (rarely with ut) (§ 320 f).

77. The Causal Particles quod, quia, and quoniam take the Indicative when the reason is given on the authority of the speaker or writer; the Subjunctive when the reason is given on the authority of another (§ 321).

78. Cum temporal, meaning when, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Subjunctive, other tenses in the Indicative (§ 325).

79. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive (§ 326).

For other concessive particles, see § 313.

80. In the Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive (§ 336 2).

81. In the Indirect Discourse a real question is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question in the Infinitive (§ 338).

82. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse (§ 339).

83. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker (Informal Indirect Discourse, § 341).

84. A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause (Attraction, § 342).

For Prepositions and their cases, see §§ 152, 153.

For Conditional Sentences, see § 304 ff. (Scheme in § 305.)

For ways of expressing Purpose, see § 318.
CHAPTER VI. — Order of Words.

NOTE. — Latin differs from English in having more freedom in the arrangement of words for the purpose of showing the relative importance of the ideas in a sentence.

343. As in other languages, the Subject tends to stand first, the Predicate last. Thus, —

Pausanias Lacedaemonius magnus homō sed varius in omni genere vitae fuit.

NOTE. — This happens because from the speaker’s ordinary point of view the subject of his discourse is the most important thing in it, as singled out from all other things to be spoken of.

There is in Latin, however, a special tendency to place the verb itself last of all after all its modifiers. But many writers purposely avoid the monotony of this arrangement by putting the verb last but one, followed by some single word of the predicate.

344. In connected discourse the word most prominent in the speaker’s mind comes first, and so on in order of prominence.

This relative prominence corresponds to that indicated in English by a graduated stress of voice (usually called emphasis).

NOTE. — This stress or emphasis, however, in English does not necessarily show any violent contrast to the rest of the words in the sentence, but is infinitely varied, constantly increasing and diminishing, and often so subtle as to be unnoticed except in careful study. So, as a general rule, the precedence of words in a Latin sentence is not mechanical, but corresponds to the prominence which a good speaker would mark by skilfully managed stress of voice. A Latin written sentence, therefore, has all the clearness and expression which could be given to a spoken discourse by the best actor in English.

REMARK. — Some exceptions to this rule will be treated later.

Thus the first chapter of Cæsar’s Gallic War rendered so as to bring out so far as possible the shades of emphasis, would run thus: —
Gaul, in the widest sense, is divided into three parts, which are inhabited (as follows): one by the Belgians, another by the Aquitani, the third by a people called in their own language Celts, in ours Gauls. These, in their language, institutions, and laws are all of them different. The Gauls (proper) are separated from the Aquitani by the river Garonne, from the Belgians by the Marne and Seine. Of these (tribes) the bravest of all are the Belgians, for the reason that they live farthest away from the civiliza-

---

1 Gaul: emphatic as the subject of discourse, as with a title or the like.
2 Divided: opposed to the false conception (implied in the use of omnis) that the country called Gallia by the Romans is one. This appears more clearly from the fact that Caesar later speaks of the Galli in the narrower sense as distinct from the other two tribes, who with them inhabit Gallia in the wider sense.
3 Parts: continuing the emphasis begun in divisa. Not three parts as opposed to any other number, but into parts at all.
4 Inhabited: emphatic as the next subject, "The inhabitants of these parts are, etc."
5 One: given more prominence than it otherwise would have on account of its close connection with quarrum.
6 Another, etc.: opposed to one.
7 Their own, ours: strongly opposed to each other.
8 These (tribes): the main subject of discourse again, collecting under one head the names previously mentioned.
9 Language, etc.: these are the most prominent ideas as giving the striking points which distinguish the tribes. The emphasis becomes natural in English if we say "these have a different language, different institutions, different laws."
10 All of them: the emphasis on all marks the distributive character of the adjective, as if it were "every one has its own, etc."
11 Gauls: emphatic as referring to the Gauls proper in distinction from the other tribes.
12 Separated: though this word contains an indispensable idea in the connection, yet it has a subordinate position. It is not emphatic in Latin, as is seen from the fact that it cannot be made emphatic in English. The sense is: The Gauls lie between the Aquitani on the one side, and the Belgae on the other.
13 Of these: the subject of discourse.
14 All: emphasizing the superlative idea in bravest; they, as Gauls, are assumed to be warlike, but the most of all of them are the Belgians.
15 Farthest away: one might expect absunt (are away) to have a more emphatic place, but it is weakened in importance by the predominance of the main idea, the effeminating influences from which the Belgae are said to be free. It is not that they live farthest off that is insisted on, but that the civilization of the province, etc., which would soften them, comes less in their way. It is to be noticed also that absunt has already been anticipated by the construction of culta and still more by longissimae, so that when it comes it amounts only to a formal part of the sentence. Thus because the civilization, etc., of the province (which would soften them) is farthest from them.
tion and refinement of the Province, and because they are least\(^{16}\) of all of them subject to the visits of traders,\(^ {17}\) and to the (consequent) importation of such things as\(^ {18}\) tend to soften\(^ {19}\) their warlike spirit; and are also nearest\(^ {20}\) to the Germans, who live across the Rhine\(^ {21}\) and with whom they are incessantly\(^ {22}\) at war. For the same reason the Helvetii, as well, are superior to all the other Gauls in valor, because they are engaged in almost daily battles with the Germans, either defending their own boundaries from them, or themselves making war on those of the Germans. Of all this country, one part, the one which as has been said the Gauls (proper) occupy, begins at the river Rhine. Its boundaries are the river Garonne, the ocean, and the confines of the Belgians. It even reaches on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians the river Rhine. Its general direction is towards the north. The Belgians begin at the extreme limits of Gaul; they reach (on this side) as far as the lower part of the Rhine. They spread to the northward and eastward.

**Aquitania** extends from the Garonne to the Pyrenees, and that part of the ocean that lies towards Spain. It runs off westward and northward.

\(^{16}\) **Least:** made emphatic here by a common Latin order,—the chiasmus (see f. p. 390).

\(^{17}\) **traders:** the fourth member of the chiasmus opposed to cultū and humanitāte.

\(^{18}\) **Such things as:** the importance of the nature of the importations overshadows the fact that they are imported, which fact is anticipated in "traders."

\(^{19}\) **Soften:** cf. what is said in note 15. They are brave because they have less to soften them, their native barbarity being assumed.

\(^{20}\) **Nearest:** the same idiomatic prominence as in 16, but varied by a special usage (see f. p. 390) combining chiasmus and anaphora.

\(^{21}\) **Across the Rhine:** i.e. and so are perfect savages.

\(^{22}\) **Incessantly:** the continuance of the warfare becomes the all-important idea, as if it were, "and not a day passes in which they are not at war with them."
§ 344. Special Rules of Order.

Remark.—The more important word is never placed last for emphasis. The apparent cases of this usage (when the emphasis is not misconceived) are cases where a word is added as an afterthought, either real or affected, and so has its position not in the sentence to which it is appended, but, as it were, in a new one.

a. In any phrase the determining and most significant word comes first: as,

1. Adjective and Noun: —
onnès hominès decent, every man ought (opposed to some who do not).
Lúcius Catilína nóbili genere nátus fuit mágni ví et animi et corporis sed
ingenió maló pravequé (Sall. Cat. 5), Lucius Catiline was born of a
noble family, with great force of mind and body, but with a nature
that was evil and depraved. [Here the adjectives in the first part are the
emphatic and important words, no antithesis between the nouns being as
yet thought of; but in the second branch the noun is meant to be opposed
to those before mentioned, and immediately takes the prominent place,
as is seen by the natural English emphasis, thus making a chiasmus.]

2. Word with modifying case: —
cui reí magis Epaminóndam, Thébánórum imperatórem, quam victóriæ
Thébánórum cónsulere decuit (Inv. i. 69), what should Epaminondas,
commander of the Thebans, have aimed at more than the victory of
the Thebans?
lacrimá nihil citius aréscit (id. i. 109), nothing dries quicker than a tear.
némó férè laudis cupidus (De Or. i. 14), hardly any one desirous of glory
(cf. Manil. 7, avidí laudis, eager for glory).

b. Numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, demonstrative, relative,
and interrogative pronouns and adverbs, tend to precede the word or
words to which they belong: as,

cum aliquá perturbátione (Of. i. 137), with some disturbance.
hóc únó præstámus (De Or. i. 32), in this one thing we excel.
cétéræ férè artés, the other arts.

Note.—This happens because such words are usually emphatic; but often the
words connected with them are more so, and in such cases the pronouns, etc.,
yield the emphatic place: as,

causa aliqua (De Or. i. 250), some case.
stílus ille tuus (id. i. 257), that style of yours (in an antithesis; see pas-
sage).
Rómam quae asportátæ sunt (Ver. iv. 121), what were carried to Rome (in
contrast to what remained at Syracuse).

c. When sum is used as the Substantive verb (§ 172, note), it regu-
larly stands first, or at any rate before its subject: as,

est víri mágni púnire sontēs (Off. i. 82), it is the duty of a great man to
punish the guilty.
d. The verb may come first, or have a prominent position either
(1) because the idea in it is emphatic: as,—

dicēbat idem Cotta (Off. ii. 59), Cotta used to say the same thing (opposed
to others’ boasting).

idem fēcit adulēscēns M. Antōnius (id. ii. 49), the same thing was done
by M. Antonius in his youth. [Opposed to dixi just before.]

facis benignē (Lēl.), you act kindly. [Cf. bēnignē facis, you are very
kind (you act kindly).]

(2) or because the predication of the whole statement is emphatic: as,

propensior benignitās esse dēbēbit in calamitōsōs nisi forte erunt digni
calamitāte (Off. ii. 62), unless perchance they really deserve their
misfortune.

praesertim cum scribat (Panaetius) (id. iii. 8), especially when he does
say (in his books). [Opposed to something omitted by him.]

(3) or the tense only may be emphatic: as,—

fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium (Æn. ii. 325), we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy
is now no more.

loquor autem dē commūnibus amīcitīs (Off. iii. 45), but I am speaking
now, etc.

e. Often the connection of two emphatic phrases is brought about
by giving the precedence to the most prominent part of each and leav-
ing the less prominent parts to follow in inconspicuous places: as,—

plurēs solent esse causae (Of. i. 28), there are usually several reasons.
quiōs āmisimūs civis ēōs Mārtǐs vis pērculīt (Marc. 17), what fellow-citizens
we have lost, have been stricken down by the violence of war.
māximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus (Marc. 33), we all render you the
warmest thanks.

haec rēs ānīus est propria Caesāris (Marc. i. 11), this exploit belongs to Caesar
alone.

obìurgātiones etiam nōnnumquam incidunt necessāriae (Of. i. 136), occa-
sions for rebuke also sometimes occur which are unavoidable.

f. Antithesis between two pairs of ideas is indicated either (1) by
placing the pairs in the same order (anaphora) or (2) in exactly the
opposite order (chiasmus 1).

(1) rērum cōpia verbōrum cōpiam gignit (De Orat. iii. 125), abundance of
matter produces copiousness of expression.

(2) legēs suppliciō improbōs afficiunt, dēfendunt āc tuentur bonōs (Fin. iii. 5),
the laws visit punishments upon the wicked, but the good they defend
and protect.

1 So-called from the Greek letter X (chi), on account of the criss-cross arrange-
ment. Thus \( \chi^a \).
§ 344.]

Special Rules of Order.

391

NOTE. — Chiasmus is very common in Latin, and seems in fact the more inartificial construction. In an artless narrative one might hear, "The women were all drowned, they saved the men."

nōn igitur ūtilītām amicitia sed ūtilītās amicitiam cōnsecūta est (Læl. 14), it is not then that friendship has followed upon advantage, but advantage upon friendship. [Here the chiasmus is only grammatical, the ideas being in the parallel order.] (See also in the example from Cæsar, p. 388: longissimē, minimē, proximī.)

g. A modifier of a phrase or some part of it is often embodied within the phrase (cf. a): as, —

dē communi hominum memoria (Tusc. i. 59), in regard to the universal memory of man.

h. A favorite order with the poets is the interlocked, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of the other (synchysis): as, —
et superiectō pavidae nātārunt aequore dāmae (Hor. Od. i. 2. 11).

NOTE. — This is often joined with chiasmus: as, —
arma nōndum expiātīs ūncta crusōribus (id. ii. i. 5).

i. Frequently unimportant words follow in the train of more emphatic ones with which they are grammatically connected, and so acquire a prominence out of proportion to their importance: as, —
dictitābat sē hortulōs aliqūōs emere velle (Offic. iii. 58), gave out that he wanted to buy some gardens. [Here aliqūōs is less emphatic than emere, but precedes it on account of the emphasis on hortulōs.]

j. The copula is generally felt to be of so little importance that it may come in anywhere where it sounds well; but usually under cover of more emphatic words: as, —
cōnsul ego quaeṣivī, cum vōs mihi essētis in cōnsiliō (Repub. iii. 28), as consul I held an investigation in which you attended me in council. falsum est id tōtum (id. ii. 28), that is all false.

k. Many expressions have acquired an invariable order: as, —
res pública; populus Rōmānus; honōris causā; pāce tanti virī.

NOTE. — These had, no doubt, originally an emphasis which required such an arrangement, but in the course of time have changed their shade of meaning. Thus, senātus populusque Rōmānus originally stated with emphasis the official bodies, but became fixed so as to be the only permissible form of expression.

l. The Romans had a fondness for emphasizing persons, so that a name or a pronoun often stands in an emphatic place: as, —
[dīxit] vēnālis quidem sē hortōs nōn habēre (Offic. iii. 58), [said] that he didn’t have any gardens for sale, to be sure.

m. Kindred words, as in figūra etymologica, often come together:

ita sēnsim sine sēnsū aetās sēnēscit (C. M. 38), thus gradually, without being perceived, man’s life grows old.
Syntax: Order of Words. [§§ 345, 346.]

Special Rules.

345. The following are special rules of arrangement:—

a. 1. Prepositions (except tenus and versus) regularly precede their nouns; 2. but a monosyllabic preposition is often placed between a noun and its adjective or limiting genitive: as,—

quem ad modum; quam ob rem; māgnō cum metū; omnibus cum copiis; nūlla in rē (cf. § 344. i):

b. Itaque regularly comes first in its sentence or clause; enim, autem, vérdō, quoque, never first, but usually second, sometimes third if the second word is emphatic; quidem never first, but after the emphatic word; nē ... quidem include the emphatic word or words.

c. Inquam, inquit, are always used parenthetically, following one or more words. So often crēdō, opīnor, and in poetry sometimes precor.

d. The negative precedes the word it especially affects; but if it belongs to no one word in particular, it generally precedes the verb; if it is especially emphatic, it begins the sentence. (See example, 344. f, note.)

e. In the arrangement of clauses, the Relative clause more often comes first in Latin, and usually contains the antecedent noun: as,—

quōs āmisimus cīvis, cōs Mārtis vis perculit (Marc. 17), those citizens whom we have lost, etc.

Structure of the Period.

NOTE.—Latin, unlike modern languages, expresses the relation of words to each other by inflection rather than by position. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence as a whole, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word.

An English sentence does not often exhibit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the earlier writers of English prose; but its effect is better seen in poetry, in such a passage as the following:—

"High on a throne of royal state, which far
Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
Satan exalted sat." — Paradise Lost, Book II. 1-5.

But in argument or narrative, the best English writers more commonly give short clear sentences, each distinct from the rest, and saying one thing by itself. In Latin, on the contrary, the story or argument is viewed as a whole; and the logical relation among all its parts is carefully indicated. Hence—

346. In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed:—

a. In general the main subject or object is put in the main clause not in a subordinate one (according to § 344): as,—
Hannibal cum recēnsuisset auxilia Gādēs profectus est, when Hannibals had reviewed, etc.
Volsci exiguam spem in armis, alīa undique abscissā, cum tentāssent, prae-
ter cētera adversa, locō quoque inīquō ad pūgnam congressi, inīquiōre
ad fugam, cum ab omī parte caederentur, ad precēs a certāmine versī
dēditō imperātōre trāditisque armis, sub iugummissī, cum singulis vesti-
mentīs, ignōminiae clādisque plēni dimittuntur (Liv. iv. 10). [Here
the main fact is the return of the Volsciians. But the striking circum-
stances of the surrender, etc., which in English would be detailed in
a number of brief independent sentences, are put in the several subordi-
nate clauses within the main clause, so that the passage gives a com-
plete picture in one sentence.]

b. Clauses are usually arranged in the order of prominence in the
mind of the speaker; so, usually, cause before result; purpose, man-
ner, and the like, before the act.

c. In co-ordinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently
omitted (asynedeton). In such cases the connection is made clear by
some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

d. A change of subject, when required, is marked by the introduc-
tion of a pronoun, if the new subject has already been mentioned. But
such change is often purposely avoided by a change in structure,— the
less important being merged in the more important by the aid of parti-
ciples or of subordinate phrases: as, —

quem ut barbarī incendium essūgisse vidērunt, telīs ēminus ēmissīs inter-
fecērunt, when the barbarians saw that he had escaped, THEY threw
darts at HIM and killed HIM.

celerīte cōnfectō negotīō, in hiberna legiōnēs revertērunt, the matter was
soon finished, AND the legions, etc.

e. So the repetition of a noun, or the substitution of a pronoun for
it, is avoided unless a different case is required: as, —
dolōrem si nōn poterō frangere occultābō, if I cannot conquer the pain, I
will hide it. [Cf. if I cannot conquer I will hide the pain.]

f. The Romans were careful to close a period with an agreeable
succession of long and short syllables. Thus,—

quod scis nihil prōdest, quod necis multum obstē (Or. 166), what you know
is of no use, what you do not know does great harm.
PART THIRD.—PROSODY (RULES OF VERSE).

CHAPTER I.—Quantity.

NOTE.—The poetry of the Indo-European people seems originally to have been somewhat like our own, depending on accent for its metre and disregarding the natural quantity of syllables. The Greeks, however, developed a form of poetry which, like music, pays close attention to the natural quantity of syllables; and the Romans borrowed their metrical forms in classical times from the Greeks. Hence Latin poetry does not depend, like ours, upon accent and rhyme; but is measured, like musical strains, by the length of syllables. Especially does it differ from our verse in not regarding the prose accent of the words, but substituting for that an entirely different system of metrical accent or ictus (see § 358. a). This depends upon the character of the measure used, falling regularly on certain long syllables. Each syllable is counted as either long or short in Quantity; and a long syllable is generally reckoned equal in length to two short ones (for exceptions, see § 355. c-e).

The quantity of radical or stem-syllables— as of short a in pāter or of long a in māter— can be learned only by observation and practice, unless determined by the general rules of quantity. Most of the rules of Prosody are only arbitrary rules devised to assist the memory; the syllables being long or short because the ancients pronounced them so. The actual practice of the Romans in regard to the quantity of syllables is ascertained chiefly from the usage of the poets; but the ancient grammarians give some assistance, and in some inscriptions the long vowels are distinguished in various ways,—by marks over the letters, for instance, or by doubling.

Since Roman poets borrowed very largely from the poetry and mythology of the Greeks, numerous Greek words, especially proper names, make an important part of Latin poetry. These words are generally employed in accordance with the Greek, and not the Latin, laws of quantity. Where these laws vary in any important point, the variations will be noticed in the rules below.


347. The following are General Rules of Quantity (cf. § 18):—

a. Vowel. A vowel before another vowel or h is short: as, viā, trāhō.

1 The terms long and short, when used of Latin sounds, apply to their quantity; when used of English sounds, to their quality.
§ 347. General Rules of Quantity. 395

Exceptions. 1. In the genitive form -ius, I is long; except usually in alterius. Thus, utris, nullius. It is, however, sometimes made short in verse (§ 83. b).

2. In the genitive and dative singular of the fifth declension, e is long between two vowels: as, diē; but it is short in fideī, reī, spoī.

Note. — It was once long in these also: as, pēnum fidēi (Ennius, at end of hexameter).

A is also long before i in the old genitive of the first declension: as, aulāi.

3. In the conjugation of fō, I is long except when followed by er. Thus, fō, fēbam, fiam, but fierī, fierem; so also fit, by § 354. a. 3.

4. In many Greek words the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and retains its original long quantity: as, Trōes (Trōes), Thalia (Thalia), hērōas (ἡρώας), aēr (ἁήρ).

Note. — But many Greek words are more or less Latinized in this respect: as, Acadēmia, chorēa, Malēa, platēa.

5. In cēhe and dius, and sometimes in Dīna and ōhe the first vowel is long.

b. Diphthong. A Diphthong is long: as, fōedus, cui, deinōde.

Exception. The preposition prae in compounds is generally shortened before a vowel: as, prae-ūstīs (Ān. vii. 524), prae-eunte (id. v. 186).

Note. — U following q, s, or g, does not make a diphthong with a following vowel (see § 4. n. 3).

c. Contraction. A vowel formed by contraction (crasis) is long: as, nil, from nihil; currūs, genitive for curruius.

But often two syllables are united by Synaeresis without contraction: as when pārētēbus is pronounced parētēbus.

d. Position. A vowel, though short, followed by two consonants or a double consonant, makes a long syllable: as, adventus, cortex.

But if the two consonants are a mute followed by I or r the syllable may be either long or short (common): as, alacris or alācris; patris or pātris.

Note 1. — Any vowel before I consonant makes a long syllable (except in blugis, quadriugis).

But it is probable that in all such cases the vowel was long by nature. So also reicīō, etc. (from re-icīō), cf. note 2.

Note 2. — The compounds of iacīō, though written with one I, commonly retain the long vowel of the prepositions with which they are compounded, as if before a consonant, and lengthen the short as if by Position. (But how the syllables were pronounced is uncertain.) Thus,—

obiscis hostī (at the end of a hexameter, Ān. iv. 549).

inīcit et saltū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Ān. ix. 552).

prōice tēla manū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Ān. vi. 836).
Prosody: Quantity.

The later poets sometimes shorten the preposition in trisyllabic forms, and the prepositions ending in a vowel are sometimes contracted as if the verb began with a vowel. Thus:

(1) turpe pu|tās ābī|cī (Ov. Pont. ii. 3, 37).
   cūr an|nōs ābī|cīs (Claud. Cons. Hon. iv. 364).
(2) rē|cē cā|pellās (Ecl. iii. 96, at end).

Remark.—The y or w sound resulting from synaeresis has the effect of a consonant in making position: as, ab|jetīs (abyetīs), flu|vīrūm (fluvyīrūm). Conversely, when the semivowel becomes a vowel, position is lost: as, sil|luae, for sil|vae.

e. In early Latin, s at the end of words was not sounded, and hence does not make position with another consonant.

Remark.—A syllable made long by the rule in d, but containing a short vowel, is said to be long by Position: as in docē|tēs. The rules of Position do not, in general, apply to final vowels.

2. Final Syllables.

348. The Quantity of Final Syllables is determined by the following Rules:

1. Words of one syllable ending in a vowel are long: as, mē, tū, hī, nē.

   The attached particles -nē, -quē, -vē, -cē, -ptē, and rē (rēd-) are short; sē- is long. Thus, sē|cē|dit, exercitum|quē rē|dūcit. But re- is often long in rēl|giō (rēl|giō), rē|tulī (rēttulī), rēpulī (reppulī).

2. Nouns and adjectives of one syllable are long: as, sōl, ōs (ōris), bōs, pār, vīs.

   Exceptions. cōr (sometimes long), fēl, lāc, mēl, ōs (ossis), vīr, tōt, quōt.

3. Most monosyllabic Particles are short: as, ān, īn, cīs, nēc. But āc, crās, cūr, ēn, nōn, quīn, sīn — with adverbs in c: as, hīc, hūc, sīc — are long.

4. Final a in words declined by cases is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension; in all other words final a is long. Thus, eā stellā (nom.), cum eā stellā (abl.); frūstrā, vocā (imperat.), postēa, trīgintā.

   Exceptions. ūiā, itā, quiā, putā (sup|pose): and, in late use, trīgintā, etc.

5. Final e is short, as in nūbē, dūcitē, saepē. Except —
   1. In nouns of the fifth declension: as, fidē (also famē), hodīē (hoi diē), quařē (qua rē).
   2. In Greek neuters plural of the second declension: as, cētē.
   3. In adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, with others of like form: as, altē, miserē, apertē, saepissimē.

So ferē, fermē, probably of same origin.
4. In the imperative singular of the second conjugation: as, *vidē*.

**Exceptions.** To 3: *benē, malē, īnfernē, supernē*. To 4: sometimes, *cavē, habē, tacē, valē, vidē* (cf. § 375. b).

6. Final *i* is long: as in *turī, filī, audī*.

But it is common in *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi*; and short in *nisī, quasi, ouī* (when making two syllables), and in Greek vocatives, as *Alexī*.

7. Final *o* is common; but long in datives and ablatives, also, almost invariably, in verbs, and in nouns of the third declension.

**Exceptions.** *citō, modō, ēlicō, profectō, dummodō, immō, egō, duō, octō*.

8. Final *u* is long. Final *y* is short.

9. Final *as, ea, os* are long; final *is, us, ys* are short; as, *nefās, rūpēs, servōs* (acc.), *honōs; hostīs, amicūs, Tethyś*.

**Exceptions.** as is short in Greek plural accusatives, as *lampadās*; and in *anās*.

*es* is short in nouns of the third declension (lingual) having a short vowel in the stem: as, *mīlēs (-ītis), obsēs (-īdis),* — except *abiēs, ariēs, pariēs, pēs*; in the present of *esse* (*ēs, adēs*); in the preposition *penēs*, and in the plural of Greek nouns, as *hērōēs, lampadēs*.

*os* is short in *compōs, impōs*; in the Greek nominative ending, as *barbitōs*; also, in the old nominative ending of the second declension, as *servōs* (later *servus*).

*is* in plural cases is long, as in *bonīs, nōbīs, vōbīs, omnīs* (accusative plural).

*is* is long in *fīs, sīs, vīs* (with *quīvīs*, etc.), *velīs, mālīs, nōlīs*; in the second person singular of the fourth conjugation, as *audīs* (where it is the stem-vowel); and sometimes in the forms in *-eris* (perfect subjunctive), where it was originally long.

*us* is long (by contraction) in the genitive singular and nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension; and in nouns of the third declension having *ū* (long) in the stem: as, *virtūs (-ūtis), incūs (-ūdis)*. But *pecūs, -ūdis*.

10. Of other final syllables, those ending in a consonant, except *-c*, are short. Thus, *amāt, amātūr*; but, *istīc, ālēc*.

**Exceptions.** *dōnēc, fāc, nēc*, sometimes *hīc*; *āēr, aethēr, crātēr, liēn, splēn*.

---

1 The quantity of the stem-vowel may be seen in the genitive singular.
3. Penultimate Syllables.

349. A noun or adjective is said to *increase*, when in any case it has more syllables than in the nominative singular.

A verb is said to increase, when in any part it has more syllables than in the stem. Thus, *amā-tīs* (stem, *amā-*), *tegi-tīs* (stem, *tege-*), *capī-unt* (stem, *capī-*).

In such words as *stellārum*, *corpōris*, *amātīs*, *tegītīs*, the penultimate syllable is called the *increment*.¹ In *itīnērībus*, *amāvēritīs*, the syllables marked are called the first, second, and third increments of the noun or verb.

**Note.**—In such words as *Iūpītīr*, *Īōvis*; *senex*, *sēnis*, the syllables whose vowel-quantity is marked are called increments. These forms must be referred to lost nominatives from the same stems (cf. §§ 60, 61, foot-note). So *itīnērībus* has really only two increments as from *titīnus*.

350. In increments of Nouns and Adjectives, *a* and *o* are generally *long*; *e*, *i*, *u*, *y*, generally *short*: as,—

*aetās*, *aetātīs*; *honor*, *honōris*; *servos*, *servōrum*; *opus*, *opēris*; *carmen*, *carmīnis*; *murmur*, *murmūris*; *pecūnias*, *pecūcis*; *chlamys*, *chlamydis*. Exceptions are:—

*a*: short in *baccar* (-āris), *hēpar* (-ātis), *iubar* (-āris), *lār* (-lāris), *mās* (-māris), *nectar* (-āris), *pār* (-pāris), *sāl* (-sālis), *vas* (-vādis), *daps* (-dāpis), *fax* (-fācis), *anthrax* (-ācis).

*o*: short in neuters of the third declension (except *ōs*, *ōris*): as, *corpus* (-ōris); also in *arbor* (-ōris); *scrobs* (scrōbis), *ops* (-ōpis), *bōs* (bōvis), *memor* (-ōris), *Iūpīter* (Īōvis), *Hector* (-ōris), and compounds of -pūs (as, *tripūs*, -pōdis).

*e*: long in increments of fifth declension: as, *diēs*, *diēf*; also in *hērēs* (-ēdis), *lēx* (-lēgis), *locuplēs* (-ētis), *mercēs* (-ēdis), *plēbs* (plēbis), *quiēs* (-ētis), *rēx* (rēgis), *vēr* (vēris), *crātēr* (-ēris). But see § 347. 2.

*i*: long in most nouns and adjectives in *ix*: as, *fēlicis*, *rādīcis* (except *fīlix*, *nīx*, *strīx*); also in *dīs* (dītīs), *glīs* (glīris), *līs* (lītīs), *vīs* (vīrēs), *Quīrītes*, *Samnītēs*.

*u*: long in forms from nouns in -ūs: as, *palūs*, *palūdis*; *tellūs*, *tellūris*; *virtūs*, *virtūtīs*; also in *lūx*, *lūcis*; [frūx], *frūgis*; *für*, *füris*.

¹ The rules of Increment are purely arbitrary, as the syllables are long or short according to the proper quantity of the Stem or of the formative terminations. The quantity of noun-stems appears in the schedule of the third declension (see § 67); and the quantity of inflection-endings is seen under the various inflections, where it is better to learn it. For quantities of Greek stems, see § 63.
351. In the increment of Verbs the characteristic vowels are as follows:

1. In the first conjugation ā: as, amāre, amātur.
2. In the second conjugation ē: as, monēre, monētur.
3. In the third conjugation ō, ō: as, tegēre, tegētur.
4. In the fourth conjugation ī: as, audīre, audītur.

Exception. ēō and its compounds have ā: as, dāre, circumdābat.

a. In other verbal increments (not stem-vowels)—
a is always long: as, moneāris, tegāmus.
ē is long: as, tegēbam, audiēbar.

Note.—But ē is short before -ram, -rim, -rō; in the future personal endings -bēris, -bēre; and sometimes in the perfect -ērunt (as stētēruntque comae, Ēn. ii. 774).

ī is long in forms which follow the analogy of the fourth conjugation: as, petīvī, laccētūs (in others short: as, monītus); also in the subjunctive present of esse and velle (sīmus, velīmus); and (rarely) in the endings -rimus, -ritis. It is short in the future forms amābitis, etc.

ō is found only in imperatives, and is always long: as, monētō, etc.
ū is short in sūmus, volūmus, quāesūmus; in the Supine and its derivatives it is long: as, solūtūrōs.

b. Perfects and Supines of two syllables lengthen the first syllable: as, iūvī, iūtum (iūvō), vīdī, vīsūm (vīdeo); fūgī (fūgiō).

Exceptions. bibī, dēdī, fīdī, scīdī, stētī, stītī, tūlī; — cītum, dātum, ītum, lītum, qūtum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum, stātum.

In some compounds of stō, stātum is found (long), as prōstātum.

c. In reduplicated perfects the vowel of the reduplication is short; the following syllable is, also, usually short: as, cēcīdī (cādō), dīdīcī (discō), pūpūgī (pungō), cūcurrī (currō), tētendī (tendō), mōmordī (mordeō). But cēcīdī from caedō, pepēdī from pēdō.

352. The following terminations are preceded by a long vowel.

1. -āl, -ar: as, vectīgal, pulvīnar.

Exceptions. animāl, cāpītal, iūbar.

2. -brum, -rum, -trum: as, lāvācrum, dēlābrum, vērātrum.

3. -dō, -ga, -gō: as, formīdō, aurīga, imāgō.

Exceptions. cādō, dīvīdō, ēdō, mōdō, sōlīdō, spādō, trēpīdō; calīga, fūga, tōga, plāga; āgō, tēgō, nēgō, rēgō, harpāgō, ligō, lēgō. So ēgō.

4. -le, -les (-lēs), -lis: as, ancīle, mīles, crūdēlis, hostīlis.
Exceptions. mālē; indōlēs, sūbolēs; grācilis, hūmilis, sīmilis, stērīlis; and verbal adjectives in -īlis: as, dōcilis, fācilis, terrībilis, āmābilis.

5. -ma, -men, -mentum: as, poēma, flūmen, iūmentum.
Exceptions. ānīma, lacrīma, victīma; tāmen, colūmen; with règīmen and the like from verb-stems in e-.

6. -mus, -nus, -rus, -sus, -tus, -neus, -rius: as, extrēmus, sūpīnus, octōnī, sēvērus, fūmōsus, pērītus, sēnārius, extrāneus.
Exceptions. (a.) ī before -mus: as, finītīmus, mārītīmus (except bīmus, trīmus, quadrīmus, opīmus, mīmus, līmus); and in superlatives (except īmus, prīmus): also, dōmus, hūmus, nēmus, càlāmus, thālāmus.
(b.) ī before -nus: as in crāstīnus, fraxīnus, etc. (except dīvinus, mātūtīnus, vespertīnus, répentīnus); ācīnus, āsīnus, cōmīnus, cōphīnus, ēmīnus, dōmīnus, fācīnus, fraxīnus, prōtīnus, termīnus, vāticīnus; also, manus, òceānus, plātānus; gēnus, Vēnus. So ē in bōnus, ònus, sōnus, tōnus.
(c.) ē before -rus (-ra, -rum): as, mērus, hēdēra (except prōcērus, sincērus, sēvērus). In like manner, barbārus, chōrus, nūrus, pīrus; sātīra, amphīora, ancōra, līra, ṣyra, purpūra; fōrum, suppārum, gārum, pārum.
(d.) lātus, mētus, vētus, anhēlitus, dīgitus, servītus, spīritus; quōtus, tōtus; arbūtus, hābītus, and the like.

7. -na, -ne, -nis: as, carīna, māne, inānis.
Exceptions. advēna, angīna, dōmīna, fēmīna, māchīna, mīna, gēna, pāgīna, pātīna, sarcoīna, trūtīna, and compounds with -gena; bēne, sīne; cànis, cīnis, iūvēnis.

8. -re, -ris, -ta, -tis: as, altāre, sālūtāris, mōnēta, immītis.
Exceptions. māre, hilāris, rōta, nōta, sātis, sītis, pōtis, and most nouns in -īta.

9. -tim, -tum, and syllables beginning with v: as, prīvātim, quercētum, olīva.
Exceptions. affātim, stātim; nīvis (nīx); brēvis, grāvis, lēvis (light); nōvus, nōvem; and several verb roots (as, iūvō, fāveō); also, ōvis, bōvis, lōvis.

Exceptions. càlēx, sīlēx, rūmex.

353. The following terminations are preceded by a short vowel: —
1. **-cus, -dus, -lus:** as, rústicus, cálidus, gládiòlus.

   **Exceptions.** òpácus, ãmícus; antícus, aprícus, fícus, mendí-
   cus, postícus, púdícus; fídus, nídus, sídus; and ù before -dus:
   as, crúdus, núdus; ò before -lus, as phásélus (except gélus, scélus);
   àslus; lúcus.

2. **-nò, -nor, -rò, -ror,** in verbs: as, destínò, críminor, gérò, quèror.

   **Exceptions.** dívinò, festínò, pròpínò, ságínò, òpínor, inclínò;
   dèclárò, spérò, spírò, òrò, dárò, mìrò.

3. **-ba, -bò, -pa, -pò:** as, fàba, bìbò, lùpa, crèpò.

   **Exceptions.** gèba, scríba; bùbò, nùbò, scrìbò; pàpa, pùpa,
   rìpa, scòpa, stùpa; càpò, rèpò, stìpò.

4. **-tás** (in nouns), -ter and -tus (in adverbs): as, cívítás, fortí-
   ter, pénítus.

5. **-culus, -cellus, -lentus, -tùdò:** as, fascículus, ócellus, lúcú-
   lentus, mágítúdò.

### 354. Rules for the quantity of Derivatives are:

**a.** Forms from the same Stem have the same quantity: as, ãmò,
   ãmávístì; gènus, gènéris.

   **Exceptions.** 1. bòs, lár, màs, pár, pès, sál, vás — also arbòs
   — have a long vowel in the nominative, though the stem-vowel is short
   (cf. genitive bòvis, etc.).

2. Nouns in -or, genitive -òris, have the vowel shortened before the
   final r: as, honòr. (But this shortening is comparatively late, so that
   in Plautus and inscriptions these nominatives are often found long.)

3. Many verb-forms with vowel originally long shorten it before final -r
   or -t: as, amèr, dìcerèr, amèt (compare amèmus), dìcerèt, audìt, fit.

   **Note.** — The final syllable in -t of the perfect seems to have been originally
   long, but to have been shortened under this rule.

4. A few long stem-syllables are shortened, apparently under the
   influence of accent: as, ãcer, ãcerbus. So dè-ièrò and pè-ièrò, weak-
   ened from ìfrò.

**b.** Forms from the same Root often show inherited variations of
   quantity (see § 10): as, dìcò (cf. maledícus), dúcò (dùcis), fídò
   (perfidus), vócìs (vòcò), lègis (lègò).

**c.** Compounds retain the quantity of the words which compose
   them: as, oc-cídò (càdò), oc-cìdò (caedò), in-iquus (aequus).

**d.** Greek words compounded with πró have ò short: as, pròphèta,
   pròlògus. Some Latin compounds of prò have ò short: as, pròficis-
   cor, pròfiteor. Compounds with nè vary: as, nèfás, nègò, nèqueò,
   nèquis, nèquam.
CHAPTER II. — Rhythm.

NOTE. — The essence of Rhythm in poetry is the regular recurrence of syllables pronounced with more stress than those intervening. To produce this effect in its perfection, precisely equal times should occur between the recurrences of the stress. But, in the application of rhythm to words, the exactness of these intervals is sacrificed somewhat to the necessary length of the words; and, on the other hand, the words are forced somewhat in their pronunciation, to produce more nearly the proper intervals of time. In different languages these adaptations take place in different degrees; one language disregarding more the intervals of time, another the pronunciation of the words.

The Greek language early developed a very strict rhythmical form of poetry, in which the intervals of time were all-important. The earliest Latin, on the other hand,—as in the Saturnian and Fescennine verse,—was not so restricted. But the purely metrical forms were afterwards adopted from the Greek, and supplanted the native forms of verse. Thus the Latin poetry with which we have to do follows for the most part Greek rules, which require the formal division of words (like music) into measures of equal times, technically called Feet. The strict rhythm was doubtless more closely followed in poetry that was sung than in that which was declaimed or intoned. In neither language, however, is the time perfectly preserved, even in single measures; and there are some cases in which the regularity of the time between the iactes is disturbed.

The Greeks and Romans distinguished syllables of two kinds in regard to the time required for their pronunciation, a long syllable having twice the metrical value of a short one. But it must not be supposed that all long syllables were of equal length, or even that in a given passage each long had just twice the length of the contiguous shorts. The ratio was only approximate at best, though necessarily more exact in singing than in recitation. Nor are longs and shorts the only forms of syllables that are found. In some cases a long syllable was protracted, so as to have the time of three or even of four shorts, and often one long or two shorts were pronounced in less than their proper time, though doubtless always distinguishable in time from one short (see § 355. c, d). Sometimes a syllable naturally short seems to have been slightly prolonged, so as to represent a long, though in most (not all) cases the apparent irregularity can be otherwise explained. In a few cases, also, a pause takes the place of one or more syllables to fill out the required length of the measure. This could, of course, take place only at the end of a word: hence the importance of Caesura and Diacesis in prosody (see § 358).

1. Measures.

355. Rhythm consists of the division of musical sound into measures or feet.

The most natural division of musical time is into measures consisting of either two or three equal parts. But the ancients also distinguished measures of five equal parts.
REMARK.—The divisions of musical time are marked by a stress of voice on one or the other part of the measure. This stress is called the ictus (beat), or metrical accent (see § 358).

a. The unit of length in Prosody is one short syllable. This is called a MORA. It is represented by the sign  \( \sim \), or in musical notation by the quaver (\(^\ddot{\text{\textbullet}}\)).

b. A long syllable is regularly equal to two morae, and is represented by the sign  \( \underline{\sim} \), or by the crotchet (\(^\ddot{\text{\textbullet}}\)).

c. A long syllable may be protracted, so as to occupy the time of three or four morae. Such a syllable, if equal to three morae, is represented by the sign  \( \underline{\underline{\sim}} \) (or \( \underline{\ddot{\text{\textbullet}}} \)); if equal to four, by  \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\sim}}} \) (or \( \underline{\underline{\ddot{\text{\textbullet}}} \)).

d. A long syllable may be contracted, so as to take practically the time of a short one. Such a syllable is sometimes represented by the sign  \( \underline{\text{\textbullet}} \).

e. A short syllable may be contracted so as to occupy less than one mora.

f. A pause sometimes occurs at the end of a verse or a series of verses, to fill up the time. A pause of one mora in a measure is indicated by the sign  \( \Lambda \); one of two morae by the sign  \( \Lambda \).

g. One or more syllables are sometimes placed before the proper beginning of the measure. Such syllables are called an Anacrûsis or prelude.\(^1\)

The anacrusis is regularly equal to the unaccented part of the measure.

356. The measures most frequently employed in Latin verse, together with their musical notation, are the following:—

a. **Triple or Unequal Measures (§).**\(^2\)

1. TROCHEE \( (\sim \underline{\sim} = \underline{\ddot{\text{\textbullet}}} \) : as, rēgis.

2. IAMBUS \( (\underline{\sim} \sim = \ddot{\text{\textbullet}} \) : as, dūcēs.

3. TRIBRACH\(^3\) \( (\sim \underline{\sim} \sim = \underbrace{\ddot{\text{\textbullet}}}_{3}\) : as, hōmēnīs.

---

\(^1\) The same thing occurs in modern poetry, and in modern music any unaccented syllables at the beginning are treated as an anacrusis, i.e. they make an incomplete measure before the first bar. This was not the case in ancient music. The ancients seem to have treated any unaccented syllable at the beginning as belonging to the following accented ones, so as to make with them a foot or measure. Thus it would seem that the original form of Indo-European poetry was iambic in its structure, or at least accented the second syllable rather than the first.

\(^2\) Called diplasic, the two parts (Thesis and Arsis) being in the ratio of 2 to 1.

\(^3\) Not found as a fundamental foot, but only as the resolution of a Trochee or Iambus.
Prosody: Rhythm.

§ 356.

\(b\). Double or Equal Measures (\(\frac{2}{2}\)).

1. Dactyl \(\left\langle \circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, comunitàs.

2. Anapæst \(\circ \circ \left\langle = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, mōnitōs.

3. Spondee \(\left\langle \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, rēgēs.

c. Six-timed Measures (\(\frac{3}{3}\)).

1. Ionic à māiōre \(\left\langle \circ \circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, confecerat.

2. Ionic à minōre \(\circ \circ \left\langle \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, rētūliissent.

3. Choriambus \(\left\langle \circ \circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, contulērant.

d. Quinary or Hemiolic\(^1\) Measures (\(\frac{5}{5}\)).

1. Cretic \(\left\langle \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \right\rangle\): as, comunitàs.

2. Paeon primus \(\circ \circ \circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \): as, comunitàbus.

3. Paeon quartus \(\circ \circ \circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \): as, ģtēnēt.

4. Bacchius \(\circ \circ \circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \): as, ėmiōs.

e. Several compound measures are mentioned by the grammarians, viz., Antibacchius \(\text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \circ\), Proceleusmatic \(\circ \circ \circ\), the 2d and 3d Paeon, having a long syllable in the 2d and 3d places, with three short ones; 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th Epitritus, having a short syllable in the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th places, with three long ones. None of them, however, are needed to explain rhythmically all the forms of ancient verse.

f. Feet with these apparent quantities do not always occupy the same time in the measure, but may be contracted or prolonged to suit the series in which they occur. They are then called irrational, because the thesis and arsis do not have integral ratios. Such are:

- **Irrational Spondee:** \(\text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \rightarrow = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \): 

- **Cyclic Dactyl:** \(\circ \circ = \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \) (or nearly \(\text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \text{\footnotesize \text{\ding{122}}} \)).

---

\(^1\) Called *hemiolic*, the two parts being in the ratio of 1 to \(\frac{1}{4}\), or of 3 to 2.
Cyclic Anapaest: = the same reversed.

Irrational Trochee: \( \_ > = \downarrow \downarrow \).

Note.—Of feet and combinations of feet (sometimes extending to an entire verse, and controlled by a single leading accent), the following are recognized, assuming \( \downarrow \) to be the unit of musical time:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccc}
3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 9 & 10 & 12 & 15 & 16 & 18 & 20 & 25 \\
8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8
\end{array}
\]

Narrative poetry was written for rhythmical recitation, or Chant, with instrumental accompaniment; and Lyrical poetry for rhythmical melody, or singing. It must be borne in mind that in ancient music—which in this differs widely from modern—the rhythm of the melody was identical with the rhythm of the text. The lyric poetry was to be sung; the poet was musician and composer, as well as author. To this day a poet is said conventionally to “sing.”

Thus a correct understanding of the rhythmical structure of the Verse gives us the exact time, though not the tune, to which it was actually sung. The exact time, however, as indicated by the succession of long and short syllables, was varied according to certain laws of so-called “Rhythmic,” as will be explained below. In reading ancient verse it is necessary to bear in mind not only the variations in the relative length of syllables, but the occasional pause necessary to fill out the measure; and to remember that the rhythmical accent is the only one of importance, though the words should be distinguished carefully, and the sense preserved. Do not scan, but read metrically.

357. In many cases measures of the same time may be substituted for each other, a long syllable taking the place of two short ones, or two short ones the place of one long one.

In the former case the measure is said to be contracted; in the latter, to be resolved. Thus:—

a. A Spondee (\( \_ \_ \)) may take the place of a dactyl (\( \_ \_ \) \_ \_) or an anapaest (\( \_ \_ \_ \) \_ \_ \_) and a Tribrach (\( \_ \_ \_ \) \_ \_ \_) may take the place of a Trochee (\( \_ \_ \) \_) or an Iambus (\( \_ \_ \) \_ \_ \_ \_). The optional substitution of one long syllable for two short ones is represented by the sign \( \infty \).

b. Another form of dactyl when substituted for a trochee is represented thus, \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \)

A spondee, similarly substituted for a trochee, is represented thus, \( \_ \_ \) >.

c. When a long syllable having the Ictus (§ 358. a) is resolved, the ictus properly belongs to both the resulting short syllables; but for convenience the mark of accent is placed on the first: as,—

\[\text{nunc expériar | sitne ácétō | tibi cór ácre ín | pécctore.} — \text{Bacch. 405.}\]
2. The Musical Accent.

358. That part of the measure which receives the stress of voice (the musical accent) is called the Thesis; the unaccented part is called the Arsis.\(^1\)

\(a\). The stress of voice laid upon the Thesis is called the Ictus (beat). It is marked thus: \(\wedge \circ \circ\).

\(b\). The ending of a word within a measure is called Cæsura. When this coincides with a rhetorical pause, it is called the Cæsura of the verse, and is of main importance as affecting the melody or rhythm.

\(c\). The coincidence of the end of a word with that of a measure in Prosody is called Diæresis.

---

\(^1\) The Thesis signifies properly, the putting down (\(θέωτ\), from \(τίθεναι\)) of the foot in beating time, in the march or dance ("downward beat"), and the Arsis, the raising (\(ἀψω\), from \(ἀψω\)) of the foot ("upward beat"). By the Latin grammarians these terms were made to mean, respectively, the ending and beginning of a measure. By a misunderstanding which has prevailed till recently, since the time of Bentley, their true signification has been reversed. They will here be used in accordance with their ancient meaning, as has now become more common. This metrical accent, recurring at regular intervals of time, is what constitutes the essence of the rhythm of poetry as distinguished from prose, and should be constantly kept in mind.

The error mentioned arose from applying to trochaic and dactylic verse a definition which was true only of iambic or anapaestic.
Chapter III. — Versification.

1. The Verse.

359. A single line of poetry — that is, a series of measures set in a recognized order — is called a Verse.¹

Note. — Most of the common verses originally consisted of two series (hemi-stichs), but the joint between them is often obscured. It is marked in Iambic verse by the Diæresis, in Dactylic Hexameter by the Casura.

a. A verse lacking a syllable at the end is called Catalectic, that is, having a pause to fill the measure; when the end syllable is not lacking, the verse is called Acatalectic, and has no such pause.

b. To divide the verse into its appropriate measures, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called scanning or scansion (scânsiō, from scandō, a climbing or advance by steps).

Remark. — In reading verse rhythmically, care should be taken to preserve the measure or time of the syllables, but at the same time not to destroy or confuse the words themselves, as is often done in scanning.

c. In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word (unless an interjection) is partially suppressed when the next word begins with a vowel or with h. This is called Elision (bruising).²

In reading it is usual entirely to suppress elided syllables. Strictly, however, they should be sounded lightly.

Remark. — Elision is sometimes called by the Greek name Synaloepha (smearing).

Rarely a syllable is elided at the end of a verse when the next verse begins with a vowel: this is called Synapheia (binding).

¹ The word Verse (versus) signifies a turning back, i.e. to begin again in like manner, as opposed to Prose (prōrsus or prōversus), which means straight ahead.

² The practice of Elision is followed in Italian and French poetry, and is sometimes adopted in English, particularly in the older poets: as, —

T' inveigle and invite th' unwary sense. — Comus, 538.

In early Latin poetry a final syllable ending in s often loses this letter even before a consonant (cf. § 13. b): as, —

seniō cōnfectu' quiēscit. — Ennius (C. M. 14).
d. A final -m, with the preceding vowel, is suppressed in like manner when the next word begins with a vowel or h:¹ this is called EcTHLlPSis (squeezing out): as,—
monstrum horrendum, informe, ingentis, cui lumen ademptum.
—Æn. iii. 653.

Final -m has a feeble nasal sound, so that its partial suppression before the initial vowel of the following word was easy.

Remark.—The monosyllables dō, dem, spē, spem, sim, stō, stem, quī (plural) are never elided; nor is an iambic word elided in dactylic verse. Elision is often evaded by skilful collocation of words.

e. Elision is sometimes omitted when a word ending in a vowel has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This omission is called HIATUS (gaping).

The final vowel is sometimes shortened in such cases.

f. A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause:² it is then said to be long by Diastolē: as,—
nostrōrum obruimur, — oriturque miserrima caedes.

g. The last syllable of any verse may be indifferently long or short (syllaba aniceps).

Forms of Verse.

360. A verse receives its name from its dominant or fundamental measure: as, Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic, Anapaestic; and from the number of measures (single or double) which it contains: as, Hexameter, Tetrameter, Trimeter, Dimeter.

Remark.—Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verses are measured not by single feet, but by pairs (dipodia), so that six Iambi make a Trimeter.

361. A Stanza, or Strophe, consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order.

Many stanzas are named after some eminent poet: as, Sapphic (from Sappho), Alcaic (from Alcæus), Archilochian (from Archilochus), Horatian (from Horace), and so on.

I. Dactylic Hexameter.

362. The Dactylic Hexameter, or Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus:—

¹ Hence a final syllable in -m is said to have no quantity of its own—its vowel, in any case, being either elided or else made long by Position.
² This usage is comparatively rare, most cases where it appears to be found being caused by the retention of an originally long quantity.
or in musical notation as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{} & 4 & 4 & 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\
&\text{a. For any one of the feet, except the fifth, a spondee may be substituted, and must be for the last.}
\end{align*}
\]

Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place; the verse is then called spondaic. Thus in Ecl. iv. 49 the verse ends with \textit{incrémentum}.

\textbf{Note.}—In reality the last foot is a trochee standing for a dactyl, but the final syllable is not measured, and the foot is usually said to be a spondee.

\textbf{b.} The hexameter has always one \textit{principal cæsura}—sometimes two—almost always accompanied by a pause in the sense.

The principal cæsura is usually \textit{after the thesis} (less commonly \textit{in the arsis}) of the third foot, dividing the verse into two parts in sense and rhythm.

It may also be \textit{after the thesis} (less commonly \textit{in the arsis}) of the fourth foot. In this case there is often another cæsura in the second foot, so that the verse is divided into three parts: as,

\[
\text{partē fē | rōx | ār | dēnsque | ōcū | lis | et | sībīlā | collā. } — \textit{Æn.} v. 277.
\]

\textbf{Remark.}—Often the only indication of the \textit{principal} among a number of cæsuras is the break in the sense.

A cæsura occurring after the first syllable of a foot is called \textit{masculine}. A cæsura occurring after the second syllable of a foot is called \textit{feminine} (as in the fifth foot of the 3d and 4th verses in \textit{c}). A cæsura may also be found in any foot of the verse, but a proper cæsural pause could hardly occur in the first or sixth.

When the fourth foot ends a word, the break (properly a diaeresis) is sometimes improperly called \textit{bucolic cæsura}, from its frequency in pastoral poetry.

\textbf{c.} The introductory verses of the \textit{Æneid}, divided according to the foregoing rules, will appear as follows. The \textit{principal cæsura} in each verse is marked by double lines:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{Armā vī \| rumquē cā\|nō \| Trō\|iae qui | primūs āb \| ōris} \\
&\text{Ītālī\|am sā\|tō prōtū\|gus \| Lā\|vinīaquē \| vēnīt} \\
&\text{lītōrā\| | multum \| ille \| et ter\|ris \| iac\|tātūs ēt \| altō} \\
&\text{vī sūpē\| rūm sae\|vae \| mēmō\|rem Įū\|nōnīs ōb \| īrām;} \\
&\text{multā quō\| quē et bel\|tō pas\|sus \| dum | condērēt | urbēm,} \\
&\text{infer\| retquē \|ē\|ōs Lātī\|ō, \| gēnūs \| undē Lā\|tīnum,} \\
&\text{Albā\| nīquē pā\|tēs, \| at\| quē \| altae | moenīā | Rōmæ.}
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{The feminine cæsura} is seen in the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{Dis gēnī\|tī pōtū\|cē: \| tē\|nent mēdi\|a omnīa | silvae. — \textit{Æn.} vi. 131.}
\end{align*}
\]

\textbf{Note.}—The Hexameter is thus illustrated in English verse:

"Over the sea, past Crete, on the Syrian shore to the southward, Dwells in the well-tilled lowland a dark-haired \textit{Æthiop} people, Skilful with needle and loom, and the arts of the dyer and carver, Skilful, but feeble of heart; for they know not the lords of Olympus,
Lovers of men; neither broad-browed Zeus, nor Pallas Athené, 
Teacher of wisdom to heroes, bestower of might in the battle; 
Share not the cunning of Hermes, nor list to the songs of Apollo, 
Fearing the stars of the sky, and the roll of the blue salt water."

— Kingsley's Andromeda

2. Elegiac Stanza.

363. The Elegiac Stanza consists of two lines,—an hexameter followed by a pentameter.¹

The Pentameter verse is the same as the hexameter, except that it omits the last half of the third foot and of the sixth foot. Thus,—

\[
\begin{align*}
\underline{\text{\textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless } \text{\textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} \\
\hline
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pentameter:} & \\
\hline
\end{align*}
\]

a. The Pentameter verse is thus to be scanned as two half-verses, the second of which always consists of two dactyls followed by a single syllable.

b. The Pentameter has no regular Caesura; but the first half-verse must always end with a word, which is followed by a pause to complete the measure.²

c. The following verses will illustrate the forms of the Elegiac Stanza:

\[
\begin{align*}
cum \text{ sibit} & \quad ill\text{us} \quad tr\text{is} \quad tissim\text{a} & \quad noc\text{tis} \quad i\text{mag} \\
qu\text{a} \quad mi\text{hi} & \quad supr\text{e} \quad mun \text{A} & \quad temp\text{us} \quad i\text{n} & \quad urb\text{e} \quad f\text{u} \quad i\text{t}, \\
cum \quad r\text{ep}\text{e} & \quad t\text{o} \quad noc\quad tem \quad qu\text{a} & \quad tot \quad mi\text{hi} & \quad c\text{a}r\text{a} \quad r\text{e} \quad l\text{iqui}, \\
l\text{abitur} & \quad ex \quad o\text{cui} \quad lis \quad \text{A} & \quad nunc \quad qu\text{o} \quad qu\text{e} & \quad gut\text{\textt{a}} \quad m\text{e} \quad is. \\
iam \quad pr\text{op}\text{e} & \quad l\text{ux} \quad \text{a} \text{d} \text{e} \quad r\text{at} & \quad qu\text{a} & \quad m\text{e} \quad d\text{is} \quad c\text{ed} \text{d} \text{r} \text{e} \text{r} \text{|} \text{C} \text{a} \text{s} \text{e} \text{a}r \text{|} \text{finib} \text{\textu{s}} & \quad \text{extr} \text{e} \text{|} \text{mae} \quad \text{A} \quad \text{u} \text{s} \text{\textt{\textt{e}}} \text{r} \text{\textt{a}} \text{t} \text{\textt{a}} & \quad \text{Aus} \text{\textt{\textt{\textt{e}}}n} \text{\textt{\textt{\textt{i}}} \text{ae}.}
\end{align*}
\]

—Ovid, Trist. i. 3.

NOTE.—The Elegiac Stanza differs widely in character from hexameter verse (of which it is a mere modification) by its division into Distichs, each of which must have its own sense complete. It is employed in a great variety of compositions,—epistolary, amatory, and mournful,—and was especially a favorite of the poet Ovid. It has been illustrated in English verse, imitated from the German:—

"In the Hexameter | rises the | fountain's | silvery | column;
In the Pentameter | aye | falling in | melody | back."

¹ Called *pentameter* by the old grammarians, who divided it, formally, into five feet (two dactyls or spondees, a spondee, and two anapæsts), as follows:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless}} \\
\hline
\end{align*}
\]

² The time of this pause, however, may be filled by the *protraction* of the preceding syllable, thus:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\underline{\text{\textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless \textless \textless \textless \textless \textless \textless \textless \textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} & \quad \underline{\text{\textless \textless}} \\
\hline
\end{align*}
\]
3. Other Dactylic Verses.

364. Other dactylic verses or half-verses are occasionally used by the lyric poets. Thus:

a. The Dactylic Tetrameter alternates with the hexameter, forming the Alcmanian Strophe, as follows:

\[ \text{O for tès pē|iōrāquē | passī,} \\
\text{mēcum | saepē vī|ri || nunc | vinō | pellītē | cūras;} \\
\text{crās in|gēns ītē|rābīmūs | aequor.} \]

— Hor. Od. i. 7 (so 28; Ep. 12).

Note.—This verse is a single measure, its time being represented by \( \frac{1}{6} \) (§ 356, note).

b. The Dactylic Penthemim (five half-feet) consists of half a pentameter verse. It is used in combination with the Hexameter to form the First Archilochian Strophe: as,

\[ \text{diffū|gērē nī|vēs || rēdē|unt iam | grāmīnā | campīs,} \\
\text{arbōrī|busquē cō|mae;} \\
\text{mūtat | terrā vī|cēs || et | dēcrēs|centū | ripās} \\
\text{flūmīnā | praetērē|unt.—Hor. Od. iv. 7.} \]

[For the Fourth Archilochian Strophe (Archilochian Heptameter, alternating with iambic trimeter catalectic), see § 372. 11.]

4. Iambic Trimeter.

365. The Iambic Trimeter is the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. It consists of three measures, each containing a double iambus (iambic dipody). Thus,

\[ \text{ɔ — ɔ — | ɔ — ɔ — | ɔ — ɔ —} \]

It is seen in the following:

\[ \text{iam iam effīcā|ci dō mānūs | scientiae} \\
\text{supplex ēt ō|rō rēgnā per | Prōserpinae,} \\
\text{pēr et Diā|nae nōn mōven|dā nūminā,} \\
\text{pēr atquē li|brōs carminum | vālentium} \\
\text{dēfīxā cae|lō dēvōcā|rē sidēra,} \\
\text{Canīdā| par|cē vōcībus | tandem sācris,} \\
\text{citumquē re|trō retrō sol|vē turbīnem.—Hor. Epod. 17.} \]

The last two lines may be thus translated, to show the movement in English:

"Oh! stay, Canidia, stay thy rights of sorcery,
Thy charm unbinding backward let thy swift wheel fly!"

a. The Iambic Trimeter is often used in lyric poetry, alternating with the Dimeter to form the Iambic Strophe, as follows:
In the Iambic Trimeter an irrational spondee (>) or its equivalent (a cyclic anapaest or an apparent dactyl > ∪ ∪ (∗§ 356.f)) may be regularly substituted for the first iambus of any dipody. A Tribrach (∪ ∪ ∪) may stand for an Iambus anywhere except in the last place.

In the comic poets any of these substitutions may be made in any foot except the last: as,—

ō lūcis al|mē rēctōr || et | caeli dēcūs!
quī alternā cur|rū spātiā || flam|mīfērā. ambiēns,
illāstrē lae|tīs || ēxsēris | terrīs cāpūt.


quid quaēris? an|nōs || sēxāgin|tā nātūs es.

—Terence, Heaut. 62,

hōmō sum: hūmā|nī || nīhīl ā mēē āliē|ēnum pūtō.
vel mē monē|re hōc || vēl percon|tāē pūtā.

—Heaut. 77, 78.

c. The Choliambic (lāme Iambic) substitutes a trochee for the last iambus: as,—

|| × _ ∪ _ | × _ ∪ _ | ∪ _ × _ _ _ _ ^ ||
aeque ēst bēā|tus āc pōē|mā cūm scribīt:
tam gāudēt in | sē, tāmquē sē īp|sē mīrātur.

—Catull. xxii. 15, 16.

d. The Iambic Trimeter Catalectic is represented as follows:—

|| × _ ∪ _ | × _ ∪ _ | × _ × _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ ||
It is used in combination with other measures (see § 372.11), and is shown in the following:—

Vulcānūs ār|dēns urit of|sicīnās.—Hor. Od. i. 4.

or in English:—

"On purple peaks a deeper shade descending.” —Scott.

Note.—The Iambic Trimeter may be regarded, metrically, as “a single foot” (its time being represented by †), consisting of three dipodies, and having its principal accent, probably, on the second syllable of the verse, though this is a matter of dispute. The spondee in this verse, being a substitute for an iambus, is irrational, and must be shortened to fit the measure of the iambus (represented by >_ ).
Other Iambic Measures.

5. Other Iambic Measures.

366. Other forms of Iambic verse are the following:

a. The Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic (Septemarius). This consists of seven iambic feet, with the same substitutions as in Iambic Trimeter. It is used in lively dialogue: as, —

nam idcfr q arces:ar, nupti as | quod m I adpáraìr sénsit.  
quibus quídem quam fáci ló pótìčrat | quíscí sì hic | quísset!

— Ter. Andria, 690, 691.

The rhythm of the Iambic Septenarius may be thus represented according to our musical notation (see p. 403, foot-note 1):

\[
\begin{align*}
\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \ |
\end{align*}
\]

Its movement is like the following: —

"In good king Chárlés's gólden dâys, when lóyaltý no hârm meant," etc.  
— Vicar of Bray.

b. The Iambic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octonarius). This consists of eight full iambic feet with the same substitutions as in Iambic Trimeter. It is also used in lively dialogue: as, —

hócinést húma \| núm fáct a aut in \| cept a? hócinest of \| fíciúm pátrís?  
quid flúd est? prö | děúm fídem, | quíd est, sì hóc nóñ con \| tûméliast?

— Andria, 236, 237.

c. The Iambic Dimeter. This may be either acatalectic or catalectic.

1. The Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic consists of four iambic feet. It is used in combination with some longer verse (see § 365. a).

2. The Iambic Dimeter Catalectic consists of three and a half iambic feet. It is used only in choruses: as, —

quónam crücn | tã Maéñas,  
praecéps ámò \| rë saévô,  
rápitûr quód im \| pótëntî  

6. Trochaic Verse.

367. The most common form of Trochaic verse is the Tetrameter catalectic (Septenarius), consisting of four dipodies, the last of which lacks a syllable. It is represented metrically thus, —
Prosody: Versification. [§§ 367, 368]

Il ø ø > | ø ø > || ø ø > | ø ø A

or in musical notation,

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c} \hline & & & & & \hline \end{array} \]

\( \text{ad ï adveniō, spēm, salūtem, } || cōnsiliōm aŭxiliōm expetēns. \)

—TER. ANDR. II. 18.

In English verse:

"Tell me not in mournful numbers life is but an empty dream."

—LONGFELLOW.

a. The spondee and its resolutions can be substituted only in the even places; except in comic poetry, which allows the substitution in any foot but the last: as, —

\( \text{fītōdēm habet peta} | sēm âc vesītum: } | \text{tām cōnsimilist } | \text{ātque ego.} \)

\( \text{sūra, pēs, sta} | \text{tāra, tōnsus, } | \text{őculī, nāsum, } | \text{vēl labra,} \)

\( \text{mālae, mentum, } | \text{bārba, collus; } | \text{tōtus! quid ver|bīs opust?} \)

\( \text{sī tergum ci|cātrīcōsum, } | \text{niēhīl hōc similist } | \text{similīus.} \)

—PLAUT. AMPHITR. 443-446.

b. Some other forms of trochaic verse are found in the lyric poets, in combination with other feet, either as whole lines or parts of lines: as, —

\( \text{nōn ebūr ne|quē aūreum. } | \text{[Dimeter Catalectic.]} \)

\( \text{meā renī|det ūn domō|la cānār. } | \text{[Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.]} \)

—HOR. OD. II. 18.


NOTE. — Different measures may be combined in the same verse in two different ways. Either (1) a series of one kind is simply joined to a series of another kind (compare the changes of rhythm not uncommon in modern music); or (2) single feet of other measures are combined with the prevailing measures, in which case these odd feet are adapted by changing their quantity so that they become irrational (see § 356, Note).

When enough measures of one kind occur to form a series, we may suppose a change of rhythm; when they are isolated, we must suppose adaptation. Of the indefinite number of possible combinations but few are found in Latin poetry.

368. The following verses, combining different rhythmical series, are found in Latin lyrical poetry: —

1. Greater Archilochian (Dactylic Tetrameter; Trochaic Tripody): —

\( \| _{∞} _{∞} | _{∞} _{∞} | _{∞} _{∞} | _{∞} _{∞} || _{∞} _{∞} | _{∞} _{∞} | _{∞} _{∞} > \|

\( \text{solvītūr } | \text{ācrīs hī} | \text{ems grā} | \text{tā vīcē } || \text{vēris } | \text{et Fa|vōnī. — HOR. OD. I. 4.} \)

NOTE. — It is possible that the dactylics were cyclic; but the change of measure seems more probable.
2. Verse consisting of Dactylic Trimeter catalectic (Dactylic Pentameter); Iambic Dimeter:

\[ \text{scribēre | versicū| lōs | àmōrē per | culsum iūvat.} \]

— id. Ep. 11.

8. Logaoedic Verse.

369. Trochaic verses containing in regular prescribed positions, irrational measures or irrational feet, are called Logaoedic. The principal logaoedic forms are:

1. Logaoedic Tetrapody (four feet): Glyconic.
2. Logaoedic Tripody (three feet): Pherecratic.
3. Logaoedic Dipody (two feet): this may be regarded as a short Pherecratic.

Note.—Irrational measures are those in which the syllables do not correspond strictly to the normal ratio of length (see § 355). Such are the Irrational Spondee and the Cyclic Dactyl. This mixture of various ratios of length gives an effect approaching that of prose; hence the name Logaoedic (Ἄγος, ᾿αὐθ). These measures originated in the Greek lyric poetry, and were adopted by the Romans. All the Roman lyric metres not belonging to the regular iambic, trochaic, dactylic, or Ionic systems, were constructed on the basis of the three forms given above: viz., Logaoedic systems consisting respectively of four, three, and two feet. The so-called Logaoedic Pentapody consists of five feet, but is to be regarded as composed of two of the others.

370. Each logaoedic form contains a single dactyl,\(^1\) which may be either in the first, second, or third place. The verse may be catalectic or acatalectic. Thus, —

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Glyconic.} & & \text{Pherecratic.} \\
i. & _\text{ΟΟ} | _\text{Ο} | _\text{Ο} | (\text{Ο}) & | _\text{ΟΟ} | _\text{Ο} | (\text{Ο}) \\
ii. & _\text{Ο} | _\text{ΟΟ} | _\text{Ο} | (\text{Ο}) & | _\text{Ο} | _\text{ΟΟ} | (\text{Ο}) \\
iii. & _\text{Ο} | _\text{Ο} | _\text{ΟΟ} | (\text{Ο}) & | _\text{ΟΟ} | _\text{Ο} | (\text{Ο})
\end{align*}
\]

Note.—The shorter Pherecratic (dipody), if catalectic, appears to be a simple Choriambus (\(\_\text{ΟΟ} | \_\text{Α}\)); and, in general, the effect of the logaoedic forms is Choriambic. In fact, they were so regarded by the later Greek and Latin metrists, and these metres have obtained the general name of Choriambic. But they are not true choriambic, though they may very likely have been felt to be such by the composer, who imitated the forms without much thought of their origin. They may be read (scanned), therefore, on that principle. But it is better to read them as logaoedic measures; and that course is followed here, in accordance with the most approved opinion on the subject.

\(^1\) Different Greek poets adopted fixed types in regard to the place of the dactyls, and so a large number of verses arose, each following a strict law, which were imitated by the Romans as distinct metres.
371. The verses constructed upon the several Logaëdic forms or models are the following:—

1. Glyconic (Second Glyconic, catalectic):
   \[ \text{ROMAE principis urbi um.} \]
   In English:
   "Forms more real than living man." — Shelley.

   **Note.**—In this and most of the succeeding forms the first foot is always irrational in Horace, consisting of an apparent spondee (\( \_ > \)).

2. Aristophanic (First Pherecratic):
   \[ \text{temperat \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \).} \]
   In English:
   "Forms more real than living man." — Shelley.

   **Note.**—It is very likely that this was made equal in time to the preceding by protracting the last two syllables: thus,
   \[ \text{Thus, \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \).} \]

3. Adonic (First Pherecratic, shortened):
   \[ \text{Terruit \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \).} \]
   Or perhaps:
   \[ \text{Terrut \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \) \( \_ \).} \]

4. Pherecratic (Second Pherecratic):
   \[ \text{cras donaberis haedo.} \]
   In English:
   "Forms more real than living man." — Shelley.

5. Lesser Asclepiadic (Second and First Pherecratic, both catalectic):
   \[ \text{Maecenas atavis edite regibus.} \]

6. Greater Asclepiadic (the same, with a Logaëdic Dipody interposed):
   \[ \text{tui ne quaesieris — scire nefas — quem mihi quem tibi.} \]

7. Lesser Sapphic (Logaëdic Pentapody, with dactyl in the third place):
   \[ \text{integer vitae scelerisque purus.} \]
Or in English:—

“Brilliant hopes, all woven in gorgeous tissues.” — Longfellow.

8. GREATER SAPPHIC (Third Glyconic; First Pherericatic):—

\[\| \text{\textit{iustum \ et tenacem pr\'eoposit\'\' vir\'am}}. \|\]

të deōs ōrō Sybarin || ċur properās amāntō. — Hor.

9. LESSER ALCAIC (Logaedic Tetrapody, two dactyls, two tro-ches):—

\[\| \text{\textit{virginibus puerisque canto.}}. \|\]

In English (nearly):—

“Blossom by blossom the Spring begins.” — Atalanta in Calydon.

10. GREATER ALCAIC (Logaedic Pentapody, catalectic, with Anacrusis, and dactyl in the third place; — compare Lesser Sapphic):—

\[\| \text{\textit{quae\'n\'am tē mala mēns, misē\'li Rāudī\'di,}}. \|\]

\[\| \text{\textit{āgīt pr\'e\'cipit\'em \'in mē\'s iāmbōs? — Catull. xli.}}. \|\]

In English:—

“Gorgeous flowerets in the sunlight shining.” — Longfellow.

12. GLYCONIC PHERERCRATIC (Metrum Satyricum):—

\[\| \text{\textit{Colonia quae\'e\'cup\'is \'in pōnte lūdere lōngō. — Catull. xvii.}}. \|\]


372. The Odes of Horace include nineteen varieties of stanza; these are:—

1. ALCAIC, consisting of two Greater Alcaics (10), one Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis, and one Lesser Alcaic (9)\(^1\): as, —

\[\| \text{\textit{iūst\'um \ et ten\'acem pr\'o\'posit\'\' vir\'am}}. \|\]

\[\| \text{\textit{nōn cē\'vi\'um \'ārd\'o pr\'a\'va jubē\'nti\'dīm}}. \|\]

\[\| \text{\textit{nōn vā\'ltus instan\'tīs tyrān\'ī}}. \|\]

\[\| \text{\textit{mēntē quā\'tūt solī\'dā neque Aūstēr. — \textit{Od. iii. 3.}}} \|\]

(Found in \textit{Od. i.} 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; \textit{ii.} i, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; \textit{iii.} i, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; \textit{iv.} 4, 9, 14, 15.)

\(^1\) The figures refer to the foregoing list (§ 371).
Prosody: Versification.

Note.—The Alcaic Strophe was a special favorite with Horace, of whose Odes thirty-seven are in this form. It is sometimes called the Horatian Stanzs. The verses were formerly described as, 1. spondee, bacchius, two dactyls; 2. spondee, bacchius, two trochees; 4. two dactyls, two trochees.

2. Sapphic (minor), consisting of three Lesser Sapphics (7) and one Adonic (3): as,

iam satís terrís nivís átque dírae
grándinís misit pater ét rubénte
déxterá sacrás iaculátus árcés
térruit úrhem.—Od. i. 2.
(Found in Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11. Carm. Sec.)

Note.—The Sapphic Stanzs is named after the poetess Sappho of Lesbos, and was a great favorite with the ancients. It is used by Horace in twenty-five Odes—more frequently than any other except the Alcaic. The Lesser Sapphic verse was formerly described as consisting of a Choriambus preceded by a trochaic dipody and followed by a bacchius.

3. Sapphic (major), consisting of one Aristophanic (2) and one Greater Sapphic (8): as,

Lydia díc, per omnēs
tē deós ōrō, Sybarīn cūr properās amāndō.—Od. i. 8.

4. Asclepiadean I. (minor), consisting of Lesser Asclepiadics (5): as,

exègā monumentum aëre perenniūs
régalīque sitū — pyramidum altius.—Od. iii. 30.
(Found in Od. i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.)

5. Asclepiadean II., consisting of one Glyconic (1) and one Lesser Asclepiadic (5): as,

Nāvis quaé tibi crēditūm
dēbēs Virgilīām,—īnibus Attīcīs
réddas incolumēm, precōr,
et servēs animāe — diūmīdium meā.—Od. i. 3.
(Found in Od. i. 3, 13, 19, 36; iii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; iv. 1, 3.)

6. Asclepiadean III., consisting of three Lesser Asclepiadics (5) and one Glyconic (1): as,

Quis desideriō sūt pudor aút modās
tām cārī capiūs? — prācipe lūgubrēs
cāntās, Mélpomenē, — cuī liquidām patēr
vōcem cūm cythārā dedīt.—Od. i. 24.
(Found in Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.)

1 See the Index below (pp. 420, 421).
§ 372.

7. Asclepiadean IV., consisting of two Lesser Asclepiadics (5), one Pherecratic (4), and one Glyconic (1): as,—

O fons Bândusiae spléndidiôr vitrâ,

dulci digne merâ, nôns sine flôribus,
crás dönâberis haédô
cui frôns tárgida côrnîbûs. — Od. iii. 13.

(Found in Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23; ii. 7; iii. 7, 13; iv. 13.)

8. Asclepiadean V. (major), consisting of Greater Asclepiadics (6): as,—

tá nē quaésierís — scôre nefâs! — quêm mihi, quêm tibî

finem dî dederînt — Leâconoê — nêc Bâbîlôniôs
téntârîs numerôs. — Od. i. 11.

(Found in Od. i. 11, 18; iv. 10.)

9. Alcmanian, consisting of Dactylic Hexameter (§ 362) alternating with Tetrameter (§ 364. a). (Od. i. 7, 28; Epod. 12.)

10. Archilochian I., consisting of Dactylic Hexameter alternating with Trimeric Catalectic (Dactylic Penthemim, see § 364. b). (Od. iv. 7.)

11. Archilochian IV., consisting of a Greater Archilochian (heptameter, § 368. i), followed by Iambic Trimeric Catalectic (§ 365. d). The stanza consists of two pairs of verses: as,—

sólvitur ácris hiêms grâtâ vice || Véris et Pavoîni,

trahântque siccás máchinæ carñnâs;

ác neque iâm stabûls gaudet pecus, || aût arâtor ñgni,

nec prâta cânis âlbicant pruñinis. — Od. i. 4.

12. Iambic Trimeric alone (see § 365). (Ep. 17.)

13. Iambic Strophe (see § 365. a). (Ep. 1–10.)

14. Dactylic Hexameter alternating with Iambic Dimeter: as,—

nôx erat, et caelo fulgêbat lûna serênô

ínter mínôra sîdéra,

câm tû, mágnôrâm númên laesûra deôrum,
in vérba iûrâbâs mea.— Epod. 15. (So in Ep. 14.)

15. Dactylic Hexameter with Iambic Trimer (§ 365); as,—

áltera iâm teritûr bellûs civilibus aétâs,

suïs et ipsa Rôma viribûs ruit. — Epod. 16.

16. Verse of Four Lesser Ionics: as,—

miserârum est | neque amôri | dare lûdum | neque dulci

mala vinô | lavérse aut ex|animâri | metuentês. — Od. iii. 12.
Prosody: Versification.

17. Iambic Trimeter (§ 365); Dactylic Penthemim (§ 364. b); Iambic Dimeter: as,—

Pectf nihil me sicut antea iuvat
scribere ver·siculōs—amōre percussām gravi.—Epod. 11.

18. Dactylic Hexameter; Iambic Dimeter; Dactylic Penthemim (§ 364. b): as,—

hórrida témpestás caelámm contráxit, et ímbrēs
nivēsque dēdūcánt Iovem: nunc mare, nunc silēae. . .

—Epod. 13.

19. Trochaic Dimeter, Iambic Trimeter, each catalectic (see § 367. b).

INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE.

Lib. I.

2. Iam satis terris: 2.
3. Sic te diva: 5.
4. Solvitur acris hiems: II.
8. Lydia dic: 3.
11. Tu ne quaesieris: 8.
13. Cum tu Lydia: 5.
18. Nullam Vare: 8.
22. Integer vitae: 2.
27. Natis in usum: I.
29. Icci beatis: 1.
32. Poscimur: 2.
34. Parcus deorum: I.
35. O diva: 1.
36. Et thure: 5.

Lib. II.

8. Ulla si iuris: 2.
15. Iam paucia: 1.
§§ 372, 373. Other lyric poets use other combinations of the above-mentioned verses. Thus,—

a. Glyconics with one Pherecratic (both imperfect): as,—

Diā|nae sūmūs | in fīde
pūel|lae et pūčrī | intēgrī:
Diā|nam, pūčrī | intēgrī
pūel|laeque cā|nā|mus. — Catull. 34.

b. Sapphics, in a series of single lines, closing with an Adonic: as,—

An mā|gis dī|ri trēmū|ere | Mānēs
Hercū|lem? et vi|sum cānis | infē|rōrum
§ 373. Prosody: Versification.

other measures occur in various styles of poetry:

vix., —

a. Anapaestic verses of various lengths are found in dramatic poetry. The spondee, dactyl, or proceleusmatic may be substituted for the anapaest: as, —

hic hômōst | omnīm hōmī|num prae|cipūös
vōlūptā|tūbūs gau|drīsquē an|tēpōtēns.
ità com|mōdā quaē | cūpīō ē|vēniunt,  
quōd agō | sūbit, ad|sēcūē | sēquitūr:
ità gau|diu|m sup|pēditat. — Plaut. Trin. 1115-1119.

b. Bacchic verses (five-timed) occur in the dramatic poets, — very rarely in Terence, more commonly in Plautus, — either in verses of two feet (Dimeter) or of four (Tetrameter). They are treated very freely, as are all measures in early Latin. The long syllables may be resolved, or the molossus (three longs) substituted: as, —

multās rēs | sīmita in | mēō cor|dé vorsō,  
multum in co|gītandō | dōlōrem in|dīpiscor
ēgōmet mē | cōgē et mā|cērō et dé|fītigō;
магистер | mihi exer|cītōr ānī|mūs nunc est.  
— Plaut. Trin. 223-226.

c. Cretic measures occur in the same manner as the Bacchic, with the same substitutions. The last foot is usually incomplete: as, —

āmōr āni|cus mīhi | nē fūās | unquam.
hiō ēgō | dē artibus | grāfiam | fācio.  
nil ēgo is|tōs mōror | faecēs | mōrēs. — id. 267, 293, 297.

d. Saturnian Verse. In early Latin is found a rude form of verse, not borrowed from the Greek like the others. The rhythm is Iambic Tetrameter (or Trochaic with Anacrusis), but the Arsis is often synco-pated, especially in the middle and at the end of the verse: as, —

dabānt | malūm | Metē|li — || Naēvilō po|ētæ.
Early Prosody.

375. The prosody of the earlier poets differs in several respects from that of the later.\(^1\)

\(a.\) At the end of words ets was only feebly sounded, so that it does not make position with a following consonant, and is sometimes cut off before a vowel. This usage continued in all poets till Cicero’s time (§ 347. ets).

\(b.\) The last syllable of any word of two syllables may be made short if the first is short. (This effect remained in a few words like putā, cavē, valē, vidē; cf. § 348.) Thus, —

ābēst (Cist. ii. 1. 12); āpūd tēst (Trin. 196); sōrōr dictast (Enn. 157); bōnās (Stick. 99); dōmī dēaeque (Pseud. 37); dōmī (Mil. 194).

c. In the same way a long syllable may be shortened when preceded by a short monosyllable: as, —

īd ēst profectō (Merc. 372); ērīt et tībī ēkoptātum (Mil. 1011); sī quidem hērcle (Asin. 414); quīd ēst sī hōc (Andria, 237).

d. In a few isolated words position is often disregarded.\(^2\) Such are Īlle, īste, īnde, īnde, nēmpe, ēsse (?). Thus, —

ēcquis his in aedibust (Bacch. 581).

e. In some cases the accent seems to shorten a syllable preceding it in a word of more than three syllables, as in senēctūtī, Syrācūsae.

\(f.\) At the beginning of a verse many syllables long by position stand for short ones: as, —

īdnē tū (Pseud. 442); ēstne cōnsimilis (Epid. v. 1. 18).

g. The original long quantity of many final syllables is retained. Thus: —

1. Final -a of the first declension is often long: as, —

nē epīstulā quidem ūlla sit in aēdibus (Asin. 762).

2. Final -a of the neuter plural is sometimes long (though there seems no etymological reason for it): as, —

nūnc et amīcō | prōsperābō et | gēniō meō mul | tā bona faciam (Pers. 263).

---

\(^1\) Before the Latin language was used in literature, it had become much changed by the loss of final consonants and the shortening of final syllables under the influence of accent (which was originally free in its position, but in Latin became limited to the penult and antepenult). This tendency was arrested by the study of grammar and by literature, but shows itself again in the Romance languages. In many cases this change was still in progress in the time of the early poets.

\(^2\) Scholars are not yet agreed upon the principle or the extent of this irregularity.
3. The ending -or is retained long in nouns with long stem-vowel (original r-stems or original s-stems): as, —

módo quom dicit in mē ingerēbās ódium nōn uxōr eram (Asin. 927).
īta mē in pectore átque corde, fācit amōr incéndium (Merc. 500).
átque quantō nōx fuisti lōngior hāc próxumā (Amph. 548).

4. The termination -es (-ītis) is sometimes retained long, as in mīlēs, superstēs.

5. All verb-endings in -r, -s, and -t may be retained long where the vowel is elsewhere long in inflection: as, —

régrediōr audīsse mē (Capt. 1023); átque ut quī fueris et quī nunc (id. 248); mē nōminat haec (Epid. iv. 1. 8); faciāt ut semper (Poen. ii. 42); infuscābat, amābō (Cretics, Cist. i. 21); quī amēt (Merc. 1021);
ut fit in bellō capitur alter filius (Capt. 25); tibi sit ad mē revisās (Truc. ii. 4. 79).

h. The hiatus is allowed very freely, especially at a pause in the sense, or when there is a change of the speaker.¹

¹ The extent of this license is still a question among scholars; but in the present state of texts it must sometimes be allowed.
MISCELLANEOUS.

1. Reckoning of Time.

NOTE.—The Roman Year was designated, in earlier times, by the names of the Consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the City (ab urbe condita, anno urbis condita), the date of which was assigned by Varro to a period corresponding with B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754: e.g. A.U.C. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) = B.C. 63.

Before Cæsar's reform of the Calendar (B.C. 46), the Roman year consisted of 355 days: March, May, Quintilis (July), and October having each 31 days; February having 28, and each of the remainder 29. As this Calendar year was too short for the solar year, the Romans, in alternate years, at the discretion of the Pontifices, inserted a month of varying length (mēnis intercalāris) after February 23, and omitted the rest of February. The "Julian year," by Cæsar's reformed Calendar, had 365 days, divided into months as at present. Every fourth year the 24th of February (vi. kal. Mārt.) was counted twice, giving 29 days to that month: hence the year was called Bissextīlis. The month Quintilis received the name Jūlius (July), in honor of Julius Cæsar; and Sextilis was called Augustus (August), in honor of his successor. The Julian year (see below) remained unchanged till the adoption of the Gregorian Calendar (A.D. 1582), which omits leap-year three times in every four hundred years.

376. Dates, according to the Roman Calendar, are reckoned as follows:—

a. The first day of the month was called Kalendae (Calends).

NOTE.—Kalendae is derived from calāre, to call,—the Calends being the day on which the pontiffs publicly announced the New Moon in the Comitia Calīta, which they did, originally, from actual observation.

b. On the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, but the thirteenth of the other months, were the Ídēs (Ides), the day of Full Moon.

c. On the seventh day of March, May, July, and October, but the fifth of the other months, were the Nōnae (Nones or ninths).

d. From the three points thus determined, the days of the month were reckoned backwards as so many days before the Nones, the Ides, or the Calends. The point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning, the second day being three days before, etc. This gives the following rule for determining the date:—
If the given date be Calends, add two to the number of days in the month preceding,—if Nones or Ides, add one to that of the day on which they fall,—and from the number thus ascertained subtract the given date: thus,—

iv. Nön. Mär. \((8 - 4) = \text{Mar. 4.}\)
iv. Íd. Sept. \((14 - 4) = \text{Sept. 10.}\)

For peculiar constructions in dates, see § 259. e.

e. The days of the Roman month by the Julian Calendar, as thus ascertained, are given in the following Table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>January</th>
<th>February</th>
<th>March</th>
<th>April</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. KAL. IAN.</td>
<td>KAL. FEB.</td>
<td>KAL. MÄRTIAE</td>
<td>KAL. APRILÉS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. III. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. Íd. Mär.</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. V. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. IV. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. III. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. ÍDÜS IÄN.</td>
<td>ÍDÜS FEB.</td>
<td>prid. &quot;</td>
<td>ÍDÜS APRILÉS,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. XIX. Kal. Feb.</td>
<td>XVI. Kal. MÄRTIÄS</td>
<td>ÍDÜS MÄRTIAE</td>
<td>XVIII. Kal. MÄIÄS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. XVIII. &quot;</td>
<td>XV. &quot;</td>
<td>XVII. Kal. Aprilis.</td>
<td>XVII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. XVII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XVI. &quot;</td>
<td>XV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. XVI. &quot;</td>
<td>XIII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. XV. &quot;</td>
<td>XII. &quot;</td>
<td>XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XIII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. XIV. &quot;</td>
<td>XI. &quot;</td>
<td>XIII. &quot;</td>
<td>XII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. XIII. &quot;</td>
<td>X. &quot;</td>
<td>XII. &quot;</td>
<td>XI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. XII. &quot;</td>
<td>IX. &quot;</td>
<td>XI. &quot;</td>
<td>X. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. XI. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. &quot;</td>
<td>X. &quot;</td>
<td>IX. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. X. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>IX. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. IX. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>VIII. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. VIII. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>VII. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. VII. &quot;</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. VI. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. V. &quot;</td>
<td>prid. &quot;</td>
<td>VI. &quot;</td>
<td>V. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. IV. &quot;</td>
<td>[prid. Kal. MÄRT.</td>
<td>IV. &quot;</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. III. &quot;</td>
<td>in leap-year, the</td>
<td>III. &quot;</td>
<td>prid. &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. prid. &quot;</td>
<td>vi. Kal. (24th) being prid.</td>
<td>(So June, Sept.,</td>
<td>(So May, July, Oct.) Nov.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(So Aug., Dec.) counted twice.]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — Observe that a date before the Julian Reform (B.C. 46) is to be found not by the above table, but by taking the earlier reckoning of the number of days in the month.
2. Measures of Value, etc.

377. The money of the Romans was in early times wholly of copper. The unit was the ās, which was nominally a pound in weight, but actually somewhat less. It was divided into twelve unciae (ounces).

In the third century B.C. the ās was gradually reduced to one-half of its original value. In the same century silver coins were introduced, — the Denārius and the Sestertius. The Denarius = 10 asses; the Sestertius = 2½ asses.

378. The Sestertius was probably introduced at a time when the ās had been so far reduced that the value of the new coin (2½ asses) was equivalent to the original value of the ās. Hence, the Sestertius (usually abbreviated to IIS or HS) came to be used as the unit of value, and nummus, coin, often means simply sestertius. As the reduction of the standard went on, the sestertius became equivalent to 4 asses. Gold was introduced later, the aureus being equal to 100 sesterces. The value of these coins is seen in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2½ asses</td>
<td>1 sestertius or nummus (HS), value nearly 5 cents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 asses or 4 sestertii</td>
<td>1 denarius. 20 &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 sestertii</td>
<td>1 sestertium. 50.00.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE. — The word sestertius is a shortened form of sēmis-tertius, the third one, a half. The abbreviation IIS or HS = duo et sēmis, 2½, two and a half.

379. The Sestertium (probably originally the genitive plural of sestertius) was a sum of money, not a coin; the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun: thus, tria sestertia = $150.00.

When sestertium is combined with a numeral adverb, centēna mīlia, hundreds of thousands, is to be understood: thus deciēns sestertium (decēns HS) = $50,000.

In the statement of large sums sestertium is often omitted: thus sæxāgiēns (Rosc. Am. 2) signifies, sæxāgiēns [centēna mīlia] sestertium (6,000,000 sesterces) = $300,000 (nearly).

380. In the statement of sums of money in cipher, a line above the number indicates thousands; lines above and at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus HS. dc. = 600 sestertii; HS. dC = 600,000 sestertii, or 600 sestertia; H.S. [dC] = 60,000,000 sestertii.

381. The Roman Measures of Length are the following:—

12 inches (unciae) = 1 Roman Foot (pēs: 11.65 English inches).
1½ Feet = 1 Cubit (cubitum). — 2½ Feet = 1 Degree or Step (gradus).
5 Feet = 1 Pace (passus). — 1000 Paces (mille passuum) = 1 Mile.
The Roman mile was equal to 4850 English feet.

The *lugerum*, or unit of measure of land, was an area of 240 (Roman) feet long and 120 broad; a little less than \( \frac{3}{4} \) of an English acre.

382. The Measures of Weight are —

12 unciae (ounces) = one pound (libra, about \( \frac{3}{4} \) lb. avoirdupois).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are —

1. \( \left( \frac{1}{12} \right) \), uncia.
2. \( \left( \frac{1}{6} \right) \), sextans.
3. \( \left( \frac{1}{4} \right) \), quadrans.
4. \( \left( \frac{1}{3} \right) \), triens.
5. \( \left( \frac{5}{6} \right) \), quincunx.
6. \( \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) \), semissis.
7. \( \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) \), septunx.
8. \( \left( \frac{2}{3} \right) \), bessis.
9. \( \left( \frac{1}{3} \right) \), dextans.
10. \( \left( \frac{1}{4} \right) \), deunx.
11. \( \left( \frac{1}{6} \right) \), sextans.
12. \( \left( \frac{1}{5} \right) \), as.

The Talent (talentum) was a Greek weight (τάλαντον) = 60 librae.

383. The Measures of Capacity are —

12 cyathi = 1 sextarius (nearly a pint).
16 sextarii = 1 modius (peck).
6 sextarii = 1 congius (3 quarts, liquid measure).
8 congii = 1 amphora (6 gallons).

384. The following are some of the commonest abbreviations found in Latin inscriptions and sometimes in editions of the classic authors.

A., absolvo, antiquo.
A. u., annō urbīs.
A. u. c., ab urbe condita.
C., condemnō, comitālis.
cos., cōnsul (cōnsule).
coss., cōnsules (cōnsulibus).
D., dīvīs.
D. d., dōnō dedit.
D. D., dat, dicat, dēdicat.
des., dēsignātus.
D. M., dīs mānēs.
eq. Rom., eques Rōmānus.
F., filius, fastus.
Ictus., iūrisconsultus.
Id., idūs.
imp., imperātor.
I. O. M., Iovi optimō māximō.
K., Kal., Kalendae.
N., nepōs, nefastus.
N. L., nōn liquet.
P. C., pātres cōnscriptī.
pl., plēbis.
pont. max., pontifex máximus.
pop., populus.
P. R., pūblius Rōmānus.
pr., praetor.
proc., prōcōnsul.
Q. B. F. Q. S., quod bonum félix faustumque sit.
Quir., Quīrītēs.
resp., rēspōblica, respondet.
S., salūtem, sacrum, sēnātus.
s. c., sēnātus cōnsultum.
S. D. P., salūtem dīcit plūrimam.
S. P. Q. R., Senātus Populusque Rō-
mānus.
S. V. B. E. V., sī vālēs bene est, ego
valēō.
pl. tr., tribūnus plēbis.
U. (u. r.), uti rogās.
GLOSSARY

OF TERMS USED IN GRAMMAR, RHETORIC, AND PROSODY

Note.—Many of these terms are pedantic names given by early grammarians to forms of speech used naturally by writers who were not conscious that they were using figures at all—as, indeed, they were not. Thus when one says, "It gave me no little pleasure," he is unconsciously using Litotes; when he says, "John went up the street, James down," Antithesis; when he says, "High as the sky," Hyperbole. Many were given under a mistaken notion of the nature of the usage referred to. Thus mēd and tēd (§ 98. c) were supposed to owe their d to Paragoge, sūmpsi its p to Epenthesis. Such a sentence as "See my coat, how well it fits!" was supposed to be an irregularity to be accounted for by Prolepsis.

Many of these, however, are convenient designations for phenomena which often occur; and most of them have a historic interest, of one kind or another.

385. I. Grammatical Terms.

Anacoluthon: a change of construction in the same sentence, leaving the first part broken or unfinished.

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see Protasis).

Archaism: an adoption of old or obsolete forms.

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§ 208. b).

Barbarism: adoption of foreign or unauthorized forms.

Brachylogy: brevity of expression.

Crasis: contraction of two vowels into one (§ 10. c).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense (§ 177. note).

Enallage: substitution of one word or form for another.

Epenthesis: insertion of a letter or syllable (§ 11. c).

Hellenism: use of Greek forms or constructions.

Hendiadys (ἐν δία δυσίν): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Hypallage: interchange of constructions.

Hysteron proteron: a reversing of the natural order of ideas.

This term was applied to cases where the natural sequence of events is violated in language because the later event is of more importance than the earlier and so comes first to the mind. This was supposed to be an artificial embellishment in Greek, and so was imitated in Latin. It is still found in artless narrative; cf. "Bred and Born in a Brier Bush" (Uncle Remus).
Glossary.

Metathesis: transposition of letters in a word (§ 11. d).
Paragoge: addition of a letter or letters to the end of a word.
Parenthesis: insertion of a phrase interrupting the construction.
Periphrasis: a roundabout way of expression (circumlocution).
Pleonasm: the use of needless words.
Polysyndeton: the use of an unnecessary number of copulative conjunctions.
Prolepsis: the use of a word in the clause preceding the one where it would naturally appear (anticipation).
Protasis: a clause introduced by a conditional expression (if, when, whoever), leading to a conclusion called the Apodosis (§ 304).
Syncope: omission of a letter or syllable from the middle of a word (§ 11. b).
Synesia (construe ad sensum): agreement of words according to the sense, and not the grammatical form (§ 182).
Tmesis: the separation of the two parts of a compound word by other words (cutting).

This term came from the earlier separation of prepositions (originally adverbs) from the verbs with which they were afterwards joined; so in per ecaster scius puer, a very fine boy, egad! As this was supposed to be intentional, it was ignorantly imitated in Latin; as in cere comminuit -brum (Ennius).

Zeugma: the use of a verb with two different words, to only one of which it strictly applies (yoking).

386. II. RHETORICAL FIGURES.

Allegory: a narrative in which abstract ideas figure as circumstances, events, or persons, in order to enforce some moral truth.
Alliteration: the use of several words that begin with the same sound.
Analogy: argument from resemblances.
Anaphora: the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses (§ 344. f).
Antithesis: opposition, or contrast of parts (for emphasis: § 344).
Antonomasia: use of a proper for a common noun, or the reverse: as, —
sint Maecenatès non deerunt Flace Maroënès, so there be patrons (like Maecenas), poets (like Virgil) will not be lacking.
illa furia et pestis, that fury and plague (i.e. Clodius); Homœromastix, scourge of Homer (i.e. Zoilus).

Aposiopesis: an abrupt pause for rhetorical effect.
Catachresis: a harsh metaphor (abusiô, misuse of words).
Chiasmus: a reversing of the order of words in corresponding pairs of phrases (§ 344. f).
Climax: a gradual increase of emphasis, or enlargement of meaning.

Euphemism: the mild expression of a painful or repulsive idea: as, —

si quid ei acciderit, if anything happens to him (i.e. if he dies).

Euphony: the choice of words for their agreeable sound.

Hyperbaton: violation of the usual order of words.

Hyperbole: exaggeration for rhetorical effect.

Irony: the use of words which naturally convey a sense contrary to what is meant.

Litotes: the affirming of a thing by denying its contrary (§ 209. c).

Metaphor: the figurative use of words, indicating an object by some resemblance.

Metonymy: the use of the name of one thing to indicate some kindred thing.

Onomatopœia: a fitting of sound to sense in the use of words.

Oxymoron: the use of contradictory words in the same phrase: as, —

insāniēns sapientia, foolish wisdom.

Paronomasia: the use of words of like sound.

Prosopopœia, personification.

Synchysis: the interlocked order (§ 344. h).

Synecdoche: the use of the name of a part for the whole, or the reverse.

387. III. TERMS OF PROSODY.

Acatalectic: complete, as a verse or a series of feet (§ 359. a).

Anaclasis: breaking up of rhythm by substituting different measures.

Anacrusis: the unaccented syllable or syllables preceding a verse (§ 355. g).

Antistrophè: a series of verses corresponding to one which has gone before (cf. strophe).

Aris: the unaccented part of a foot (§ 358).

Basis: a single foot preceding the regular movement of a verse.

Caesura: the ending of a word within a metrical foot (§ 358. b).

Catalexis: loss of a final syllable (or syllables) making the series catalectic (incomplete, § 359. a).

Contraction: the use of one long syllable for two short (§ 357).

Correption: shortening of a long syllable, for metrical reasons.

Dieresis: the coincidence of the end of a foot with the end of a word (§ 358. c).

Dialysis: the use of i (consonant) and v as vowels (silīa = silva § 347. d. Rem.).

Diastole: the lengthening of a short syllable by emphasis (§ 359. f).
Glossary.

**Dimeter**: consisting of two like measures.

**Dipody**: consisting of two like feet.

**Distich**: a system or series of two verses.

**Ecphrasis**: the suppression of a final syllable in -m before a word beginning with a vowel (§ 359. d).

**Elision**: the cutting off of a final before a following initial vowel (§ 359. e).

**Heptameter**: consisting of seven feet.

**Hexameter**: consisting of six measures.

**Hexapody**: consisting of six feet.

**Hiatus**: the meeting of two vowels without contraction or elision (§ 359. e).

**Ictus**: the metrical accent (§ 358. a).

**Irrational**: not conforming strictly to the unit of time (§ 356. note).

**Logacedic**: varying in rhythm, making the effect resemble prose (§ 369).

**Monometer**: consisting of a single measure.

**Mora**: the unit of time = one short syllable (§ 355. a).

**Pentameter**: consisting of five measures.

**Pentapody**: consisting of five feet.

**Pentheinimeris**: consisting of five half-feet.

**Protraction**: extension of a syllable beyond its normal length (§ 355. e).

**Resolution**: the use of two short syllables for one long (§ 357).

**Strophe**: a series of verses making a recognized metrical whole (stanza), which may be indefinitely repeated.

**Synaeresis**: i (vowel) and u becoming consonants before a vowel.

**Synalepha**: the same as elision (§ 359. e. Rem.).

**Synapheia**: elision between two verses (§ 359. e. Rem.).

**Synizesis**: the combining of two vowels in one syllable (§ 347. e).

**Syncope**: loss of a short vowel.

**Systole**: shortening of a syllable regularly long.

**Tetrameter**: consisting of four measures.

**Tetrapody**: consisting of four feet.

**Tetrastich**: a system of four verses.

**Thesis**: the accented part of a foot (§ 358).

**Trimeter**: consisting of three measures.

**Tripody**: consisting of three feet.

**Tristich**: a system of three verses.
APPENDIX.

Latin was originally the language of the plain of Latium, lying south of the Tiber, the first territory occupied and governed by the Romans. This language, and, together with it, Greek, Sanskrit, Zend (Old Persian), the Slavonic and Teutonic families, and the Celtic, are shown by comparative philology to be offshoots of a common stock, a language once spoken by a people somewhere in the interior of Asia, whence the different branches, by successive migrations, passed into Europe and Southern Asia.

This Parent Speech is called the Indo-European, and the languages descended from it are known collectively as the Indo-European Family. By an extended comparison of the corresponding roots, stems, and forms, as they appear in the different languages of the family, the original Indo-European root, stem, or form can in very many cases be determined. A few of these forms are given in the grammar for comparison (see, especially, p. 83). Others are here added for further illustration:—

I. Case Forms (Stem vak, voice).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vakás¹</td>
<td>vaćś</td>
<td>vaćś</td>
<td>ὄψ</td>
<td>vöx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. vakás</td>
<td>vachás</td>
<td>ὄψος</td>
<td>vócís</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. vakái</td>
<td>váché</td>
<td>ὄτι</td>
<td>vóci</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. vákam</td>
<td>vácham</td>
<td>ὀνα</td>
<td>vöcem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. vakát</td>
<td>váchás</td>
<td>(gen. or dat.)</td>
<td>vöce(d)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc. vakí</td>
<td>váchí</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr. vaka</td>
<td>váchā</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
<td>(abl.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vakás</td>
<td>váchas</td>
<td>ὀνες</td>
<td>vócēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. vakām</td>
<td>vāčham</td>
<td>ὀνόμν</td>
<td>vōcum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. vakbhyams</td>
<td>vāgbhyās</td>
<td>ὄψι</td>
<td>vōcibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. vākams</td>
<td>vāčhās</td>
<td>ὀνα</td>
<td>vōcēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. vākbhyams</td>
<td>(as dat.)</td>
<td>(gen. or dat.)</td>
<td>vōcibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc. vaksvas</td>
<td>vāksú</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr. vākbhīs</td>
<td>vāgbhīs</td>
<td>(dat.)</td>
<td>(abl.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ To avoid unsettled questions of Comparative Grammar, the stem-vowel is here given as a, though the vowel undoubtedly had approached o before the separation of the various Indo-European languages from the parent speech.
2. Cardinal Numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[eka]</td>
<td>[ἐις]</td>
<td>[ین]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dva</td>
<td>ḍvo</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tri</td>
<td>τρεῖς</td>
<td>trēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>kvatvar</td>
<td>τέταρτες</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>kvankva</td>
<td>τεντε</td>
<td>quinque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>[ε]</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>septm</td>
<td>ἑπτά</td>
<td>septem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>aktam</td>
<td>ὀκτὼ</td>
<td>octo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>navam</td>
<td>ἑννέα</td>
<td>novem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>dekm</td>
<td>δέκα</td>
<td>decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>dvadekm</td>
<td>δώδεκα</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>tridekm</td>
<td>τρισακοντα</td>
<td>tredecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>dvidekta</td>
<td>εἴκοσι</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>tridekta</td>
<td>τριάκοντα</td>
<td>trigintā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>kntom</td>
<td>ἑκατόν</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Familiar and Household Words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Father.</td>
<td>pātār-</td>
<td>pitar-</td>
<td>πατὴρ</td>
<td>päter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother.</td>
<td>mātār-</td>
<td>mātri-</td>
<td>μήτηρ</td>
<td>māter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father-in-law.</td>
<td>svakura-</td>
<td>śvaçura-</td>
<td>ἐκυρός</td>
<td>socer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daughter-in-law.</td>
<td>snushā-</td>
<td>snusha-</td>
<td>νῦς</td>
<td>nurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brother.</td>
<td>bhṛatār-</td>
<td>bhṛātri-</td>
<td>φράτηρ 1</td>
<td>frāter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister.</td>
<td>svasar- (?)</td>
<td>svasar-</td>
<td>[ἄδελφη]</td>
<td>soror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master.</td>
<td>pati-</td>
<td>pati-</td>
<td>πόσις</td>
<td>potis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House.</td>
<td>dama-</td>
<td>dama-</td>
<td>δῶμος</td>
<td>domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat.</td>
<td>sadas-</td>
<td>sadas-</td>
<td>ἔδώς</td>
<td>sēdēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year.</td>
<td>vatas-</td>
<td>vatsa-</td>
<td>ἔτος</td>
<td>vetus (old')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field.</td>
<td>agra-</td>
<td>ajra-</td>
<td>ἀγρός</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ox, Cow.</td>
<td>gau-</td>
<td>go-</td>
<td>βοῦς</td>
<td>bōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep (Ewe).</td>
<td>avi-</td>
<td>avi-</td>
<td>ὧς</td>
<td>ovis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swine (Sow).</td>
<td>sü-</td>
<td>sü-</td>
<td>ὥς, σῶς</td>
<td>sūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoke.</td>
<td>yuga-</td>
<td>yuga-</td>
<td>ἄγαλμα</td>
<td>iugum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagon.</td>
<td>rata-</td>
<td>rata-</td>
<td>ῥοτα (wheel)</td>
<td>rota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle.</td>
<td>madhya-</td>
<td>madhya-</td>
<td>μέδιος</td>
<td>mediús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet.</td>
<td>svādu-</td>
<td>svādu-</td>
<td>ἡδύς</td>
<td>suāvis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The emigrants who peopled the Italian peninsula also divided into several branches, and the language of each branch had its own development, until all the rest were crowded out by the dominant Latin. These dialects have left no literature, but fragments of some of them

---

1 Clansman.
have been preserved, in inscriptions, or as cited by Roman antiquarians; and other fragments were probably incorporated in that popular or rustic dialect which formed the basis of the modern Italian. The most important of these ancient languages of Italy were the Oscan of Campania, and the Umbrian of the northern districts. To these should be added the Etruscan, which is of uncertain origin. Some of their forms, as compared with the Latin, may be seen in the following:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LATIN</th>
<th>OSCAN</th>
<th>UMBRIAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accinere</td>
<td>arkane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alteri (loc.)</td>
<td>altrei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argentō</td>
<td>aragetud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avibus</td>
<td>aveis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēnsoñ</td>
<td>censetur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēnsēbit</td>
<td>censazet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrā, F.</td>
<td>contrud, N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornicem</td>
<td>curnaco</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dextra</td>
<td>destru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dicust</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixerīt</td>
<td>desenduf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrā</td>
<td>ehtrad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facītō</td>
<td>factud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēcerīt</td>
<td>fefacust</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertōte</td>
<td>fertuta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frātribus</td>
<td>fratrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>ip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperātor</td>
<td>embratur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter</td>
<td>anter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licētō</td>
<td>licitud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magistrō</td>
<td>mestru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meδius</td>
<td>mefa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>múgiātur</td>
<td>mugatu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multāre</td>
<td>moltaum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN</td>
<td>OSCAN</td>
<td>UMBRIAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neque</td>
<td>nep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per</td>
<td>perum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portet</td>
<td></td>
<td>portaia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadrupedibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>peturpursus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>petora</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnque</td>
<td>pomtis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui, quis</td>
<td>pis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid</td>
<td>pid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quod</td>
<td>pod</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cui</td>
<td>piei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quom</td>
<td></td>
<td>pone, pune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectōri</td>
<td>regaturei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīquis</td>
<td>svepis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stet</td>
<td>stai<em>t  (stai</em>et)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subvocō</td>
<td>subocau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>i*st</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>set</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fust</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuērunt</td>
<td>fufans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuat</td>
<td>fuia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertium</td>
<td>tertim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>puf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uterque</td>
<td>puterei*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrīque</td>
<td>putrespe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fragments of early Latin are preserved in inscriptions dating back to the third century before the Christian era; and some Laws are attributed to a much earlier date,—to Romulus (B.C. 750), to Numa (B.C. 700); and especially to the Decemvirs (Twelve Tables, B.C. 450); but in their present form no authentic dates can be assigned to them. Specimens of these are usually given in a supplement to the Lexicon. (See also Cic. De Legibus, especially ii. 8; iii. 3, 4.)

An instructive collection of them is given in “Remnants of Early Latin,” by F. D. Allen: Ginn & Co.
Latin did not exist as a literary language until about B.C. 200. The language was then strongly influenced by the writings of the Greeks, which were the chief objects of literary study and admiration. The most popular plays, those of Plautus and Terence, were simply translations from the Greek, introducing freely, however, the popular dialect and the slang of the Roman streets. As illustrations of life and manners they belong as much to Athens as to Rome. Thus the natural growth of a genuine Roman literature was very considerably checked. Orations, rhetorical works, letters, and histories,—dealing with practical affairs and the passions of politics,—seem to be nearly all that sprang direct from the native soil. The Latin poets of the Empire were mostly court-poets, writing for a cultivated and luxurious class; satires and epistles alone keep the flavor of Roman manners, and exhibit the familiar features of Italian life.

In its use since the classic period, Latin is known chiefly as the language of the Civil Code, which gave the law to a large part of Europe; as the language of historians, diplomatists, and philosophers during the Middle Ages, and in some countries to a much later period; as the official language of the Church and Court of Rome, down to the present day; as, until recently, the common language of scholars, so as still to be the ordinary channel of communication among many learned classes and societies; and as the universal language of Science, especially of the descriptive sciences, so that many hundreds of Latin terms, or derivative forms, must be known familiarly to any one who would have a clear knowledge of the facts of the natural world, or be able to recount them intelligibly to men of science. In some of these uses it, may still be regarded as a living language; while, conventionally, it retains its place as the foundation of a liberal education.

During the classical period of the language, Latin existed not only in its literary or urban form, but in local dialects, known by the collective name of lingua rústica, far simpler in their forms of inflection than the classic Latin. These dialects, it is probable, were the basis of modern Italian, which has preserved many of the ancient words without aspirate or case-inflection: as, orto (hortus), gente (gentem). In the colonies longest occupied by the Romans, Latin, in its ruder and more popular form, came to be the language of the common people. Hence the modern languages called "Romance" or "Romanic"; viz., Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and French, together with the Catalan of Northeastern Spain, the Provençal or Troubadour language of the South of France, the "Rouman" or Wallachian of the lower Danube (Roumania), and the "Roumansh" of some districts of Switzerland.
Appendix.

A comparison of words in several of these tongues with Latin will serve to illustrate that process of phonetic decay to which reference has been made in the body of this Grammar (§ 8. 2), as well as the degree in which the substance of the language has remained unchanged. Thus, in the verb to be the Romance languages have preserved from the Latin the general tense-system, together with both the stems on which the verb is built. The personal endings are somewhat abraded, but can be traced throughout. The following table shows the forms assumed by sum in five of the Romance languages. In the others, the alterations are more marked.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LATIN</th>
<th>ITALIAN</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PORTUGUESE</th>
<th>FRENCH</th>
<th>PROVENÇAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sono</td>
<td>soy</td>
<td>sôu</td>
<td>suis</td>
<td>son (sui)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>sei</td>
<td>eres</td>
<td>és</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>ses (est)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>è</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>hé</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>es (ez)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>siamo</td>
<td>somos</td>
<td>sômos</td>
<td>sommes</td>
<td>sem (em)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>sôis</td>
<td>êtes</td>
<td>etz (es)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sono</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>saô</td>
<td>sont</td>
<td>sont (son)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>eram</th>
<th>era</th>
<th>era</th>
<th>étais</th>
<th>erat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>eri</td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>étais</td>
<td>eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erat</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>était</td>
<td>eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erâmus</td>
<td>eravamo</td>
<td>éramos</td>
<td>étions</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erâtis</td>
<td>eravate</td>
<td>erais</td>
<td>étiez</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>érano</td>
<td>eran</td>
<td>étaient</td>
<td>eran</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fui</th>
<th>fui</th>
<th>fui</th>
<th>fus</th>
<th>fui</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuistî</td>
<td>fosti</td>
<td>fuste</td>
<td>fust</td>
<td>fust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>fû</td>
<td>fôi</td>
<td>fut</td>
<td>fo (fon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuimus</td>
<td>fummo</td>
<td>fômos</td>
<td>fûmes</td>
<td>fom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuistis</td>
<td>foste</td>
<td>fôstos</td>
<td>fûtes</td>
<td>fotz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuêrunt</td>
<td>fûrono</td>
<td>fôraô</td>
<td>furent</td>
<td>foren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>sim</th>
<th>sia</th>
<th>seja</th>
<th>sois</th>
<th>sia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sii</td>
<td>seas</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>sias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sia</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>soit</td>
<td>sia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sîmus</td>
<td>siamo</td>
<td>seamos</td>
<td>soyons</td>
<td>sian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sîtis</td>
<td>siate</td>
<td>seais</td>
<td>soyez</td>
<td>siatz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sint</td>
<td>siano</td>
<td>sean</td>
<td>soient</td>
<td>sian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fuissem</th>
<th>fossi</th>
<th>fuese</th>
<th>fusse</th>
<th>fos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuissês</td>
<td>fossi</td>
<td>fuseses</td>
<td>fusses</td>
<td>fosses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuisset</td>
<td>fosse</td>
<td>fôsse</td>
<td>flût</td>
<td>fossa (fos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuissêmus</td>
<td>fôssimo</td>
<td>fuésemos</td>
<td>fóssemos</td>
<td>fossem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuissêtis</td>
<td>foste</td>
<td>fueseis</td>
<td>fôsseis</td>
<td>fussiez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuissent</td>
<td>fôssero</td>
<td>fuesen</td>
<td>fôssem</td>
<td>fussent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fossen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix.

PRINCIPAL ROMAN WRITERS.

REPUBLICAN WRITERS.

T. Maccius Plautus, Comedies ........................................ 254–184
Q. Ennius, Annals, Satires, etc. (Fragments) ..................... 239–169
M. Porcius Cato, Husbandry, Antiquities, etc. .................. 234–149
M. Pacuvius, Tragedies (Fragments) ............................... 220–130
P. Terentius Afer (TERENCE), Comedies ....................... 195–159
C. Lucilius, Satires (Fragments) ....................................... 148–103
L. Attius (or Accius), Tragedies (Fragments) ...................... 170–75
M. Terentius Varro, Husbandry, Antiquities, etc. .............. 116–28
M. Tullius Cicero, Orations, Letters, Dialogues ............... 106–43
C. Julius Caesar, Commentaries ..................................... 100–44
T. Lucretius Carus, Poem "De Rerum Natura" ................... 95–52
C. Valerius Catullus, Miscellaneous Poems ....................... 87–47
C. Sallustius Crispus (SALLUST), Histories ..................... 86–34
Cornelius Nepos, Lives of Famous Commanders ................ ?

WRITERS OF THE AUGUSTAN AGE.

P. Vergilius Maro (VIRGIL), Eclogues, Georgics, Æneid .......... 70–19
Q. Horatius Flaccus (HORACE), Satires, Odes, Epistles .......... 65–8
Albius Tibullus, Elegies .............................................. 54–18
Sextus Propertius, Elegies .......................................... 51–15
T. Livius Patavinus (LIVY), Roman History ..................... 59–A.D. 17
P. Ovidius Naso (OVID), Metamorphoses, Fasti, etc. ........... 43–A.D. 18
M. Valerius Maximus, Anecdotes, etc. ............................ 31
C. Velleius Paterculus, Roman History ............................ 19–31
Pomponius Mela, Husbandry and Geography ...................... −50

WRITERS OF SILVER AGE.

A. Persius Flaccus, Satires ........................................... A.D. 34–62
L. Anneæus Seneca, Philosophical Letters, etc.; Tragedies .... −65
M. Anneæus Lucanus (LUCAN), Historical Poem "Pharsalia" .... 39–65
Q. Curtius Rufus, History of Alexander ........................... ?
C. Plinius Secundus (PLINY), Natural History, etc. ............. 23–79
Appendix.

C. Valerius Flaccus, *Heroic Poem* "Argonautica"  
C. Silius Italicus, *Heroic Poem* "Punica"  
D. Junius Juvenalis (Juvenal), *Satires*  
L. Annaeus Florus, *Historical Abridgment*  
M. Valerius Martialis (Martial), *Epigrams*  
M. Fabius Quintilianus (Quintilian), *Rhetoric*  
C. Cornelius Tacitus, *Annals, History*, etc.  
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (Pliny Junior), *Letters*  
C. Suetonius Tranquillus, *The Twelve Caesars*  
Appuleius, *Philosophical Writings*, "Metamorphoses"  
A. Gellius, *Miscellanea*, "Noctes Atticae"  

WRITERS OF CHRISTIAN PERIOD.

† Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus (Tertullian), *Apologist*  
† M. Minucius Felix, *Apologetic Dialogue*  
† Firmianus Lactantius, *Theology*  
D. Magnus Ausonius, *Miscellaneous Poems*  
Ammianus Marcellinus, *Roman History*  
Claudius Claudianus (Claudian), *Poems, Panegyrics*, etc.  
† Aurelius Prudentius Clemens, *Christian Poems*  
† Aurelius Augustinus (St. Augustine), *Confessions, Discourses*, etc.  
† Hieronymus (St. Jerome), *Homilies, Dialogue, Epistles*, etc.  
Anicius Manlius Boethius, *Philosophical Dialogue*  
Maximianus, *Elegies*  

† Christian writers.
INDEX OF VERBS.

In this index are given all the simple irregular verbs that the student will find in his reading. Compounds are to be looked for under simple verbs. If the simple verb is given with no mention of compounds, the compounds are conjugated like the simple verb. If to the simple verb a compound form is added (as "statuō [cōnstituō]"), the compounds vary from the simple verb, as may be seen under the particular compound mentioned. If different compounds of the same verbs present different irregularities, several specimens are appended to the simple verb (see e.g. agō). Full-face figures (thus, 91) designate the most important among several references. References are to sections, unless "p." is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ab-dō, 3, -dī, -ditum, 130. N.</th>
<th>ad-ago, 3, -āger, -āgerum [capiō].</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab-eō, see eō.</td>
<td>ante-capio, 3, -cēpi, -captum [capiō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-nuō, 3, -nūi, -nūitum (-nūtum) [-nuō].</td>
<td>ante-cellō, 3, —, — [-cellō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-oleō, 2, -ēvi (-ui), -itum, 131.</td>
<td>ante-ferō, like ferō, 170. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-olēscō, 3, -ēvi, — [aboleō].</td>
<td>ante-stō, 1, -stetī, —, 130. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs-condō, 3, -dī (-dīdi), -ditum [condō].</td>
<td>anti-stō, 1, -stetī, —, 130. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accersō, see arcessō.</td>
<td>aperiō, 4, aperuī, apertum, 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accidit (impers.), 145, 146. c.</td>
<td>apisciō, —, —, — (apisciō), 135. h.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-ciō, 4, reg. [-ciō].</td>
<td>arcessitum, —, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-colō, 3, -ui, — [colō].</td>
<td>atum, 123, 132. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-credo, —, -di, -ditum, 131.</td>
<td>atum, 128. 1; amās, 128. 5; amātus sum, amandus sum, 129, p. 157, foot-n.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-creō, see eō.</td>
<td>amiciō, 4, amixī (-cui), amictum, 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-dō, 3, -ēgi, -āctum [agō].</td>
<td>amō, pp. 92, 95; §§ 122. c, 125. a, 126. a, e-g, 127 (synopsis), p. 120, p. 121 (amāt, 9. c, 375. g; 5; amārat, 10. b; amāns, 113. c; amārim, amāsse, amāssem, 128. 1; amāssis, 128. 5; amātūrus sum, amandus sum, 129, p. 157, foot-n.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fā, -fā, -fātus, 144. c.</td>
<td>ante-capio, 3, -cēpi, -captum [capiō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fāri, affātus, 144. c.</td>
<td>ante-cellō, 3, —, — [-cellō].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fāri, -ferre, attulī, allātum, 170. a.</td>
<td>ante-ferō, like ferō, 170. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fās, -fās, -fāsum [fāgō].</td>
<td>ante-stō, 1, -stetī, —, 130. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fās, -fātus, 144. c.</td>
<td>anti-stō, 1, -stetī, —, 130. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fās, -fāsum [fāgō].</td>
<td>aperiō, 4, aperuī, apertum, 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-fās, -fātus, 144. c.</td>
<td>apisciō, —, —, — (apisciō), 135. h.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-gredior, -i, -gressum, 135. h.</td>
<td>arcessitum, —, —, —.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ag-tō, 1, -stitī, —, 130. N.</td>
<td>armō, 1, reg., 130.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ag-tō, 1, -stitī, —, 130. N.</td>
<td>arsenō, 3, -ārsī, ārsum, 131.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agnoscō, 3, -ōvi, āgnītum, 132. c.</td>
<td>arguō, 3, -āri, -ārum, 132. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regular comps., see ad-igo; for others, see cogō, circum-, per-, sat-agō.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of Verbs.

certum est (impers.), 146 c.
cieō (-ciō), ciēre (-cīre), cīvi, citum, 131 [ac-ciō, ex-ciō].
cingō, 3, cǐñixi, cǐntum, 132. a. -ciō, see cieō.
circum-agō, 3, ėgī, -āctum [agō).
circum-dō, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, 130. N.
circum-mūniō, 4, reg., 170. a.
circum-stō, 1, -stēti (-stītī), —, 130. N.
clangō, 3, clanxi, —, 132 a.
claudō, 2, —, —, see claudō (limp).
claudō (limp), 3, —, —, 132 f. N.
claudō (close), 3, clausi, clausum [ex-clūdō], 132 a.
clepō, 3, clepši, cleptum, 132 a.
clueō, 2, —, —, 131 N.
co-empō, 3, -ēmi, -emptum, 132 a.
coeipi, -isse, -pūrus, 143 a.
co-erceō, 2, -ui, -iūm [arceō],
cōgnōscō, 3, -gnīvī, -gnītum, 132 e.
cōgō, 3, co-ēgī, co-āctum, 10. d [agō].
colligō, 3, -ēgī, -lēctum, 132 e.
col-locō, 1, reg., 170. a.
colō, 3, colūi, cultum [ex-, ac-, in-], 132 c.
combūrō, 3, -ūsī, -ītum [ūrō].
com-miniscor, -i, -mentus, 135 h.
cōmō, 3, cōmpsī, cōptum, 132 a.
comperīō, 4, -perf, compertum, 133.
comperior, -īrī, compertus, 135 h. N.
com-pēscō, 3, -cul, —, 132 c.
com-pungō, 3, -nīxī, -nectum [pungō].
con-cinō, 3, -ūi, -t-centum [canō].
con-cupīscō, 3, -cupīvi, -cupitum, 167 a.
con-cutīō, 3, -cussi, -cussum, 132 a.
condiō, 4, reg., 166. d.
con-dō, 3, -dīdi, -dītum, 130 a.
con-necō, 3, -nuxi, -nexus, 11. f. N.
con-ferō, -ferre, -tuī, col-lātum, 170 a.
con-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum, 170 a. N.
con-fiteor, -ēri, -fessus [fateur].
con-gruo, 3, -fēci, -fectum [faco].
con-iciō, 3, -iīci, -ictum [iacō].
con-nitor [nitor], 11. f. N.
con-niveō [-niveō], 11. f. N.
con-stat, -āre, -ātūrum, 145, 146 c.
con-stitūō, 3, -uī, -stitūtum [statūō].
con-stō, 1, -stīti, -stītum (-stātum), 130. N.
con-suē-facciō, like faciō, 169 a.
con-suēscō, 3, -ēvi, -ētum (consuērat, 128 a. 1), 143 a. N., 169 a.
con-sulō, 3, -sulī, -sultum, 132 c.

arō, 1, reg., pp. 119, 120.
ar-rigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [regō].
aspicιō, 3, -ēxi, -ēctum [-spiciō].
assum, late form of adsum, 11. f. N.
at-tollō, 3, —, — [tollō].
audeō, auděre, ausus, 136 (ausim, 128. c. 3; sōdēs, 13. c).
audiō, 4, audīvi, auditum, pp. 104–5:
§ 122 a, 124. a, 125. a, 126. d, p. 120 (contracted forms, 128. a. 2).
ausferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablatum, 170 a.
augeō, 2, auxi, auctum, 131.
avē (havē), avěte, avěvo, 144 f.
avēo, 2, —, —, 131 N.
bene-dico, 3, -xi, -dictum, 169 b.
bibō, 3, bibi, bibitum, 132 f.
bullō, 4, reg., 166, d.
cadō, 3, cecīdī, cāsum [oc-cūdō], 132 b.
II. a. 2, 124. c, 125. b.
cacēo, 1, reg., 130.
cacētiō, 4, -ivi, —, 133.
cadō, 3, cecīdī, caesium [oc-cūdō], 10. a,
123 c. 1, 132 b.
cale-facio, like faciō, 169 a.
calefacto, 1, —, —, 169 a.
calēō, 2, -ui, calitūrus, 131, 167 a. N.
calleō, 2, -ui, —, 131 N.
cānō, 3, cecini, òctantum [con-cinō], 132 b.
cantīlō, 1, reg., 167 d.
capessō, 3, capessivi, -itum, 132 d, 167 c.
in-cipissō, 3, —, —.
capiō, 3, cēpi, captum [ac-ciōpio, etc.;
also ante-capiō], 125 b, 126 c, 132 c, p. 100 (capīpiēt, p. 89, foot-n. 3).
careō, 2, -ui, -itūrus, 131 N.
carpō, 3, -psi, -ptum [dé-cerpō, 124 b.
132 a.]
caveō, 2, cāvi, cauitum, 131.
cavillor, -āri, -ātus, 167 d.
cedo (Imperative), cedite (cette), 144 f.
cedeō, 3, cessī, 11. f. 1, cēssum, 11. a. 2, 132 a; ac-cedo, 11. f. 3.
-cellō, 132 c (only in comp., see per-
cellō, ex-cellō, ante-cellō, praecellō).
-cendō, 3, -cendi, -cēnsum (only in comp.,
as in-cendō), 132 f.
cēnsoō, 2, -ui, cēnsum, 131.
cernō, 3, crevī, crētum, 132 c.
Index of Verbs.

d-con-tingō, 3, -tigi, -tāctum [tangō] (con-
ingit, imper., 146. c).
d-coquō, 3, coxi, coctum, 132. a.
cor-ripiō, 3, -ripui, -reptum [rapiō].
cor-rūō, 3, -uī, — [ruō], 11. f. 3.
crēdō, 3, didī, ditum [-dō].
crepō, 1, -uī, itum, 130.
crēscō, 3, crēvi, crētum, 123. b. 1, 132. c.
crinōrō, -āri, -ātus, 135. f.
crōciō, 4, —, 133.
cubō, 1, -uī, cubitum, 130.
cūciūriō, 4, —, 133.
cūdō, 3, -cūdī, -cūsum [in-cūdō], 132. f.
cumbō [cubu], (see ac-cumbō), 132. c.
cupiō, 3, cupīvi, cupītum, 132. d, p. 86.
cupiscō, 3, see con-cupiscō.
curro, 3, cucurri, curso [in-curro], 132. b.
custodiō, 3, reg., 146. d.

dēbeō, 2, -uī, itum, 10. d.
dē-cerpō, 3, -eerpśi, -ercptum, 146. c
[carpō].
decet (impers.), decēre, decuit, 146. c.
dē-fendō, 3, -di, sum, 132. f.
dē-fetiscor, -ī, -fessus, 132. f. N.
dē-hiscoh, -hīvi, — [hischo].
dēlectat (impers.), 146. c.
dēleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, 122. c, 125. d, 126.
b. 2, 131.
dēmentiō, 4, -ivī, —, 133.
dēmō, 3, dēmpos, dēmptum, 132. a.
depso, 3, -sui, sum, 132. c.
dē-scendō, 3, -di, -sum [scando].
dē-siliō, 4, -sili, -sultum [saliō].
dē-sinō, 3, -sivī, -situm [sinō].
dē-sipiō, 3, —, — [sapiō].
dē-sistō, 3, -stīvit, -stītum [sisto].
dē-spicio, 3, -spēxī, -spēctum, 170. a.
dē-spondeo, 2, -dī, -sum [spondeō].
dē-struō, 3, -strūi, -strūctum, 170. a.
dēsum, esse, -fui [sum].
dē-vertor, -i, -sus, 135. i.
dīcō, 3, dīxi, dīctum, 123. c. 1, 132. a, 169.
b. p. 120. (dīxī, 128. b; dic, 128. c).
dicitō, 1, reg., 167. b and N.
dif-rērō, -ferre, dis-tuli, di-lātum [ferō].
dif-ītēor, -ēri, -fessus, 135. i.
dī-gnośco, 3, -gnōvī, — [noscō].
dī-ligō, 3, -lexī, -lecūtum, p. 103. foot-n.
(dīlēctus as adji., 113. c).
dī-lō, 3, -lūi, -lūtum [lūō].
dī-mico, 1, reg., 130. N.
dir-ībeō, 2, —, -itum, II. a. 1 [habeō].
dir-imō, II. a. 1 [emō].
di-rūō, 3, -ruī, -rutum [ruō].
dis-cēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, 170. b.
discō [Dic], 3, didicī, discitūrus, 132. b, p. 86. [So compounds.]
dis-crepō, -uī or -āvī, —, 130. N.
dis-iciō, 3, -iciēi, -iectum [iaciō].
dis-pandō, 3, -dī, -pānsum (-pessum)
[pandō].
dis-sideō, 2, -sēdī, -sēssum [sedeō].
dis-stō, 1, —, 130. N.
dis-viō, 3, -viśī, -visum, 132. a.
dō [DA] (give), dāre, dedī, dātum, 118.
N., p. 86, 123. f, 126. a, 130, p. 157.
foot-n. (duum, perdīum, 128. c. 2).
dō [DHA] (put), 3, -didi, -ditum (only
in comp., see abduō, crēdō, vēndō),
132. b.
doceō, 2, -uī, doctum, 131.
doleō, 2, -uī, -ītūrus.
domō, 1, -uī, -itum, 122. d, 130.
dūcō, 3, dūxī, dūctum, 132. a, 23. 3
(dūc, 128. c).

dēbullō, 4, —, 133.
edō, 3, edī, ēsum, eat, 132. e, p. 86, 140, 158. 1. a.
ed-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, put forth, 130. N.
ed-fērō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, 170. a.
edego, 2, -uī, —, 131. N.
ed-iciō, 3, -icēi, -iectum, 170. a. N. [iaciō].
ed-iciō, 3, -uī, -citum, 132. a.
ed-micō, 1, -micui, -micātum, 130. N.
ed-mineō, 2, -uī, — [-mineō].
ed-mo, 3, emī, emptum [ad-, co-, dir-imō],
9. a, 152. e.
ed-mptūriō, 4, —, 167. e.
ed-neco, 1, -uī (-āvī), nectum [nectō].
edns (in pot-ēns, see sum), 119. a.
edō, ire, ivī (ii), ētum, 128. e. 1, 141, 158.
b. 1. b; (abīvit, etc., 128. b, 2; adīvit, 144.
b. r.; ētum est, 141. a; itur, imper, 146.
b. a; adeō (adeor), 141. a; amīō, 144. c;
prōdeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, 144. d).
escit, escunt (see sum), 119. b.
est (see sum); 'st (in homōst, etc.), 13. b.
ēsuriō, 4, —, -itum, 167. e.
ē-vādō, 3, -vāsi, -vāsum, 128. b.
ē-venit (impers.), 145, 146. c.
ex-cio, 4, -iī, -itum (-iūtum) [-ciō].
ex-cellō, 3, -cellui, -celsum, 132. c.
ex-clīdō, 3, -clūsi, -clūsum [claudō].
ex-colō, 3, -ui, -cultum [colō].
Index of Verbs.

443

ex-erceō, 2, -cui, -citum [arceō].

explīcō, i, (unfold), -ūi, -itum; (explain), -āvi, -ātum, 130. N.

ex-plōdō, 3, -si, -sum [plaudō].

ex-stinguō, 3, -stinxi, -stinctum, 132. a.

exsulō, i, reg., 130, 166. a. 3.

exūo, 3, -ui, -ūtum, 166. c.

facesō, 3, facessi, facessitum, 132. f; 167. c.

faciō, 3, feci, factum, 132. e, 142, 170. a. N.

(faciō, 128. c; factum, 128. e. 3; afficiō, 11. f. 3; conāti, défuit, īnīt, efficiērī, interficāti, superficiō, 142. c; conāciō and other comps. in faciō, 142. a; benefaciō, etc., 142. b; consuefaciō, 169. a; calefaciō, id. calefaciō, id. j.)

-factō, i (in compounds), 169. a.

fallō, 3, fellellī, falsum, 132.

facciō, 3, farsi, facctum (-itum), [re-facciō], 133.

fateor, -ēri, fassus, [cōn-fīteor], 135. h.

fātīscō, 3, —, 132. f. N.

faveō, 2, fāvī, f auntum, 131.

-fenūō, 3, -fenī, -fensus, 132. f. (See de-fenūō).

feriō, 4 (no perfect or supine), 133.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (fer, 128. c), 23, 123. e, 158. 1. a [af, au, cōn, dif, ef, in- of, re-fenō].

ferōciō, 4, -ivi, —, 133.

ferveō, 2, ferbuī, —, 133.


figō, 3, fixī, fixum, 132. a.

findō [FID], 3, fidī, fissum, 123. c. 3, 124. c. N., 132. f.

fingō [FIG], 3, finxī, fictum, 132 a, 124. b. N

finiō, 4, -ivī, -itum, p. 90, foot-n. 1, 166 d.

fiō, fieri, factus, 142 (see faciō), p. 119 (fit, impero., 146. c).

flectō, 3, flexi, flexum, 132. a.

fleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, p. 86, 123. f, 126. b.

131 (flectis, 128. a. i.)

-flīgō, only in comp, see aflīgō.

flō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 126. a.

flōreo, 2, -ūi, —, 131. N.

flōvo, 3, flowī, cōnflōvī, 132. a, 166. c. N.

fodiō, 3, fōdiō, fōssum, 132. c.

[for] fārī, fātus, 126. a, 144. e, 158. 1. b

(praeśīitur, affāri, prōfātus, interātur, etc., 144. c).

fore, forem, etc. (see sum), 119. b. N.

fore, 147. c, 2.

foveō, 2, fōvi, fōtum, 131.

frangō [FRAC], 3, frēgī, frāctum [per-fringō], 132. e.

fremō, 3, fremūi, fremetum, 132. c.

frendō, 3, frešī, fressum, 132. a.

fricō, 1, -ui, frictum (fricātum), 130.

frigō, 2, frīxī, —, 131.

frigō, 3, frixi, frictum (frixum), 132. a.

frītinnīō, 4, —, —, 133.

fruor, -i, fructus (fruits), 135. b.

fuam, -ās, etc. (see sum), 119. b.

fugiō, 3, fūgi, fugitum, 23, 2, 123. b, 124. d, 132. e.

fugō, 1, reg., 166. a. 1.

fulciō, 4, fulsiō, fultum, 133.

fulgeō, 2, -si, —, 131. 9. d, 134.


fulgurat (impers.), 146. a.

fundō [FUD], 3, fūdiō, fūsum, 132. e.

fungor, -i, fūncus, 135. h.

furō, 3, furūi, —, 132. c.

fūimus, fūvisset (see sum), 119. b.

gannō, 4, —, —, 133.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus, 131, 136.

gemō, 3, gemuí, gemitum, 132. c.

gerō, 3, gessi, gestum, 132. a, p. 120.

gestiō, 4, -ivī, —, 133, 166. d.

gignō [GEN], 3, genuī, genitum, 9. d, 123. a.

2, 132. e.

glāscō, 3, —, —, 135. f. N.

glōciō, 4, -ivī, —, 133.

glūbō, 3, —, —, 132. f. N.

glūtīō, 4, reg., 133.

gradiō, -ī, gressus [ag-gredior], 135. h.

grandinat (impers.), 146. a.

-gruō, 3, see con-, in-gruō.

habēō, 2, -uī, -itum [in-hibeō; dābeō; dir-ibeō].

haereō, 2, haesi, haesum, 131.

hauriō, 3, hausi, haustum (haus-), 133.

havē, see avē.

hibernō, i, reg., 166. a. 2.

hiemō, i, reg., 166. a. 3.

hinnō, 4, —, —, 133.

hirīō, 4, —, —, 133.

hisco, 3, —, — [de-hisco], 132. f. N.

horreō, 2, horrūi, —, 131. N.
Index of Verbs.

laedō, 3, laeśi, laesum [il-łidō], 132. a.
laembō, 3, lambē, lambītum, 132. f.
languēo, 2, languī, —, 131.
lavō, -ere, lāvī, lūtum (lautum) (also reg. of 1st conj.), 132. e, 134.
leggō, i, lēgī, lēctum [colligō, to. d.; see also delīgō, dilīgō, interleggō, neglegō], 132. e, 9. a.
levō, i, -āvī, -ātum (āssō, 128. e, 5).
libet (lubet, to. a), -ere, -uīt, 146. a. (libi-
tum est, id. N.; libēns, id.).
licet, -ēre, -ittūrum, 145, 146. c. (līcītum
est, 146. c. N.; līcēns, id.).
-liciō, 3 [only in comp., see al-liiciō, ê-liiciō,
pel-liiciō], 132. a.
lingō, 3, līnxī, līctum, 132. a.
līnō [Lī], 3, lēvī (līvi), lītum, 132. e.
līnquō [LIČ], 3, līqui, -iīctum, 132. e.
līqueō, 2, līqui (licuī), —, 131.
līquor, -i, —, 135. i.
loquor, -i, locūtus (loquītūs), 135. h, 166. c. N.
lūceō, 2, lūxi, -lūctum, 131 (lūcet, impers.,
146. a).
łūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum, 132. a.
lūgeō, 2, lūxi, lūctum, 131.
lūō, 3, lūi, lūtum [dē-lūō], 132. f.
maereō, 2, —, —, 144.
mandō, 3, mandi, mānsum, 132. f.
maneō, 2, mānsi, mānsum, [per-maneō],
11. a, 2, 121. N. 2, 122. d, 131.
medeōr, -ērī, —, 135. i.
memīnī (-tō, -tote, -ēns), 143. c.
mereō or mereor, merēre or -rī, meritus,
135. ̣.g.
mergō, 3, mērsi, mērsum, 132. a.
mētor, -īrī, mēnsum, 135. h.
mētō, 3, messui, messum, 132. c.
metuō, 3, -uī, -ītum, 166. c.
micō, 1, micui, —, 130.
-mineō, 2, -uī, — [ē-, im-, pró-mineō].
-miniscor, -i, -mentus, 135. h [com., re-].
minuō, 3, -uī, -ītum (cf. acuō).
mīror, mīrāti, mīrātus, 135.
miscēō, 2, -cuī, mixtum (mīstum), 11. d, 131.
misereor, -ērī, miseritus (misertus), 146.
N.
miseret, 146. b.
mītescō, 3, —, —, 167. a.
mītō, 3, mīsi, missum, 123. b, 1, 132. a.
mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, 166. d.
mold, 3, molus, molitum, 132. c.
moneo, 2, -ui, -itum, 122. c, pp. 96-97.

mordeo, 2, momordi, morsum, 121. N, 2,

morior, -i (nir), mortuus, (moriturus), 135. h.
moveo, 2, movi, motum, 131 (commorat, 128. a. i).
mugio, 4, reg., 133.
mulceo, 2, mulsi, mulsum, 131.
mulgeo, 2, -si (-xi), mulsum (muletum),

multi-licio, i, reg., 130. N.
multio, 4, -ivi, —, 133.

nanciscor, -i, nactus (nancus), 135. h.
nascor, -i, natus, 135. h.

necessa est (impers.), 146. c.

necto [NEC], 3, nexi (nexui), nexitum, 132. a.
neglego, 3, neglxi, -lectum, p. 103. foot-

nec, 2, -evi, -etum, 126. b, 131.
necueo, -ire, nequitus, 144. g (nequitur,
etc., id. N).
ningi (impers.), nixit, 146. a.
nitor, -i, niusus (nixus) [c-o-nitor], 135. h.
niveo, 2, nivi (nixi), 131.
n0, 1, navi, —, 126. a, p. 157. foot-
nosco [GN0], 3, novi, nontum [ag-, co-
di-, ig-nosco] 132. e, 143. c. N (nisse,

nubio, 3, nupsi, nuptum, 132. a.
nuncio, late form of nuntio, 12. a.
nuntio, 1, reg., 12. a.

-nuo, 3, -nuui, -nuitum [ab-, ad-nuo], 132.

ob-liviscor, -i, oblivitus, 135. h.

obsolasci, 3, -evi, -etus (adj.) [oleo].

obtingit (impers.), 146. c.
ob-tineo, 2, -ti, -tentum [teneo].
ob-tundio, 3, -tudi, -tusum (tunsum)
[tundio].
ob-venio, 4, -veni, -ventum, 170. a.
ob-venit (impers.), 146. c.

oc-cidio, 3, -cidi, -casum [cad0], 11. f, 3.
oc-cidio, 3, -cidi, -caesum [caed0].
occullo, occulci, occultum, 132. c.

occurio, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum,

odii, odisse, osurus (perous), 143. b,

of-fero, -erre, obtuli, oblatum, 170. a.

oleo (grou), see ab-, ad-, 131.

oleo (smell), 2, ouli, —, 131.

operio, 4, operui, open tum, 133.

opportet, -ere, -uit (impers.), 146. c.
op-pango, 3, -pigi, -pactum [pango].

operior, -iri, opertus, 135. h.

oredor, -iri, orsus, 135. h, 166. a. N.

orior (3d), -iri, ortus, (oriturus) (so

comp.), 135. h, p. 86.

ovare, ovatus, 144. e.

pasciscor, -i, pactic, 135. h.

paenitet (impers.), -ere, -uit, 146. b

(-turus, -tendus, 146. b. N.).

pand, 3, pandi, pannum (passum, 11. a.

[dis-], 132. f.

pango [PAC], 3, pugi (pepigi), pactum,

[im-pingo; op-pango], 132. b, 23. 2.

parci, 3, percar (parsi), parsum, 132. b

(parcurit, impers., 146. d).

pareo, 2, -ul, pariturus, 131.

pario, 3, peperi, partum (pariturus),

[com-, re-perio], 132. b.

partio, 4, reg., but see next word.

partior, partiri, partitus, 135.

parturio, 4, -ivi, —, 167. c.

pascio, 3, pavi, pustum, 132. c.

pateo, 2, patui, —, 131. N.

patior, -i, passus [per-petior] 11. a, 2,

135. h.

paveo, 2, pavi, —, 131.

pecto, 3, pexi (pexui), pexum, 132. a.

peLiicio, 3, -lexi, -lectum [-licio].

pellio, 3, pepuli, pulsnum [im-pellio, re-
pellio], 10. a, p. 86, 123. b, 1, 132. b.

pendeo, 2, pependi, pensus, 131.

pendo, 3, pependi, pensus, 132. b.

per-agio, 3, -egi, -actum, 170. a. N.

per-cellio, 3, -culi, -culsum, 132. c.

per-ciio, see -ci0.

per-fringio, 3, -frigi, -fractum [pang0].

pergio, 3, (11. b), perrxi, perractum,

132. a.

per-legio, 3, -legi, -lectum [lego].

per-maneo, 2, -mansi, -mensus [meneo].

per-osus [odi], 143. b.

per-petior, -i, -pessus, 135. h.

per-terreo, 2, -uui, -itum, 170. c. N.

pessum-d0, -aire, -dedi, -datum, 130. N.

petiss0, 3, —, —, 167. c.
petō, 3, petivī, petitum, 122. d, 124. f, 125. b. N. 2, 132. a.

piget (impers.), -ēre, piguit, 146. b (pigitum est, id. N.).

pingō [pic]. 3, pīnxī, pīctum, 132. a, p. 121.

plānūs, 3, -sī, pīns-(pīnstum, pīstum), 132. f. pīo, 1, reg., 166. a. 2.

placēō, 2, -uī, -ītum (placet, imper., 146. c).

plangō, 3, planxi, planctum, 132. a.

plaudō, 3, plausī, plausum [ex-plōdō, etc.; id. N.].

pledō, 3, plexūs, 130. a, p. 86.

plectō, 3, plēxi (-xui), plēxum, 123, b. 1, 132. a, p. 122.

pluit, 3, pluit (plūvit), p. 86, 146. a (pluint, id. N.).

ponsō [pos], 3, posuī, positum, 132. c.

porr-iciō, 3, no perf., -rectum [iaciō], 170. b.

poscō, 3, poposci (poscitūrus), 132. b (so comp.).

possideō, 2, sēdi, sēssum [sedeō].

possum, posse, potuī, —, 137.

pot-ensis, 119. a (see sum).

potior, -iōri, potius.

pōtō, 1, -āvi, pōtum, 130.

praeebō [11. b. 1], 2, -uī, -ītum.

prae-cellō, 3, no perf., no sup. [-cellō].

prae-fātur, 144. c.

prae-ligō, 3, lēgit, lēctum [legō].

prae-sēns, 119. a (see sum).

praestat (impers.), 146. c.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, 137, 347. b.

prandeō, 2, prandi, prānsum, 131.

prehendō (prendō), 3, -di, prehēnsum, 132. f.

premō, 3, pressī, 11. f. 1, press-[re-premō], 132. a.

prendo, seeprehendō.

prōd-eō, 4, -iī, -ītum, 144. d.

pro-fātus, 144. c.

pro-ficio, 3, -fēcī, -fectum, 130.

pro-ficiscor, -i, profectus, 132. h, 167. a. N.

pro-fiteor, -ēri, -fessus.

prō-mineō, -ēre, —, — [-mineō].

prōmō, 3, -mpsi, -mptum, 132. a.

prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, 137.

prō-video, 2, -vīdī, -vīsum, 166. c.

pūbēscō, 3, pūbui, 166. b. N.

pudet (impers.), pudere, 146. b (pudendus, id. N.). puduit or pudendum est.

pūgnō, 1, reg.

pūgnātur (impers.), -āri, -ātum, 145, 146. d.

pungō [puc], 3, pupugi, punctum [com-], 132. b, p. 120.

pūniō, 4, -ivi, -ītum, 166. a. 1, N.

quae-rō, 3, quasēvi, quaesītum [re-quāro], 132. d (cf. quaeāro).

quae-ō, -ēre, 144. d (cf. quaeāro).

quaessō, 1, reg., 167. b.

quatiō, 3, —, quaassum [con-cutio], 132. a.

queō, quire, quivi, quītus, 144. g. (quītum, etc., nequeō, id. N.).

queror, -i, questus, 135. h.

quiēscō, 3, quiēvi, quiētum, 132. c.

rabō, 3, —, 132. f. N.

rādō, 3, rāsi, rāsum, 132. a.

rapeā, 3, rapuū, raptum, 132. c (ērēpsēm-us, 128. b) [cor-ripiō].

raucō, 4, rauși, rausum, 133.

re-cipīō, 3, -cēpi, ceptum [ciapiō] (re-cēpsō, 128. e. 3).

re-clūdō, 3, -sī, -sum, 170. b.

red-dō, 3, reddīdi, reddītum [dō].

re-fēcio, 4, -fēsī, -fertum [fāciō].

re-ferō, -ferre, retullūi (retulli), re-latūm [ferō].

re-fert, -ferre, -tulit (impers.), 146. c.

re-ficō, 3, -fēci, -fectum, 170. b.

regō, 3, rēxi, 24. N., rectum [ar-riqō, etc.; pērgō, sūrgō], 132. a, p. 120.

re-līgō, 3, -liquī, -lictum [linquō].

reminiscor, -i, —, 135. i.

reor, rēri, ratus, 126. b, 135. h, 166. b. N.

re-pellō, 3, repulpūs, repulpum [pellō].

reperīō, 4, repperī, repertum, 133.

re-plicō, 1, reg., 130. N.

re-pro, 132. a, repūs, rēptum, 132. a.

re-primo, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō].

re-quirō, 3, -sīvi, -sītum [quaerō].

re-sipiscō, 3, -sipivī (sipuī), — [sapiō].

re-spondeō, 2, -di, -sum [spondeō].

re-stat (impers.), 146. c.

restō, 1, -stīfi, —, 130. N.

revertor, -i, reversus, 135. h (8. N.).

rideō, 2, rīsi, rīsum, 131. p. 120.

rōdō, 3, rōsi, rōsum, 132. a.
Index of Verbs.

ruñó, 3, rúdiñ, rúditum, 132. d.
rumpó [rúp], 3, rúpí, ruptum, 132. e.
ruñó, 3, rúi, rutum (rutum) [dǐ- cor-],
132. f, 132. f.
saepiñó, 4, saepeiñ, saeptum, 133.
saliñó, 4, salui (saliñ), saltum [dë-siliñ],
133.
salviç, salvère, 144. f.
sanciñó [SAC], 4, sanxiñ, sanctum, 124. b. N.,
133.
sapiñó, 3, sapiñi (sapuiñ), —, 132. d.
sarciñó, 4, sarsiñ, sartum, 133.
sāriñó, see sarriñó.
sarpiñó, 3, sarpñiñ, sarpñtum, 132. a.
sarriñó, 4, -iviñ (-uiñ), -itum, 133.
sat-agó, 3, like agó.
satis-dñó, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, 130. N.
scabó, 3, scabī, —, 133. e.
scalpó, 3, scalps, sculptum, 132. a.
scatèo, -ère or -ére, —, —, 134.
scatùriñó, 4, —, —, 133.
scando, 3, scandi, scānsum [dē-scendñó],
132. f.
scīn' (=scisne), 13. c, see sciñó.
scindò [SCID], 3, scidī, scīssum, 124. c.
N., 132. f.
sciñó, 4, -iviñ, scītum; scīn, 13. c (scītō, -tōte,
128. d).
scīsco, 3, scīviñ, scītum, 132. c, 167. a.
scribó, 3, scripsiñ, scriptum, 11. f, 2, 132. a.
sculpó, 3, sculptūs, sculptum, 132. a.
sēcinò, 3, -crēviñ, -crētum, 170. b.
secoñ, 1, -uiñ, sectum (also secūtārūs), 130.
sedeò, 2, šēdiñ, sēssum [dis-, pos-sideō,
etc.; super-sedeō], 131.
sēns, 119. a (in praeñēns, absēns).
tsentiñó, 4, sēnīñ, sēnsum, 132.
sepelíñó, 4, sepeliñīñ, sepultum, 133.
sequor, -i, secūtus (sequūtus), 135. k.
seró, 3, seruiñ, sertum, entwine, 132. c.
seróñ, 3, sēviñ, satum, saw, 126. c, 132. e.
sERPó, 3, sarpñiñ, sarpñtum, 132. a.
serviñó, 4, -iviñ, -itum, 166. a. í. N.
servó, 1, -āviñ, -ātum, 166. a. í. N.
sidóñ, 3, sidīñ (sēdiñ), -sēssum, 132. f. 6.
siem, sīes, siet, sient, 119. b (see sum).
sileò, 2, -uñ, —, 131. N.
singultúñó, 4, -iviñ, singultum, 133.
sinóñ, 3, sīviñ, situm, 121. N. í., 132. e
(siriñ, etc., 128. a. 2).
sistô [STA], 3, stiñ, statum, 132. b, p. 14,
foot-n. 1, 158. 1. b.
sitiñó, 4, -iviñ, —, 166. d.
sōdès (=sī audēs), 13. c.
solēñ, solèreñ, solitus, 131, 136.
solvó, 3, solviñ, solūtum, 132. f, 124. e,
166. c. N.
sonóñ, 1, -uiñ, -itum (fut. part. also -ātūrus),
130, 124. a.
sopìñó, 4, -iviñ, -itum, 123. a.
sorbeñó, 2, sorbuiñ (rarely sorpñiñ), sorptum
(so also compns.), 131, 166. f. N.
spargóñ, 3, spārśiñ, spārsum [ad-spergo],
132. a.
spernoñ, 3, sprēviñ, sprētūm, 9, d, 124. a. N.
132. c.
-spiciñó, 3, -spēxiñ, -spēctum, 132. a, p. 86,
p. 77. foot-n.
spondeñó, 2, soponndiñ, spōnsum [re-], 131.
'st, for est (in homost, etc.), 13. b.
stabiliñó, 4, reg., 166. d.
statúñó, 3, -uñ, -itum [con-stituñó], 123. d,
166. c.
sterñóñ, 3, strāviñ, strātum, 9, d, 132. e, p.
86, 124. a. N.
stertòñ, 3, stertuiñ (stertiñ), —, 132. c.
stimulò, 1, reg., 166. a. 2.
-stinguñó, 3, -stinxīñ, -stinctum [only in
comp., as ex-], 132. a.
stò, stāreñ, stetiñ, statum (st-it-), 130, p. 14,
foot-n. 1, 118. N., 126. a, cf. cōnstat,
p. 120, p. 157. foot-n. [compounds,
130. N.].
strepòñ, 3, strepuiñ, strepētum, 132. c.
strīdeñó, 2, strīdiñ, —, 131.
strīdòñ, 3, strīdiñ, —, 132. f.
stringòñ, 3, strīnxīñ, strīctum, 132. a.
strūñó, 3, strūxiñ, strūctum, 132. a.
studeñó, 2, -uñ, —, 131. N.
suādeñó, 2, suāsiñ, suāsum, 131.
sub-rideñó, 2, rīsiñ, rīsum, 170. c. N.
sub-struñó, 3, -struxīñ, -strūctum, 170. a.
-suēscóñ, 3, -suēviñ, -suētum, 132. c.
su̯ferōñ, cf. tollōñ.
sūgòñ, 3, sūxiñ, sūctum (sūgebō, 120. a).
sūltis (s il vultis), 13. c (see volōñ).
sum, esse, 123. c; fuiñ, 119, 120. N., 128. c.
2, p. 119, p. 120, p. 121, 158. 1. a (siem,
119. b; fore, 147. c. 2; escit, escunt,
119. b; forem, 119. b. N.; fum, 119. b;
fulvius, fulvīset, 119. b; ēns, ēsēns,
119. a; homōst, etc., 13. b).
sūmòñ, 3, sūmpsīñ, sūptūm, 11. c, 132. a.
suòñ, 3, sūiñ, sūtum, see acuo.
super-dññ, -dāre, -dediñ, -datum, 135. N.
Index of Verbs.

super-fluó, 3, —, — [fluó].
super-secéó, like sedéó.
super-stó, 1, -stéó, —, 130. N.
super-sum, see sum (superest, impers.,
146. c).
sup-plicó, 1, reg., 130. N.
súrgó, 3, surrexi, surrectum, 132. a, 10. b.
tábeó, 2, -uí, —, 166. b. N.
taceó, 2, -uí, -ium, 131.
taedet (impers.), -ère, taeduit, pertaesum
est, 146. b.
tangó [TAG], 3, tetigi, tæctum [con-tangó],
123. c, 3, 132. b.
tegó, 3, tēxi, tæctum; 122. c, 123. b, 124. b,
136. c, e, 132. a, pp. 98-99.
temnó, 3, tempsi, temptum, 123. b. 1,
132. a.
tendó [TEN], 3, tetendi (-tendi), 132. b;
tensum (tentum), 125. b. N. 1.
teneó (-tineó), 2, tenui, tentum [ob-tineó],
131.
tergeó, 2, tērsi, tērsum, 131.
tergó, 2, tērsi, tērsum, 132. a.
teró, 3, trivi, tritum, 132. d (con., 11.
f. 2).
texó, 3, texui, textum, 132. c.
timeó, 2, -uí, —, 131. N.
tingó (tinguó), 3, tīnxi, tīnc tum, 125. b.
N. 1, 132. a.
tinnó, 4, reg., 133.
tolló, 3, sustulii, sublātum [at-tolló], 132.
f. N.
tondeó, 2, totondi, tōnsum, 131.
tonó, 1, -ulii, -itum, 124. c, 130.
torqueó, 2, torśli, tortum, 131.
torreó, 2, torru, tostum, 131.
trahó, 3, tráxi, trāctum, 132. a (trāxe,
128. b).
tremó, 3, tremuli, —, 132 c.
tribuó, 3, tribui, tribūtum, cf. acuó,
trūdó, 3, trūsi, trūsum, 132. a.
tueor,-eri, tuítus (tūtus), 135. b [in-tueor].
tumeó, 2, —, —, 166. b.
tundó [TUD], 3, tutudi, túnsum (-tūsum)
[ob-tundo], 132. b.
turgeó, 2, tūrsi, —, 131.
tussiò, 4, —, —, 133.
ulciscor, -i, ulitus, 135. b.
ungó (-uō), 3, ūnxi, ūnc tum.
urgeó, 2, ĕrsi, —, 131.
ūrō, 3, ĕssi, ūstantum (so compus., cf. also
combrūo), 132. a.
ūtor, -i, ĕsus, 135. b.
vacat (impers.), 146. c.
vādó, 3, vāsī, -vāsum [ē-], 132. a, 144.
vāgiō, 4, -ivi, —, 133.
vēhó, 3, vēxi, vectum, 132. a, p. 87.
foot-n.
velló, 3, vellī (vulsi), vulsum, 132. f.
vēn-dó, 3, -didī, -ditum, 258. b. R.
vēnēo, 4, -ivi, -itum (be sold), 258. b. R.
vēniō, 4, vēnī, ventum (come), 133, p. 86.
vēnum-dō, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, 130. N.
vercor, verēri, veritus, 135.
vergō, 3, —, —, 132. f. N.
verrō, 3, verrī, versum, 132. f.
vertō (vortō, 10. d), 3, vertī, versum, 132.
f.; mid., 111. a, 124. c.
vescor, -i, —, 135. i.
vesperāscit (impers.), 146. a, 167. a.
veto, 1, -ulii, -itum, 130.
videó, 2, vidi, visum, 131.
videor,-eri, visus (seem) (vidētur, impers.,
146. c).
vieō, 2, —, -ētim, 131.
vigilō, 1, reg., 166. a. 3.
vin (= visne, see voló), 13. c.
vinciō, 4, vinxi, vinc tum, 122. d, 133.
vincō [VIC], 3, vici, victum, 132. e.
visō [VID], 3, visi, visum, 132. f, 167.
e. N.
vivō, 3, vivī, victum, 132. a (vixet, 123. b).
vocō, 1, -āvi, -ātim, see p. 87. foot-n., p.
157. foot-n. ( vocāri er, 128. e, 4).
volō, velle, volui, 123. e, 128. e. 2 (vult,
123. e; sūltis, 13. c; vīn, 13. c).
volvō, 3, volvi, volvītum, 132. f.
vomō, 3, vomu, vomitum, 132. c.
voveō, 2, vōvī, vōtum, 131.
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS.

Note.—The numerical references are to sections, with a few exceptions in which the page (p.) is referred to. The letters refer to subsections. The letter N. signifies Note; R., Remark. Abl. = ablative; acc. = accusative; adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb; apod. = apodosis; app. = appositive; comp. = comparison or compound; compar. = comparative; constr. = construction; conj. = conjunction or conjuction; dat. = dative; gen. = genitive; gend. = gender; ind. disc. = indirect discourse; loc. = locative; prep. = preposition; subj. = subject or subjunctive; vb. = verb; w. = with. (Other abbreviations present no difficulty.)

A, quantity in increment, 350, 351; quantity of a final, 348. 4.
ā or o, Indo-Eur. vowel, p. 142. foot-n.; primary suffix, 160. c. 1.
ā, characteristic of decl. I., 32; acc. of Gr. nouns in, 63. f; as nom. ending, decl. III., gend., 65. c, 67. d.
ā, in decl. I., 32; stem-vowel of conj. I., 122, 123, 126. a, 160. a; in subjunctive, 126. b-d; preps. in -ā; adv. use of, 261. d.
Ā (ab, abs), use, 152. b, 153, 260. b, 263; compounded with vbs., 170. a; with abl. of agent, 246; with place from which, 258; with names of towns, id. a. N. 1; expressing position, 260. b; in comp., with dat., 229; with abl., 243. b; with abl. of gerund, 301. Ability, verbs of, constr., 271; in apod., 308. c.
Abbreviations of praenomens, 80. d; other abbreviations, p. 428.
ABLATIVE, Etymology; meaning, 31. f; in -ābus, 36. e; in -d, 36. f, 40. g, 62. a, 70. k; of I-stems, decl. III., 55. e; rules of form, 57; nouns having abl. in -ī, 57. a, b; of decl. IV., in -ubus, 70. d; abl. used as supine, 71. a; of adj.s, decl. III., 87. a; prepositions followed by, 152. b; adverbial forms cf. 148. e, cf. N. β.
ABLATIVE, Syntax (§§ 242-255); meaning and classification, 242 and N.; Separation, 243; w. vbs. of freedom, etc., id. a; w. comp., id. b; w. adj.s of freedom, etc., id. c; w. opus and usus, id. e. Source and material, 244; w. participles, id. a; w. cōn-stäre, etc., id. c; w. facere, id. d; w. nouns, id. e. Cause, 245; w. dig-itus, etc., id. a; causa, grātiā, id. c. Agent, 246. Comparison, 247; opin-ōne, spō, etc., id. b; w. allius, id. d; w. advs., id. e. Manner, 248; accom-paniment, id. a; means, id. c; w. dōnō, etc., 225. d; w. ūtor, fruor, etc., 249. Degree of difference, 250; quo ... eō, 106. c, 250. R. Quality, 251; price, 252; charge or penalty, 220. b. Specification, 253. Place, 254; w. vbs. and frētus, id. b. Ablative absolute, 255; adverbial use, id. c; replacing subord. clauses, id. d; supplying place of perf. act. part., 250. a. Abl. of time, 256; of time w. quam, 262, N. 2; of place from which, 258; names of towns, domus, rūs, id. a; ex urbe Rōmā, id. b. N. 3; Locative abl., id. c, f; way by which, id. g; with transitive compounds, 239. b. N. 1; time within which, 259. c; distance of time, id. d. Abl. with prepositions, 152. b, c, 260-63; with ex for part. gen., 216. e; with prō (in defence of), 236. R.; with palam, etc., 261. b; abl. of gerund, 301; equiv. to pres. part., id. foot-n. (See N., p. 245.)
Abounding, words of, w. abl., 248. c; w. gen., 223.
Absence, vbs. of, w. abl., 243. a.
Absolute use of vb., 175. b. N. 2, 237. N.; absolute case, see abl. absolute. Abstract nouns, gend., 29. 2; in pl., 75. c; endings, 163. b, c, f, w. neut. adj., 187. c, 189. a, b; abstract quality denoted by neut. adj., 189. a.

absum, constr., 231. a.

abus, in dat. and abl. pl., decl. I., 36. e. àc, see atque; àc si, see acsi.

Acatalectic verse, 359. a.

accédit ut, 332. Accent, rules of, 19; marks of, id. d. N.; in decl. II., 40. b; in comps. of fació, 142. b; musical, 358.

acceptum, 292. N. 2.

Accidents, p. 163, foot-n. 2.

accidit, synopsis, 145; constr., 332. a.

accingō, constr., 225. d.

accommodátus, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. foot-n.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 248. a; orig. separate case, p. 245.

Accomplishment, vbs. of, w. subjunc., 332.

ACCUSATIVE, Etymology, 31. d; in -m and -s, 33. c; origin of -m, p. 205; in -im, decl. III., 56. a, b; in -is (pl.), 58; in -a, 63. f; acc. of decl. IV., used as supine, 71. a; neut. acc. used as adv., 148. d, cf. N. a; fem. used as adv., id. e.

ACCUSATIVE, Syntax, 237-40 (see notes pp. 205, 235); w. verbs of remembering, 219 and a, b; and gen. w. verbs of reminding, id. c; w. impersonals, 221, 217. c, 37. e; w. dat., 225; w. compounds of ad, ante, ob, 228, a; verbs varying between acc. of end of motion and dat., 225, b; w. ad, for dat., 234. b; after proplor, etc., id. e; direct object, 177, 237; w. íuvō, etc., 227. a; acc. or dat. w. vbs., 227, b, c; acc. w. verbs of feeling and taste, 237, b, c; with comps. of circum and trāns, id. d; cognate acc., 238; two accusatives, 239; acc. w. pass. of verbs of asking, etc., 239. R.; adverbial use of, 240. a, b; synecdochical acc., id. c; in exclamation, id. d; duration and extent, id. e, 256, 257; end of motion, 258; names of towns, domus, rūs, id. b; Rōmam ad urbem, id. N. 3; acc. w. ante diem, 259. e; subject of inf., 173. 2, 240. f, 272, 330; w. prepositions, 152. a, c; w. ad or in to denote penalty, 220. b, 3; w. ad w. réfert, etc., 222. b; w. pridiē, propius, etc., 261. a; acc. of gerund, 300; of anticipation, 334. c; subject in indirect discourse, 338, and a.

Accusing and acquitting, vbs. of, constr., 220.

ácer, decl., 84. a; comp., 89. a.

-áceus, adj., ending, 164. g

aciēs, decl., 74. d.

acquēscō, with abl., 254. b.

ásci, with subjunc., 312.

Actions, names of, 193; nouns of, w. gen., 217.

Active voice, 108. a, 111; change to pass., 177. a.

Acts, nouns denoting, 163. c.

acus, gender, 69. a.

-acus (-áicus), adj., ending, 164. c.

ad, use, 152. a, 153; in compi., 170. a; w. acc. to denote penalty, 220. c; in comp., w. dat., 228, 229; in comp., w. acc., 228. a; w. acc. w. adj., 234. b; end of motion, 258, cf. 225. b; w. names of towns, 258. b. N. 2; w. names of countries, 258. N. 2; meaning near, 259. f; in expressions of time, id. b; following its noun, 263. N.; w. gerund, 300.

adamas, decl., 63. e.

additur, constr., 332.

adeō (verb), constr., 228. a.

adeō ut, 319. R.

-adēs, patronymic ending, 164. b.

adimō, constr., 229.

Adjective phrase, 179.

Adjective pronouns, see Pronouns.

ADJECTIVES, Etymology. Definition, 25. b; formed like nouns, p. 47; stems, id. foot-n. 1. Declension, 81-87; decl. I. and II., 81-83; decl. III., 84-87; decl. III., three terminations, 84. a; one termination, 85. Comparison, 89-91; decl. of comparative, 86. a; advs. derived from adj., 148; numeral adj., 94, 95; derivative adj., 164.

ADJECTIVES, Syntax and use. As advs., 88. d (cf. 92), 148. d, e, 191; as nouns 88. a, 188, 189, 218. d; masc. adj., 88. b; adj. of com. gend., 88. b; nouns used as adj., 88. c, 188. d, advs. used as adj., 188. e; participles used as adj., 291. Agreement of adj., 186, 187; attribute and predicate, 187. a, b;

adiuô, w. acc., 227. a.
admodum, use, 93. d.
admoneô, constr., 219. e.
Admonishing, vbs. of, constr., 330. 2, 331.
Adonic verse, 371. 3.
adspergô, constr., 225. d.
adulôr, constr., 227. b.
Adverbal acc., 240. a, b, cf. 238. a. N.
Adverbal conjunctions, 25. b. N.
Adverbal phrases, 148. N. 8, 179.
ADVERBS, defined, 25. f; formed from adj.s., 88. d and N., 92, 148; case-forms or phrases, p. 123. N.; comparison of advs., 92; numeral advs., 96; correlative advs. used as conj.s., 107, 208. d.
Classification of advs., 149; correlative forms of advs. of place, 149. foot-n.
Advs. used as adj.s., 188. c; adj.s. w. adverbal force, 191; adverbial acc., 240. a; adverbial abl. abs., 255. c.
Special uses, 150, 151. SYNTAX, 207; adv. w. nouns, 207. d; part. gen. w. advs., 216. a. 4; dat. w. advs., 234. a; comp. of adv. followed by quam, 247. e; adv. as protasis, 310. a.
Adversative conjunctions, 154. a. 2, 155. b.
adversus, 152. foot-n.; w. acc., id. a; as adv., 261. d.
ae, diphthong, 1; sound of, 16. N. 3, 12. c.
aedês, sing. and pl., 78. c.
aeger, decl., 82. c.
amulôr, constr., 227. b.
Aenôadês, decl., 37.
Aenôës, decl., 37.
aequális, decl., 57. a; constr. w. gen., 218. d.
aequô âc, 234. a. N. 2.
aequô (abl.), w. comp., 247. b.
aequeor, decl., 49.
âôr, decl., 63. f; use of pl., 75. b.
aês, decl., 67. b; use of pl., 75. b.
aetês, decl., 54.
aethêr, decl., 63. f.
Affecting, acc. of, p. 235.
affinis, decl., 57. b; constr. w. gen., 218. d.
Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 150; nonne expecting affirm. answer, 210. e; ways of saying yes, 212. a.
Affix, close and open, 24. N.
Agency, nouns of, 162; rel. clause equivalent to, 203. b.
Agent, dat. of, w. gerundives, 232; w. perf. parts., id. a; abl. of, 246; agent regarded as means, id. b; animal as agent, id. N.
ager, decl., 38.
agogredior, constr., 228. a.
Agnomen, 80. b.
agô, forms of, omitted, 205. c.
Agreeing, verbs of, with gerundive, 294. d (cf. 331. d).
Agreement, 181; forms of, 182; of nouns, 183; in appos., 184; in predicate, 185; of adj.s., 186; of demonstrative pronouns, 195; of possessive pronouns, 197; of relatives, 198, 199; of verbs, 204, 205.
-âi for -ae, decl. I., 36. a; 347. a. 2.
-âius in Prosody, 347. d, note r.
-al and -ar, neuters in (decl. III.), 53. c, 57. a, 67. a.
al, ending, 164. i. 7; list of nouns in, p. 30. foot-n. i.
alacer, decl., 84. a; comp., 91. d.
albus, not compared, 89. N.
Alcaic verse, 371. 9, 10.
Almanian strophe, 364. a.
-âle, noun-ending, 164. i. 7; list of nouns in, p. 29. foot-n. 2.
al-, old stem, 83. foot-n.
alênus, for possessive gen. of allus, 83. b, 190, 214. a.
aliqui (-quis), decl., 105. d; derivation and use, id. N.; meaning, 202. a, b.
aliquot, indeclinable, use, 106. a.
al-, âalis, adj. endings, 164. d.
allus, decl., 83 and foot-notes, gen. id., b, cf. 214. a; compounds, 83. b; allus with abl., âc, nisi, quam, 247. d.
allus ... allus, alter ... alter, 203.
Alphabet, p. 1; vowels and diphthongs, 1; consonants, 2; table of vowels and consonants, 2, 5; early forms of letters, 6, 7.
alter, decl., 83; gen. and comp.s., id. b; use, 203; reciprocal use, 99. d, 203.
alter...alter, 203.
altera est res ut, 332, foot-n.
alterutem, decl., 83. b; use, 203. a.
Although, how expressed, 313, 320. e.
alvos (alvus), gend., 39. a.
am-, see amb-.
am- (am-, an-), inseparable prefix,
170. b; -am, adv. ending, 148. N. e.
ambagos, decl., 59.
ambo, decl., 94. b.
amens, decl., 87. a.
amplius, without quam, 247. c.
amussim, acc., 56. a, 77. 2.
an-, see amb-.
an, anne, annon, in double questions,
211.
an (in, on), primary suffix, 160. u.
Anacrasis, 355. g.
Anapaeast, 356. b; anapæstic verse, 360, 374. a.
Anaphora, 344. f.
anas, decl., 67. d.
anceps, decl., 87. a.
Anchises, decl., 37.
Andromaché, decl., 37.
-aneus, adj. ending, 164. g.
aminal, decl., 52.
Animals, gend. of names of, 29, 2, 30, id.
b; regarded as means, 246. b. N.
ami (loc.), w. adjs., 218. c. R.; w. verbs, 223. c.
Ano, decl., 67. b.
annalis, decl., 57. a.
Answers, forms of, 212.
ant, primary suffix, 160. e; ant-, ent-, stem endings, 63. e.
ant, 152. a; uses, 153; compounded
w. vbs., 170. a; in compounds, w. dat., 228, w. acc., id. a; adverbial use of,
261. d; followed by quam, 262.
ant dieum, 259. e.
Antecedent, its use with relative, 198, 200;
undefined, constr., 320; see indefinite antecedent.
antecédo, constr., 228. a.
anteeo, constr., 228. a.
antecedrior, constr., 228. a.
Antepenult, 19. def.
tequem, 327; in ind. disc., 336. B. a.
N. 2.
Anticipatio, acc. of, 334. c; becomes nom., id. R.
Antithesis, 344. f.
anus, gend., 69. a.
-anus, adjs. in, 164. e.
Aorist (= hist. perf.), 115. c 2, 279.
apage, 144. f.
à parte, 242. N.; 260. b.
apertus, comp. of, 89. e.
apis, decl., 59.
Apodosis, defined, 304; introduced by cor-
rel., id. b and N.; may be subord., id. e; forms of, 305, 306 ff.; potential subj.,
311. a and R.; subj. of modesty, id. b; verbs of necessity, etc., id. c; complex
apod., id. d; apodosis omitted, 312; apod. in Ind. Disc., 337.
Appointing, verbs of, constr., 239. a.
Apposition, see appositive.
Appositive, defined, 184; agreement of,
183, 184. b; w. locative, id. c; gen. as
appositive to possessive, id. d, 197 e; gen. used for app., 214. f; so dat., 231, b;
rel. clause equivalent to appositive,
201. b; acc. as app. to a clause, 240.
g; appositive instead of voc., 241. a;
app. in connection with inf., 270. N. 2.
apus ad, 234. b; aptus, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299, foot-n.; aptus qui,
320. f.
apud, 152. a; use, 153; in quoting, 258.
c 2, N. 2.
aquälis, decl., 57. a.
-ar, nom. ending, decl. III., 51. c, 53. c,
57. a; p. 30, foot-n. 1; gend., 65. c, 67. a.
-ar, -àris, nouns in, 67. b.
arbor (-os), decl., 48. d.
arceo, constr., 225. d. N. 2.
Archilochian verse, 368.
arctus, gend., 39. a.
arcs, gend., 69. a.
färdeo, w. abl., 245. a. 2.
-aria, suffix, 164. i. 2.
-aría, adj. ending, 164. d.
-àrium, noun ending, 164. i. 3.
-àrius, adj. ending, 164. b; noun, id. i. 1.
Aristophanic verse, 371. 2.
Arrangement of words, 343-46.
Arts and thesis, 358 and foot-n.
Arts, names of, decl. I., 37. b.
artus, decl., 70. d.
a8, primary suffix, 160. w.
-a8, in acc. pl. of Gr. nouns, 63. f, 67. c.
-a8, old gen. ending, 36. b; Gr. nom.
ending, 63. c; patronymic, 164. b.
### Index of Words and Subjects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>decl., 46.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capys</td>
<td>decl., 63.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carbasus</td>
<td>gend., 39.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capys</td>
<td>decl., 63.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care</td>
<td>decl. and stem, 47.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceasing</td>
<td>vbs. of, w. complem. inf., 271.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēdō</td>
<td>constr., 226.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeber</td>
<td>decl., 84.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celer</td>
<td>forms, 84.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēō</td>
<td>w. acc., 239.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēltībēr</td>
<td>decl., 41.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certē</td>
<td>certō, use, 151.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cētē</td>
<td>Greek pl., 39.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cētera</td>
<td>82.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chelēs</td>
<td>decl., 63.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiasmus</td>
<td>344.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choliambic</td>
<td>verse, 370.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choriambus</td>
<td>356.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēlīum</td>
<td>noun ending, 163.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnabarī</td>
<td>indecl. 67.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cīō</td>
<td>diminutive ending, 164.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circum</td>
<td>stems in, decl. III., 45.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumā</td>
<td>circum, circiter, use, 152.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumflex</td>
<td>accent, 19.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumfundō</td>
<td>constr., 225.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cīvis</td>
<td>-68, decl., 51.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clādeōs</td>
<td>decl., 59.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clam</td>
<td>constr., 261.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>names of, gend. of, 28.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caucaș</td>
<td>w. gen., 223.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castra</td>
<td>castra, 78.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causā</td>
<td>w. gen. of gerund, 318.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caestrum</td>
<td>decl., 77.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēdō</td>
<td>constr.</td>
<td>226. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēler</td>
<td>forms, 84. a, c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēlō</td>
<td>w. acc., 239. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēntēsō</td>
<td>constr., 331. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certē, Certō</td>
<td>use, 151. c; in answers, 212. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cētē</td>
<td>Greek pl., 39. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cētera</td>
<td>82. d; adverbal use, 240. b; -us, use, 193; -ē, use, 203. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceu</td>
<td>use, 312.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceus</td>
<td>ad., ending, 164. g.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic</td>
<td>clause of, 320.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic</td>
<td>expr. by participle, 292.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic</td>
<td>vowel, 32, 351.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charge and penalty</td>
<td>gen. of, 220.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chelēs</td>
<td>decl., 63. g, 64.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiasmus</td>
<td>344. f, and N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choliambic</td>
<td>trimeter, 365. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choosing</td>
<td>vbs. of, w. 2 acc., 239. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choriambic</td>
<td>verse, 370. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēlēs</td>
<td>decl., 63. g, 64.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cēlum</td>
<td>noun ending, 163. f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnabarī</td>
<td>indecl. 67. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cliō</td>
<td>diminutive ending, 164. a. R.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circum</td>
<td>stems in, decl. III., 45. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumā</td>
<td>circum, circiter, use, 152. a, 153; as advs., 261. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumā</td>
<td>after a noun, 263. N.; w. gerund, 300.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circum</td>
<td>compounds vbs. w. vbs., 170. a; dat. w. such comps., 228; acc., 237. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumfundō</td>
<td>constr., 225. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumflex</td>
<td>accent, 19. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumfundō</td>
<td>constr., 225. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumstances of act</td>
<td>255 and d. 5; participle implying, 292.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cīs</td>
<td>citerior, 91. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cities</td>
<td>gend. of names of, 29, 2 and b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cītrā</td>
<td>after its noun, 263. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cīvis</td>
<td>-68, decl., 51. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clādeōs</td>
<td>decl., 59.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clam</td>
<td>constr., 261. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classes</td>
<td>names of, gend. of, 28. d; used in plu., 76. 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clauses</td>
<td>defined, kinds of, 180; replaced by abl. abs., 255. d; used as nouns, 214. d; dependent, syntax of, 316-342 incl.; conditional, 316; final, 317, 318; consecutive, 319, 320; causal, 321;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caution and effort</td>
<td>vbs. of, constr., 331. e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cave</td>
<td>in prohibitions, 269. a; nē omitted after, 331. f R.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caveō</td>
<td>constr., 331.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ce</td>
<td>enclitic, 100 and foot-n., 101. a and foot-n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
temporal, 322-328; substantive, 329-339 incl.; infinitive clauses, 330; substantive clauses of purpose, 331; of result, 332; indic. with quod, 333; indirect questions, 334; indirect discourse, 335-342.

clāvis, decl., 57. b.

clienta (fem. form), 28. b; 85. c.

Close syllables, 14. d.

coepi, 143. a.


Cognomen, 80. a.

Collective noun with pl. verb, 205. c.

culus, gend., 69. a; decl., 78. 1. a.

com- (con-), compounded w. vbs., 170. a; such take dat., 228.

Combinations of words, 13.

comētēs, decl., 37.

comitium, comitia, 79. c.

comitor, constr., 227. b.

Command, see Imperative; in hortatory subj., 266.

Commanding, vbs. of, w. dat., 227; w. inf., 330. 2 and b. 2; w. subj., 331. a (cf. 332. h).

Commands, expressed by inv., 269; for condition, 310. b; in indir. disc., 339; in informal ind. disc., 341. a.

commiseror, w. acc., 221. b.

committō, ut, 332 and c.

Common gender, 30; adjs. of, 88. b.

Common syllables, 18. c, 347. d.

commonefaciō, -fiō, constr., 219. c.

commoneō, constr., 219. c.

commūnis, w. gen., 218. d.

commūtāre, constr., 252. c.

Comparative conjunctions, 154. b. 2, 155; in conditions, 312.

Comparative suffix, 89, foot-n.; of advs., 148. d.

Comparatives, decl., 86; stem, id. a; neut. sing. of comp. adj. used as adv., 92; meaning of, 93. a; two comparatives, 192; comp. and positive w. quam, id.; abl. w. comp., 247; quam w. comp., id. a; compar. w. quam (ut), quam qui, 320. c, 332. b.

Comparison, conjunctions of, 208. a.

Comparison of adjs., 89; irregular, 90; defective, 91; w. magis and maxime, 89. d.; of advs., 92; prepositions implying, with quam, 262. Comparison, particles of, tamquam, quasi, etc., constr., 312.

Complementary infinitive, 271; has no subject, id. N.; pred. noun or adj. after, id. e; inf. partly subject, partly complementary, 270. b.

Completed action, tenses of, 115; how formed, 126. f, g; in the pass., 147. b; use of, 279.

compleō, constr., 248. c. R., 223.

Complex conditional sentences, 311. d.

Complex sentence, 180. b.

complūrēs, complūria, 86. b.

compos, decl., 87. b, d.

Composition, all word-formation a process of, p. 140; comp. to express relations of words, pp. 205, 235.

Compound sentence, defined, 180.

Compound stems, imaginary, 164. r.

Compound suffixes, 160. b, 161.

Compound verbs, 170; comp. of faciō, 142. a, b.

Compound words, assimilation in, 11. f; defined, 168; how formed, 168-170.

Compounds of preps., w. dat., 228; of ab, dē, ex, 229; w. acc., 237. d, 239. d; quantity of, 354. c.

con-, see com-.

Conative present, 276. b; imperfect, 277. c.

concēdō, constr., 331 and c.

Concession, hortatory subj. of, 266 and c (cf. 313. a, i); particles of, 313; quamvīs, ut, nē, 313. a; licet, id. b; etsi, etc., id. c; cum, id. d; quamquam, id. e, g; quamvis, w. indic., id. g; vbs. of, w. ut, 331. c; abl. abs. for concess. clause, 255. d. 3; concession implied in part., 292; quī concessive, 320. c.

Concessive clauses, see Concession.

Concessive conjunctions, 154. b. 3, 155. d, g; foll. by adversative, 156. b. N.; particles, use of, 313.

Conclusion, see Apodosis.

Concoras, the four, 182.

concors, decl., 85. b, 87. a.

Condemning, vbs. of, constr., 220.

Conditional clauses, defined, 180. d.

Conditional conjunctions, 154. b. 1, 155. c.

Conditional sentences, defined, 180. d; development, 304, head-n.; protasis
and apodosis, 304; classification, 305; Pres. and Past, nothing implied, 306; Future conditions, 307; fut. more vivid, id. a.; fut. less vivid, id. b.; perf. indic. in fut. cond., id. c.; Contrary to fact, 308; indic. in cont. to fact condition, id. b. cf. c.; General condition, 309; condition disguised, 310; as part., etc., id. a.; as exhortation or command, id.; protasis omitted, 311; Potential Subjunc., id. a.; Subjunc. of Modesty, id. b.; vbs. of necessity, etc., id. c.; complex conditions, id. d.; Particles of Comparison (conclusion omitted), 312; Concessive clauses, 313; Proviso, 314; use of $i$ and its comps., 315; conditional relative clauses, 316; temporal, 322, 327. $b$; conditional sentences in ind. disc., 337.

Conjunctive Particles, 312.

cōnflēdō, constr., 254 b. and N.

Conjugation, defined, 26. Conjugation of verbs, 122–147; how distinguished, 122 a.; regular forms of, 125. c.; mixed forms, id. d.; parallel forms, 134; stem-vowels of conjugations, 122–125; stems of the four conjugations, how modified, 126; paradigms of the four regular conjugations, pp. 92–105.

Conjunctions, defined, 25. $b$; classes of, 154; list of, 155; use of, 156; correlative use, id. $h$; conj. repeated, id. Syntax of conjs., 208; omitted, id. $b$; use together, id. $e$.

Conjunctive adverb, 25. $h$. N.

Conjunctive phrase, 154. N. 2.

Co-nūnctūns mōdestiae, 311. b.

Connecting vowel (so-called), p. 87, foot-n.

Connectives, relatives used as, 180. $f$.

cōnōr, w. inf., 331. e. 1; cōnōr $s$, id. N.

Consecutive clauses, defined, 180. e.; of charact. and result, 319, 320.

Consecutive conjunctions, 154. $b$. 4, 155. $e$.

cōnsecqūor ut, 332.

cōnsistere, w. abl., 244. c, foot-n., 254 $b$.

Consonants, classification, 2; changes, 11; omission, id. $b$; insertion, id. $c$; transposition, id. $d$, 124. a. N.; dissimilation, 11. $e$; assimilation, id. $f$; pronunciation, 16, 17.

Consonant stems of nouns, decl. III., 44–50; stems apparently ending in two consonants, 54. 1.; cons. stems of adjvs., 85; case-forms, 87; of verbs, 166. a. 3.

Consonant suffixes (primary), 160. c. 2.

cōnsORS, decl., 87. a.

cōnṣtāre, w. abl., 244. c.

cōnstitūō, constr., 331. $d$.

Cōnstrüctō ad sēnsum. See Synesīs.

Cōnstrüctō praegnāns, 238. $b$.

Constructions of cases, 213–263 (see under abl., etc.).

cōnsuēvi, use, 279. e.

cōnsul, decl., 49.

cōnsulāris, decl., 57. a.

cōnsulō, w. dat. or acc., 227. c.

Contention, words of, constr., 229. c, 248. $b$.

cōntentus, w. abl., 254. $b$; w. perf. inf., 288. e.

Cōntinenī, w. abl., 244. c, foot-n.

Cōntingit ut, 332.

Continued action, tenses of, 115.

Continuing, vbs. of, w. compl. inf., 271.

Cōntrā, derivation, 148. N. $b$; use, 152. a, 153, 188. e. 2, 254. $b$; as adv., 261; position, 263. N.

Contracted forms, vin, scin, 13. c.; gen. in -ī, dat. and abl. in -īs, 40. $b$.

Contracting, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. $d$.

Contraction of vowels, 10. $b$; quantity, 18. $c$; in prosody, 347. $c$; of syllables, 355. $d$.

Contrary to fact, conditions, 308. in ind. disc., 337. $b$.

Cōnvenīō, w. acc., 228. a.

Co-ordinate conjunctions, 154. a. 155. a–d; co-ord. clauses, 180. a; co-ord. words without conj., 208. $b$; w. conj., id.

Copula, 172. n., 176. a; position of, 344. $f$.

Copulative conjunctions, 154. a. 1, 155. a.; constr. after, 208; use of, 208. $b$.

Copulative verbs, 172. n., 176 a.

cor, decl., 67. d, 77. 6.

cōrpus, decl., 49.

Correlatives, 106, 107; rendered by as, 106. $b$; by the...the, id. $c$; advs. of place, 149. a; conjjs., 156. b, 208. $d$; correlative in main clause, w. final clause, 317. a.

cōs, decl., 77. 6.
Index of Words and Subjects.

Countries, names of, gend., 29. 2 and 3; as end of motion, and place from which, 258. N. 2.

Crāsis, 347. 3.

crātēr, decl., 63. 3.

crēber, decl., 82. 3.

crēdībill, w. comparative, 247. 6.

crēdō, position of, 345. 6.

Cretic foot, 356. 6; verse, 374. 6.

Crime or charge, gen. of, 220.

-crum, noun-ending, 163. 6.

crux, decl., 77. 6.

cucumis, decl., 56. 3.

culculmōtri, 105. 6. N.

culās, culus, 105. 3.

culiummodi, 215. 3.

-culum, noun suffix, 163. 6.

-culus, dim. ending, 164. 3.

cum, quom (conj.), form, 104. 3; meaning, 156. 3; cum . . tum, 107, 156. 3.

b, 208. 6; with clause for part., 290. 6.

d, 326. 6; causal, 321; concess., 313.


-cumque, added to relatives, 105. a and N.; temporal particles with, 322.

-cundus, verbal adj. ending, 164. 6.

cup-, stem-ending, 45. 3.

cupīō, constr., 331. b and N.

cūrō, constr., 331; cūrā (inv.), use, 269. 7.

-cus, nouns in, decl. IVa, 70. 6; -cus, suffix, 159. N., 164. i. 9.

Customary action, 277, 309. 6.

custōs, decl., 67. 6.

D changed to s, 11. 2. 2; -d final an-

ciently t, 12. 2; -d in abl., decl. I., 36.

f; decl. II., 40. 3; decl. III., 62. a;

decl. IV., 70. b; mēd, tēd, 98. 1. e;

-a in advs. originally -ēd, 148. a. N.;

-d as neut. pron. ending, p. 49, foot-n.

2; loss of -d, p. 245.

Dactyl, 356. 6; cyclic, id. N.

- Dactylic verse, 360; hexameter, 363; ele-
giaco slanza, 363; other forms, 364.

-dam, adverbial ending, 148. N. 7.

damnās, indecl. adj., 87. 6.

Daphnē, decl., 37.

Daphnīs, decl., 63. i, 64.

daps, defect., 77. 7; increment of, 350.

Daring, vbs. of, w. compl. inf., 271.

Dates, how expressed, 259. e, 376.

DATIVE defined, 31. 3; in -āl, decl. I., 36.

a; in -ābus, decl. I., 36. e; in -is for

-ūs, decl. II., 40. b; in -ubus, decl.

IV., 70. d; in -ī (of unus, etc.), 83;

as adv., p. 123. N. 7.

DATIVE, Syntax, 224–236. Indirect object,

224; uses of, id.; with transi-

tives, 225; use of dōnō, etc., id. 6;

in pass., 225. e; with intransitives,

226; with phrases, id. a; like gen.,

id. b; with intransitives, verbs mean-

ing favor, etc., 227; verbs having dat.

or acc., 227. e; with verbal nouns, id. 6;

with comp. of satis, etc., id.

e; with comp. of prep. ad, ante,

etc., 228; with comp. of ab, dē, ex,

229; poetic use, 229. 6; with passive

used impersonally, 230. Of Possession,

231; with comp. of esse, id. a; with

nōmen est, id. 6. Of Agency, 232.

Of Service, 233; with adj. or adverbs,

234; with adj. of fitness, etc., 234. a;

with similis, id. R. Of Reference, 235;

ethical dat., 236. With words of con-

tention (poetic), 248. b. Of End of

Motion, 258. N. 1; w. infin., 272. a;

dat. of gerund, 299. (Note on, p. 218.)

Dativus commodi aut incommodi, 235. N.

dē, use, 152. b, 153; in comp. w. vbs.,

170. a; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 229;

in comp. w. vbs., w. abl., 243. b; w.

abl. instead of part. gen., 216. e; w.

vbs. of reminding, 219. 6. N.; w. abl.
to denote the crime, 220. e; w. place

from which, 258; position of dē, 263.

N.; dē w. abl. of gerund, 301.

dea, decl., 36. 6.

dēbeō, in apod., 308. 6.

dēbulī, w. pres. inf., 288. a.

dēcernō, constr., 331. 6. 2.

decret, w. acc., 237. 6; w. dat., id. N. 2;

in apodosis, 308. 6.

Declarative sentence, 171. a; how ex-

pressed in ind. disc., 336.
Index of Words and Subjects.

Declension defined, 26; characteristics of, 32; general rules for, 33; terminations, 34. Of Nouns, I. 35-37; II., 38-43; III., 44-67; IV., 68-71; V., 72-74; decl. IV. compared with III., 68. N.; decl. V. comp. with I., 74. B. Of Adjs., decl. I.-II., 81-83; decl. III., 84-85; of comparatives, 86; of participles, 85. a, b.

Decreasing, verbs of, 331. d.

dēdi, as reduplicated stem, 117. N.; quantity of penult, 351. b.

Defective nouns, 75; in number, 76; in case-forms, 77; of decl. IV., 71. b; of decl. V., 74. d.

Defective adjectives, 82. d, 87. f.

Defective comparison, 91.

Defective verbs, 143-144.

Defective verb-forms, 110, 143, 144.

dēfendō, constr., 227. a.

dēficō, constr., 227. a.

Definite perfect, 115. c, 1, 279; sequence of, 287. a.


dēfāt, 142. c.

dēgener, 85. b. N., 87. a.

Degree, adverbs of, 149. c.

Degrees of Comparison, 89.

Degree of difference, abl. of, 250; distance expressed by, 257.

delinde, dēnique, in enumerations, 151. d.

dēlectat, constr., 237. c.

dēlectō, w. acc., 227. a.

dēlector, w. abl., 254. b.

Deliberative subjunctive, 268; in indir. questions, 334. b; in indir. discr., 338. a.

dēlicium, -la, -læ, 78. 2. b.

Delivering, vs. of, w. genitive, 294. d.

Dēlos, decl., 43.

delphīn, decl., 63. a, cf. 67. b.


Demanding, vs. of, w. gerundive, 294. d.

Demonstrative adverbs, as correlatives, 107; equivalent to demonstr. pron. w. prep., 207. a. Position, 344. b.

Demonstrative pronouns, 100-102; decl., 101; of 1st person, 102. a; of 2d pers., id. c; of 3d pers., id. b; supply place of pers. prons. of 3d pers., 194. c, 195; formation, p. 65, note. Syntax, 195; in relative clause, 201. c, N. Position, 344. b.

dēnārius, value of, 377.

Denominaive verbs, 165, 166.

Dependent clauses, subj. used in, 265. b.

Dependent constructions, N., p. 227.

Depenton verbs defined, 111. b; how conjugated, 122. N.; paradigms, 133; participles, id. a; fut. inf., id. c; used reflexively, 135. c; in passive sense, id. f; list of irreg. depenton verbs, 135. b; defective deponents, id. i; semi-deponents, 136.

Depriving, constr. with verbs of, 243. a.

Derivation of Words, 157-170.

Derivative forms of nouns, 162, 163; of adj., 164; of verbs, 166, 167.

Derivative verbs, defined, 165.

Derivatives, quantity of, 354.

-dēs, nouns in, 164. b.

Description, imperf. used in, 115. b; scription implied in part., 292.

Descriptive abl., see abl. of quality.

dēses, decl., 87. b.

Desiderative verbs (in -urīō), 167. e.

Desire, adj. of, w. gen., 218. a.

dēspérō, constr., 227. b.

dēterior, comp. of, 91. d.

Determinative compounds, 168. b.

Determining, vs. of, constr., 321. d.

deus, decl., 40. f.

dexter, decl., 82. b; comp. 90.

dī- see dis-

Diāresis, 358. c.

Diastolē, 359. f.

dic, imperative, 128. c.

dicōnis, defect., 77. 5.

dicō, forms of, omitted, 206. c.

dictō, w. comp., 247. b.

-dicus, adj. in, comparison of, 89. c.

Dīdō, decl., 63. b, 64.

diem dicere, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. a.

dīēs, decl., 72; gender, 73; form diff., 74. a.

Difference, abl. of, degree of, 250.

difficultis, comparison, 89. b; constr., 303. R.

dignor, with abl., 245. a, 2.

dignus, with abl., 245. a; with relative clause, 320. f.

Dineur, iambic verse, 366. c.

Diminutive endings, with comparatives,
89. \textit{f}; nouns and adjectives, 164. a; verbs, 167. d.
\textit{din-}, stem-ending, 48. b.
Diphthongs, \textit{r}; sound of, 16, 17; quantity, 18. b, 347. b.
Diptotes, 77. 3.
Direct cases, 31. g. N.
Direct object, 177, 237.
Direct question, defined, p. 201.
Direct quotation, 335 and R.
Direct reflexive, 196. a. i. i.
Direction, 235. b.
dis- (\textit{di}), inseparable prefix, 170. b.
Disjunctive conjunctions, 155. a; case of noun after, 208.
Dissimilation, 11. e.
dissimilis, comp., 89. b.
Distance, acc. or abl., 257. b; of time, 259. d.
Distributive numerals, 95; use, 95 b.
Distributive pronouns, 202. d, e.
diū, comp., 92.
dives, decl., 85. b, 87. d.
divūm (\textit{divōm}), for deōrum, 40. f.
dō, with inf., 273. a.
d-as, adverbial ending, 148. N. η.
d-ōs, nouns in, from st. \textit{din-}, 48. b; gender, 65. b: 67. b.
doceō, constr., 239. c and d. N.
domī, locative, 258. d.
domus, gend. 69. a; decl., 70. f; double stem of, 70. f; locative form, 70. g, p. 40, foot-n.
domum, 258. id. a; domō, id. b.
donec, with ind. or subj., 328.
dono, double constr. of, 225. d.
dōs, decl., 54. 2.
Double consonants, 3. a, 18. d.
Double questions, 211; answers to, 212. b.
Doubling, vbs. of, constr., 319. d.
 Doubtful gender, 30. a.
Dual forms, p. 60, foot-n.
Dubitative subj., see Deliberative.
dubitō an, 210. f. R.; nōn dubitō
quin, 332. g. R.; nōn dubitō w. inf., id. N. 2.
dūc, imperative, 128. c.
dum, derivation, 148. N. η; with present, 276. e; with past, id. N; with clause for pres. and perf. partic., 290. e, d; w. subjunctive of proviso, 314, 328; of time, 328; of purpose, 328.
dummodo, 314, 328.
duo, decl., 94. b.
dūpli, with verbs of condemning, 220. a.
Duration, acc. of, 240. e, 256; abl. of, 256. b.
-dus, participle in. See Gerundive.
Duty, vbs. of, in apod., 308. c.
dux, decl., 46.
e, inserted in decl. II., 42; abl. of neutrers in, 57. a, 3; final, quantity of, 348.
5; ē, stem-vowel, conj. II., 122, 123. a, 126. b; ē, stem-vowel, conj. III., 122, 123. b, 126. c.
e shortened in future, p. 89, foot-n. 3.
e in stem of decl. V., 72.
ē (preposition). See ex.
-e, Gr. voc., 63. f; in gen. of decl. V., 74. a; in dat., id.
-e for ae (oe), 12. c, 16. N. 3.
ea causa, 317. a.
ebus, 107. c.
eae, 101. c.
Early forms of alphabet, 6–7; of prosody, p. 423.
ebur, decl., 49.
ecce (eccum, etc.), 101. d.
ecquis, decl., 105. d; meaning, i.
Ecthelipis, 359. d.
édicō, constr., 331. d. 2.
edō (eat), conj., 140.
Effecting, vbs. of, with perf. part., 271.
in with ut-clause, 332. b.
Efficiō ut, 332.
Efferī, 142. c.
Effigieōs, decl., 74. d.
Effort, vbs. of, with perf. part., 292. d; with clause of result, 331. e.
egens, decl., 85.
egeo, constr., 223, 243. f.
egō, decl., 98.
ei, diphthong, 1; sound of, 16, 17. c.
-eis, patronymic, 164. b.
-ēius, patronymic, 164. b.
-ōlus, adj. ending, 164. c; in Prosody
347. d, N. 1.
ēiusmodi, 101. c, 215. a
Electra, decl., 27.
Elegiac stanza, 363.
Index of Words and Subjects.

elephæns, 63. c.
-ēlis, -ēnus, adj. endings, 164. c, d.
Elision, 359. c.
Ellipsis, 177. c. N.
Elliptical sense, 177. c. N.
oblum, etc., 101. d.
-ellus, diminutive ending, 164. a.
obluviēs, decl., 74. d.
Emphasis, 344.
-ēn, nouns in, 67. b; -ēn, nouns in, id.
ēn, w. demonstrative, 101. d.
Enclitics, accent, 19. c; quantity, 348. a.
cum, 99. c, 104. c, d; -met, -te, -ptē,
99. f; -ptē, 100. c, p. 67, foot-n.; -que,
see under that word.
End of motion, acc. of, 258; w. vbs. that
take dat., 225. b; dat. of, 258. N. i; two
or more places as end of motion,
259. h.
Endings, signification of, 161-167;
endings of verb, 117. 2, 118. See Personal
Endings, and Terminations.
English derivatives from Lat., spelling
of, 15; Eng. words cognate with Lat.,
id.
English method of pronunciation, 17.
enim, use, 156. d; position, 156. k;
345. b.
-ēnīmus (or -ēnīmus), numeral adj.
ending, 94. N.
-ēnis, genitive ending, 164. c.
Enumeration, primus ... deinde,
151. d.
-ēnus, adj. ending, 164. c.
Envy, verbs of, w. dat., 227.
eō, used w. supine in -um, 238. R.,
302. R.
eō, used with quō, 106. c; w. compar,
250. R.; approaching abl. of cause,
250. N.
eō cōnsiliō ut, 317. a.
Epicene nouns, 30. b.
Epistolary tenses, 282.
epitomē, decl., 37.
epulum, pl. -ae, 78. 2. b.
equester, decl., 84. a.
er, primary suffix, see as.
er-, stem-ending, 48. d.
-er, nom. ending, decl. II., 41-43; decl.
III., 48. c, 53. b, 54. i; gend., 65. a, 67.
a, b; -er in adjs., 82, 84. a; comp. of
these, 89. a.
ergā, w. acc. after adjs., 234. c.

ergō, use, 156. e; w. gen., 223. e.
-erim, -erō, as tense-ending.
-ernus, adj. ending, 164. c.
er-, noun stems in, decl. II., 41; ēro-
adj. stems in, 82. a.
es, root of ēses, 11. a; p. 83, note.
-ēs, in nom. pl. of Gr. nouns, 63. f;
gend. of nouns in, 65. a.
-ēs, -idis (-ītis); -ēs, -ēdis; -ēs, -ēdis;
-ēs, -ētis; -ēs, -ētis, nouns in, 67. d.
-ēs, nom. ending, 67. a; list of nouns in,
51, foot-n.; gend., 65. b; formation,
163. a.
-ēs, gen. of Greek nouns in, decl. II., 43.
a; gen. ending, decl. V., 74. a.
esse, conj., 119; forms of, in other lan-
guages, p. 83, note; compounds of,
120; case after, 176. b; dat. of poss.
w., 231; future part. w., 293. a, c; po-
position of forms of, 344. e, f.
est, united with other words, 13. b; est
qui, 320. a; est cum, 322. R.; est ut,
332. a, 3.
Esteeing, verbs of, constr., 239. a.
ester (-estria), adj. ending, 164. e; a
noun-ending, 164. i, 12.
et, use, 156. a; et ... et, 156. k; et re-
peated or omitted, 208. b, 1.
etenim, use, 156. d, 208. c.
Ethical dative, 236.
etiam, use, 151. a; in answers, 212. a.
etiamī, concessive, 313. c.
etī, use, 156. i; 313. c.
etum, noun-ending, 164. i, 8.
ETYMOLOGY, 1-170.
Euphonic change, see Phonetic change.
-eus, Greek names in, 43; -eus (-ēus),
patronymic ending, 164. b; adj. end-
ing, 164. c, g, i, 10.
evenit ut, 332.
ex (ē), 152. b; use, 153, 260. b, 244. a.
r.; in compounds, 170. a, 243. b; abl.
w., instead of part. gen., 216. c; ex-
pressing position, 260. b; in vbs. w.
dat., 229; to express place from which,
258; after its noun, 263. N.; w. abl. of
gerund, 301.
-ēx (-ēx), nouns in, 67. e.
excellō, w. dat., 227. a.
Exchanging, vbs. of, 252. c.
Exclamation, form of, 210. c, R.; acc.
in, 240. d; w. infin., 274; nom. in,
241. e.
Exclamatory sentences, 171. e; acc. in, 240. d; nom. in, 241. c.
Exclamatory questions, 332. c.
Existence, general expressions of, 320. a.
exlēx, defect., 87. f. 3.
Expecting, hoping, etc., vbs. of, w. infin. clause, 330. f.
expēnsum, 292. N. 2.
Explosives, see Mutes.
exsillō, exsultō, w. abl., 245. a. 2.
exaspēs, defect, 87. f.
exsultō, w. abl., 245. a. 2.
exterl, use, 91. b.
exterlor, 91. b.
extrēmus, form, p. 56, foot-n.
exuō, constr., 225. d.
faber, decl., 82. c.
fac, inv., 128. c, 142; use, 269. g; fac nē, in prohibition, 269. a.
faciōs, decl., 74 d.
fácilis, comp., 89. b; constr., 303. R.
faciō, forms of, omitted, 206. e; w. abl., 244. d; accent of comp. of, 19. d. 1;
faciō, w. names of authors, 292. e. N.; facere ut, 332 and e.
Facitative acc., p. 235; vbs. 175. b. N.
factō, in compounds, 169. a.
faenebris, decl., 84. a. N.
faex, decl., 77. 6.
fallit, w. acc., 237. e.
falsus, comp., 91. d.
famēs, abl. of, 57. c, cf. p. 41, foot-n. 1.
familīarís, decl., 57. b.
familīas, in pater familiās, etc., 36. b.
far, decl., 67. b.
fās indecl., 77. 1; w. supine in -ū, 303.
faux, decl., 54. 2, 77. 5, 79. c.
Favor, vbs. of, w. dat., 227.
fax, decl., 77. 6.
Fearing, vbs. of, w. inf., 271; (nē, ut), 331. f.
febris, decl., 56. b, 57. b.
Feeling, nouns of, w. gen., 217; imper- personal vbs. of, 146. b, 221. b; animī, with adj.s of, 218. c. R.; gen. with verbs of, 221; animī, w. vbs. of, 223. c, acc. with, 237. b; with quod-clause, 333. b.
Feet in Prosylvania, 355-357; N., p. 405.
fel, decl., 67. b.
fēlīx, comp., 89.
Feminine, rule for gender, 29.
femur, decl., 78. 1. f.
-fer, compounds of, 41; decl., 82. b.
fer, imperative, 128. c.
ferō, conj., 139; acceptum (expēnsum) ferre, 292. N. 2.
Festivals, plural names of, 76. 1.
-ficus, adj.s in, comparison of, 89. c.
fidēs, decl., 72.
fīō (cōnfīō), semi-deponent, 136; with abl., 254. b.
fīdus, comp., 91. d.
fīerī, constr. with abl., 244. d.
Fifth declension, 72-74.
figura etymológica, 344. m.
filia, decl., 36. e; fīlius, voc., 40. c.
Filling, vbs. of, w. abl., 248. c. 2.
Final Clauses, defined, 180. c; constr. of, 317, 318; as subst. clauses, 331.
Final conjunctions, 154. b, 155. i.
Final syllables, rules of quantity, 348; vowels, id. i-8.
finis, decl., 57. b.
Finite verb, defined, 173. N.; subject of, 173. 1.
flō, conj., 142; in compounds, id. b; defective compounds of, id. c; quantity of 1 in, 347. a, 3.
First declension, 35-37.
First conjugation, prin. parts, 122. c; pres. stem, how formed, 123. a; formation, 126. a, 166. a; paradigms, pp. 92-95; vbs. of, 130; vbs. of, how formed, 166. a.
fīsus, as pres. part., 290. b.
fit ut, 332. a.
Fitness, adj.s of, w. dat., 234. a, b.
flāgitō, constr., 331.
floci, gen. of value, 252. b.
For, when expressed by prō, 236. R.
forās, 77. 3, 148. N. 5.
fore, 147. c; fore ut, 288. f, 332. e.
forem, 119. R.
forēs, pl. only, 76. 3.
Forgetting, vbs. of, 219; w. inf., 271.
foris (locative), 77. 3, 148. N. 5, 258. d.
Formation of words, 157-170.
Forms of the verb, 117. ff.
fors, fortē, 77. 3.
foris (fors sit an), 148. N. 7; (for- san), 311. a.
Fourth Conjugation, prin. parts, 122. c; pres. stem, how formed, 123. a, 126. d; paradigm, p. 104; list of verbs, 133; vbs., how formed, 166. d.
Fourth Declension, 68-71.
Fractional expressions, 97. d, 382.
Freedom, adj.s of, with abl., 243. a; vbs. of, 243. a.
Frequentative verbs, 167. b.
French, derivations through, 15, foot-note.
frētus, with abl., 254. b.
Fricatives, 3. a.
frūgī, defect. noun, 77. 5; as adj., 87.
/; comparison, 90; constr., 233. a. N.
fruor, fungor, with abl., 249; w. acc., id. b; gerundive, 296. R.
fugit, w. acc., 237. e.
ful, derivation of, 120. N.
Fulness, adj.s of, 218. a.
fūnebres, decl., 84. a. N.
fungor, see fruor.
für, decl., 54. a.
Future Conditions, 307; in ind. disc., 337. a.
Future Tense, use, 115. a. 1, 278; of infinitive pass., how formed, 147. c; indicative for imper., 264. c, 269. f; of imperative, 269. d; uses of, 278; in indirect questions, 334. a; fut. ind. for inv., 269. f.
Future Perfect, 115. a, 1; use of, 281; represented in subj., 386. R.; in conditions, 307. c.
Future Infinitive, how formed, 110. d; expressed with foré or futūrum esse, 288. f; (rarely) in contrary to fact conditions in ind. disc., 337. b. N. 3.
Future Participle, use, 113. b, 290, 293, 308. d; fut. pass. part., 294.
Future Perfect Subjunctive, wanting, 110. a.
Future Subjunctive wanting, 110. a.
futūrum esse ut, see forè ut; futūrum fuisse ut, 337. b, 3 and N. 2.
Futūrum in prereritō, p. 320, foot-note.

G (the character), 6.
Games, plural names of, 76. 1.
gaudeō, conj., 136; with abl., 254. b; w. quod or ind. disc., 333. b.
Gems, gender of, names of, 2 and b, 29, 39. a.
Gender, kinds of, 28; general rules for, 29; common, doubtful, epicene, 30; change of gen., p. 21, foot-n.; nouns, decl. I., gend., 35; decl. II., 39; nouns, decl. III., gend. according to endings, 65; according to stems, 69; of nouns, decl. IV., 69; decl. V., 73; Syntax, agreement in gend., 181; of appositives. 184. b; of adj.s., 186; adj.s with nouns of different genders, 187, cf. 189. c; of rel., 199. b.
General conditions, defined, 304. d.; constr. of, 309; relatives in, 316. a.
General truths after past tense (in sequence of tenses), 327. a; in pres., 276; in general condition, 309. a.

GENITIVE, Etyymology. Definition, 31. b; terminations of, 32; plural in -um, 33; gen. in -āl and -ās, decl. I., 36. a, b; in -ī for il, decl. II., 40. b; in -i of prop. nouns of decl. III., 43. a; gen. plur. in -ām (-ōm), for -ūrum, 40. c; -um for -ium, decl. III., 59; -ōs for -is, 63. f; contracted in decl. IV., 68. N.; gen. plur. in -um, 70. c; in -ī or -ē for -ēl, decl. V., 74. a; gen. plur. wanting, 77. 6; of adj.s, in -lus, 83; gen. plur. in -ium or -ūm, 87. c, d.

GENITIVE, Syntax, 213-223; general use, 213. Subjective gen., 214. Possessive gen., id. a-d; in appos. w. poss. pron., 197. e; compared w. dat., 231. R.; gen. in predicate, 214. c, d; gen. of adj. for neut. nom., 214. R.; gen. of substance or material, 214. c; for appositive, 214. f; gen. of quality, 215. Partitive, 216. Objective gen., 217; w. adjectives, 218, 234. d; w. verbs of memory, 219; charge and penalty, 220; of feeling, 221; w. imper., miseret, etc., 221. b; w. réfert and interest, 222; of plenty and want, 223; of exclamation, 223; w. potior, id. a; w. other vbs., id. b; w. egeō and indignēō, 223, 243. f; gen. for abl., id. f. R.; gen. replaced by dat, 226. b; of value, 215. c, 252. a, b; gen. of gerundive, 298.
genius, voc. of, 40. c.
gēns, or family, names, 80. a.
Gentile adjectives, 164. c.
gentilis, 57. a.
genū, decl., 68; gend., 69. b.
genus, decl., 49.
-ger, compounds of, 47; decl., 82. b.
Gerund, form, 109. b; use, 114. a; gerundive used instead, 296. Syntax, 295-301; gen. of, 298; pred. use, purpose, id. R.; w. obj. gen., id. a:
hāctenus, 260. N.

Hadia, gender, 35.

haec for hae, 101. a.

haerēō, w. dat., 227. c, 3; w. abl., id. N.

Happening, verbs of, constr., 332. a.

Have, perf., with, origin, 292. c, foot-n.

havē (avē), defective verb, 144. f.

Having, verbs of, w. gerundive, 214. d.

hebes, decl., 87. a; comp., 89.

Help, verbs of, with dat., 227.

Hemioic measures, 356. d.

hēpar, decl., 67. d.

Heroic verse, 362.

hērōs, decl., 64.

Hesitation, clauses of, w. quīn, 319. d;

verbs of, constr., 271.

Heteroclite nouns, 78. 1; adj., 87. f.

Heterogeneous nouns, 78. 2.

Hexameter verse, 362.

Hīatus, 359. e.

hibus, 101. a.

hic, p. 65, foot-note; decl., 101; use,

102. a, f; quantity, 348. 10, Ex.

hiems (for hiemā), 11. c, 67. c

 hilaris (-us), 87. f.

Himself (ipse, ēs), 102. N.

Hindering, verbs of, with ne or quō-

minus, or Inf., 331. c, 2; 332.

f.

Hindrance, verbs of, with quōminus,

319. c; with negatives, followed by

quīn, id. d; 332. g.

Historical infinitive, 275.

Historical present, 276. d; followed by

primary or secondary tenses, 287. c.

Historical perfect, 115 c, 2, 279.

hodiē, loc. form, 74. c, 148. N. 8.

honor (-ōs), decl., 218. d.

Hoping, verbs of, with infinitive clause,

330. f.


horizōn, decl., 63. d.

Hortatory subjunctive, 266; in conces-

sion, id. c (cf. 313. i); in proviso, 314;

in obligation, 266. a; w. force of, pro-

tasis, 310. b.

hortor, constr., 331.

hospes, decl., 87. b.

hospitalia (fem. of hospes), 85. c.

hūsimōdi, 101. c.

humi, 40. a, locative use of, 258. d.

humilis, comp., 89. b.

Hundreds, how declined, 94. d.
I, as vowel and as cons., p. 1, 4.
1, primary suffix, 160. c. 1.
I, in Greek voc., 63. i, 64; for ø in conj.
II, 126. b. 2; for -ø in conj. III., 126. c. 1; vbs. in ïø- of conj. III., id. e; in verb replaced by cons., 123. b. 1; inserted in vb. stem, id. 2; suppressed in oblit, etc., 10. d; ï (single) in gen. of nouns in -ius (-iüm), 40. b; in gen. of noun in -ës, 43. a; in abl. of decl. III., 57; in neut. nom., 65. c; in gen. decl. IV., 70. a; in gen. dat., decl. V., 74. a; in dat. of ënus, etc., 83.

-I, in perfect, 118. N.
1- stems, decl. III., 51-59; confused, p. 35, foot-note 2; signs of, 55; in adjectives, 81, foot-n., 84; cases retaining -i, 84. b, cf. 55, 57, 87. a; 1-stems in verbs, 126. d.

-la, nom., acc. pl. decl. III., 55. b; of adjs., 84. b.
-la for -ës, decl. V., 74. b.
-la, ending of abstract nouns, 163. e.
Iambic verse, 360; trimeter, 365; other forms, 366.
Iambus, 356. a.
-Ibam for -ëbâm, conj. IV., 128. e.
Ibër, decl. 41. d.
-Ibô for -ám, 128. e. i.
ibus, 101. c.
-ic- as stem-ending, 45. c.
-Icüs, 164. g.
Ictus, 19 d. N., 164. g, 355. R., 358. a.
-Icüs, -icüs, 164. c, h, g.
id-, stem-ending, 63. b.
id genus, 240. b.
id quod, 200. e.
id temporis, 216. a, 3; 240. b.
idcirç, as correl., 156. e, 317. a.
idem, decl., 101; derivation, 100. c; w. dat., 234. or N. i; w. atque or rel., id. N. 2; used emphatically, 195. c; equiv. to adv., id. e.
Ides (13th or 15th of month), how reckoned, 376. b.
-idës, (-idës) in patronymics, 164. b.
idöneus, comparison, 89. d; w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299, foot-n.
idöneus qui, 320. f.
Idüs, decl. IV., gender, 69. a. (See Ides.)
idüs, verbal adj. ending, 164. l.
-ie, in voc. of adjs. in -ius, 81. a.
iëns (part of eö), decl., 85. b.
-ier in inf. pass., 128. e. 4.
-ës, in decl. V. = -ia, decl. I., 74. b; such are a-stems, id. foot-n.
-ës, nom. ending, 163. e.
igitur, meaning, 156. e; position, id. a.
Ignis, decl., 57. b.
ï, ës, for ë, is, from is, 101. c.
(ii or -i)), in gen., decl. II., 40. b. and foot-n.; of adjs., 81. a.
-Ile, noun-ending, 164. l. 6.
-Ilis, -ëlis, verbal adj. ending, 164. m.
-Illis, nominal adj. ending, 164. d.
III. conjugations, 154. a. 4, 155. c.
il, verbs ending in, 167. d.
illus, diminutive ending, 164. a.
illustris, decl., 84. a. N.
-im, accus. ending, decl. III., p. 20, foot-n. 2; 55, 56.
im in pres. subj., 128. e, 2.
imber, decl., 51. b, 54, 57. b, 67. a.
immâne quantum, 334. e.
immô, how used, 209. d.
Imperative mood, 108. b, tenses of, 110. c; how used, 112. c; terminations, 116.
b, 126. e; w. ëam dûdum, 276. a. N. 2; in commands, 269; 3d. pers., 269. c; forms in indirect discourse, 339; fut., 269. d, e; dìc, dûc, fac, fer, 128. c; some verbs used chiefly in, 144. f; various periphrases for inv, 269. f, g; Imperative as prosaito, 310. b.
Imperative Sentence, 171. d.
Imperfect tense, defined, 115. b; use, 277; in descriptions, id. a; with ëam diû, etc., id. b; inventive and corative, id. c; with ëam, id. N.; of surprise, id. ë; in dialogue, id. ë = could, etc., id. f; epistolajo, 282; represented by perf. subj., 287. b; 3; imperf. subj.; sequence, 287. f, g; imp. infinit., 288. a. N. i.
imperô, constr., 331.
Impersonal construction of pass. w. infin. clause, 330. a. 2. b. 1. c.
Impersonal Verbs, synopsis of, 145; classified, 146; passive of intransitives, 146. c, 230; impersonals, miseret, etc., with gen., 221. b; libet, licet, with dat., 227. e; acc. w. decet, etc.
237. c.
Index of Words and Subjects.

Indefinite action, tenses of. See Continued action.

Indefinite antecedent, relative with, with subjunct., 320. a and N.

Indefinite pronouns, decl., 104, 105. Syntax, 202, 203; indef. relative may introduce conditional clause, 304. a. N., 316.

Indefinite subject omitted, 266. b; use of 2d person for, 266. a; in general conditions, 309. a; licet clárum ferior, 272. a. N.

Indefinite value, 252. a, b.

Indicative mood, 108. b; how used, 112. a, 264; in apod. of conditions contrary to fact, 308. b, c, 311. c; in causal clauses, 321; in clause with quod, 333.

Indígeo, with gen., 223, 243. f.

Indígnus, with abl., 245. a; w. qui and subjunct., 320. f.

Indirect Cases, 31. N.


Indirect Questions, defined, p. 201; syntax, 210. f. R., 334; fut. tense in, id. a; deliberative subj. in, id. b; indic. in (early Lat.), id. d. (See Note, p. 367.)

Indirect quotation, 335.

Indirect object, 177, 224, and N. 225, 226, 227. N.

Indirect reflexive, 196. a, id. 2. i.


Indúco, w. names of authors, 292, e. N.

Induó, double constr. of, 225. d.

Inéo, constr., 228. a.

Inéptus, constr., 299. foot-n.

Inermis or -us, 87. f.

Infera, defect., 82. d, cf. p. 56. foot-n.; comp., 91. b.

 Inferú, use, 91. b.

Inferior, comparison, 91. a.

Infinite used as noun, gender, 29. c; with gen., 214. d. (See, also, Infinitive Mood, Syntax.)

INFINITIVE MOOD, Etymology, 108. b, and foot-n.; tenses of, 110. d; how used, 112. d; how formed, p. 120; pass. in -ler, 128. e. 4; fut. inf. of deponents, 135 e, f; subject in acc., 173. 2, 240. f.

INFINITIVE MOOD, Syntax, 270–275; used as subject, 270; complementary inf., 271; verbs having subj. or infin., id. a, cf. 331; inf. for subjunct. clause, 331. e; with subject acc., 272; case of predicate noun, id. b; inf. of purpose, 273; w. adjs., in poetry, id. d; of result, id. g; as pure noun, id. h; in exclamations, 274 (sequence, 285. N. 1). Historical inf., 275. Tenses of inf., 288; perf. instead of pres., id. d, e; fore ut, etc., for fut. inf., id. f. Inf. in Indir. disc., 336; tenses, 336. A. (Note on infin., p. 283.)

Infinitive Clauses, as subj. or obj., 330;
w. pass. verbs, id. a–d. See also Indirect Discourse. Cf., also, 272.

ininitis, defect., 77. 2; use, 253. b. R.
Inflection, defined, 20; terminations of, id. b; how modified, 24; of decl. and conjugation, 26.

Influence, vbs. of, w. ut-clause, 331. a.

Informal Indirect Discourse, 340, 341.

infrā, use, 152. a, 153.

inges, decl., 87. a; comp., 91. d.

Inherited differences of form, 8. i; in vowels, 9. a–d; transposition of vowel and liquid, id. d.

iniūriā, as abl. of manner, 248. R.

infrussus, defect., 71. b.

inops, decl., 87. a, d.

inquam, inquit, 144. b; position of, 345. c; in direct quotation, 336. N. i.

Inseparable particles, 170. b.

Insertion of consonants (p in sumpsī), 11. c; p. 429. N.

insidiae, dat. with, 227. d.

inspergo, constr., 225. d.

instar, indecl., 77. i; w. gen., 223. c.

instō, constr., 331.

insulam, ad, 258. b. N. 3.

Instrument, abl. of, 248. c.

Instrumental case, 31. i (cf. pp. 205, 245); as adv., p. 123. N. b; source of several abl. constructions, 248. head-n.

integer, decl., 82. c.

Integral part, subjunct. of, 340, 342.

integrum est ut, 332.

Intensive pronoun, 100. c, 102. e. and N., 195. f–l.

Intensive verbs, 167. b (cf. c).

inter, use 152. a, 153; in comp., 170. a; vbs. comp. with, 228; in position, 263. N.

inter sē, 99. d, 196. f; inter sicāriōs, 220. c; inter, w. gerund, 300.

inter sē (reciprocal), 99. d, 196. f.

intercludō, constr., 225. d and N. 2.

interdictō, constr., 225. d, N. i.

interest, constr., 222; with ad, id. b.

interior, comp., 91. a.

Interjections, def., 25; list, p. 139; w. dat., 235. c.

Interlocked order of words, 344. h.

Intermediate Clauses, Syntax of, 340–342.

Interrogative advs., use, 210. e; position, 344. b.

Interrogative particles, list of, 149. d; use, 210.

Interrogative pronouns, 104, 105; use, 210. e; position, 344. b.

Interrogative sentences, 171. b; forms of, 210–212.

intra (interior), 91; derivation, 148. N. b.

Intransitive verbs, 175. a, 177; used impersonally in pass., 146. d; dat. with, 226 ff.; used transitively, w. acc. and dat., 227. f (cf. 237. e. N. 3).

inus, adj. ending, 164. c.

inutilis, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. foot-n.

invictus, comp., 91. d.

invidia, w. dat., 227. d.

invitus, comp., 91. d.

-iō, noun-ending, 163. b; gen., 65. b, 67. b.

-iō, verbs in, conj. III., 123. b, 2; forms of, 126. c, e; paradigm, p. 100; conj. IV., 126. d; derivation, 166. d.

Ionic measure, 356. c; verse, 372. 16.

ip-, stem-ending, 45. a.

ipse, formation, 100. c; decl., 101; use, 102. d and N., 195. f–l; used instead of reflexive, 196. a, 2. N. i.

iri, in fut. infin. pass., 141, 147. c.

Ironical statement not diff. in form from question, 210. b. N.

Irrational measures, 356. N., 369. N.

is, decl., 101; use, 102. d, f, 166; use emphatically, 195. c; used instead of reflexive, 196. a, 2. N. i.

-is, nom. ending, gen., 65. b; list of words, 67. a; -is, -eris, 67. b; -is, -idis, id. d; -is, patronymic, 164. b.

-is, -iss-, -sis-, dropped in perf., 128. b.

-is, nom. and acc. pl., decl. III., 58 (cf. p. 30, foot-n. 2); of adjs., 84. b, 87. c; Greek nom. ending, 63. c.

-is, see it-.

Islands, names of, loc. use, 258. c, 2 and R.; to which, 258. b, from which, a.

-isse, -issem, verb-ending, see N., p. 119 ff.

-isō, verbs ending in, 167. c.

iste, shortened to ite, 100. b; decl., 101. N. c; use, 102. c.

istic, decl., 101.

IT as sign of Impersonals, 145, foot-n.

it- as stem-ending, 45. b; decl., 59, 87. b.

ita, correl. with ut, 107; in answers, 212. a; ita ut, 319. R.

Italian dialects, Appendix, p. 434.
itaque, accent, 19. c; compared with ergō, 156. c; used with ergō, 208. c; position of, 345. b.
iter, stem of, 60. c, cf. 349. b.
Iterative verbs (-tō, -tō, -sō), 167. b.-tō, verbs in, 167. b.
-itus, adj.-ending, 164. f.
-lum, noun-ending, 163. f, 164. k, 11.
-lum, gen. plur., decl. III., 55. a; of adj., 84. b, 85. 87. c.
-lus, gen. sing. ending, 83; quantity, id. foot-n., 347. a, i.
-lus, adj.-s. gen., voc., 81. a; formation of adj.s. in, 164. g, m.
-iv-, in perf., 132. a.
-ivus, verbal adj.-ending, 164. k.
-lx (-lx), nouns in, 67. e.
J (the character), 4. N. 1; Eng. sound, id. N. 2.
iam, derivation, 148. N. 7; use, 151. b.; w. imperfect., 277. c. N.
iam, w. pres., 276. a; w. imperfect, 277. b.
iam, w. pres., 276. a; w. imperfect, 277. b.; w. imperative, 276. a. N. 2.
liecur, decl., forms from different stems, 60. c, 78. 1. f.
locus, pl. in -ī or -a, 78. 2. b.
lubar, decl., 57. a.
lubēō, w. acc., 227. a; w. inf., 271. b, 330. 2. a, 2, 331. a.
lucundus, constr., 303. R.
lūgerum, defect, 77. 4; decl., 78. 1. b; measure, 381.
Julian Calendar, 376, head-n.; 376. e.
lungō, w. abl. or dat., 227. e, N. 248. a.
lūpiter, stem and decl., 60. b; plural, 75. a.
lus, decl., 67. b, 77. 6. a.
lusū, defect, 71. b, 77. 2.
lustō, w. compar., 247. b.
luvat, w. acc., 237. e.
luvenis, masc. adj., 88. b; how compared, 91. c; decl., 59.
luvō, with acc., 227. a.
luxtā, position, 263. N.
K, supplanted by C, 6. N.
Ka, primary suffix, 160. λ.
Kalendae, 376. a.
Kindred signification, acc. of, 238.
Knowing, verbs of, w. acc. and inf., 271, 272, 330. 1.
Knowledge, adj.s. of, w. gen., 218. a.
L; nouns in -l, gend., 65. c, 67. b; adj.-stems in -l, 85.
lā, see ra.
Labials, 3; stems, decl. III., 45. a; gend., 66. c; forms of inflections, 67. c.
labōrō, w. abl., 245. a, 2.
lāc, decl., 67. d.
lac, decl., 68; dat. and abl. pl. in -ubus, 70. d.
laedō, constr., w. acc., 227. a.
laetor, laetus, w. abl., 254. b.
lampas, decl., 63. f, 64.
lateō, w. acc., 239. d; w. dat., id. N. 2.
latet, w. acc., 237. e.
latifundium, 168. b.
Latin language, origin and comparative forms of; earlier forms; languages derived from; see Appendix.
latēs, latēntus, see -olēns, -olentus.
laō, decl., 49.
Leōnīdās, decl., 37.
Letters, classification of, 1-5.
levis, decl., 84; comp., 89.
leviter, comp., 92.
līber, adj., decl., 41. c, 82. b.
Libēr, decl., 41. c.
līberī, noun, 41. c, 76. 2.
lībet, imper., 146. d; w. dat., 227. e.
līcet, imper., synopsis, 145; use, 146. c; w. dat., 227. e; w. predicate dat., 272. a; w. subjunctive, meaning although, 313. b; līcet eam, līcet mē ire, līcet mihi ire, 331. i and N. 3.
Likeness, adj.s. of, w. dat., 234. a; w. gen., id. d.
Limiting word, meaning of, 178. b.
Linguals, 3; stems in, decl. III., 45. b; gend. of, 66. d; forms of inflection, 67. d.
linter, decl., 51. b, 54. 1; gend., 67. a.
Liquids, 3. a; stems of, decl. III., 48-50; gend. of, 66. b; forms of inflections, 67. b.
-lis, adjs. in, comp., 89. b.
Litotes, 209. c.
-llum, noun-ending, 163. f.
li-, as stem-ending, 48. c.
Locative abl., 254, 258. c; idiomatic use, id. a; adverbial forms, 148. N. 6.
LOCATIVE case, 31. b, p. 218; akin to dat., id.; in abl., p. 245, p. 260; of decl. I, 36. c; decl. II, 40; decl. III, 62; decl. IV. (domi), 70. f. foot-n.; decl. V., 74. c; as adverb, 148. N. 6; forms, 258. c, d. With abl. in apposition, 184.
c; relative adverb used to refer to, 201.
if; animé, 218. c; R., 223. c. Locative compared with dat., 224. N.; locative used to express where, 258. c; domi, etc., id. d.
locé, abl. without prep., 258. f. i.
locé, verb, constr., 260. a.
locum capere, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 209. a.
locus, pl. -i or -a, 78. 2. b.
Long and Short, see Quantity.
longius, without quam, 247. c.
ládicér, decl., 82. c.
lúés, defect., 77. 4.
lúx, decl., 77. 6.
lynx, decl., 63. f.
M, final, elision of, 359. b. R., d; inserted in verb-root, 123. c. 3.
-m, sign of acc., origin, p. 205; omitted in inscriptions, 38. N.
-m (verb-ending), lost, 116. N.
ma, primary suffix, 160. n.
macer, decl., 82. c.
mácte virtúte, use and constr., 241. d
and N.
magis, as sign of comparative, 89. d;
comps. of, w. quam, 262. N.
mágni, gen. of value, 252. a.
mágnus, comparison, 90.
Main clause, defined, 180. b.
máiestatis, with words of accusing, etc., 220. a.
máió, 91. c.
máióres, signification of, 76. 2, 76. b, 93. f.
Making, verbs of, constr., 239. a.
male, comp., 92; compounds of, with dat., 227. c.
málum, conj., 138.
malus, comparison, 90.
man, primary suffix, 160. v.
mándó, constr., 331.
máne, defect. noun, 57. c, 77. 2.
máneó, with abl., 254. b.
mánsuétus, 159. c.
manus, decl., 68; gender, 69.
Manner, adv. of, 148. Abl. of, hard to distinguish from specification, 253. N.
Manner implied in part., 292.
Manner, abl. of, 248. and R.
mare, decl., 57. a, 59.
marí, loc., 258. ü.
más, decl., 54. 2.
Masculines, rule for gender, 29.
Masculine adjectives, 88. b.
Masculine cæsura, 362. R.
Material, adjectives denoting, 164. g;
gen. of, 214. e; f; abl. of, 244, and c-e.
máximó, as sign of superl., 89. d.
May, how expressed in Latin, 312. b. N.
Means, nouns denoting, 163. c; abl. of, 248. and c; participle implying means, 292.
Measure, gen. of, 215. b (cf. 257. a).
Measures in Prosody, 355-357; names of, 356; contracted or resolved, 357.
Measures of value, 377-380; of length, 381; of weight, 382; of capacity, 383.
médó, medóric, with dat. or acc., 227. b.
mediócris, decl., 84. a. N.
Meditative verbs, 167. c.
medius (middle part of), 193.
médius fidius, 240. d. N. 2.
mel, decl., 67. b.
mellor, decl., 86.
mélius est, with infin., 288. e.
memini, conj., 143. c; in pres. sense, 143.
N., 279. c; imperative of, 269. e; mé-
memor, decl., 87. a.
Memory, adjs. of, constr., 218. a; verbs of, constr., 219.
men, primary suffix, 160. v.
-men, -mentum, noun-endings, 163. f;
-men, gend., 65. c, 67. b.
ménsis, decl., 59.
meridióes, gend., 73.
-met (enclitic), 99. f.
Metathesis, 11. d, 124. a. N.
Metre, see Prosody.
index of words and subjects.

metuō, with dat. or acc. 227. c; w. subjunct. 331. f.
metus, with dat. or acc. 227. c.
meus (voc. mi, 81. a. N.), 40. c. 81. a. 99. a; syntax of 197. a. 214. a.
Middle voice, 111. a. and N. 118. N. 240. c. N. 240. N.
Mile, English feet in, 381.
imēs, decl. 46.
Military expressions, dat. in, 233. b; abl. dat. in, 233. b; abl. of accomp. without cum, 248. a. N.
imilitiae (locative), 258. d.
mille (milla), decl. and constr. 94. c.
-minī, as personal ending, p. 78. foot-n.
minimē, compar. 92; use, 93. ε; w. neg. force, 209. ε; in answer ("no"), 212. a.
ministrō, w. infin., 273. a.
minor nātū, 91. c.
imnōris, gen. of value, 252. a. d.
imnōres, signification, 93. f.
minus, compar. 92; use, 93. ε; with si and quo, = no, 209. ε; constr. without quam, 247. c.
-minus. -mnus, verbal adjective-endings, 164. n.
mīrō sī, 333. b. R.
mīrōrum quam (quantum), with indicative, 334. ε.
miscēō with abl. or dat., 227. e. N. 248. a. R.
ms, tis, 98. 1. c.
miser, decl. 82; comp. 89. a.
miserē, comp. 92.
miserēor, with gen., 221. a.
miserēsco, with gen., 221. a.
miserēt, 146. b; with gen. and acc., 221. b; other constr. c. d.
miserēor, with acc., 221. a.
misy, decl. 67. a.
-mnus, see -minus.
Modern languages compared with Latin, see Appendix.
Modesty, subjunct. of, 311. b.
Modification of subj. or pred., 178.
Modifers, position of, 343. 344; of negative, 345. 3.
modo . . . modo, 208. d.
modo (modo nē) with subjunctive of proviso, 314.
modō as abl. of manner, 248. R.
molāris, decl. 57 a.
moneō, conj. p. 96; constr. 219. ε. 238. b. N.
-mōnia, -mōnum, noun-endings, 163. c.
Monoptotes, 77. 2.
Monosyllables, quantity, 348. 1-3.
Months, gender of names of, 29. 1 and a; decl. of names of in-ber, 84. a; names of, 376, head-n.; divisions of, in Roman Calendar, 376.
Moods, names and uses of, 108 b, 112; note on origin and nature of, p. 274; Syntax of, 264-275.
Moods in temporal clauses, how distinguished, 323.
Mōra, in Prosody, 355. a.
mōrigerus, decl. 82. a.
mōs est ut, 332.
Mother, name of, w. prep., 244. a. R.
Motion, how expressed, 225. b. 229. a. 243. b; indicated by compounds, 237. d; implied, 259. g.
Motion, end of, see End of Motion.
Motive, how expressed, 245. b.
Mountains, names of, gender, 29. 1 and a.
-ms (-mps), noun in, 67. c.
Mulciber, decl. 41. c.
mullebris, decl. 84. a. N.
multā nocte, 193. N.
Multiplication by distributives, 95. c.
Multiplicatives, 97.
multum (ū), comp. 92.
multus, comparison, 90.
mūinus, decl. 78. 1. f; mūinus est ut, 332.
mūs, decl. 54. cf. 54. 2.
mūsica (ū), decl. 37.
Musical accent, 358.
mūtāre, constr., 252. c.
Mutes, 2. a. 3; mute-stems, decl. III., 44-47; apparent, 47. a, 54.
mýthos, decl. 43.
N, 2. b; n adulterinum, id.
N as final letter of stem (leōn-), 48. a.
n, preceding stem-vowel of verb, 123. b. 1; inserted in verb-root (frangō), 123. c. 3; 124. b. N.
a, primary suffix, 160. b.
naēs, decl., 64.
nam (enclitic), in questions, 210. f.
nam, namque, use, 156. d, 208. e.
Names of men and women, 80.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>470</th>
<th>Index of Words and Subjects.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Niming</strong>, vbs. of. w. two accs., 239. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nasals</strong>, 2. b, 3; inserted in verb-root, 123. c. 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nātālis</strong>, decl., 57. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nātū (māior, minor)</strong>, 91. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nātus</strong>, etc., w. abl. of source, 244. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nāvis</strong>, decl., 57. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-nd, -nt</strong>, vowel short before, 18. f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ndus</strong>, verbal adj-ending, 164. o; gerundive in, 113. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ne</strong> (enclitic), use in questions, 210. a-d; in double questions, 211; w. force of <strong>nōnne</strong>, 210. d; orig. meaning, id. N.; in exclamatory questions, 332. c; quantity, 348. 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nē</strong>, neg. of hortatory subj., 266. R.; w. subjunctive of proviso, 312. a; in prohibitions, 269. a; in concessions, 313. a; in final clauses, 317. (nēdum, 317. c. R.; in substantive clauses, with verbs of fearing, 331. e. 2; of fearing, id. f; omitted after <strong>cave</strong>, id. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nē nōn</strong>, w. vbs. of fearing, 331. f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nearness, adjis. of, with dat., 234. a; w. gen., id. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>** nec enim**, 156. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>necesse</strong>, indecl., 171; <strong>necesse est ut</strong>, 332. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necessity, verbs of, with perf. pass. inf., 288. d; in apodosis, 308. c, 311. c; with ut-clause, 331. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>necne</strong> in double questions, 211.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nēdum</strong>, 317. c. R. and N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nefās</strong>, indecl., 77. i; with latter supine, 303.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negation, perfect preferred in, 279. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative answer, 210. c; 212. and a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative particles, list of, 149. e; two negatives, 150, 209. a; use of, 209; form different from English, 209. b; neg. answers, 212; neg. proviso, 314. a; neg. condition, 315. a; purpose, 317; result, 319. a, d, R.; position of, 345. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>negō</strong>, better than <strong>dicō ... nōn</strong>, 209. b, 336 (4th quotation).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>negōtium dō ut</strong>, 331.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nēmō</strong>, use of, 202. f; <strong>nēmō nōn</strong>, 150. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>neque (neg.)</strong>, and <strong>not</strong>, 156. a; <strong>neque enim</strong>, use, 156. d; <strong>neque after a neg.</strong>, 209. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nēquam</strong>, in decl., 87. f; comparison of, 90.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nequeō</strong>, conj., 144. g.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nē ... quidem</strong>, use, 151. e; after <strong>nōn</strong>, 209. a; position of, 345. b; after <strong>nōn modo</strong>, 149. e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nēquis</strong>, decl., 105. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nesciō an</strong>, 210. f. R.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesciō quis, use, 202. a; as indefinite without subj., 334. e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-neus, adj-ending, 164. g.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter acc. as adv., 148. d, cf. b. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter adjs., special uses of, 189.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter verbs, see <strong>Intransitive Verbs</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter gender, general rule for, 29. c; cases alike in, 33. b; endings of decl. III., 65. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter pron. as cognate acc., 238. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter passives, 136.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter verbs, 175, 176; with cognate acc., 238; having passive sense, with ab, 246. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter passives, 136.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nex</strong>, decl., 77. 6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ni</strong>, primary suffix, 160. e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nī</strong>, nisi, 304. N.; use of, 315. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nia -nium, noun-endings, 163. f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niger, decl., 82; distinct from atēr, 91. d. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nihil, indecl., 77. 1; contr. to nil, 347. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nihili, gen. of value, 252. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nimirum quam, used as indefinite without subjunct., 334. e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>níngit, 146. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nisi and sī nōn, 315. a; nisi sī, id.; nisi vērō (forte), id. b; nisi in sense of only, id. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nisi vērō, nisi forte, 315. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitor, with abl., 254. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nix (stem and decl.), p. 26, foot-n; plur., 75. b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nō, in answers, how expressed, 212.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōiī, in prohibitions, 269. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōiō, conj., 138; part., as dat. of reference, 235. c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen, decl., 49; nōmen, denoting gens, 80. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen est, with pred. dat., 231. b, c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmina abundantia, 78. i.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal adjectives, 164. a-k.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOMINATIVE defined, 31. a; how formed from stem, 32. b; nom. suffix, p. 205; neut. pl. nom. and acc. alike, 33. b; in decl. II., N., p. 16; in decl. III., 44, 45, 48, 51; of neutrers, i-stems, 51. c;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of Words and Subjects.

in a-stems, decl. IV., p. 40, N.; in e-stems, decl. V., p. 32, N.

Nomina, Syntax (see p. 205): as subject, 173. 1; in predicate, 176. b, 185; verb-agreement with, 204; used for vocative, 241. a; in exclamations, id. c (cf. 240. d); with opin in predicate, 243. e. R.; nom. of gerund supplied by inf., 295. R.

nōn, derivation, 148. N. a; compounds of, 150. a, b; in answers, 212. a.

nōn dubitō quīn, 319. d; 332. g. R.

nōn modo, after a negative, 209. a.

nōn modo . . . nō . . . quidem, 149. e.

nōnne, in questions, 210. c.

nōn nēmō, nōn nūllus, etc., 150. a.

nōn quia, nōn quod, nōn quō, nōn quīn, etc., 156. f, 321. R.

nōn satis, 93. e.

Nomina (nōnae), 376. c.

nōs, decl., 98. i; for ego, 98. i. b.

noster, for poss. gen., 99. a, 197. a.

nostri, as objective gen., 99. c, 194. b.

nostrium, as partitive gen., 99. b, 194. b.

novendecim, 94. c.

Noun and adj., forms of verb, 109, p. 120. 

Noun-stem, treated as root, 123. d.

Nouns defined, 25. a; in decl., gend., 29. e; declension of, 32–78; derivative forms of, 161–163; used as adjectives, 88. e, 188. d; rule of agreement, 183; w., part. gen., 216; w. obj. gen., 217; governing acc., 237. f; noun as protasis, 310. a.

Nouns of agency, 161; formation, 162.

nox, decl., 54.

-ns, as noun-ending, 67. d; as adjective-ending, 85. a; participles in, decl., 85, 87. d; w. gen., 218. b; w. acc., id. N. 1 and 2.

-nt, stems in, decl., 87. b.

nābēs, decl., 52.

nūbō, with dat., 227. e.

nūllus, decl., 83.

num, force of, 210. c; in indirect questions, id. f. R.

Number, 31; nouns, defect. in, 75. 77. 5, 6, 76; variable in, 79. a; peculiar uses, id. b, c; number in verbs, 138. d; agreement in, 181; with appositives, 184. a; with adj., 186, 187, 189; with verbs, 204, 205. c.

Numeral advs., 96.

Numerals, 94–97; cardinals and ordinals, 94; distributives, 95; advs., 96; others, 97. Position of numeral adjs., 344. b.

numquils, decl., 105. d; meaning and form, id. i.

nunc, compared with iam, 151. b.

nunc . . . nunc, 208. d.

nurus, gend., 69. a.

-nus, adj. ending, 164. d.

O or a, Indo-European vowel, p. 142, foot-n, p. 433, foot-n.

o for u after u or v, 7; in decl. II., 38. N.

-a final in amō = ā + m, 116. N.

-a in nom., 48. a; gend., 65. a, 67. b; in fem. abl. of Gr. adjs., 82. d. N.

-a, -onis, noun-ending, 162. c, 164. q.

o-stems, decl. II., 38, p. 22, foot-n.; in adj., 82, 83; verbs from o-stems, 166. a. 2.

O sī, w. subjunc. of wish, 267. b, and N. 1.

ob, use, 152. a, 153; in comp., 170. a; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 228; to express cause, 245. b; w. gerund, 300.

obeō, constr., 228. a.

Obeying, vbs. of, 227; w. acc., id. a.

Object cases, 177. b.

Object clauses, infin., 330; subj., 331, 332.

Object defined, 177; becomes subject of pass., id. a, 237. a; acc. of direct w. dat. of indir. obj., 225; secondary obj., 239. 2; obj. of anticipation, 334. c.

Objective case expressed in Latin by gen., dat., acc., or abl., 177. b.

Objective compounds, 168. c.

Objective genitive, mei, etc., 99. e; defined, 213. 2; with nouns, 217; w. adjs., 218.

Obligation, unfulfilled, hort. subj., 266. c.

Oblique cases, 31. g; origin of names of, p. 205.

obvius (obviam), derivation, 148. N.

θ; as apparent adj., 188. e. 1; with dat., 228. b.

ōclor, comp., 91. d.

Occasion, expressed by participle, 292.

octōdecim, 94. c.

ōdī, conj., 143. a; w. meaning of present, 279. c.

oe, written e (long), 11. c; for -i in nom. pl., decl. II., 43. d.

offendō, constr., 228. a.

Old forms of pronouns; mīs, tīs, 98. 1. e;

mēd, tēd, id. b.
### Index of Words and Subjects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-olēns, -olentus, adj. endings</td>
<td>164. k.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ollus (ille)</td>
<td>100. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-olus, diminutive ending</td>
<td>164. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omnēs; Omnēs (instead of Omnēs nostrum)</td>
<td>216. e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōn, Greek ending</td>
<td>decl. II., 43.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōnis, nouns in</td>
<td>67. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōn, gen. plur.</td>
<td>decl. II., 43. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōn, nom. ending</td>
<td>63. c. d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōn-, stem-ending</td>
<td>48. a, see 160. v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōn-, stem-ending</td>
<td>63. f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ont-, nom. -ōn, 63. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open syllables</td>
<td>14. d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operā, with gen.</td>
<td>246. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operam dō, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. a; with subjunc., 331.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations of nature</td>
<td>146. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinōne, with compar.</td>
<td>247. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinor, position of</td>
<td>345. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportet, 146. c; with acc. of object</td>
<td>237. e; in apod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportuit, w. pres., inf., 288. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum, ad</td>
<td>258. b. N. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppūgnō, w. acc.</td>
<td>228. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ops, decl.</td>
<td>46; defect., 77. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative, derivation and comparison w. subjunc., p. 274.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative subj. (wish)</td>
<td>267; w. utinam, etc., id. b; velim, etc., w. subjunc., equiv. to, id. c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimātēs, 54. 3, 76. 2. a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opus, indecl.</td>
<td>77. 1; opus and ōsus, w. abl., 243. c; as pred. nom., id. r.; w. participle, 292. b; w. supine in -ū, 303.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or, suffix, see as.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or-, stem-ending, decl. III., 48. d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or, noun-ending</td>
<td>163. a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōris, nouns in</td>
<td>67. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or or -ōs, nom. ending</td>
<td>48. d; gend., 65. a, 67. b.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrī, constr., 331.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orpheus, decl., 43.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōs, nom. ending</td>
<td>48. d; gend., 65. a, 67. b.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### -ōs, -ōdis, 67. d.

-ōs, stem of comparatives, 86. a.
-ōs for -us, in nom. sing., decl. II., 38. N.; as Greek ending, 43; as gen. ending in Greek nouns, decl. III., 63. f.

-ōs, òris, decl., 77. 6. b.

**os, ossis**, stem, p. 26, foot-n. 2; decl., 61.

Oscan forms compared with Latin, Appendix, p. 435.

ossus, ossua (def.), 69. foot-n.

-ōsus, -olens, -olentus, adj.-endings, 164. k.

ovat (defective), 144. e.

ovis, decl., 57. b.

-ōx, nouns in, 67. e.

oxyx, decl., 67. a.

P, parasitic after m (sūmpsi), 11. c.

pāctō, as abl. of manner, 248. R.

Pacon, 356. d.

paenitet, 146. b; constr., 221. b-d.

palam, as apparent adj., 188. c. 3; with abl., 207. b, 201. b.

Palatals, 3; stems, decl. III., 45. c; gender, 66. e; forms of inflection, 67. e.

palūster, decl., 84. a.

Panthūs, vocative of, 43. b, 63. f.

pār, decl., 85. b, 87. a; with gen., 218. d; w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. foot-n.

Parallel verb-forms, 134.

Parasitic sounds, 11. c.

Parataxis, p. 164, p. 274.

parātus, with infinit., 273. b.

Pardoning, verbs of, with dat., 227.

parēllon, decl., 43.

Parisyllabic nouns of decl. III., 53. a; adjectives, 84.

pariter, use, 234. a. N. 2.

partem, adverbial use, 240. b.

parte, locative use, without preposition, 258. f.

particeps, decl., 87. b, d.

Participial clause implying condition, 310. a.

**PARTICIPLES**, defined, 25. e; comparison of, 89. e; number of, 109. a; how used, 113; as adjs., id. e; as nouns, id. f; used predicatively as adjs., id. g; parts. in -ns, used as adjs., with gen., 218. b; clause equivalent to part., 201. b; parts. in abl. absolute, 255.
Index of Words and Subjects.

473

Participles, Syntax, 288-294; agreement, 186 and N.; meaning and form, 289; tenses, 290; present in special use, id. a; pres. pass. part., how supplied, id. c; perf. act., how supplied, id. d; parts.

of deponent verbs, 135. a, b, 290. b, d; adjective use, 291; predicate use, 292; with opus, id. b; perf. with habeō, id. c; present with faciō, id. e; future part., 293; with past tenses of esse, id. c; gerundive, use as part. or adj., 294; future part. in indirect questions, 334.

Participle conditional, 304. d.

Partitive numerals, 97. c.

Partitive genitive, 216; nostrum, etc., 99. b.

Parts of Speech, 25.

Partus, decl., 70. a.

Parum, comp., 92; meaning, 93. c.

Parvi, gen. of value, 252. a.

Parvus, comp., 90.

Passive voice, 108. a; origin, 118. foot-n.; forms wanting in, 110. b; signification, 111; reflexive meaning, id. N., 118. N.; deponents, 111. b; completed tenses, how formed, 126. g; passive used impersonally, 141. a, 146. d; 230, cf. 330.

a-c, 331. b.

Pater familias, decl., 36. b.

Patēns, comp. of, 89. c.

Patria, constr., 331. c.

Patris in -ās, decl. 54. 3, 87. b.

Patronymics (-ādes, -ādes, -āus, etc.), 164. b.

Pauper, decl., 87. b.

Pāx, decl., 77. b.

Pecū, gend., 69. b; decl., 78. 1. c.

Pecūniae, gen. w. vbs. of accusing, 220. a. and N.

Pedester, decl., 84. a.

Pelagus (plur. pelagē), gend. of, 39. b.

Pelvis, decl., 57. b.

Penalty, gen. of, 220 and N.; abl. of, id. b.

Penēta, decl., 54. 3 (cf. 76. 2).

Penes, following noun, 263. N.

Pentameter verse, 363.

Penult, defined, 19; rules of quantity, 349-354.

Penus, gend., 69. a; decl., 78. 1. c.

Per, prep., 152. a; use, 153; w. acc. of agent, 246. b. Adverbial prefix, w. adj., 170. c (cf. 93 d); w. verbs, 170. c. N.

Perceiving, verbs of constr., 272, 330.

Perenedē (loc.), 74. c, 148. N. b.

Perfect participle, used to form tenses, 110. b; other uses, 113. c. i; of deponents, 135. b; used as nouns, retain adv., 207. c; dat. of agent with, 232. a; abl. w. opus and ōnus, 343. c, 292. b.

Perfect Tense distinguished from imperfect, 115. b, c; perf. def. and perf. hist., id. c, 279; personal endings, 116. a; origin of I and S in, 118. N.; stem, how formed, 124, 126; of conj. I., 126. a, 2; contracted perf., 128. a, b; perf. subj. in -sim, 128. e, 3; irreg. forms of conj. I., 130; of conj. II., 131; various, of conj. III., 132; of conj. IV., 133.


Periclis, decl., 63. i.

Period, 346; note on, p. 392.

Periphrastic conjugations, 113. b. N., d. N.; paradigms, 129; periphrastic forms in conjugation, 147; use in contrary to fact apodosis, 308. d'; in ind. questions, 334. a.

Permission, vbs. of, constr., 331. c.

Permittō, w. dat., 227. c.

Permutō, w. abl., 252. c.

Pernox, decl., 87. f.

Perpes, decl., 87. a.

Persēs, decl., 37.

Person, 108. d; agreement, 181; of vbs., 204 and a; with different persons, 205. a; order of the three persons, id.

Personal constr. of passive with infinitive, 330. a, b, d.
Index of Words and Subjects.

Personal endings, 116, and foot-n., 117. 2.
Personal pronouns, 48, 99, p. 178, head-n.;
Syntax, 194; omitted, 194. a, 206. a; gen.
pl., id. b; 3d pers., id. c.
persuadeo, constr., 331.
Persuading, verbs of, with dat., 227.
peraesum est, 221. b.
pōs, comps. of, decl., 87. 8.
Pest, comp., 227. b.
Pest with ab, 239. c. N. i; w. subjunc.,
331.
Ph only in Greek words, 2. a, 3; sound of,
16. N. i.
Phalæcian verse, 371. 11.
Pherecratic verse, 369, 370, 371. 4, 12.
Phonetic variations, 8; phonetic decay,
8. 2; vowels, 10; consonants, 11; pho-
netic method of pronunciation, 16.
Phorcys, decl., 63. a.
Phrase, defined, 179.
Phrases, neut., 29. c; phrases and clauses
grown into ads., 148. N. 6; adverbial
phrases, 179; phrases limited by gen.,
214. d; phrase or clause in abl. abs.,
255. b.
Physical qualities, abl., 251. a.
piger, decl., 82. c.
piget, constr., 221. b-d.
Pity, verbs of, constr., 221. a.
plus, comp., 89. d. N., 91. d.
pix, decl., 77. 6.
Place, advs. of, 149. a; relations of, re-
quire prep., 229. a, 258. a, c; place of
birth, abl., 244. b; place where, 254, 258.
c, d; place to or from which, 258; prep.
when omitted, 258. foot-n., a, b, f, g;
locative case, 258. c. 2, d, e.
Placing, vbs. of, constr., 260. a.
Plants, gend. of names of, 29. 2 and b;
decl. of plant names in -us, 78. i. a.
plaudō, w. dat., 227. c.
Plautus, use of ātrior, 89. N.; of quom
w. indic., 325. a. N., 326. N. 3; pro-
sodial forms, 367. a, 374. b, 375.
Pleasing, verbs of, constr., 227.
plōbēs, decl., p. 41, foot-n. i.
Plenty, verbs of, constr., 223, 248. c.
plūnus, construction, 223, 248. c. R.
-plex, numeral adjectives in, 97.
pluit (impers.), 146. a; used personally,
id. N.
Pluperfect Indicative, use of, 280; epis-
tolary, 282; plup. indic. in conditions
cnt. to fact, 308. c; in general condi-
tions, 309. c. Pluperf. Subj., hortatory,
266. c; optative, 267; in conditions, 308
(sequence, 287. f); potential, 311. a. N.
Plural, wanting in decl. V., 74. d; used
in sense different from sing., 75. a-c,
79. c; pl. alone used, 76; plur. acc.
used as advs., 148. c; neut. pl. of adjns.,
189. b.
Plurālia tantum, 76.
plūrs, gen. of value, 252. a, d.
plus, decl., 86 and b; comp., 90; with-
out quam, 247. c.
poeiēt, see paeniēt.
pōēma, decl., 47. b.
pōndō, defect., 77. 2.
pōndō, w. abl., 260. a.
por-, prefix, 170. b.
porticus, gend., 69. a.
portus, decl., 70. d.
Position, expressed by ab, ex, 260. b.
Position in Prosody, 18, 347. d; does not
affect final vowel, id. e, r.
posse, as fut. inf., 288. f.
Possession, how expressed, 99. a; dat.
of, 231; compared w. gen., id. r.
Possessive compounds, 167. d.
Possessive genitive, 214. a-d; dat. of
reference used instead, 235. a.
Possessive pronouns, 99. a, p. 64; w. gen.
in appos., 184. d; agreement, 197; in-
stead of gen., id. a; special meanings,
id. b; omission, id. c; used substanc-
tively, 190. a, 197. d; used for gen.,
214. a; for obj. gen., 190. b, 217. a.
Possibility, vbs. of, in apodosis, 308. c.
possum, in apodosis, 308. c.
post, vbs. comp. w., w. dat., 228.
postera, defect., 82. d; comp., 91. b;
posteri, 91. b.
posterior, 91. a, b.
Postpositive conjunctions, 156. k.
postquam (posteaquam), in tem-
poral clauses, 324.
postrēmō, in enumerations, 151. d.
postrior, with gen., 223. c; with acc.,
207. b, 261. a; with quam, 262.
postulō ab, 239. c. N. i; postulō ut,
331.
Potential mood, how expressed in Latin,
112. N.
Potential subjunctive, 311. a.
postis, pote, 87. f. 4.
potior (adj.), comp., 91. d.
potior (verb), conj., 135; with gen., 223.
a, 249. a; w. abl., 249; w. acc., id. b; gerundive, 296. r.
potius, comp., 92.
potui, w. pres. infin., 288. a.
Power, adj., of, w. gen., 218. d.
Practice, vbs. of, 167. c.
prae, 152. b; use, 153; in comp., 93. d; in comp., w. dat., 228; in comp., w. quam, 262. N. 1; quantity of, in compounds, 347. b.
preadĕō, constr., 228. a.
preadeps, decl., 85. b, 87. a.
preadiplō, constr., 331.
Praenomen, 80. a; abbreviations, id. d, e.
preadeps, decl., 87. d.
prae, decl., 67. d, 77. b.
preader, constr., 227. c.
praesum, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. a.
praeter, use, 152. a, 153.
praeteritum, w. acc., 237. e.
precl, defect., 77. 5.
predicor, constr., 331.
Predicate, pp. 153, 164; defined, 172; modified, 178; pred. noun or adj., 172. N., 176; case, 176. b; pred. nom., etc., 185; pred. noun referring to two or more sing. nouns, id. b; adjective, 186. b, e, d; agreement in, 187. a, b; in rel. clause, 199; pred. adj. in neut. pl., 187. c; pred. adj. in relative clause, 200. d; pred. acc., 239 and a; adj. as pred. acc., id. N. 1; pred. acc. becomes pred. nom, in the pass. id. N. 2; predicate gen., 214. e, d; predicate use of participles, 292.
Predicate noun or adj. after inf., 270. N. 2, 271. c, 272. a, 2 and N., b.
Prepositions, assimilation of, II. f; defined, 25, g; derivation of, p. 127, foot-n.; list of preps. w. acc., 152. a; w. abl., id. b; with either, id. c; how distinguished from advs., p. 127, foot-n.; idiomatic uses, 153; compounded w. vbs. and adjs., 170. a, c; noun w. prep., instead of obj. gen., 217. c; in composition w. vbs., w. dat., 228, 229; acc. in compos., 239. b; w. abl. of separation, 243. a; prep. omitted in relations of place, 258. a, b, f, g; use of, 260-263; preps. following the noun, 263. N.; usual position of, 345. a. (See N., p. 205.) Present Participle, decl., 85; use, 113. a.
Present stem, how formed, pp. 86, 119; from root, 123.
Present tense, with iam difi, etc., 276.
a; conative, id. b; for fut., id. c; historical, id. d; with dum, id. e; in quotations, id. f; sequence, 286, 287.
e, b; pres. inf. w. potui, etc., 288. a; participle, 290-292. Pres. inf. in ind. disc. referring to past time, 336. A. N. 1.
Present subjunct. in -im, 128. e. 2.
Preterit verbs, 143. N., 279. e.
Preventing, verbs of, constr., 225. c. N. 2.
Price, abl. or gen., 252.
pridē, form, 74. c; with gen., 223. e; with acc., 207. b; constr. as prep. or adv., 261. a; with quam, 262.
Primary suffixes, defined, 159, 160.
Primary tenses, 285, 1, 286.
primipilāris, decl., 57. a.
Primitive verbs, 165.
primō, primum, meanings, 151. d.
primōris, defect., 87. f.
primus, form, p. 56, foot-n.
princeps, decl., 87. b.
Principal parts of verb, 122. b, d.
prior, comparison, 91.
prius, with quam, 262; priusquam in temporal clause, 327; in indir. disc., 336. B. a. N. 2.
Privation expressed by abl., 243.
prō, 152. b; use, 153; in comp., w. dat., 228; to express for, 236. R.
probō w. dat., 227. e; 232. c. N.
Procelematicus, 356. e.
proceōrus, decl., 82. a.
procul with abl., 261. b.
prohibēō, constr. of, 225. d.
Prohibitions, 266. b, 269 and a, b. N.; in ind. disc., 339. N.
Promising, etc., verbs of, 330. f.
Pronominal roots, 157, 159; as primary suffixes, id.
Pronouns defined, 25. c; decl. of, 98-105; personal and reflexive, 98; gen., how used, 99. a-c; demonstrative, 100-102; relative, interrog., and indef., 103-105; pron. contained in verb-ending, 116. foot-n., 174. 2.
Pronouns, Syntax, 194-203; Personal, 194; Demonstrative, 195; Idem, id.
c, e; ipse, id. f-l; Reflexive, 196.
Possessive, 197; Relative, 186. N., 198;
relative in protasis, 316; Indefinite, 202. Prons. w. part. gen., 216. a;
Position of prons., 344, l, 345. e. Note
on their use and meaning, p. 178.
Pronunciation, Roman method, 16; Eng-
lish method, 17.
prōnuntiō, constr., 331.
prope, comp, 91. a; use, 152. a.
prope est ut, 332.
Proper names, 80; plur, 75, 76. 1.
Proper nouns, 25. a.
properus, decl., 82. a.
propīnquus, with gen., 218. d.
propior (propius), comparison, 91. a; 
constr, 234. e, 261. a and N.
Proportional numerals, 97. a.
Propriety, vbs. of, in apodosis, 308. c, 
311. c.
proprius, with gen., 234. d.
propter, use, 152. a, 153; position, 263.
N.; denoting motive, 245. b.
PROSODY, p. 394; rules and definitions, 
347-375; early peculiarities, 375.
proser (-us), decl., 82. b.
prospiciō, w. dat. or acc., 227. c.
Protasis (see Conditional Clauses), 304
ff.; loose use of tenses in Eng, 305. r.;
relative in prot, 316; temporal particles
in, 322; ante-quam, prıusquam in, 
327. b; prot. in ind. disc, 337. 1.
Protecting, vbs. of, constr, 225. d. N. 2.
Protraction of long syllables, 355. c.
providēō, w. dat. or acc., 227. c.
Proviso, subj. used in, 266. d; introduced
by modo, etc., 314; result-clause as, 
319. b, 320. d.
proximē, constr, 207. b, 261. a, 234. e.
proximus, constr., 234. e.
-pēs, nouns in, 67. c.
-pse, -pse (enclitic), 99. f, 100. c; p. 67.
foot-n.
pūbēs, decl., 78. l. c, 87. e.
pudet, 146. b; constr, 221. b-d.
puer, decl, 38 (cf. 41. a).
pulcher, decl., 82. c.
puls, decl., 67. d.
Punishment, abl. of, 220. b.
puppis, decl., 56. b, 57. b.
Pure and impure syllables, 14. c.
Purpose, infin. of, 273; expressed by ger-
undive after certain vbs, 294. d; by ger-
und or gerundive as predicate gen., 298.
R.; ways of expressing, 318. Clauses of,
180. e; defined and classified, 317; use
of quō in, id. b; main clause omitted, 
id. c; nēdum, id. r. and N. Sub-
stantive clauses of, used after certain
verbs, 331; of wishing, id. b; of per-
mitting, id. c; of determining, id. a; of
cautions, etc., id. e; of fearing, id. f.
(Note on, p. 340.)
Purpose or end, dat. of, 233.
-pūs, compounds of, 67. d.
puter, decl., 84. a.
quā . . . quā 208. d.
quadrupēs, decl., 87. d.
quae res (or id quod), 200. e.
quaẹrō, constr. (ex or dā), 239. c. N.
2; w. subjunc., 331.
quaẹsō, conj., 144. d; position of, 345. c.
quālōs, 105. g.
Qualities (abstract), gend., 29. 2.
Qualities of an object compared, 192.
Quality, adj.s of, 164. l; gen. of, 215, 251.
a; to denote price, 252. a, b; abl. of,
251 (cf. 215. N.).
quam, with superlative, 93. b; etymology
of, p. 123. e; correlative w. tam, 107.
w. compar. and positive or w. two pos-
itives, 192. b; with comparatives, 247.
a, e; after allus, id. d; w. compar. of
adv.s, id. e; with ante, post, 262;
with subj. after comparatives, 320. c;
followed by result-clause, 332. b; in in-
direct questions, 334. e; in indirect dis-
course, 336. a. R., c. N. 2.
quamdī, 328. N. 1.
quamlībet, concessive, 266. c, 313.
quam ob causam, 242. N.
quam qui, quam ut, with subj., 320. c.
quamquam, 105. b. N.; use, 156. i; with
indic, 313. e; introducing a proposition = and yet, id. f; w. subj., id. g.
quam si, 312.
quamvis, use, 156. i; subj. or ind. with,
266. c, 313. a, g.
quando (interrog.); derivation, 148. N.
7; meaning, 156. g; indef., id.; causal
(since), 321. N. 3; temporal, 322.
quanto, gen. of price, 252. a.
Quantity, gen. of adj.s of, denoting price,
252. a.
Quantity in Prosody, marks of, 5; gen-
quis, dat. or abl. plur., 104. d.
quismam, 105. i.
quismam, 105. c, use of, 105. d, N., 202. a.
quisquam, decl., 105. c; use, 105. d, N., 202. a.
quisque, form and decl., 105. e; use with superlative, 93. c.; in general assertions, 202. d; in dependent clause, id, e; with plural verb, 205. c. 2.
quisquis, decl., 105. b.
quivis, decl., 105. c; use, 202. c.
quō, approaching abl. of cause, 250. N.
quō in final clauses (= ut eō) with subj., 317. b; nōn quō, 321. R.
quō ... eō, 106. c; to denote deg. of difference, 250. R.
quod (purpose, etc.), 328.
quod for id quod, 200. e. N.
quod (conj.), 156. f; mood with, 321.
in indirect discourse, id. a; subst. clause with, 333; as acc. of specification, id. a; with verbs of feeling, id. b; quod in intermediate clauses, 341. c and R.
quod sciam (proviso), 320. d.
quod si, use, 156. b, 240. b.
quom (see cum), 7, 156. g.
quōminus (= ut eō minus), w. vbs. of hindering, 317. b. N. 1, 319. c, 331. e.
quoniam, meaning, 156. f; in causal clauses, 321.
quoque, use, 151. a; position, 345. b.
quot, indeclinable, 106. a.
Quotation, forms of, w. apud and in, 258. c. 2. N. 2; direct and indir., 335.
quetus quisque, 105. e.
quu- (cu-), 7.
quum (conjunction), 7 (see cum).

R subst. for 8 between sonants, 11. a, p. 26, foot-n. 2; r- in adj. stems, 85; rr- in noun-stems, 48. e.
ra (la), primary suffix, 160. i.
rāstrum, plu. in -a and -i, 78. 2. b.
ratiōne, as abl. of manner, 248. R.
ratus, as pres. part., 290. b.
rāvis, decl., 56. a.
re- or red- (prefix), 170. b.
reāpse, 100. c.
Receiving, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 204. d.
Reciprocal (each other), how expressed, 99. d, 195. f.
Index of Words and Subjects.

recordor, with acc., 219. b.
reōctum est ut, 352.
red-, see re-.
Reduplication, 123. c, 124. c, p. 120, 158. c; in perfect of conj. III., id.; list of verbs, 132. b; lost in fidi, etc., id. 132. f. N.; rule for quantity, 351. c.
reōrīt, with gen. or possessive adj., 222; other constr., id. b.
Reference, object of, 218.
Reference, pronouns of, 195. a; commonly omitted, id. b; dative of, 235; gen. of specification, 218. c.
Reflexive pronouns, 98. 2. a, 102. c. N.; Syntax of, 196; of 1st and 2d person, id. h.
Reflexive verbs (deponent or passive), 118. foot-n., 135. c; use of passive, III. N. i; with acc., 420. N.
Refusing, vbs. of, w. quōminus, 319. c.
Regular verb, 121-136.
Relationship, nouns of, 164. b.
Relative adjectives, w. gen, 218, with a, b.
Relative adverbs, used correlativey, 107; used to connect independent sentences, 180. f, 201. e; = pronoun with prep., 207. a; referring to locative, 201. f; used instead of rel. pron., id. f. 2, 207. a; used in relative clauses of purpose, 317; of result, 319; position, 201. c.
Relative clauses, defined, 180. e; w. relative advs., 201. h. Syntax, 316-328; conditional, 316; final, 317, 318; consecutive, 319; characteristic, 320; causal, 321; temporal, 323-328; rel. clauses in ind. disc., 340; position of rel. clause, 345. e. (Note on origin and classification, p. 339.)
Relative pronouns, decl., 103; forms how distinguished from interrogative and indef., 104. a; compounds of, 105; relatives as connectives, 180. f. Syntax, 198-201; rules of agreement, 198, 199; w. two antecedents, 198. a; rel. in agreement w. appos., etc., 199; use of the antecedent, 200; special uses of rel., 201; never om. in Lat., 201. a; pers. of verb agreeing w., 204. a; abl. of rel. after comp., 247. a. N.; position, 345. e.
Note on, p. 186.
relinquantur ut, 332. a.
reliquum est ut, 332. a.
reliquus, use, 193; reliqui, use, 203. a.
-rem, verb-ending, p. 120.
Remembering, vbs. of, constr., 219; w. inf., 271.
Reminding, vbs. of, constr., 219. c.
Removing, vbs. of, w. abl., 243. a.
[reō], decl., 54. 2.
repetundārum, 220. a.
Repeated action as general condition, 309. b.
Requesting, vbs. of, constr., 330. 2.
requīēs, decl., p. 41, foot-n. i; 78. i. e.
rēs, decl., 72.
Resisting, vbs. of, constr., 227, 319. d.
Resolution of syllables in Prosody, 357.
Resolving, vbes. of, constr. (subjunc. or infi.), 331. d.
restat, with ut, 332. a.
restis, decl., 56. b.
Restriction in subjunctive clause, 320. d.
Result, clauses of, 180. e, p. 343; sequence of tenses in, 287. c; infin. of, 273. 8. Subjunctive with relatives or ut, 319; negative result with ut nōn, etc., id. a, d. R.; result-clause equivalent to proviso, id. b; with quōminus, id. c; with quīn, id. d; of characteristic, 320; with expressions of existence and non-existence, id. a; with ūnus and sōlus, id. b; with comparatives, id. c; with dignus, etc., id. f. Subst. clauses of result after faciō, etc., 332; as subject, id. a; after quam, id. b; in exclamatory questions, id. c; tantum abest ut, id. d; thought as result, id. f.
Result, nouns, denoting, 163. c.
rēte, decl., 57. a.
rēx, decl., 46.
Rhetorical questions in ind. disc., 338.
rūs, decl., 67. a.
Rhythm, development of, Note, p. 402; nature of, 355.
Rhythmical reading, 359. R.
rl., adj.-stems in, 84. a.
ritū, abl. of manner, 248. R.
rīvālis, decl., 57. b.
Rivers, names of, gender, 29. 1 and a.
ro-stems, decl. II., 38; adj.-stems, 82.
rogō, constr. of, 239. c, and R., d. N.; w. subjunc., 331.
Roman method of pronunciation, 16.
Roman writers, Appendix, p. 439.

Romance (or Romanic) languages, Appendix, p. 437; comparative forms, id.

Root, defined, 22, 157; of vbs., 117. I. N.; noun-stem treated as root, 123. d; roots ending in vowel, 123. f; consciousness of roots lost in Lat., 22. N.; root used as stem, 123. e, f, 158; as word, p. 163.

rōs, decl., 77. 6.

rr-, as stem ending, 48. c.

-rs, nouns in, 67. d.

rt-, stems in, decl., 87. b.

rubēr, decl., 82. c.

rūrī, locative, 62, 258. d.

rūs, 67. b, 77. 6. a; constr., 258. a, b, d.

S changed to r, 11. a, i; p. 26, foot-n. 2; substituted for d or t, 11. a, 2; 8 final elided, 11. b, 3; -s as sign of nom., 32. b, 36, 44, 72, 85. foot-n., p. 205; -s omitted in inscriptions, 38. N.; -s, noun-ending, decl. III., gen., 65. b; s suppressed in verb-forms, 128. b; in early Lat., 375. a.

s- as stem-ending, 48. d, 60. d; p. 41, foot-n. 1; of adj., 85. 6. N.; of comparatives, 86. a; apparent s-stems, p. 26, foot-n. 2.

s as suffix of perfect, 124. b; list of vbs. of conj. III. w. perf. in s, 132. a.

sacer, decl., 82. c; comp., 91. d.

saepe, comp., 92.

sāl, decl., 77. 6.

Salaminis, decl., 63. a.

salūber, decl., 84. a.

salūtem, 240. d, N. 2.

salvē, defective, 144. f.

sānē quam, 334. e.

sanguis, decl., 67. b.

Sanskrit forms, see notes, pp. 14, 26, 81, 83, 433, 434.

sapiōns, decl., 57. b.

Sapphic verse, 371. 6, 7.

satāgō, with gen., 223.

satīās, decl., p. 41. foot-n. 1.

satis, comp., 92; compounds of, with dat., 227. c; non satis, 93. e; compounds of, w. dat., 227. e; satis est (satis habēō), with perf. infin., 288. e.

satur, genitive of, 41. b; decl., 82. b; comp., 91. d.

Saturnian verse, 374. d.

Saying, verbs of, constr., 330; in passive, id. a, b, 336.

sc preceding stem-vowel of verb, 123. b, 1.

scaber, decl., 82. c.

Scanning, 359. b, 356. N.

scilicet, derivation, 148. N. 8.

scīn, contracted form for sincane, 13. c.

Scipiadēs, 37.

scū, imperative of, 269. e.

sciscō, constr., 331.

scītō, scītōte, imperative forms, 128. c, 269. e.

-scū (inceptive), verbs ending in, 167. a.

scrobs, decl., 54. 2.

sē- or sēd-, inseparable prefix, 170. b.

sē, reflexive, decl., 98. 2. b; use, 196; inter sē, 99. d.

Second Conjugation, prin. parts., 122. c; pres. stem, how formed, 123. a; formation of conj. II., 126. b; paradigm, p. 96; verbs of, 131; derivation, 166. b.

Second Declension, nouns, 33-43; accent of gen. and voc. of nouns in -lus, 19. d, 2. Second accent, 19. b, N.

Secondary object, 239. 2.

Secondary suffixes, defined, 159.

Secondary tenses, 285; rule for use of, 286; perf. def. more commonly secondary, 287. a; perf. subj. in clauses of result used after, 287. c; hist. pres., id. e; imperf. and pluperf. subj., id. f, g; present used as if secondary, by synesis, id. h.

secundum, 152. a; prep. use, 153.

secundus, derivation, 94. foot-n.

secūris, decl., 56. b, 57. a.

secus, indecl. noun, 77. i; use, 240. b.

secus (adv.), comp., 92.

secūtus (as pres. part.), 290. b.

sed-, see sē-.

sed compared with vērum, etc., 156. b.

sādōs, decl., 59.

sedile, decl., 52.

Selling, vbs. of, 252. d.

sēmentis, decl., 56. b, 57. b.

Semi-deponents, 136.

sēmineći, defect., 87. f.

Semi-vowels, i and u (u), 4.

senāti, senātus, forms of gen. in decl. IV., 70. 7.

senex, decl., 60. c, 61; adj. masc., 88. b; comparison, 91. c.
sōns, as participle of esse, 119. a.
Sentence, development, p. 163; defined, 171; simple or compound, 180 (compare Note, p. 339); incomplete, 206.

sentis, decl., 77. 7.
Separation, dat. of, after comps. of ab, dé, ex, and after adimō, 229; abl., 243; gen. for abl., 223. b. 3, 243. f. R.

sequester, decl., 78. 1. b.
sequitur, with ut, 332. a.

sequor, conj., 135.

sērā nocte, 193. N.
serēs, decl., 74. d.
Service, adj.s., of, w. dat., 234. a.
Service, dat. of, 233. a. with foot-n.
Serving, verbs of, with dat., 227.

servus (servos), decl., 38.
sēstertium, sēstertius, 377-379; how written in cipher, 380.

seu (sīve), 156. c, 315. c.
Sharing, adj.s. of, with gen., 218. a.
Should (auxiliary), how expressed in Lat., 111. b. N.
Showing, verbs of, with two accs., 239. a.
-sī, perfect ending, 118. N.

sī, p. 320; w. subj. of wish, 267. b. N. I: sī and its compounds, use, 304. a. N., 315;
sī nōn distinguished from nīsl, 315. a; sī = whether, 334. f; mīrō sī, 333. R.
Sibilants, 3.
sīc, corrol. with ut, 107, 319. R.; with sī, 304. b.

siem (sim), 119. b.
Significant endings, 161-164.
silentīō, without preposition, 248. R.
-silīs, adj-ending, 164. m.
silvester, decl., 84. a.
-sīm, old form of perf. subj., 128. c. 3.
similis, comparison, 89. b; with gen. and dat., 234. d. 2.
similīter, use, 234. a. N. 2.
simōs, decl., 64.
Simple sentences, 180.
simul with abl., 261. b.
simul, simul atque (āc), 324.
simul ... simul, 208. d.
sīn, 304. a. N.

sināpl, indecl., 67. a.
Singular, nouns defect. in, 77. 5.

Singulāria tantum, 75.
sinister, decl., 82. a.
sinō, constr., 331. c.
-sīō, noun-ending, 163. b.
sīquis, decl., 105. d.
-sīs-, dropped in perf., 128. b.
sitis, decl., 52. cf. 56. a.
Situation or direction, 235. b.

sive (seu) ... sive, use, 156. c, 315. c.
Smell, verbs of, with acc., 237. c.
-sō, verbs in, 167. b.
-sō, old form of fut. perfect, 128. e. 3.
socrus, gend., 62. a.
sōdēs (sī audēs), 13. c, 136. a.
sōl, decl., 77. 6.
soleō, semi-dep., 136.
solitō, with comp., 247. b.
solitus as pres. part., 290. b.
sōlus, decl., 83; with relative clause, 320. b.

Sonants. 2. a, 3.
-sor, see -tor.
Sōracte, decl., 57. d.
sordem, defect., 77. 5.
Source, expressed by abl., 244.
-sōria, noun-ending, 164. i. 4; -sōrius, adj-ending, id. b; -sōrium, noun-ending, id. i. 5.

Sospita, fem. adj. form, 85. c.
Sounds, see Pronunciation.
Space, extent of, expressed by acc., 257.
Sparing, verbs of, with dat., 227.
spē, with comp., 247. b.
Special verb-forms, 128.
speciēs, decl., 74. d.
Specification, gen. of, with adj.s., 218. c; acc. of, 240. c; abl. of, 253.
specus, gend., 69. a.
Spelling, variations of, 12.
spēs, decl., 72. N., p. 41. foot-n. 2.
Spirants, 3. a.
Spondaic verse, 362. a.
Spondee, 356. b.

spontis,-e, defect., 77. 3.
Stanza or Strophe, 361.

statēō, without prep., 260. a; w. inf. or subjunc., 331. d.
Statutes, fut. inv. in, 269. d. 3.
ste for iste, etc., 100. b.

stella, decl., 35.

Stems, defined, 21, classified, 157; how formed from root, 23, 158, 159; how found in nouns, 32. a; ā-stems, decl.
Substantive clauses, 329-334; nature and classes of, 329 (cf. p. 356); Infin. clauses, 330; clauses of Purpose, 331; of Result, 332; Indic. w. quod, 333; Indirect Questions, 334; adj. w. subst. clauses, 189, d.

Substantive use of adjs., 188; of possessive prons., 190. a, 197. d.

Substantive verb (esse), 172. N.

subter, 152. c; use, 260. d.

suéstra, w. infin., 273. b.

Suffixes, 159; primary, list of, 160; significant, 161-164.

súf, decl., 98. c; use, 196; w. gen. of gerund, 208. a.

sum, conj., 119; as copula, 172. N; as substantive vb., id.; omitted, 206. c; w. dat. of possession, 231; position, 344. c, j.

summus, form, p. 56. foot-n. (top of), 193.

sunt qui, 320. a.

suovetaurilia, 168. a.

supellex, decl., 60. c.

super, 152. c; use, 153, 260. c; in comp., 170. a; in comp., w. dat., 228.

supera, defect, 82. d (cf. p. 56. foot-n.); comp., 91. b; superi, id.

superior, comparison, 91. b.

Superlative, suffix, 89. foot-n.; in-rimus, 89. a; of adjs. in -lis, id. 4; with máx-

imá, id. 4; of eminence, 93. b; with quam vel or únus, id.; with quis-

que, id. c; takes gender of partitive, 187. e; denoting order, succession, 193.

superstes, decl., 87. a, b.

Supine, noun of decl. IV., 71. a; use of, 114. b; stem, 121. c; formation, 125.

126. a-d (cf. p. 121); irregular forms of, conj. 1., 130; conj. II., 131; allied with forms in -tor, 162. a. N. i.

Former Supine, use of, 302; Latter, 303; as abl. of specification, 253. a.

suppetiás, defect, 77. a.

supplex, decl., 87. b, d.

supplício, w. dat., 227. e, 3.

suprā, use of, 152. a, 153.

-sūra, noun-ending, 163. b.

Surds, 2. a, 3.

-suriō, vbs. in, 167. e.

-sus, phonetic form of -tus, 71; noun-

ending, 163. b.

sūs, decl., 60. a, 61.
suus, use, 196.
Swearing, vbs. of, constr., 238. c, 330. f.
Syllables, rules for division of, 14; pure, open, etc., id. d, e; long and short, 18.
Syneresis, 347. c, d. r.
Synalepha, 359. c, R.
Synchysis, 344. h.
Syncope, 10. c.
Synecdoche, defined, see Glossary.
Synecdochical accusative, 240. c.
Synesis, defined, 182. a; in gend. and number, 187. d; in sequence of tenses, 287. h.
Synopsis of tenses (amō), 127; of impersonal verbs, 145.
Syntactic compounds, 170.
Syntaxis and parataxis, p. 164.

T changed to θ, η. a. 2, 125; t for d (set, aput), 12. c; t preceding stem-vowel of vb., 123. b. 1; t-(θ), supine stem-ending, 125, 126. a. 2, b. 2, c. 2, d. t, nouns in, gend., 65. c.
ta, primary suffix, 160. c. 2, 162. b.
taxet, impersonal, 146. b; constr., 221. b-d.
tae, decl., 82. c.
Taking away, vbs. of, 229.
Talent, value of, 382.
tālis, 105. g, 106.
tālis ut, etc., 319. R.
tam, corrol. with quam, 107; corrol. w. ut, 319. R.
tamen, 156. i, k; as correlative, id. i.
tamesi, concessive use, 156. i, 313. c.
tamquam, in conditional clauses, 312; with primary tenses, id. R.
tandem, in questions, 210. f.
tanti, gen. of value, 252. a, d; tantē est ut, 332.
tantō following quantō, 106. c, 250. R. tantum, with subjunctive of proviso, 314.
tantum abest ut, 332. d.
tantus, 105. g, 106; tantus ut, 319. R.
tar, primary suffix, 160. ĝ.
tātēs, tēa, noun-endings, 163. c.
Taste, verbs of, with acc., 237. c.
tāt- as stem-ending, 54. 2.

-te (enclitic), 99. f.
Teaching, vbs. of (two accs.), 239. c.
tegō, conj., p. 98.
Telling, vbs. of, constr., 272, 330.
Temporal clauses, defined, 180. c; 322-323; as protasis, 322; two uses, 323; w. postquam, etc., 324; w. cum, 325; w. antequam and priusquam, 327; w. dum, dōnec, quoad, 328; replaced by abl. absolute, 255. d.
Temporal numerals, 97. b; conjunctions, 155. h.
tempus est abire, 298. N.
Tendency, adjectives denoting, 164. l.
tēnēr, decl., 82. c.
Tenses, Syntax, 276-288; classified, p. 291; Present tense, 276; Imperfect, 277; Future, 278; of Completed action, 279-281; Epistolar tenses, 282; of subjunctive, 283-285; sequence of, 285-287; tenses of the infinitive, 288; tense emphatic, 344. d. 3; tenses of inf. in ind. disc., 336. A; tenses of subjunc. in ind. disc., 336. B; affected by representātiō, id. a; in condition in ind. disc., 337. Notes on origin of syntax, pp. 274, 291.
tenus, constr., w. gen., 223. c; w. abl., 260. c; position, 263. N., 345. a.
ter, in alter, etc., p. 49. foot-n.; -ter, adv. ending, 148. b, c.
terēs, decl., 87. a; comp., 91. d.
terior, ending, p. 56. foot-n.
Terminations of inflection, meaning of, 20. b; open and close affixes, 24. N; terminations of nouns, 34; of verbs, 118. (See Endings.)
ternus, as adj.-ending, 164. e; as noun-ending, id. i. 12.
terrā marique, 258. d.
terrestēr, decl., 84. a.
terus, ending, p. 56. foot-n.
Tetrameter, Iambic, 366. a.
Than, how expressed, 247.
The as correlative, 106. c. and foot-n.
Thesis and Arsis, 358 and foot-n.
Thinking, vbs. of, constr. with acc. and inf., 272, 330.

Third conjugation, of verbs, prin. parts, 122. c; pres. stem, how formed, 123. b; formation, 123. b, 126. c; paradigm, p. 98; in -tō, paradigm, p. 100; list, p. 101. N.; list of verbs, with principal parts, 132; derivation of vbs. in -uō, 166. c.

Third declension, of nouns, 44-67; mute stems, 44-47; liquid stems, 48-50; vowel stems, 51-59; case forms, 56; peculiar forms, 60, 61; Greek nouns, 63, 64; rules of gender, 65, 66; forms of inflection classified by stems, 67.

Though, see Although.

Thought, considered as result, 332. f.

Thinking, vbs. of, 227, 330. f.

thūs, see thūs.

tī, primary suffix, 160. c. 2. β.
-tīa (-tīs), noun-ending, 163. e.
-tίcus, adj.-ending, 164. g.

Tigris, decl., 64.

-tīlis, adj.-ending, 164. m.

-tim, adverb in, 56. a. 3. 148. N. e.

Time (see Temporal Clauses), 264. a; 284, 323.

Time, advs. of, 149. b.

Time, duration of, 256 and b; time when, 256; corresponding to Eng. place, 259. a; time during or within which, w. ordinal, id. c; distance of time, id. d; abl. abs., to denote time, 255. and d. 1.

Time, mode of reckoning, p. 425.

timēo, w. dat., or acc., 227. c; with subjunctive, 331. f.

-timōs, adj.-ending, p. 56, foot-n.; 164. e.

-tīō, noun-ending, 160. b, 163. b.

-tīō (-sīō), -tūras, -tūs (-tūtis), noun-endings, 163. b.

-tium, noun-ending, 163. f.

-tiurus, verbal adj.-ending, 164. l.

To (so as to), 319. d. R.

To... to, 320. c.

-tor (-sor), -trix, nouns of agency in, 162. a; used as adjs., 88. c, 188. d.

-torīa, noun-ending, 164. i. 4.

-tōriōs, noun-ending, 160. b, 164. i. 5.

-tōrius, adj.-ending, 160. b; as noun-ending, 164. h.

tot, use, 106 and a.

totidem, use, 106. a.

tōtus, decl., 83; nouns w., in abl. without prep. (place where), 258. f. 2.

Towns, names of, gend., 29, 39. a; names of towns in -e, decl., 57. d; locative of, 258. c. 2; as place from which, id. a; as place to which, 258. b.

tr-, stems in (pater, etc.), 48. c.

tra, primary suffix, 160. o.

trācīō, constr., 239. b. R.; trālectus lōra, id.

trāns, 152. a; use, 153; comps. of, w. acc., 237. d; w. two accs., 229. b and R.

Transitive adjectives, 218.

Transitive verbs, 175. b, 177; absolute use, 175. b. N. 2; how translated, 177. c; w. dat., 225.


Trees, names of, gend., 29. 2.

tréas, decl. 94. e.

trī-, stem-ending of nouns, 51. b, 54. 1; of adjs., 84. a.

Tribe, abl. of, 244. b. N.

Tribrach, 356. a.

tribūlis, decl., 57. b.

tribus, gend., 69. a; decl., 70. d.

trīdēns, decl., 57. b.

Trimeter, Iambic, 365.

Triptotes, 77. 4.

trīrēmis, decl., 57. b.

-trīs, adj.-ending, 164. e.

triumphō, w. abl., 245. a. 2.

-trix, see -tor.

-trō, advs. in, p. 123. N. y. R.

Trocchiaic verse, 360, 367.

Trocchee, 356. a; irrational, id. N., 369.

-trum, noun-ending, 163. d.

Trusting, vbs. of, constr., 227.

tu, primary suffix, 160. c. 2. γ.

-tū, decl., 98. 1 (see tüte, tūtimet).

tū, -sū, supine-endings, 114. b.

tūdō, -tūs, noun-endings, 163. e.

tuill (tetuill), 139; derivation, id., foot-n.; quantity, 351. b. Ex.

-tum, -sum, supine endings, 114. b.

tum, tunc, use, 149. b; corr. w. cum, 107, 156. h.

tum... tum, 208. d.

-tūras, -tūs, noun-ending, 163. b.

-turiōs, vbs. in, 167. e.

turris, decl., 52 (cf. 56. b).

-turnus, adj.-ending, 164. e.
-tus, adj.-ending, 164. f; noun-ending, 163. 
tūs (this), decl., 77. 6.
tussis, decl., 56. a.
tūte, 99. f; tūtimet, 99. f.
Two accusatives, 239.
Two datives, 233. a.

_U_ (ν), as consonant, 4; after q, g, s, 4.
N. 3; not to follow _u_ or _v_, 7; _u_ for _e_ in conj. III., 126. b. 1.
_u_, primary suffix, 160. c. 1.
-u-stems, of nouns, decl. III., 60. a, 61; decl. IV., 68; of verbs, p. 86, 123. d, 166. a. 3, c.
über, decl., 85. b, 87. c.
ubl, derivation, 148. N. 8; in temporal clauses, 322, 324.
ububi, 105. b.
-ubus, in dat. and abl. pl., decl. IV., 70. d.
-uis (-uos), in gen., decl. IV., 68. N., 70. a.
-ūlis, adj.-ending, 164. d.
ūlius, decl., 83, use, 105. b, 202. b, c.
ültier, comparison, 91. a.
ültrā, 152. a; use, 153, following noun, 263. N.
-ulus, diminutive ending, 164. a; verbal adj.-ending, id. l.
-ūm for -ārum, 36. d; for -ōrum, 40.
_e_; -ūm in gen. pl. of personal prons., 104. b; -ūm for -ium, decl. III., 59; in gen. pl. of adj., 87. d; for -ūnum, decl. IV., 68. N., 70. c.
Umbran forms compared with Lat., p. 435.
Undertaking, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. d.
Unorganized forms of expression, p. 163 and foot-n.
unquam, use, 105. b.
ūnt-, stem-ending, 63. e. [w. superl., 93. b.
ūnus, decl. 83, meaning, 94. a, 95. b.
ūnus qui, w. subj., 320. b.
ūnus quisque, decl., 105. c; use, 202. d.
uo, suffix, see _va._
-uō, vbs. in, 166. c.
-uos, see _uis._
(ur, nouns in, 65. c; -ūr, -ōris, 67. b; -ūr, -ōris, -ūr, -ōris, id.
urbs, decl., 54; use in relations of place, 258. b. N. 3.
Urging, vbs. of, with _ut_, 331.

-urīō, desiderative verbs in, 167. e.
-urnus, adj.-ending, 164. e.
-ūrus, fut. part. in, 113. b, 293; w. _ful_, 293. c, 308. a; in ind. questions, 334.
a; -ūrus fuisse, in ind. disc., 337. b.
-ūs, nom.-ending, decl. II., 28, 39; -ūs for -er in Gr. nouns, decl. II., 43. b; -ūs nom.-ending in decl. III., 48. d; gender, 65. e, 67. b; decl. IV., 68; gender, 69; neut.-ending, 163. a.
-ūs, Gr. nom.-ending, 63. e; -ūs, -ūdis, 67. d; -ūs, -ūtis, id.
Use, adjis. of, constr., 234. b.
usquam, use, 105. h.
usque, w. acc., 261. a.
ūsus (need), w. abl., 243. e.
ut (uti), correlative w. _ita_, _sic_, 107; to denote concession, 266. c, 313. a; w. optative subjunct., 267. b; in clauses of purp., 317; of result, 319; ut _nē_, id. a; 331. c. i. N.; ut _nōn_, etc., 319. d. r.; ut temporal, 322, 324; verbs followed by clauses w. _ut_, 331, 332; omission after certain verbs, 331. f. R., i. N. 1 and 2; w. verbs of fearing, 331. f and foot-n.; used elliptically in exclamations, 332. c.
ut, utpote, quippe, w. relative clause, 320. e. N. 1; w. _cum_, 326. N. 1.
ut primum, 324.
ut semel, 324.
uter, interrog. and indef. pron., 104. g.
uter, decl., 51. b, 54. i, 88. a.
uterque, form and decl., 105. e; use, 202. d; constr. in agreement and as partitive, 216. d.
utervis, use, 202. c.
uti, utinam, w. subj. of wish, 267. b.
utīlis, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. foot-n.
utpote quī, 320. c. N. I.
utor, etc., w. abl., 249; w. acc., id. b; gerundive use of, 294. c. N, 296. R.
utrum . . . an, 211 and d.
utīli, constr., 312, and R.
utūs, adj.-ending, 164. f.
utut, 105. b.
-ūus, rare nom.-ending, decl. IV., 68. N., 70. b; verbal adj.-ending, 164. l.
ux (-ūx), nouns in, 67. e.
conjunctions. III. w. v in pert. 132. c; v often om. in perf. of eo and its comps., 141. b; v by synaeresis, 347. c.

*va,* primary suffix, 160. b.

*vafer,* decl., 82. c; comp., 91. d.

*valde,* use, 93. d; *valde quam*, 334. e.

*Value,* gen. of indefinite, 252. a.

Value, measures of, 377-380.

*vannus,* gen., 39. a.

*vāpulō,* neutral passive, 136. b.

Variable nouns, 78, 79 (cf. 74. b; p. 41. foot-n. 1).

Variations of spelling, 12.

*vās,* decl., 77. 6.

*vās,* decl., 60. d; 78. 1. b.

*vātēs,* decl., 59.

-ve, vel, use, 156. c, 212. R.

*vel* (see -ve), w. superl., 93. b.

*velim,* vellem, subj. of modesty, 311. b.

*velim,* vellem, w. subjunct. (= opt.), 267. c (= imm.), 269. g.

*vellem,* see *velim.*

*veluti,* velutissi, 312.

*vēnēo* (vēnum ēō), 136. b, 258. b. R.

*vēnīnum,* defect., 77. 3 (cf. vēnēō).

*vēnerat = aderat,* 279. e.

**Verbs.** Etyology. Verb, defined, 25. d; inflection, 108-110; noun and adj. forms of, 109; signification, of forms, 111-115; personal endings, 116; forms of the verb, 117, 118 (note on origin and hist. of vb.-forms, pp. 119-121); table of endings, 118; the three stems, 121; influence of analogy, 121. N. 2; regular verbs, 122-136; the four conjugations, 122 and a; prin. parts of, 122. b, c; mixed verbs, id. d; deponents, 135; semi-deponents, 136; irregular verbs, 137-142; defective, 143, 144; impersonal, 145, 146; periphrastic forms, 147; compound verbs, 170; vowels in comp. verbs, 170. a. N. Derivation of verbs, 165-167.

**Verbs.** Syntax. Subject implied in ending, 174. 2; rules of agreement, 204-206; verb omitted, 206. c; rules of Syntax, 264-342. Cases w. vbs., see under Accusative, etc. Position of verb, 343, 344. d, j. (See under the names of the Moods, etc.)

**Verba sententiae et declarandi,** 272, 330, 336; passive use of, 272. R., 330. a-c; in poets and later writers, id. d.

Verbal nouns with dat., 227. d.

Verbal nouns and adjs. with reflexive, 196. d.

Verbal adjectives, 164. -p; in -āx, with gen., 218. b.

Verbal roots, 157. 1.

*vereor,* with gen., 223. b. 1; w. subjunct., 331. f.

*veritus,* as pres. part., 290. b.

vērō, 156. b, k; in answers, 212. a; position of, 345. b.

Verse, 359.

Versification, 359-375; forms of verse, 360.

*versus,* position of, 345. a.

*vertō,* constr., 252. c.

*vertī,* gen., 69. 6; decl., 70. d.

vērum or vērō, use, 156. b, k.

vescor, with abl., 249; w. acc., id. b; gerundive, 294. c. N, 296. R.

vesper, decl., 41. b.

vesperī (loc.), 41. b, 258. d.

vester, decl., 82. c (see p. 64).

vestīre as subj. gen., 99. c, 194. b.


vētus,* decl., 85. b, 87. c; comparison, 89. a, 91. d.

-vī in perfect, 118. N.

viā, abl. of manner, 248. R.

vicis, decl., 77. 7.

vicem, adverbial use of, 240. b.

vicinus, with gen., 218. d.

vidēligicet, derivation, 148. N. 8.

videō ut, 331.

vidēor, with dat., 232. c.

vin (visne), 13. c.

vir, decl., 38, 41. b.

virgō, decl., 49.

virīus, gender of, 39. b.

vis, stem, 54. 2; decl., 61.

viscera, 79. c.

visō, 167. c.

vocālis, decl., 57. b.

**Vocatives.** 31. c; form, 33. a, 3; in -ī of nouns in -ius, decl. II., 40. c, d; of adjs. in -ius, 81. a; of Greek nouns, 43. b. Syntax, 241.

Voices, 108. a, 111; middle voice, id. a, 118. N, 135. e.
volō, and comps., conj. 138; w. infin.,
271 and N.; part. of, as dat. of reference,
235. e; w. perf. part., 288. d and N., 292.
d. N.; w. subj. or inf., 331. b and N.
volucris, decl., 84. a.
-volus, adj. in, comparison, 89. c.
vōs, 98. i.
voster, etc., see vester.
vōtī damnātus, 220. a.
Vowels, I; long and short, how marked,
5; vowels and consonants form scale,
id. N.; inherited differences in, 9; con-
traction, ro. b; syncop, id. c; inser-
tion, id. d; shortening, id. e; dissimi-
lation, II. e; pronunciation, 16, 17;
long and short, 18; quantity of final
vowels in case-endings, 33. g; vowel
modified in noun-stems, decl. III., 45;
lengthened in root, 123. c. i, 124. d,
158. b and N.; list of vbs. w. vowel-
lengthening in perf. conj. III., 132. c.
Vowel-changes, 10.
Vowel-roots of verbs, 126. a, b.
Vowel-suffixes (primary), 160. c. i.
Vowel-stems, decl. III., 51-59; gend.,
66. a; noun-forms, 67. a; of verbs,
165 and foot-n.
vulgus (volgus), gend., 39. b.
-vus, verbal adj-ending, 164. l.

W, not in Latin alphabet, p. i.
Want, words of, with abl., 243; with gen.,
223, 243. f.

Way by which (abl.), 238. g.
Weight, measures of, 382.
Whole, gen. of, 216; numbers expressing
the whole, 216. e.
Wills, fut. inv. in, 269. d. 3.
Winds, gender of names of, 29.
Wish, expressed by subj., 267; as a
condition, 310. b; wish in informal
ind. disc., 341. b.
Wishing, verbs of, with inf., 288. d (cf.
271. a); with subst. clause of purp.,
317. d, 331. b; with acc. and infin.,
330. 3, 331. b.
Without, with verbal noun, 292. N. i.
Women, names of, 80. c.
Words, formation of, 157-170; arrange-
ment of, 343-346.
Would (Eng. auxiliary), how expressed
in Lat., 112. b. N.

X, nom-ending, 44; gend., 65. b, 67. c;
X from 8, in verbs, 132. a.

Y, of Greek origin, p. i.
-Y, noun-ending, gend., 65. c.
YA, verb-root.
ya (primary suffix), 160. k.
Year, p. 425; months of, pp. 425, 426;
date, 259. e, 276.
Yes in Lat., 212.
-ys, nom-ending, 63. g, 64, 67. d; gend.,
65. b; quantity, 348. 9.

Z, of Greek origin, p. i, 6. N.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appuleius:</td>
<td>Met., <em>Metamorphoses</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cato:</td>
<td>R. R., <em>De Re Rustica</em>. Catullus, Catullus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inv., Inv. de <em>Inventione</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inv. R., Inv. de <em>Inventione Rhetorica</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lael., Laelius (de Amicitia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations Used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jug., <em>Jugurtha.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sen., Seneca:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ep., <em>Epistulae.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herc. Oet., <em>Hercules Oetaeus.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. N., <em>Quaestiones Naturales.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sil. It., Silius Italicus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suet., Suetonius.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tac., Tacitus:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agr., <em>Agricola.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H., <em>Historiae.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ter., Terence:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad., <em>Adelphi.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And., <em>Andria.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eun., <em>Eunuchus.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heaut., <em>Heautontimorumenos.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hec., <em>Hecyra.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph., <em>Phormio.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virg., <em>Virgil:</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Æn., <em>Æneid.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E., <em>Eclogae.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G., <em>Georgica.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADVERTISEMENTS
ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S NEW CICERO

REVISED BY
J. B. GREENOUGH, Professor of Latin in Harvard University,
AND
GEORGE L. KITTREDGE, Professor of English in Harvard University, formerly Professor of Latin in Phillips Exeter Academy.

WITH A
SPECIAL VOCABULARY, BY PROFESSOR GREENOUGH.

For introduction, $1.40.

This new edition of Cicero has been treated with special reference to the use of the orations as models of classic oratory. The Introduction is made to help in this study of applied logic and rhetoric. There is a full life of Cicero, describing his education and development as an orator, as well as his political career. There is a chapter connecting the style of the orations with ancient formal rhetoric. There is also a chapter on Roman oratory and the place of the orator in ancient civilization.

The text includes the following orations: The Manilian Law, four orations against Catiline, Archias, Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius, the fourteenth Philippic, and copious extracts from the Defence of Roscius and the Actio Secunda against Verres.

Almost everything admitting of graphic presentation has an illustration, and no little study has been expended in finding the most suitable pictures. Views of places, scenes of Roman life, and portraits have been specially sought. Many coins are shown. The illustrations are fully explained in the Index, with criticisms.

J. H. Westcott, Professor of Latin, Princeton University, Princeton, N.J.: I shall recommend the use of it in the Princeton Preparatory School.

Frank Smalley, Professor of Latin, Syracuse University, Syracuse, N.Y.: It is a fine book, splendidly illustrated. It will give me pleasure to recommend it to teachers in preparatory schools. I have seen no edition of Cicero that has pleased me more. If I were called on to teach his orations I would surely use this book.

A. G. Hopkins, Professor of Latin, Hamilton College, Clinton, N.Y.: The whole make-up of the book is attractive, and it will be welcomed as a valuable contribution to the undergraduate study of Cicero.

W. B. Owen, Professor of Latin, Lafayette College, Easton, Pa.: The many beautiful illustrations make a prominent feature. I am especially pleased also with the excellent chapter on Roman constitution. It will add greatly to the value of the work.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
LATIN TEXT-BOOKS
For Grammar and Higher Schools.

Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar .................................................. $1.20
Allen and Greenough's Shorter Latin Grammar ........................................ 0.95
Allen and Greenough's New Caesar, with vocabulary ................................ 1.25
Allen and Greenough's New Cicero, with vocabulary ................................ 1.40
Allen and Greenough's Ovid, with vocabulary ........................................ 1.50
Allen and Greenough's Sallust's Catiline ............................................. 0.60
Allen and Greenough's Cicero de Senectute .......................................... 0.50
Collar's Gate to Caesar ............................................................................ 0.40
Collar's New Gradatim ............................................................................. 0.50
Collar's Practical Latin Composition ....................................................... 1.00
Collar's Via Latina .................................................................................. 0.75
Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book ...................................................... 1.00
Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Latin Book ............................................ 1.00
D'Ooge's Easy Latin for Sight Reading ................................................... 0.40
Gleason's Gate to Vergil .......................................................................... 0.45
Greenough, D'Ooge and Daniell's Second Year Latin .............................. 1.25
Greenough and Kittredge's Virgil: Aeneid, I.–VI., with vocabulary .......... 1.50
Greenough and Kittredge's Bucolics and Aeneid, I.–VI., with vocabulary .. 1.60

Latin School Classics:
Atherton's Caesar and Pompey in Greece .............................................. 0.45
Clark's Erasmus ....................................................................................... 0.50
Collar's Aeneid, Book VII. ....................................................................... 0.45
Collar's Aeneid, Book VII., with translation .......................................... 0.45
Collar's Caesar, Gallic War, Book I......................................................... 0.45
Collar's Caesar, Gallic War, Book II ....................................................... 0.35
Cutler's Aeneid, Book IX. ......................................................................... 0.45
D'Ooge's Viri Romae ............................................................................... 0.75
Humphreys' Quintus Curtius .................................................................. 0.50
Peck's Ovid's Metamorphoses, Books I. and II ....................................... 0.75
Roberts' Nepos ......................................................................................... 0.75
Tetlow's Aeneid, Book VIII., with vocabulary ....................................... 0.45
Tetlow's Aeneid, Book VIII., without vocabulary ................................... 0.35
Moulton's Preparatory Latin Composition .............................................. 0.80
Part II. A Systematic Drill in Syntax ..................................................... 0.25
Moulton's Preparatory Latin Composition, including Systematic Drill in Syntax. (Complete Edition.) .................................................. 1.00
White's Latin-English Lexicon ................................................................ 1.00
White's English-Latin Lexicon ................................................................. 1.50
White's Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon ................................ 2.25

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
Allen and Greenough's New Caesar
Edited by
James B. Greenough, Professor of Latin in Harvard University, B. L. D'Ooge, Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan State Normal College, Ypsilanti, and M. Grant Daniels, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, formerly Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

Seven books. 12mo. Half morocco. Fully illustrated. lx + 452 pages.
With a special vocabulary of 162 pages.
For introduction, $1.25.

This new edition of Caesar's "Gallic War" keeps prominently in view the needs of the beginner, on the ground that a large majority of those who read Caesar take it up immediately after finishing their first lessons. It is believed that all this class of students' needs have been fully met in the present edition.

Professor Greenough has specially qualified himself for editing this edition by traveling and making recent investigations in France. Not only the notes, but the illustrations have profited greatly. A considerable number of the pictures in this edition are from photographs made especially for it. In other cases, pictures not previously seen in this country have been obtained. The museums have been visited and many new illustrations drawn from them. At the same time, all the standard and essential illustrations are used. It is believed that this part of the editing will be found of signal excellence and practical value.

Several reading courses are suggested, each one of which, while embracing an amount of text equal to the first four books, contains choice selections of narrative and adventure from the various books. It is believed that this feature will be especially acceptable to teachers who have found the monotony of Caesar irksome, but have seen no way to vary the course.

The text has been revised, many changes having been made, and the whole presents the commentaries in an ideal form for rapid and enjoyable reading. Quantities of long vowels are marked.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
GREENOUGH'S

NEW VIRGIL
EDITED BY
J. B. GREENOUGH, Professor of Latin in Harvard University,
AND
GEORGE L. KIT TREDGE, Professor of English in Harvard
University, formerly Professor of Latin in the
Phillips Exeter Academy.

AENEID, Books I.-VI., with a special Vocabulary. 12mo. Half morocco.
Illustrated. xlv+709 pages. For introduction, $1.50.
AENEID, Books I.-VI., Bucolics, with a special Vocabulary. Illustrated.
xlv+807 pages. For introduction, $1.60.

THIS new edition of Virgil contains a longer Introduction, dealing
fully with his life and times, his art, his literary influence, and similar
subjects. A special aim of the introduction and notes is to introduce
the student to a literary study of Virgil and so open the way to a fruit-
ful reading of the classic authors generally. The learner is skilfully
introduced to scansion. Full information and practical directions are
given, and, in particular, English prosody is made the gate to Latin
prosody.

The notes have been faithfully revised. The grammatical references
have been made to fit the latest editions of the grammars.

A special feature of the notes is the attempt to illustrate by quotations
from a wide range of English poets. Virgil, thus studied, should become
a most valuable aid in the general literary culture of the pupil.

Close and discriminating care has been given to the illustrations. Fac-
simile reproduction has been largely employed in this edition as the only
satisfactory process. Fine engravings on wood have been presented
where the subject allowed, and the pictures as a whole are believed to
possess remarkable power and beauty as well as illustrative value.

E. P. Crowell, Professor of Latin, Amherst College, Amherst, Mass.: Worthy of being heartily commended to
every teacher and student of Virgil.

W. B. Owen, Professor of Latin, Lafayette College, Easton, Pa.: In
every respect it is the best Virgil with which I am acquainted.

Charles P. Lynch, Teacher of Latin, High School, Cleveland, Ohio: The
book is one of rare qualities, not only as a Latin book, but as an English text, for the
side lights along the line of English literature are especially pleasing.

Wm. A. Houghton, Professor of Latin, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Me.: I have examined it with care and am pre-
pared to recommend it cordially.

E. C. Benson, Professor of Latin, Kenyon College, Gambier, Ohio: The
book is worthy of all commendation.

D. O. S. Lowell, Instructor in Latin, Latin School, Roxbury, Mass.: I have
long tried to teach the great poet in as literary a manner as possible, and this
book emphasizes just the points which have been too long neglected.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
MOULTON’S
PREPARATORY LATIN COMPOSITION

By F. P. MOULTON,
Teacher of Latin in the Hartford High School,

With Revision and Editorial Assistance by
WILLIAM C. COLLAR,
Head-Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

PREPARATORY LATIN COMPOSITION. Cloth. 199 pages. $1.00.

Part I. Covering work based on Caesar and Cicero with sight tests.
Cloth. 142 pages. 80 cents.


MOULTON’S PREPARATORY LATIN COMPOSITION provides a three-year course in the subject. Part I. includes work based on each chapter of the first four books of Caesar and six orations of Cicero. Each lesson is made up of, first, short sentences, for oral translation if desired, followed by connected passages based on the text the student is reading at the time. Numerous grammatical references accompany each lesson, and it has been the constant aim of the author to lead the pupil to acquire a working knowledge of grammar, so that he may rely more upon himself and less upon the teacher.

Part II., which is intended for third-year work, is a grammatical review studied topically. While not based upon the text of Virgil, it furnishes an invaluable course in syntax to accompany the reading of Virgil’s Aeneid. The lessons are independent and may be taken either in order or as the teacher may see the need of drill on any particular topic. The sentences are suitable for oral or written work.

For the convenience of those teachers who wish a two years’ course covering only Caesar and Cicero, or who wish a grammatical review for special purposes, Parts I. and II. have been issued separately at the prices indicated above.

May Copeland, Teacher of Latin and Greek, High School, Omaha, Nebr.: Moulton’s Latin Composition is most praiseworthy in that it grades the lessons from the easier to the more difficult, while at the same time the lessons are based on the texts most commonly read. So far as I know, this combination is not found in any other book of Latin prose.

Edward S. Boyd, Principal of Parker Academy, Woodbury, Conn.: The idiom, constructions, and style of the Latin are well introduced and the way paved for them. Latin grammar is wonderfully brought out.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
COLLAR'S GATE TO CAESAR

BY WILLIAM C. COLLAR,
Head-Master of the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

With map, and head of Caesar. Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 141 pages.
For introduction, 40 cents.

Caesar's Commentaries is the first continuous Latin read in a great many schools, but it is confessedly too hard for beginners. The result is waste of time and waste of labor. The object of this little book is to save both by distributing difficulties. "Divide and conquer." The text of the second book of Caesar's Gallic War is simplified, chiefly by omissions; but after the simplified text is given the full text, which may be studied in immediate succession, or be deferred till the learner's wings are grown. Synonymous Latin words are given at the foot of the page to enlarge the learner's vocabulary, full explanatory notes follow the text, and on each chapter of the simplified text a brief exercise is given for translation into Latin. The etymological vocabulary has been found of great interest and value. This little book has proved to be "exactly the thing," and we add a few testimonials merely to show the tone of the letters which the publishers have received.

John Tetlow, Head-Master of Girls' High and Latin Schools, Boston: It is so necessary and so clever a piece of work that it seems a pity it was not done long ago.

John K. Lord, Professor of Latin in Dartmouth College: The work is well done.

E. H. Smiley, Principal of High School, Hartford, Conn.: I am so well satisfied that it is just what we want that I have asked for its introduction here at once.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,
Easy Latin for Sight Reading

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS.

Selections from Ritchie's "Fabulae Faciles," Lhomond's "Urbis Romae Viri Inlustres," and Gellius' "Noctes Atticae."

Edited, with Introduction, Models for Written Lessons, Idioms, and Annotations,

By B. L. D'Ooge,

Professor of Latin and Greek in the Michigan State Normal College; editor of "Viri Romae," etc.

12mo. Cloth. 146 pages. Illustrated. For introduction, 40 cents.

This little book is designed to be helpful to those who desire to do more sight reading in secondary schools. It is intended especially for students who wish to learn to read Latin easily and need an elementary guide.

The author holds that students should be taught to read, and to understand as they read, without translation, from the very beginning. The aim from the outset should be to learn to read Latin. This is not so difficult, in the opinion of the author, as it seems, and pupils in secondary schools can with proper instruction acquire considerable facility in this direction.

For a well-graded series of selections for higher schools nothing better can be found than Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles, Lhomond's Urbis Romae Viri Inlustres, and Gellius' Noctes Atticae. The selections of this book have accordingly been made from these three sources. The Fabulae Faciles may be used to advantage during the latter half of the first year and the first part of the second; the selections from Viri Romae come next in difficulty, and then those from Gellius. It has been the plan of the author to afford sufficient and suitable material for the entire preparatory course. The quantities are marked.

From considerable experience with classes in sight reading, and from the experience and publications of others, Professor D'Ooge has compiled and formulated in a few introductory pages some hints and suggestions that will be found useful in teaching the art of reading Latin. These are followed by a few models for written lessons, which will be of practical use to the young student.

The increasing and very proper emphasis placed upon translation at sight in the curricula of all our best higher schools and colleges has insured a cordial welcome to this little book.

Ginn & Company, Publishers,
Via Latina  

AN EASY LATIN READER.

By 

WILLIAM C. COLLAR,  
Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

With VOCABULARY by 

CLARENCE W. GLEASON,  
Master in Roxbury Latin School.

12mo. Cloth. 203 pages. For introduction, 75 cents.

This book is an attempt to bridge the gap between the first Latin manual, covering forms and simple constructions, and a continuous classical work, like the "Lives of Nepos" or Cæsar’s "Gallic War." It has been proved by experience that discouragement and great loss of time result from plunging beginners too early into difficult Latin.

This book is designed for a few months of rapid reading, beginning with selections from "The New Gradatim," and ending with the "Life of Cæsar" and the "Alcibiades" of Nepos slightly simplified.

E. C. Warriner, Principal of High School (East Side), Saginaw, Mich.: It is an excellent selection of easy Latin reading, and a book which is admirably suited for the purpose intended.

Emma A. Scudder, Teacher of Latin, English High School, Cambridge, Mass.: The subject-matter is interesting, well arranged, and attractive in every respect. I wish we might have such a work introduced into our school to precede Nepos and Cæsar.

Thomas Fitz-Hugh, Professor of Latin, University of Texas, Austin, Tex.: It shows the same eminently practical and efficient qualities that characterize all of Mr. Collar’s text-books. I entirely approve of the general plan. I can imagine no more useful and available manual for every purpose involved in our discussions.

C. C. Ramsey, Principal of High School, Fall River, Mass.: A capital Latin reader; the notes and vocabulary are excellent and the selections could not be better.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Allen, Joseph Henry  
Allen & Greenough's Latin grammar